This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world’s books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that’s often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book’s long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ **Make non-commercial use of the files** We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ **Refrain from automated querying** Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google’s system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ **Maintain attribution** The Google “watermark” you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ **Keep it legal** Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can’t offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book’s appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google’s mission is to organize the world’s information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world’s books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at [http://books.google.com](http://books.google.com)
ANTS
COLUMBIA BIOLOGICAL SERIES
NUMBER 9

COLUMBIA BIOLOGICAL SERIES
EDITED AT COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

GENERAL EDITOR
L. C. DUNN, Professor of Zoology

EDITORIAL BOARD
THEODOSIUS DOBZHANSKY, Da Costa Professor of Zoology
EDWARD S. HODGSON, Associate Professor of Zoology
HOWARD LEVENE, Associate Professor of Mathematical Statistics and Biometrics
JOHN A. MOORE, Professor of Zoology
WILLIAM C. STEERE, Professor of Botany
J. HERBERT TAYLOR, Professor of Cell Biology
Female, males, major and minor workers and brood of *Camponotus americanus*, X 2.

(Photograph by Mr. J. G. Hubbard and Dr. O. S. Strong.)
TO MY WIFE

DORA BAY EMERSON

"The Subject indeed is small, but not inglorious. The Ant, as the Prince of Wisdom is pleased to inform us, is exceeding wise. In this Light it may, without Vanity, boast of its being related to you, and therefore by right of Kindred merits your Protection."

PREFACE

This volume had its inception in a series of eight lectures delivered at Columbia University during the spring of 1905, and represents, in a much condensed form, the results of a decade of uninterrupted study of the Formicidæ, and of the works that have been written on these insects.

If an excuse were required for its publication, one might be found in the fact that for many years no comprehensive treatise on the ants has appeared in the English language. This may be regarded as a reproach to English and American zoologists, since during all this time almost the only active contributors to myrmecology were to be found on the European continent. It must be admitted, however, that the methods of publication adopted by continental writers have not been such as to attract the attention of English-speaking students, since their works have not only been issued in a variety of languages—French, German, Swedish, Italian, Russian, etc.—but also in a great number of often very obscure, local or inaccessible journals and proceedings of learned societies. Moreover, most of the continental observers within recent years have been too busy with special lines of investigation to publish compendia on myrmecology. It thus happens that although ants are our most abundant and most conspicuously active insects, they have not, till very recently, received any serious attention from American systematists, and the descriptions of most of our species must still be sought in a lot of more or less fragmentary foreign contributions.

My work began in an endeavor to increase our systematic knowledge of the North American ants, but I was fascinated by the activities of these insects and soon saw the advantage of studying their taxonomy and ethology conjointly. This method, which was, indeed, unavoidable, has greatly retarded the appearance of the present work, for it was impossible to write about the behavior of many of our most interesting forms till their taxonomic status had been definitely settled. On the other hand, I could find no satisfaction in devoting all my energies to collecting and labelling specimens without stopping to observe the many surprising ethological facts that were at the same time thrusting themselves upon my attention. My observations have now covered so much of our fauna that I shall soon be able to publish a systematic
monograph, which will, I hope, enable the student to form a rapid acquaintance with our ants, without recourse to the scattered and often very meager descriptions that have hitherto served as the taxonomy of the North American species.

I frankly admit that in writing the following pages I have endeavored to appeal to several classes of readers—to the general reader, who is always more or less interested in ants; to the zoologist, who cannot afford to ignore their polymorphism or their symbiotic and parasitic relationships; to the entomologist, who should study the ants if only for the purpose of modifying his views on the limits of genera and species, and to the comparative psychologist, who is sure to find in them the most intricate instincts and the closest approach to intelligence among invertebrate animals. Of course, the desire to interest so many must result in a work containing much that will be dull or incomprehensible to any one class of readers; thus the technical terms and descriptions, which are full of significance to the entomologist, are merely so much dead verbiage to the general reader, and the laboratory zoologist, who shrinks at the mention of psychological matters, will care little about ant behavior beyond its physiological implications.

With the exception of the appendices and the first chapter, which serves as an introduction, my account of the ants falls naturally into two parts: a first, which is largely morphological, and comprises Chapters II to X; and a second, devoted to ethological considerations and embracing the remaining chapters. To some it may seem that too much space has been devoted to the relations of ants to other organisms and to other ants (Chapters XVI–XXVII), but I justify my procedure on the ground that this subject is the one in which I have been most interested, the one in which most advancement has been made within recent years, and the one that has been fraught with the greatest differences of interpretation.

The series of appendices has been added largely as an aid to the beginner in the study of myrmecology. The tables for the identification of our North American ants are very incomplete, but could not have been extended to embrace the species, subspecies and varieties, and the different castes, as well as the genera, without unduly increasing the size of the book. I hope to make good this defect in the monograph to which I have alluded. In the meantime, I shall be glad to identify ants for anyone who is interested in their study, especially if the specimens are collected in America north of Mexico. The identification of such material serves a double purpose: that of increasing our knowledge of the geographical distribution of our species, and of spreading throughout the country collections of correctly identified
specimens. The dearth of such collections, both of ants and of all
other groups of insects, excepting, perhaps, the Coleoptera and Lepi-
doptera, has not ceased to be a great drawback to the study of ento-
mology in America.

The bibliography (Appendix E), which has been carried down to
the close of the year 1908, is unfortunately very voluminous and includes
many titles of unimportant works. Like all such compilations, it is
necessarily incomplete, and undoubtedly contains positive errors. A
serious attempt has been made, however, to reduce these to a minimum,
and I shall be glad to receive any additions or corrections.

For portions of the text and many of the figures I have drawn
rather freely on my previously published papers. A few entire chap-
ters, in fact, such as those on polymorphism, have been reproduced
with only slight verbal alterations. Others, like Chapters XVIII and
XX, are abridgments of longer accounts of the fungus-growing and
honey ants recently published in the Bulletin of the American Museum
of Natural History.

I am under lasting obligations to Professor H. C. Bumpus for the
interest he has shown in the progress of my work, and the aid which
I received in its prosecution while I was Curator of Invertebrate
Zoölogy in the American Museum of Natural History. To Mr. Roy
W. Miner, Assistant Curator of Invertebrate Zoölogy in that institu-
tion, I am deeply indebted for much assistance in making out the table
of contents, and especially in arranging and verifying the bibliography.
Many of the illustrations have been made by Miss Ruth B. Howe.
My friend, Professor Oliver S. Strong, of Columbia University, has
most generously permitted me to use a number of the remarkable
photographs which he and Mr. J. G. Hubbard took of living colonies
of various ants in the possession of Miss Adele M. Fielde. Three of
my former pupils, Messrs. A. L. Melander, C. T. Brues and C. G.
Hartman, have also contributed several interesting figures, and Mr.
Brues has aided me in reading the proof.

Bussey Institution,
Forest Hills, Boston, Mass.,
October 30, 1909
PREFACE TO THE SECOND IMPRESSION

The demand for this volume, which has been out of print for some time, has induced the publishers to issue a reprint. A treatment commensurate with our present knowledge would undoubtedly require the addition of several new chapters and many new illustrations. Such a revision would swell the work probably to two volumes of the size of the present one, would much increase the cost and would take several years to complete. The result would be, I fear, to bewilder the general reader while still not meeting the requirements of the investigator. The work is therefore presented again in its present form in the belief that it may continue to serve a useful purpose for general orientation in a very interesting field of entomological knowledge.

W. M. Wheeler

Bussey Institution,
Forest Hills, Boston, Mass.,
November 23, 1925
TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER I
ANTS AS DOMINANT INSECTS

I. The Social Insects, and Their Interest for Man .............. 1

II. The Dominance of Ants, as shown by—
   1. Unusual Variability. 2. Wide Distribution. 3. Numerical
   Ascendancy. 4. Longevity. 5. Abandonment of Detrimental
   Specialization. 6. Versatility of Their Relations with Plants
   and Other Animals. .............................................. 2

III. Probable Cause of the Dominance of Ants ...................... 3

IV. Correlative Indications of This Dominance ..................... 4

V. Comparison of Human and Ant Societies ....................... 5
   1. Striking Character of the Resemblances and Their Signifi-
   cane. 2. Parallelism in Development. 3. Differences in
   Organization.

VI. Analogy between the Ant Colony and the Cellular Organism 7

VII. Economic Importance of Ants ................................. 8
    1. Their Beneficial Activities. 2. Their Noxious Habits.

VIII. Ants as Objects of Biological Study .......................... 11

CHAPTER II
THE EXTERNAL STRUCTURE OF ANTS

I. General Distinguishing Characters ............................... 13

II. The Segmentation of the Body ................................. 14

III. The Integument .............................................. 15

IV. The Head ..................................................... 16

   1. Shape and Chief Divisions. 2. The Cranium. 3. The
   Mouth-parts. 4. The Antennae. 5. The Eyes.

V. The Thorax ................................................... 20

   1. The Thorax in General. 2. The Thoracic Elements. 3.
   The Stigmata. 4. Comparison of Thoracic Characters of
   Male, Female and Worker. 5. The Legs. 6. The Wings.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

VI. The Abdomen .................................................. 26
   1. The Various Subfamilies Compared. 2. The Visible Seg-
   ments. 3. The Terminal Segments of Female and Worker.
   4. The Terminal Segments of the Male.

CHAPTER III

THE INTERNAL STRUCTURE OF ANTS

I. The Alimentary Tract ........................................ 31
II. The Glandular System ....................................... 37
III. The Reproductive Organs, Poison Apparatus and Repug-
natorial Organs .............................................. 39
IV. The Circulatory System, Fat-body, ÓEnocytes, etc. .... 46
V. The Respiratory System ..................................... 49
VI. The Muscular System ....................................... 49

CHAPTER IV

THE INTERNAL STRUCTURE OF ANTS (CONCLUDED)

I. The Nervous System in General ............................ 51
II. The Brain ................................................... 52
   1. Its Segmentation. 2. Its Finer Structure and the Signifi-
cance of the Pedunculate Bodies.
III. The Ventral Nerve-cord .................................... 57
IV. The Sympathetic Nervous System ......................... 58
V. The Sense-organs ............................................ 59
   1. Tactile Sensillæ. 2. Olfactory and Gustatory Sensillæ.
   3. Chordotonal Organs. 4. The Johnstonian Organ. 5.
The Campaniform Sensillæ. 6. The Lateral Eyes. 7. The
   Median Eyes, Stemmata, or Ocelli.

CHAPTER V

THE DEVELOPMENT OF ANTS

I. Behavior of Ants toward Their Young Contrasted with
   That of Other Hymenoptera ............................... 67
II. The Nursing of the Brood .................................. 69
TABLE OF CONTENTS

III. The Egg .............................................................. 70
   1. Description.  2. Fertilization and Its Relation to Sex.  3. Development.

IV. The Larva ............................................................ 72
   1. Description.  2. Feeding.  3. Internal Structure.

V. Pupation ............................................................ 76

VI. Coloration of the Callows ................................. 79

VII. Length of Developmental Periods .......................... 80

VIII. Longevity of Adult Ants ..................................... 81

IX. Resistance of Ants to Noxious Influences .................. 83

CHAPTER VI

POLYMORPHISM

I. Definition of the Term ............................................. 86

II. Extent and Character of Polymorphism among Insects .... 87

III. The Phylogenetic Origin and Development of Polymor-
     phism in Hymenoptera ......................................... 90
       1. The Views of Various Authors.  2. Phylogeny of the Phases
           Known among Ants.

IV. The Development of the Worker the Real Problem of Poly-
     morphism in Ants.................................................. 91
       1. Weismann's Theory of Predetermining Units.  2. Spencer's
           Theory of Trophic Epigenesis.  3. Emery's Theory of Pre-
           disposition.

V. The Three Aspects of the Problem .......................... 102
       1. The Physiological and Ontogenic.  2. The Ethological and
           Phylogenetic.  3. The Psychological.

VI. The Physiological and Ontogenic Method of Explaining the
     Development of the Worker .................................. 103
       1. The Advantage of the Physiological over the Embryological
           Method.  2. The Two General Objections to the Physiolog-
           ical Explanation.  3. Inferences which tend to show that
           Qualitative Feeding is not Responsible for the Worker Type.
           4. The Relation of Underfeeding to the Ontogeny of the
           Worker and Related Types.  5. Conclusion.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER VII

POLYMORPHISM (CONCLUDED)

VII. The Ethological and Phylogenetic Method of Explaining the Development of the Worker .......................................................... 110


VIII. The Psychological View of the Problem .......................... 117

1. The Relation of Instinct to Polymorphism in Ants... 118

(a) The Worker Type Due to a Worker-producing Instinct.
(b) Predominant Character of the Philoprogenitive Instincts in Ants.

2. Differentiation in Function the Precursor of Differentiation in Structure ............................................................... 119

(a) The Instincts of the Queen (i) in Gynæcetelic Insects;
(ii) in Ergatotelic Insects. (b) Evidences that Instinct-changes Precede Morphological Changes.

3. Conclusions ................................................................. 122

CHAPTER VIII

THE HISTORY OF MRYECOLOGY AND THE CLASSIFICATION OF ANTS

I. The Present Status of the Study of Ants ........................ 123

II. The Three View-points in Ant-study ............................. 124

III. The Development of Ant Taxonomy ............................. 124

1. Linné, Fabricius, and Latreille. 2. Nylander, Mayr, and Frederick Smith. 3. Emery, Forel, and Other Later Writers.

IV. The History of Ant Ethology ................................. 127

1. The Earlier Writers. 2. Pierre Huber. 3. The Later Writers.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

V. The Study of Myrmecophily ........................................... 128
VI. The Study of Ant Morphology ........................................ 129
VII. The Difficulties of Classification ................................. 129
      1. The Three Castes.  2. The Variability of Ants.
VIII. The Anatomical Basis of Classification ........................ 131
IX. Quadrinomial Nomenclature ......................................... 131
X. Conspectus of the Classification of Ants ......................... 134

CHAPTER IX

THE DISTRIBUTION OF ANTS

I. Modes of Dissemination .............................................. 145
II. Two Methods of Studying Ant-distribution ......................... 146
III. The Faunistic Distribution of Ants ............................... 147
      1. Geological Parallelism in the Origin and Distribution of
         Ants and Mammals.  2. History and Distribution of the
         Principal Groups.  3. The North American Ant-fauna.  (a)
         The Preglacial Fauna.  (b) The Four Postglacial Waves
         of Northward Migration.  (c) The Four Centers of Redis-
         tribution.  (d) Adventitious Tropical and Subtropical Forms.
         (e) Ants Imported by Commerce.  (f) Conclusions.
IV. The Ethological Distribution of Ants ............................. 156

CHAPTER X

FOSSIL ANTS

I. Paleontological History of the Hymenoptera .................... 160
II. The Tertiary Ants ................................................... 161
      1. Relations of the Extinct to the Living Genera.  2. Localities
         Yielding Tertiary Ant Fossils.  3. Comparison of Lacustrine
         with Amber Ants.  4. Inadequacy of Past Researches on
         the Oeningen and Radoboj Ants.  5. Numerical Proportion
         of Known Fossil Ant Specimens to Those of Other Hymen-
         optera.  6. Relative Proportion of Fossil Ants in the Various
         Subfamilies and Conclusions Based Thereon.  7. The Known
         Genera of Amber Ants.  8. Causes of the Intermingling
         of Arctic and Tropical Forms.  9. Remarks on Interesting
         Genera and Species.  10. The Tertiary Ants of North
         America.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

III. The Quaternary, or Pleistocene Ants ....................... 173
IV. Similarity of Baltic Amber Ants to Living Baltic Species . 174
V. Absence of Polymorphism among the Workers of Tertiary Ants .................................................. 174

CHAPTER XI

THE HABITS OF ANTS IN GENERAL

I. The Three-fold Activities of Ants in General ............. 176
II. Nutritive Activities of Ants.—Six General Sources of Ants' Food .................................................. 177
III. Protective Habits of Ants ..................................... 178
  1. Care of the Young. 2. Care of One Another. 3. Care of the Nest. 4. Methods of Defence and Attack. 5. Means of Preventing Mixture of Alien Colonies.

IV. Reproduction among Ants ...................................... 182
  1. Terrestrial Mating. 2. The Nuptial Flight. 3. The Founding of the New Colony. 4. Social Parasitism. 5. The Number of Individuals in a Colony.

CHAPTER XII

ANT-NESTS

I. General Architectural Characteristics ...................... 192
II. Methods of Construction ..................................... 194
III. Change of Abode ............................................. 195
IV. Classification of Ant-nests .................................. 198
V. Nests in the Soil .............................................. 199
  1. Small Crater Nests. 2. Large Crater Nests. 3. Mound, or Dome and Masonry Nests. 4. Nests under Stones, Boards, etc.

CHAPTER XIII

ANT-NESTS (CONCLUDED)

VI. Nests in the Cavities of Plants ............................ 207
  1. In Preformed Cavities. 2. In Woody Plant-tissues (a) Carpenter Ants; (b) Gall Ants.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

VII. Suspended Nests ................................................. 213
   1. Earthen Nests. 2. Carton Nests. 3. Silken Nests (a) Description; (b) Manufacture.

VIII. Nests in Unusual Situations ................................. 221

IX. Accessory Structures ......................................... 222
   1. Paths, Clearings, and Covered Runways. 2. Succursals
   Nests. 3. Tents, or Pavilions.

CHAPTER XIV

THE PONERINE ANTS

I. Necessity of the Historical Method of Study ............... 225
II. General Significance of the Ponerinae as a Group .......... 226
III. The Genus Myrmecia as the Prototype of all Ants .......... 227
IV. The Castes of the Ponerinae ................................ 230
V. Nesting and Feeding Habits ................................... 232
VI. The Three Types of Ponerine Larvae ....................... 233
VII. Observations on the Methods of Feeding the Larvae ...... 234
VIII. Care for the Brood .......................................... 237
IX. The Hatching of the Callows ................................ 238
X. Deportation and Hunting Habits ................................ 240
XI. Usurpation of Queen Function by Gynaecloid Workers .... 242
XII. Phylogeny of the Group ...................................... 243

CHAPTER XV

THE DRIVER AND LEGIONARY ANTS

I. The Dorylinae as a Group .................................... 246
II. Description of the Castes .................................... 248
III. Difficulties of Nomenclature ................................ 248
IV. The Genus Dorylus ........................................... 249
V. The Genus Ænictus ............................................ 253
VI. The Genera Eciton and Chelioniymyrmex .................... 255
VII. The Problems of the Dorylinæ ................................ 265
   1. Domestic Economy. 2. Dichthadiigynes.
CHAPTER XVI

THE HARVESTING ANTS

I. The Origin and Development of the Harvesting Habit .... 267
II. Early Observations ........................................ 268
III. Observations of European Harvesters by Moggridge, Forel, André, Emery and Others ................. 269
IV. The North African Harvester Oxyopomyrmex santschii.. 273
V. The Asiatic Harvesters Pheidole, Holcomyrmex and Pheidologeton .................................................. 275
VI. The Australian Harvesters Pheidole longiceps and Meranoplus ......................................................... 276
VII. The American Harvesters (Solenopsis and Myrmicini) ... 278
    1. Solenopsis geminata, the "fire ant." 2. The Genus Pheidole.

CHAPTER XVII

THE RELATIONS OF ANTS TO VASCULAR PLANTS

I. The Hypothesis of Mutualism between Ants and Plants ... 294

II. Plant Adaptations Apparently Indicating Symbiosis ...... 295
    1. Dwelling-places for Ants. (a) Cavities in Stems. (b) Tubers, Bulbs, Pseudobulbs, Rootstocks, etc. (c) Ascidiae or Bursae of Leaves and Petioles. (d) Spaces between or under Leaves. (e) Thorns. (f) Seed-pods. (g) Galls.
    2. Food-supplies for Ants. (a) Floral Nectaries. (b) Extrafloral Nectaries. (c) Food-bodies. (d) Bead-glands ("Perdrüsen"). (e) Pith and Other Vegetable Tissues.

III. The Ants Dwelling on Plants ................................ 302
    1. The Arboreal Genera. 2. The Habits and Structural Adaptations of Azteca and Pseudomyrma, and their Relations to the Problem. 3. The Relations of Azteca muelleri to Cercropia adenosus. 4. The Relations of Ants to Myrmecocodia, Hydnaphyllum and Myrmecophytum. 5. The Relations
of *Pseudomyrma bicolor* to *Acacia sphaerocephala*. 6. Other Acacias Inhabited by Ants. 7. Other Examples Found in South America.

IV. Other Relations of Ants to Plants .......................... 315
   1. Ants as Seed Distributors. 2. Ant-Gardens. 3. Plants Injurious to Ants.

CHAPTER XVIII

THE FUNGUS-GROWING ANTS

I. The Symbiotic Relation between the Fungus-growing Ants and Their Fungi .......................... 318

II. Characteristics of the Tribe Attii ............................ 319

III. Review of the Literature .................................. 320

IV. Belt's Observations on *Atta cephalotes* .................... 321

V. Moeller's Observations .................................... 324

VI. The Source and Nourishment of the Fungus in the Colony. (Observations of Sampaio, von Ihering, Goeldi and Huber.) ........................................... 329

VII. The Fungus-growing Ants of the United States.............. 333
   (b) General Considerations. 1. Advance in the Fungus-growing Habit. 2. Condition of our Knowledge as to the Origin of the Habit.

CHAPTER XIX

THE RELATIONS OF ANTS TO PLANT-LICE, SCALE-INSECTS, TREE-Hoppers AND CATERPILLARS

I. The Liquid-excreting Insects Attended by Ants .......... 339

II. Relations of Ants with Aphids ............................. 340
TABLE OF CONTENTS

III. Relations of Ants with Coccids ........................................... 347
IV. Relations of Ants with Jumping Plant-lice ............................ 349
V. Relations of Ants with Tree-hoppers ................................. 350
VI. Evidences for “Mutualism” in the Relations of Ants with
    Homoptera in General ......................................................... 351
VII. The Fulgoridae, etc. ......................................................... 356
VIII. Relations of Ants with Lycænid Caterpillars ...................... 357
IX. “Trophobiosis” ................................................................. 360

CHAPTER XX

HONEY ANTS

I. Description of the Honey-storing Habit .................................. 361
II. The Species of Honey Ants ................................................... 363
    1. Melophorus bagoti and coulei.  2. Leptomyrmex rufipes.
    3. Plagiolepis trimeni.  4. Camponotus inflatus.  5. Myrme-
    cocystus melliger, mexicanus and horti-deorum.  (a) Early
    Observations.  (b) McCook’s Observations on M. horti-
    deorum.  (c) Forel’s Observations.  (d) Personal Observ-
    vations.  6. Cremastogaster inflata and difformis.
III. The Causes of Repletion .................................................... 374
IV. Relations of Nest Structure and Situation to the Develop-
    ment of Repletes .............................................................. 375
V. Adaptations of Diet in Ants Living in Desert Regions ....... 376

CHAPTER XXI

PERSECUTED AND TOLERATED GUESTS

I. Extraneal and Intraneal Symbiosis ....................................... 378
II. Myrmecophiles in General ................................................. 379
    1. History of Investigations.  2. Number and Diversity.  3.
    Causes of the Myrmecophilous Habit.  4. Ethological Classi-
    fication.  5. Progressive Adaptation in the Four Groups.
III. The Synchnthrans ........................................................... 382
IV. The Synæketes ............................................................... 383
    1. Neutral Synæketes.  2. Mimetic, Loricate, and Symphyloid
    Synæketes.  3. The Myrmecocleptics.  4. The Strigilators.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER XXII

TRUE GUESTS, ECTO- AND ENTOPARASITES

I. General Characteristics of the Relations of the True Guests and Parasites to the Ants ........................................... 398

II. The Symphiles—Structural Adaptations .............................. 398

III. Typical Symphiles .................................................... 402
   1. The Paussiæ. 2. The Gnostiæ, Ectrephiæ, and Cosypsyphodidae.
      3. The Clavigeridae and Pselaphidae. 4. The Lomechusinae.
      (a) Summary of Life History. (b) Pseudogynes. 5. Critique of Wasmann's Theories of
      "Amical Selection" and "Special Symphylid Instincts."

IV. Ectoparasites ......................................................... 412
   1. The Phorid Metopina. 2. The Gamasid Antennaphorus,
      etc. 3. The Sarcoptid Tyroglyphus. 4. The Thoricidae.
      5. The Chalcidæ.

V. Entoparasites ......................................................... 419

VI. Comparison of Modifications of Hosts Induced by the Three
    Classes of Parasites ................................................. 421

VII. Myrmecophags and Myrmecoids ................................... 422

CHAPTER XXIII

THE COMPOUND NESTS

I. Social Symbiosis .................................................... 423
   1. Definition. 2. Classification. (a) Compound Nests. (b) Mixed Colonies.

II. Types of Social Symbiosis in Compound Nests .................... 424
   1. Plesiobiosis. 2. Parabiosis. 3. Cleptobiosis. 4. Lesto-
      biosis. (a) Pheidole calens. (b) Solenopsis fugax. (c) Diplomorium longipenne.
      (d) Carebara vidua, etc. (e) Other Lestobiotic Ants. 5. Phylacobiosis. 6. Xenobiosis.
      (a) Formicoxenus nitidulus. (b) Formicoxenus ravuxi and corsicus. (c) Xenomyrmex stolli.
      (d) Phacota zicheli and nowalhieri. (e) Myrmoxenus gordiagini. (f)
TABLE OF CONTENTS

Sifolinia lauræ. (g) Myrmica myrmoxena. (h) Symmyrmica chamberlini. (i) Leptothorax emersonii. (j) Leptothorax glacialis.

CHAPTER XXIV

THE TEMPORARY SOCIAL PARASITES

I. Ant Parasitism in General ........................................ 437
   1. History of the Subject.  2. Establishment of the Normal Colony.  3. Redundant and Defective Types of Colony Formation.  4. Three Forms of Effecting Adoption of Queens in Alien Colonies, and Their Phylogeny.

II. Definition and Extent of Temporary Social Parasitism ... 440

III. The Known and Hypothetical Cases of Temporary Social Parasitism ........................................ 441

IV. General Conclusions ........................................ 449

CHAPTER XXV

THE SANGUINARY ANTS, OR FACULTATIVE SLAVE-MAKERS

I. Definition and General Description of the Dulotic Instincts 452

II. Distribution and Species of Slave-making Ants .......... 454

III. The Facultative Slave-makers .......................... 454

1. The European sanguinea.  (a) Description of the Species. (b) Ratio of Slave-holding to Slaveless Colonies of sanguinea. (c) The Tactics of the Foray. (d) The Purpose of the Foray. (e) Comparison with the Rapacious Dorylines.

2. The American sanguinea.  (a) The Variety of North American Forms. (b) Comparison with the European Type. (c) Personal Observations of sanguinea Forays.

3. The Founding of the sanguinea Colony.  (a) Experiments and Conclusions.  (b) Comparison with the Colonies of Temporary Parasites.  (c) Solution of the Problem of the Dulotic Instincts.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## CHAPTER XXVI

**The Amazons, or Obligatory Slave-Makers**

I. Introductory ........................................ 471

II. The European Amazons (*Polyergus rufescens*) ............ 471
   1. Description and General Habits. 2. Expeditions. 3. Influence of Dulotic Relation on Behavior of Slaves of *Polyergus rufescens*.

III. The American Amazons ............................... 474

IV. The Founding of Amazon Colonies....................... 486

## CHAPTER XXVII

**The Degenerate Slave-Makers and Permanent Social Parasites**

I. Introduction—Comparison with Preceding Types—Classification and Definition ......................... 488

II. The Degenerate Slave-makers .......................... 489
   (a) The Genus *Strongylognathus*. 1. *Strongylognathus huberi*.
       6. *Strongylognathus testaceus*.
       2. *Harpgoxenus americanus*.

III. The Permanent Social Parasites ..................... 495

## CHAPTER XXVIII

**The Sensations of Ants**

I. Introductory. Intellectual and Intuitional Methods of Studying Animal Behavior. Different Types of Behavior. The Senses as a Basis for its Study .................. 505
TABLE OF CONTENTS

II. Sense Perception in Ants ................................. 508

III. The Great Importance of the Perceptions of Odor, Touch, and Vibrations in the Lives of Ants .............. 517

CHAPTER XXIX

THE INSTINCTIVE BEHAVIOR OF ANTS

I. Introductory. Definition of Instinct. Its Ethological, Physiological, Psychological and Metaphysical Aspects .... 518

II. Instinct from the Objective Point of View ............... 519

III. The Correlation of Instincts and Structure .............. 521
   1. Instincts as Compound Reflexes.  2. The Centering of Instinct in Reproduction.  3. Differentiation of Instincts in the Castes.  4. Deferred Instincts.  5. Vestigial and Decadent Instincts.  6. Diseases of Instinct. The Decay of Ant Colonies Due to Disturbance of their Trophic Balance.  7. Regulation in Instinct.

IV. Instinct Stimuli. Simple and Individualized Stimuli ...... 527

V. Instinct from the Subjective Point of View. Instinct as Divinatory Sympathy ............................... 529

CHAPTER XXX

THE PLASTIC BEHAVIOR OF ANTS

I. Introductory. Instinct and Intelligence Distinguished. The Types of Plastic Behavior .............................. 531

II. Ant Behavior Exhibiting the Ability to Profit by Experience 532

III. The Nature of Memory in Ants ......................... 539
IV. Observations Supposed to Indicate the Existence of Reasoning in Ants ........................................... 540
V. Conclusion. The Relations of Plastic to Instinctive Behavior 543

APPENDICES

A. Methods of Collecting, Mounting and Studying Ants .......... 545
B. Key to the Subfamilies, Genera and Subgenera of the North American Formicidæ, for the Identification of the Workers 557
C. A List of Described North American Ants....................... 561
D. Methods of Exterminating Noxious Ants ....................... 573
E. Literature ............................................................. 578
CHAPTER I

ANTS AS DOMINANT INSECTS

"In turba insectorum vastissima praeceteris Familii omnium Ordinum eminent Formice numero maximo individuorum, viribus tenacissimis, strenuitate et industria infatigabili atque vitae generi sociali et cultura (ut ita dicam) instinctus naturalis longe praecellente; quibus multisque adhuc aliis virtutibus hae animalcula, ad speciem externam, staturam coloresque exilia et vilia, attentionem Scrutatorium summorum temporum labentium sane meruerunt sibique allexerunt."—Nylander, "Adnotationes in Monographiam Formicarum Borealia Europae," 1846.

"Il n’est pas contestable que le succès soit le criterium le plus général de la supériorité, les deux termes étant, jusqu’à un certain point, synonymes l’un de l’autre. Par succès il faut entendre, quand il s’agit de l’être vivant, une aptitude à se développer dans les milieux les plus divers, à travers la plus grande variété possible d’obstacles, de manière à couvrir la plus vaste étendue possible de terre. Une espèce qui revendique pour domaine la terre entière est véritablement une espèce dominatrice et par conséquent supérieure. Telle est l’espèce humaine, qui représentera le point culminant de l’évolution des Vertébrés. Mais tels sont aussi, dans la série des Articulés, les Insectes et en particulier certains Hyménoptères. On a dit que les Fourmis étaient maîtresses du sous-sol de la terre, comme l’homme est maître du sol."—H. Bergson, "L’Evolution Créatrice," 1908.

It is a matter of common observation that the higher animals—those, namely, that in structure and behavior are most like ourselves—are also the ones which arouse our keenest interest, for besides the interest prompted by purely aesthetic or gastronomic motives, or by that atavistic love of the chase, so universal among healthy men, there is a more intellectual interest which zoologists and laymen alike experience when they contemplate in the nearest of their animal kindred the vague but unmistakable prototypes of the human body and its activities. The only lower animals that from immemorial time have retained a like interest for man, are certain insects—the social bees and wasps, the termites and the ants. And among these what appeals so forcibly to the imagination is not the structure or activities of the individuals as such, but the extraordinary instincts which compel them to live permanently in intimate consociations. In this case also our interest is aroused by an undeniable resemblance to our own condition. Reflection shows that this resemblance cannot be superficial, but must depend on a high degree of adaptability and plasticity common to man and the social insects, for in order to live in permanent commonwealths, an organism must be not only remarkably adaptive to changes in its
external environment, but must also have an intense feeling of cooperation, forbearance and affection towards the other members of its community. In other words, to live in societies, like those of man and the social insects, implies a shifting of proclivities from the egocentric to the sociocentric plane through a remarkable increase in the amplitude and precision of the individual's responses to all the normal environmental stimuli.

Of the four groups of social insects above mentioned, adaptive plasticity attains its richest and boldest expression in the ants. The extraordinary character of these creatures will appear in its proper light if we undertake to compare them on the one hand with the remaining social insects, and on the other hand with man, the paragon of social animals. It is certain that the ants occupy a unique position among all insects on account of their dominance as a group, and this dominance is shown first, in their high degree of variability as exhibited in the great number of their species, subspecies and varieties; second, in their numerical ascendancy in individuals; third, in their wide geographical distribution; fourth, in their remarkable longevity; fifth, in their abandonment of certain over-specialized modes of life from which the other social insects seem not to have been able to emancipate themselves, and sixth, in their manifold relationships with plants and other animals—man included.

Ants are to be found everywhere, from the arctic regions to the tropics, from timberline on the loftiest mountains to the shifting sands of the dunes and seashores, and from the dampest forests to the driest deserts. Not only do they outnumber in individuals all other terrestrial animals, but their colonies even in very circumscribed localities often defy enumeration. Their colonies are, moreover, remarkably stable, sometimes outlasting a generation of men. Such stability, is, of course, due to the longevity of the individual ants, since worker ants are known to live from four to seven and queens from thirteen to fifteen years. In all these respects the other social insects are decidedly inferior. Not only are the colonies of the wasps and bumblebees of rather rare occurrence, but they are merely annual growths. The honeybees, too, are very short-lived, the workers living only a few weeks or months, the queens but a few years. The termites, though perhaps longer-lived than the bees and wasps, are practically confined to very definite localities in the tropics. Only a few of the species have been able to extend their range into temperate regions.

Not only do the ants far outnumber in species all other social insects, but they have either never acquired, or have completely abandoned, certain habits which must seriously handicap the termites, social wasps
and bees in their struggle for existence. The ants neither restrict their
diet, like the termites, to comparatively innutritious substances such as
cellulose, nor like the bees to a very few substances like the honey and
pollen of the evanescent flowers, nor do they build elaborate combs of
expensive materials, such as wax. Even paper as a building material
has been very generally outgrown and abandoned by the ants. Waxen
and paper cells are not easily altered or repaired, and insects that are
wedded to this kind of architecture, not only have to expend much time
and energy in collecting and working up their building materials, but
they are unable to move themselves or their brood to other localities
when the nest is disturbed, when the moisture or temperature become
unfavorable or the food supply fails. The custom of depending on a
single fertilized queen as the only reproductive center or organ of the
colony has also been outgrown by many ants. At least the more domi-
nant and successful species have learned to cherish a number of these
fertile individuals in the colony. Finally, the manifold and plastic
relationships of ants to plants and other animals are in marked contrast
with the circumscribed and highly specialized ethological relationships
of the social bees and wasps. The termites undoubtedly resemble the
ants most closely in plasticity, but the careful studies of Grassi and
Sandias, Sjöstedt, Froggatt, Silvestri, Heath and others, have shown
that these insects, too, are highly specialized, or one-sided in their de-
velopment. This is best seen in their extreme sensitiveness to light, for
this practically confines them to a subterranean existence and excludes
them from many of the influences afforded by a more varied and illu-
minated environment.

There can be little doubt that the ants have become dominant through
their exquisitely terrestrial habits, a fact which Espinas (1877) was, I
believe, one of the first to notice. He says: "Ants owe their supe-
riority to their terrestrial life. This assertion may seem paradoxical,
but consider the exceptional advantages afforded by a terrestrial
medium to the development of their intellectual faculties, compared
with an aerial medium! In the air there are the long flights without
obstacles, the vertiginous journeys far from real bodies, the instability,
the wandering about, the endless forgetfulness of things and oneself.
On the earth, on the contrary, there is not a movement that is not a
contact and does not yield precise information, not a journey that fails
to leave some reminiscence; and as these journeys are determinate, it is
inevitable that a portion of the ground incessantly traversed should be
registered, together with its resources and its dangers, in the animal's
imagination. Thus there results a closer and much more direct com-
munication with the external world. To employ matter, moreover, is
easier for a terrestrial than an aerial animal. When it is necessary to build, the latter must, like the bee, either secrete the substance of its nest or seek it at a distance, as does the bee when she collects propolis, or the wasp when she gathers material for her paper. The terrestrial animal has its building materials close at hand, and its architecture may be as varied as these materials. Ants, therefore, probably owe their social and industrial superiority to their habitat."

The dominance of ants is clearly indicated by the small number of their enemies. They are preyed upon by comparatively few mammals, birds, reptiles, parasitic insects and other ants.¹ And however much their philoprogenitive instincts may be exploited by their various guests and mess-mates, the adult ants enjoy, in temperate regions at least, a singular immunity. A further indication of dominance is seen in the peculiar and widely distributed defensive modifications of the integument of those animals which are most frequently exposed to the attack of ant colonies. The scales of reptiles, the feathers of birds and the hairs of mammals and caterpillars suggest themselves as such defensive adaptations. At any rate it would be difficult to conceive of structures better suited to the protection of arboreal and terrestrial animals against these ubiquitous insects.

Some very striking resemblances between human and ant societies are implied in the fact already mentioned, that animal communities, in order to deserve the name of societies, must have certain fundamental traits in common. Indeed, the resemblances between men and ants are so very conspicuous that they were noted even by aboriginal thinkers. Folk-lore and primitive poetry and philosophy show the ants as an abiding source of similes expressing the fervid activity and coöperation of men. Although these similes have become trite from repetition, the scientific student can hardly free himself from the many anthropomorphisms which they suggest. He is forced to admit that the social and psychical ascendance of the ants among invertebrates and of the mammals among vertebrates, constitutes a very striking example of convergent development. And the paleontologist may be inclined to admit that this convergence has a deeper significance, that it may have been due, in fact, since ants and mammals seem to make their appearance simultaneously in Mesozoic times, to some peculiar transitory conditions that favored the birth of forms destined to dominance through extraordinary psychical endowment. What these conditions were we have but the slenderest hope of ever knowing. Perhaps they may be conceived as having favored psychical mutations, which are

¹ As Forel says: "The ants' most dangerous enemies are other ants, just as man's most dangerous enemies are other men."
more remarkable, but also more obscure than the physical mutations now engrossing the attention of biologists.

Be this as it may, there is certainly a striking parallelism between the development of human and ant societies. Some anthropologists, like Topinard, distinguish in the development of human societies six different types or stages, designated as the hunting, pastoral, agricultural, commercial, industrial and intellectual. The ants show stages corresponding to the first three of these, as Lubbock has remarked (1894): "Whether there are differences in advancement within the limits of the same species or not, there are certainly considerable differences between the different species, and one may almost fancy that we can trace stages corresponding to the principal steps in the history of human development. I do not now refer to slave-making ants, which represent an abnormal, or perhaps only a temporary state of things, for slavery seems to tend in ants as in men to the degradation of those by whom it is adopted, and it is not impossible that the slave-making species will eventually find themselves unable to compete with those which are more self-dependent, and have reached a higher plane of civilization. But putting these slave-making ants on one side, we find in the different species of ants different conditions of life, curiously answering to the earlier stages of human progress. For instance, some species, such as Formica fusca, live principally on the produce of the chase; for though they feed partially on the honey-dew of aphids, they have not domesticated these insects. These ants probably retain the habits once common to all ants. They resemble the lower races of men, who subsist mainly by hunting. Like them they frequent woods and wilds, live in comparatively small communities, as the instincts of collective action are but little developed among them. They hunt singly, and their battles are single combats, like those of Homeric heroes. Such species as Lasius flavus represent a distinctly higher type of social life; they show more skill in architecture, may literally be said to have domesticated certain species of aphids, and may be compared to the pastoral stage of human progress—to the races which live on the products of their flocks and herds. Their communities are more numerous; they act much more in concert; their battles are not mere single combats, but they know how to act in combination. I am disposed to hazard the conjecture that they will gradually exterminate the mere hunting species, just as savages disappear before more advanced races. Lastly, the agricultural nations may be compared with the harvesting ants."

"Science and Faith, or Man as an Animal, and Man as a Member of Society." Translated by T. J. McCormack. Chicago, Open Court Publishing Co., 1899, p. 192 et seq.
Although Lubbock has not been altogether fortunate in the selection of species to illustrate his views, I believe we may adopt his conclusion that among ants "there seem to be three principal types, offering a curious analogy to the three great phases—the hunting, pastoral and agricultural stages—in the history of human development." It is obvious that a further development towards the three remaining stages in human progress—the commercial, industrial and intellectual—is not even foreshadowed in the ants. Nor would this be possible, or indeed conceivable, without conceptual thought and an appreciation of values to which the ants have never attained.

Granting the resemblances above mentioned between ant and human societies, there are nevertheless three far-reaching differences between insect and human organization and development to be constantly borne in mind:

1. Ant societies are societies of females. The males really take no part in the colonial activities, and, in most species, are present in the nest only for the brief period requisite to insure the impregnation of the young queens. The males take no part in building, provisioning or guarding the nest or in feeding the workers or the brood. They are in every sense the sexus sequior. Hence the ants resemble certain mythical human societies like the Amazons, but unlike these, all their activities center in the multiplication and care of the coming generations.

2. In human society, apart from the functions depending on sexual dimorphism, and barring individual differences and deficiencies which can be partially or wholly suppressed, equalized or augmented by an elaborate system of education, all individuals have the same natural endowment. Each normal individual retains its various physiological and psychological needs and powers intact, not necessarily sacrificing any of them for the good of the community. In ants, however, the female individuals, of which the society properly consists, are not all alike but often very different, both in their structure (polymorphism) and in their activities (physiological division of labor). Each member is visibly predestined to certain social activities to the exclusion of others, not as in man through the education of some endowment common to all the members of the society, but through the exigencies of structure, fixed at the time of hatching, i.e., the moment the individual enters on its life as an active member of the community.

3. Owing to this pre-established structure and the specialized functions which it implies, ants are able to live in a condition of anarchistic socialism, each individual instinctively fulfilling the demands of social life without "guide, overseer or ruler," as Solomon correctly observed,
but not without the imitation and suggestion involved in an appreciation of the activities of its fellows.

An ant society, therefore, may be regarded as little more than an expanded family, the members of which coöperate for the purpose of still further expanding the family and detaching portions of itself to found other families of the same kind. There is thus a striking analogy, which has not escaped the philosophical biologist, between the ant colony and the cell colony which constitutes the body of a Metazoan animal; and many of the laws that control the cellular origin, development, growth, reproduction and decay of the individual Metazoan, are seen to hold good also of the ant society regarded as an individual of a higher order. As in the case of the individual animal, no further purpose of the colony can be detected than that of maintaining itself in the face of a constantly changing environment till it is able to reproduce other colonies of a like constitution. The queen mother of the ant colony displays the generalized potentialities of all the individuals, just as the Metazoan egg contains in potentia all the other cells of the body. And, continuing the analogy, we may say that since the different castes of the ant colony are morphologically specialized for the performance of different functions, they are truly comparable with the differentiated tissues of the Metazoan body.

Two further matters call for consideration in connection with the dominant rôle of ants, namely, their importance in the economy of nature and their value as objects of biological study. The consideration of their economic importance resolves itself into an appreciation of their beneficial, noxious or indifferent qualities as competitors with man in his struggles to control the forces of nature. As objects of biological study their importance evidently depends on the extent to which a study of their activities may assist us in analyzing and solving the ever-present problems of life and mind.

The activities of ants may interfere with those of man in three different directions—first, through their feeding habits; second, through their habit of appropriating certain portions of the earth as nesting sites, and third, through their aggressive, i.e., stinging and biting, habits. The first of these activities is far and away the most important. In respect to all of them, however, ants of different species have very different economic importance, some being highly beneficial, others as highly injurious to man, while a great number, owing to the small size and scarcity of their colonies, may be regarded, from an economic standpoint, as indifferent or negligible organisms. On this account, some myrmecologists regard ants in general as more noxious than beneficial, whereas others maintain the opposite view. I believe that
a consideration of all the facts forces us to admit, with Forel, that as a group ants are eminently beneficial and that for this reason many species deserve our protection. Some of our species, however, are certainly noxious, and these offer strong resistance to all measures for their extermination, owing to the tenacity with which they cling to their nesting sites, their enormous fertility and the restriction of the reproductive functions to one or a few queens that are able to resist destruction by living in the inaccessible genitalia of their nests.

The greatest usefulness of ants, which lies in their power to hasten the decomposition of organic substances, is easily overlooked or belittled, like all the great forces which act very gradually but incessantly. Of the millions of insects annually born into the world, many are undoubtedly consumed by insectivorous vertebrates, but a vast number survive till they have provided for the next generation and then fall exhausted to the earth. These, together with many that have just left their pupal envelopes, or for other reasons are unable to escape, are the natural food of most ants. A vast number of wingless and larval insects, spiders, etc., thus fall a prey to these omnipresent and vigilant free-booters. Let anyone who doubts these statements fix his attention for an hour on some populous formicary during a warm summer day and he will be astonished at the number of dead and disabled insects carried in by the foraging workers. Forel observed that a large colony of ants brought in 28 dead insects per minute and estimated that they would bring in 100,000 daily during the hours of their greatest activity. While this is certainly a high estimate and based on more than 28 per minute, one half or one third of the number, which is well within the bounds of probability, is certainly enormous. In the tropics this daily consumption of insects must be vastly greater than in temperate regions, and while the ants do not, of course, distinguish between the beneficial and harmful insects that they kill, they probably dispose of more of the latter. Eminent economic entomologists like Taschenberg and Ratzeburg, who have studied the ants in the German forest preserves, are of the opinion that they are highly beneficial. A German law, passed in 1880, punishes with a fine of 100 marks or a month's imprisonment any person who collects the cocoons of the fallow ant, Formica rufa, or wantonly disturbs its nests in the forest preserves.

The driver ants (Doryl ii) in the tropics of the Old World and the allied legionary ants (Ecitonii) in the corresponding regions of America, do not confine themselves to collecting dead or disabled insects. They move in long files over or immediately beneath the surface of the

*In Appendix D I have given a brief outline of the most approved methods of destroying noxious ants.
ground and capture myriads of living insects and their larvæ. So efficient are they in exterminating all kinds of vermin, including rats and mice, that they are welcomed into the houses, even if their owners are obliged to vacate for the time being. In some countries, the ants are regarded as useful allies in destroying the insect pests of plantations. According to Magowan, quoted by McCook (1882): "In many parts of the province of Canton, where, says a Chinese writer, cereals cannot be profitably cultivated, the land is devoted to the cultivation of orange-trees, which being subject to devastation from worms, require to be protected in a peculiar manner, that is, by importing ants from the neighboring hills for the destruction of the dreaded parasite. The orangeries themselves supply ants which prey upon the enemy of the orange, but not in sufficient numbers; and resort is had to hill people, who, throughout the summer and winter, find the nests suspended from branches of bamboo and various trees. There are two varieties of ants, red and yellow, whose nests resemble cotton bags. The orange-ant feeders are provided with pig or goat bladders, which are baited inside with lard. The orifices they apply to the entrance of the nests, when the ants enter the bag and become a marketable commodity at the orangeries. Orange-trees are colonized by depositing the ants on their upper branches, and to enable them to pass from tree to tree, all the trees of an orchard are connected by a bamboo rod."

Many years ago McCook suggested that foreign ants might be advantageously introduced into our country for similar purposes. This suggestion was apparently followed by the Department of Agriculture when it recently introduced a Guatemalan ant, the "kelep" (Ectatomma tuberculatum) into Texas for the purpose of destroying the very injurious cotton-boll weevil. This experiment resulted in failure owing, as I have shown (1904a, 1904b), to the selection of an inappropriate species. Notwithstanding this failure, McCook's suggestion still merits careful consideration on the part of economic entomologists.

The activities of ants in excavating their nests have a very useful aspect. Most of the species, especially in temperate latitudes, nest in the ground, and many of them in so doing are obliged to comminate and bring to the surface, often from a depth of several feet, considerable quantities of subsoil. This is spread over the surface either by the elements or by the ants themselves and exposed to the sun and atmosphere. The burrows, moreover, quickly conduct air and moisture into the deeper recesses of the soil. Thus the ants act on the soil like the earthworms, and this action is by no means inconsiderable, although as yet no one has studied it in detail. The common garden ant (Lasius
niger), whose little craters are often extremely abundant over great stretches of country in the northern hemisphere, and the large species of *Atta* in tropical America, may be cited as conspicuous examples of the ants that are constantly engaged in renewing the soil.

There are a number of more trivial but interesting ways in which ants prove themselves useful to man. Young naturalists have often employed them for skeletonizing small vertebrates and cleaning birds' eggs by placing these objects near or in their nests. In Europe the cocoons of the fallow ant have long been carefully collected for bird-food. Many years ago the formic acid expressed and distilled from the workers of the same species held a prominent place in the pharmacopœia. In the Western States and in Mexico garments are sometimes freed from vermin by placing them on the large hills of *Formica* and *Pogonomyrmex*. Mr. Hatcher found the occident ant of the plains (*Pogonomyrmex occidentalis*) very useful to the collector in bringing to the surface the teeth of small fossil mammals. A few species, like the honey-ants of the Southwest (*Myrmecocystus melliger*) are used by the Indians for food and medicinal purposes. The huge heads of the soldiers of the South American leaf-cutting ants (*Atta cephalotes*) have been employed by the native surgeons in closing wounds. After the two edges of the wound have been brought together and have been grasped by the mandibles, the ant's head is severed from its body and left as a ligature.

Leaving out of consideration many of our ants as economically indifferent, there nevertheless remains a considerable number of species decidedly injurious to man and to the products of his toil. Most prominent among these are the house-ants, almost without exception small species that conceal their teeming formicaries in the woodwork and masonry of ships and dwellings and forage on the saccharine and oleaginous substances in kitchens, pantries and storerooms. These species are nearly all of tropical origin, and some of them, like Pharaoh's ant (*Monomorium pharaonis*), have been carried by commerce to all the inhabited regions of the globe. Other species, like *Monomorium destructor*, *Pheidole megacephala*, *Tetramorium guineense*, *T. similium*, *Prenolepis longicornis*, *Iridomyrmex humilis* and *Plagiolepis longipes*, though abundant about dwellings in the tropics, are unable to survive in temperate regions except in hot-houses. Only two of our native species, the tiny thief-ant (*Solenopsis molesta*) and the carpenter ant (*Camponotus pennsylvanicus*), have become house ants since the settlement of North America. In its native haunts the latter species nests in decayed wood. It preserves this habit as a house ant and often does considerable damage to beams and rafters.
Other species of ants are well-known garden pests. In the United States *Lasius americanus*, *Prenolepis imparis* and *Formica subsericea* sometimes disfigure the lawns and flower-beds with their excavations and untidy castings, while in tropical America the larger leaf-cutting ants of the genus *Atta* are a serious menace to horticulture. These latter ants defoliate garden shrubs and fruit trees in an incredibly short time. But the greatest harm is undoubtedly done both in tropical and temperate regions by a host of species that have a pronounced fondness for pasturing and guarding plant-lice (*Aphides*), mealy bugs (*Coccidae*) and tree-hoppers (*Membracidae*) on roots, stems or foliage. All these insects suck the juices of plants and their protection must therefore be regarded as pernicious. The honey-dew which they excrete is eagerly sought by all our species of *Camponotus*, *Formica*, *Lasius*, *Prenolepis*, *Crematogaster*, *Myrmica* and *Dolichoderus*, but only the most abundant species of these genera are to be regarded as positively harmful. Such a species is the commonest of all our ants, *Lasius niger*, which is known to hoard the eggs of the corn-root louse (*Aphis maidiradicis*) in its nests over winter and to distribute the just-hatched young in the spring along the roots of the maize. The noxious character of some aphidicolous species is, however, slightly mitigated by the fact that in the absence of ants the plant lice discharge their sweet excretions on the leaves where, especially during protracted dry weather, it forms a varnish that interferes with the respiration of the plant and affords a favorable substratum for the growth of destructive leaf-fungi.

Ants are often feared on account of their stinging and biting habits, but these, at least in the United States, have been greatly exaggerated. In reality only a few of our species like the fire-ant (*Solenopsis geminata*) and the larger harvesting ants (*Pogonomyrmex barbatis* and *P. occidentalis*) are sufficiently abundant in the neighborhood of human dwellings to be at all formidable. The fire-ant, which occurs only in the tropics and in our Southern States, is very fond of nesting in dooryards and along paths and roads. It is extremely pugnacious, and, as its name indicates, can sting severely. The sting of the larger harvesting ants is even more formidable, but these species, confined to the great plains and the deserts of the Southwest, do not thrive in the neighborhood of human settlements. In general it may be said that ants do not go out of their way to sting and bite, but resort to these offensive measures only when their nests are violently disturbed.

In concluding this chapter attention may be called to the great value of ants as objects of study. No other group of animals presents such a maze of fascinating problems to the biologist, psychologist and
sociologist. It will suffice to mention the unrivalled material which they present for the study of variation and geographical distribution, both from the taxonomic and experimental standpoints, the extraordinary phenomena of polymorphism, parthenogenesis and sex-determination; the wonderful cases of parasitism and symbiosis, and last, but not least, the great importance of these insects in the problems of instinct and intelligence. The researches of Janet and others have shown what a wonderful field of anatomical study they present, and the embryonic and post-embryonic development have scarcely been studied. Add to all this the great facility with which they may be obtained in all localities and, owing to their remarkable adaptability, the ease with which they can be kept for long periods in artificial nests, and it becomes a matter of surprise that they have attracted so few students. To what extent this neglect on the part of entomologists and other biologists may be due to the absence in ants of a powerful appeal to the æsthetic sense, so readily aroused by birds, beetles and butterflies, would be an interesting matter for discussion. If this is, indeed, responsible for the very general neglect of the ants, their lack of æsthetic qualities may perhaps be regarded as a further advantage, since it must tend to discourage those who approach the subject merely as collectors of pretty things, while it does not necessarily repel the more serious and philosophical student.
CHAPTER II
THE EXTERNAL STRUCTURE OF ANTS

"Wherefore we ought not childishly to neglect the study even of the most despised animals, for in all natural objects there lies something marvellous. And as it is related of Heraclitus that certain strangers who came to visit him, when they found him warming himself at the kitchen fire, stopped short—he bade them enter without fear, for there also were the gods: so we ought to enter without false shame on the examination of all living beings, for in all of them resides something of nature and beauty."—Aristotle, "De Partibus Animalium," i, 5.

The ants form a natural family (Formicidae), or, according to some authorities, a superfamily (Formicina or Formicoidea), comprising five subfamilies (Ponerinae, Dorylineae, Myrmicinae, Dolichoderinae and Camponotinae), embracing about 5,000 described species, subspecies and varieties, and are placed at the head of the order Hymenoptera, a vast assemblage of insects including also the bees, wasps, ichneumon flies, velvet-ants, saw-flies and many smaller groups. From all the other members of the order the ants may be readily distinguished by a series of characters, perhaps the most striking of which is the differentiation of the abdomen into two strongly marked regions, a slender one- or two-jointed, highly mobile pedicel, and a larger, more compact terminal portion, the gaster. Another distinguishing character is furnished by the antennae which are elbowed and have the first joint greatly elongated in the female. The species are all social, and with the exception of a few parasitic forms, are always at least trimorphic, i.e., the female is not only sharply differentiated from the male, but itself appears under two very distinct phases, a fertile, queen, or female phase proper, and a usually sterile worker phase. The former is nearly always winged like the male, but loses the wings after fecundation, the latter, except in rare abnormalities, never bears these organs. In a few species the females, and in many the workers may again show differentiation into two sub-phases (Fig. 1). Owing to this remarkable morphological instability or tendency of the female to assume different
aspects, the Formicidae have also been called Heterogyna. All of the species have retained in their development the four salient stages known as the egg, larval, pupal and imaginal instars, which are peculiar to all holometabolic insects. These stages and their relations to the polymorphism of ants will be considered in subsequent chapters. In this and the two following chapters I shall endeavor to give a rapid survey of the external and internal anatomy, as these have become known to us through the careful researches of a number of investigators, notably Adlerz, Berlese, Dewitz, Emery, Forel, Janet, Lubbock, Meinert and Nassonow.

The Segmentation of the Body.—There can be little doubt that the ants are phylogenetically related, through the lower families of Hymenoptera with the oldest and most primitive of all the existing insects, the Blattoidea, or cock-roaches. But while the Blattoid body, as seen, for example, in the common cock-roaches, is generalized, that of the ants in its sharp demarcation of the head, thorax and abdomen is highly specialized. These accentuated subdivisions enable anyone to recognize an ant at a glance. In this respect the ants are the most typical of insects, and may be the ones to which the terms ἄρθρον and insectum were originally applied. While these and many other characters make it seem a far call from the ant to its remote Blattoid ancestors, it must be borne in mind that the individual ant still passes
in its embryonic development through a stage in which the body consists of twenty like, or homonomous segments. Six of these belong morphologically to the head, three to the thorax and the remaining eleven to the abdomen. The first and third segments bear no appendages, the second bears the antennae, the three thoracic segments bear the three pairs of legs, and the second and third of these segments in the males and females develop, at a much later stage, the two pairs of wings. The first abdominal, which has long been known as the mediary segment, becomes fused with the hind portion of the third thoracic segment during pupal development, as Janet and Emery have demonstrated, and becomes the epinotum of the latter author. The pedicel consists of the second abdominal segment, or of this and the third segment, while the remaining seven or eight form the gaster.

The Integument.—The chitinous investment, or integument varies greatly in thickness in the different species of ants, being very hard and brittle in many of the more primitive groups (Ponerinæ, Myrmicinæ, Dolichoderus, Polyrhachis) and thinner and more pliable in the more recently developed forms (most Dolichoderinæ and Camponotinæ). The microscopic character of the integument is of considerable importance to the taxonomist, especially in the more delicate discrimination of geographical subspecies and varieties and may be considered under the captions of sculpture, pilosity, pubescence and color. These all present a bewildering variety of modifications. In some ants the surface of the body is very glabrous and shining, in others opaque, punctate, foveolate, rugulose, rugose, tuberculate, striate or reticulate, and these sculptural characters may be combined in the most diverse patterns. The term pilosity applies to the longer, reclinate, erect or suberect hairs, the term pubescence to the minute, appressed tomentum, which may cover the whole or portions of the body and appendages. Both the hairs and pubescence vary greatly in length and density or abundance, and the former may be tapering and pointed, straight, flexuous, or hooked, obtuse or clavate, or dilated and flattened to form scales.

No doubt all of these differentiations in sculpture, pilosity and pubescence are correlated with the delicate tactile sense of the ants. Certainly one who has examined many species of ants will have no difficulty in understanding why these blind or nearly blind insects seem to display such keen delight in palpating with their antennæ and burnishing with their tongues the exquisitely chased or chiselled armor of their fellows. In some ants the hairs may be specialized for particular functions on certain portions of the body. I find this to be the case, for example, in several genera of desert ants (Fig. 2), which have the
hairs on the lower surface of the head greatly elongated and directed forward (Pogonomyrmex, Octomyrmex, Cratemyrmex, Messor, Gonioomna, Oxyopomyrmex, Holocomyrmex), or arranged in a tuft on the lower lip (Myrmecocystus, Melophorus). These hairs, which I have called gular and mental ammochætæ (1907), are employed by the ants in removing the dust and sand from the strigils or combs on the forelegs (vide infra, p. 24). In deserts these insects easily become covered with the dry soil or sand and have to remove it from their bodies and limbs by means of the strigils. These organs are then thrust along the ammochætæ in much the same way as we clean a comb by means of threads. The clypeus and mandibles of many ants are also fringed with unusually long hairs (clypeal and mandibular ammochætæ) which are employed in removing the dust, etc., from the surfaces of the forelegs.

The colors of ants are, as a rule, testaceous, yellow, brown, red, or black, but a few genera (Rhytidoponera, Calomyrmex, Macromischa, Iridomyrmex) and a few North American species of Pheidole (metallescens and splendidula) have metallic colors. The non-metallic tints are often highly variable, even within the limits of single species. Color patterns are rarely developed and are usually found only on the upper surface of the gaster, a region which often differs in color from the head and thorax. The appendages, as in other insects, are apt to be paler than the trunk. The coloration of the hairs and pubescence, like that of the surface, may be extremely variable in the same species. To the integument belong also a number of glands, but these will be described in connection with the glands of the internal organs.

The Head.—After this very general review of the segmentation and integument we may take up the different parts of the body in somewhat greater detail. The head varies enormously in shape. It may be circular, elliptical, rectangular or triangular, and all its parts may show an extraordinary diversity of adaptive characters (Fig. 3). It consists of the cranium proper, which is very much constricted behind at its
articulation with the thorax, the eyes, the clypeus, or epistoma, a plate of very variable outline and immovably articulated with and set into the anterior portion of the cranium, the antennæ, and the mouth-parts,
comprising an unpaired upper lip, or labrum, the mandibles, maxillœ and labium, or lower lip. In the last the originally separate and paired embryonic appendages are fused in the median line so that they form a continuous floor for the mouth or buccal cavity. In the cranium the following regions may be distinguished: the front, a region bounded anteriorly by the posterior edge of the clypeus and laterally by a pair of ridges, the frontal carinœ or lamínœ, just mesial to the insertions of the antennœ. A small, usually triangular, median region, the frontal area, can be easily seen in the middle line just back of the clypeus, and often there is an impressed line, the frontal groove, extending back from this area over the middle of the front. The frontal region passes without definite boundary into the vertex and temples, the former extending posteriorly, the latter lying above and behind the eyes. The short region between the vertex and the narrow opening, or foramen through which the alimentary tract and nervous system pass into the thorax, may be called the occiput. The cheeks, or genœ, comprise the portions of the cranium anterior to the eyes and lateral to the frontal carinœ. The ventral portion of the head, bounded in front by the labium, on the sides by the cheeks and extending to the occipital foramen, is the throat, or gula. It is well-developed in the ants and is usually divided into two equal halves by a longitudinal suture.

The mandibles, being the parts with which the ant comes into most effective relations with its environment, present, like the beaks of birds and the teeth of mammals, a bewildering variety of structure (Fig. 3).
They are used for excavating soil or wood, cutting up the food, fighting, carrying the prey, their young or one another, and in some species, even in leaping by closing them rapidly against hard bodies. Ants are remarkable in being able to open and close their mandibles independently of the maxillae and labium. These organs, which lie underneath the small and vestigial labrum and close the mouth completely except when the insect is feeding, have a complicated and interesting structure. The maxillæ (Fig. 5, B, D) are paired and each consists of the following pieces, or sclerites: the hinge (cardo), the stem (stipes), the maxillary palp, which may be from 1–6-jointed, an inner blade (lacinia) and an outer blade, the galea. The galea bears a row of gustatory papillae and a row of bristles which are used in cleaning the legs and antennæ. The lacinia is membranous and toothless and shows that the ant feeds on liquid substances only. This is also proved by the structure of the labium (Fig. 5, C), which consists of the following sclerites: the hind chin (submentum), the chin (mentum) and the tongue (glossa), all unpaired, and the labial palpi, consisting of from one to four joints, the paraglossae and hypopharynx, which are paired. The tongue, with which the ant rasps off or laps up its liquid or semi-liquid food, and cleans itself and its fellows, is a protrusible, elliptical pad, covered with fine transverse ridges. At its base lies the opening of the salivary duct. The paraglossae are small sclerites beset with rows of bristles. The hypopharynx, which is less developed than in some of the other
Hymenoptera, such as the wasps, covers the mentum and paraglossae. Its upper portion is somewhat lobed and bears two rows of backwardly directed bristles, which form a V and seem to be used for holding the food fast in the mouth. The upper lip, or labrum, forms the roof of the mouth. It is poorly developed and consists of a bilobed plate hidden beneath the anterior border of the clypeus (Fig. 4, Bp).

The antennæ are far and away the most important sense organs of the ant. They are inserted in sockets on each side of the frontal carinae, and consist of a series of joints of variable number and length. The lowest number, four, is found in the genus Epitritus (Fig. 75); the greatest, thirteen, in the males of many of our common ants. Usually the males have one more joint than the females and workers. The first joint, known as the scape, is always considerably elongated, except in the males of some species. The remainder of the antenna, the funiculus, consists of very much shorter joints, the articulations between which are less movable than that between the scape and funiculus. This latter articulation is of such a nature that the funiculus can be folded up against the scape producing the peculiar Formicid elbow in the antenna, and both this and the socket articulation at the insertion of the scape permit extraordinary freedom in the movements of the appendage. The funiculus may be of nearly uniform diameter throughout, with very similar joints, or from one to four of the terminal joints may be thickened and elongated and thus constitute a club.

Ants have two kinds of eyes: the compound, lateral eyes, two in number and placed on the sides of the head (Fig. 4, l), and the simple, median eyes, ocelli, or stemmata, of which there are three on the vertex (Fig. 4, m, n). Both kinds are best developed in the males, less in the females and least in the workers, which often lack the stemmata altogether. In addition to these great differences, which are constant in the three phases of nearly all species, there are considerable differences in the development of the eyes in the different genera. A more detailed account of these organs and the antennal sense organs is given in Chapter IV.

The Thorax.—Owing to the fusion of the first abdominal segment of the embryo and larva with the hindmost portion of the thorax during pupation, the thorax of the adult ant may be said to consist of four segments, a pro-, meso- and meta-thoracic and a mediary segment, or epinotum. In our description we may follow Emery (1900d) who has carefully studied the external morphology and reviewed the nomenclature of these four segments in the male, female and worker. The primitive condition of the thoracic region may be readily traced through the ergatoid females and workers of these forms to the much reduced
and specialized condition in the workers of more highly developed ants like the Camponotinae.

Emery starts with a primitive form like the male *Streblognathus ethiopicus* (Fig. 6). In this insect the various elements or sclerites of which the thorax is composed are clearly delimited by sutures. The prothorax is very small and consists dorsally and laterally almost entirely of the unpaired pronotum, with a slender ventral element, the prosternum, to which the coxa of the fore-leg is articulated. Owing to the development of the wings, the meso- and metathorax are much larger. The former is especially well-developed, in correlation with the larger size of the fore wings, and comprises dorsally a large unpaired, convex plate, the mesonotum; ventrally on each side, and articulated below with the coxa of the middle leg, is the mesosternum, which also forms much of the pleural wall of the thorax. The space on each side between the mesonotum and the mesosternum is occupied by a pair of elements, one of which, the mesepisternum, is ventral; the other, the mesepimeron, dorsal. The fore-wing is articulated just above the mesepimeron and below a small sclerite, which is behind the mesonotum and may be called the mesoparapteron, or præscutellum. The insertion of the fore-wing is covered by a small chitinous scale, the tegula. Viewed from above the large mesonotum in some male ants presents a Y-shaped groove, known as the Mayrian furrow (Fig. 7, *sM*). Each side of the mesonotum is marked off for some distance from the median portion of the segment by a distinct suture, which may be called the parapsidal suture. The area thus cut off on each side is the parapsis. The sides and the ventral portions of the metathoracic segment are similar to those of the mesothorax, but smaller. It is possible to distinguish a metasternum, to which the coxa of the hind-leg is articulated, a metepisternum and a metepimeron. Dorsally, however, the metano-
tum, which, of course, is serially homologous with the mesonotum, is very narrow antero-posteriorly and separated from the mesonotum by a large, unpaired, semi-circular element, the scutellum. Between the scutellum and metanotum, a small piece, the metaparapteron, or post-scutellum, is intercalated on each side. The hind-wing is inserted between this metaparapteron and the metepimeron. The epinotum, which, as we have seen, is morphologically the first abdominal segment, is large and convex and in many ants furnished with a pair of stout spines or teeth. It is closely applied to the metathorax from the posterior edge of the mesonotum above to the ventral edge of the metathorax below.

The thorax has on each side three openings, or stigmata, to the respiratory tubes, or tracheæ. The first, belonging morphologically to the mesothorax, lies beneath a small flap-like expansion of the pronotum where it abuts on the mesepimeron. The second or metathoracic stigmata lies beneath the insertion of the hind-wing and near the posterior end of the mesepimeron. The third stigma, belonging to the first abdominal segment, is distinctly seen on the side of the epinotum.

In the female ant (Fig. 8, A) the thorax is constructed on the same plan as that of the male, but is more robust and lacks the Mayrian furrow, which is also absent in the males of many genera. The males and females of most species, however, exhibit a greater simplification of the pleural region of the thorax, owing to the fusion of the epimera and episterna with each other and often also with the sterna in the meso- and metathorax, and a very intimate fusion of the epinotum with the latter segment.

Turning to the workers, which are wingless, there is noticeable a great reduction in the size of the meso- and metathorax plus the epinotum, so that the three divisions of the thorax are more nearly of uniform size (Fig. 8, C, Fig. 9, a). In certain species, and especially in the ergatoid females (Fig. 8, B) and soldiers of a few genera, the various dorsal elements, such as the paraptera, scutellum and meta-
notum may still be recognized as very small sclerites, but in the workers
of the highest and most specialized ants of the genera *Formica* and
*Camponotus* the thorax appears to consist of three similar segments,

![Diagram of ant thorax](image)

*Fig. 8. Thorax of female, ergatoid and worker Ponerine ants in profile. (Emery.)
pyriformis*, worker; msn, mesonotum; the remaining letters the same as in Figs. 6 and 7.*

owing to the disappearance of the scutellum, paraptera and metanotum
as separate sclerites and to the fusion of the various elements in the
pleural region of each segment.

The legs of the ant show much less variation in structure than the

![Diagram of ant legs](image)

*Fig. 9. Median sagittal sections to show difference of development of thoracic
segments in the worker and female *Myrmica rubra*. (Janet.) A, Worker; B, female;
a, posterior portion of head; b, prothorax; c, mesothorax; d, metathorax; e, epino-
tum (first abdominal segment); f, petiole (second abdominal segment).*
thorax and are, therefore, of less taxonomic value. Each of these appendages consists of the same fixed number of joints, the coxa, trochanter, femur, tibia, and five tarsal joints. The first tarsal joint, often called the metatarsus, is much elongated, especially on the middle- and hind-legs, where it functions as a kind of secondary tibia, while the terminal tarsal joint bears a pair of usually simple, but sometimes toothed, or pectinated claws. All of the tibiae may be provided at their distal ends with spurs. These are always large and pectinated on the fore-legs, but may be simple on the middle and hind pairs. The finely and regularly pectinated spur of the fore tibia (Fig. 10, b) is of special interest on account of its beautiful structure and its function as a strigil. It is movable and curved and its concavity is opposite a similar concavity, fringed with bristles, on the base of the metatarsus. The ant draws its antennae and posterior legs between the two opposed, pectinated surfaces and thus wipes off any adhering foreign matter.

The wings have not been used to as great an extent in descriptive works on ants as in those on other families of Hymenoptera, owing to their frequent absence in female specimens and to the permanently apterous condition of the workers, which have hitherto formed the basis of our systematic study. The venation of the fore wings, however, often exhibits important generic or even specific characters and its study, especially in fossil ants, is indispensable. It is sometimes highly variable in detail, even in males and females reared from

Fig. 10. Strigil of Texas harvester (Pogonomymex molefaciens. (Original.) a, Distal end of fore tibia; b, movable, pectinated spur; c, first tarsal (metatarsal) joint.

Fig. 11. Anterior wings of ants. (Original.) A, Ichnomyrmex cockerelli, female; B, Camponotus sansabeanus, female; C, Ection schmitte, male; D, Strumigenys pergandei, female; E, Lasius claviger, female; F, Dolichoderus mariae, female; G, Solenopas molestasia, female; H, Formica maccooki, female; I, Myrmica scabrinoda, female; K, Pachycondyla harpax, male; L, Pogonomymex molefaciens, female; M, Tetramorium caespitum, female; N, Aphanogaster fulva, female; O, Trachymyrmex septentrionalis, female. The following are the veins of the wing: a, costal; b, subcostal; c, externomedian; d, anal; s, aposterostigma; c, and g, cubital; h, discoidal and subdscoidal; f, marginal, or radius; z, transverso-median; m, basal; n, recurrent; o, first section of radius in A, B, C, E and O, transverse cubitus in F, I and N. The following are the cells: u, first discoidal; v, costal; i, median; x, submedian; y, second discoidal; w, first cubital; w', second cubital. (These terms are used in myrmecography. Some authors, like Handlirsch, regard what is here called the "subcostal" as the radius + median, and the "subdscoidal" as a branch of the median.)
the same mother. Several of the different types of venation which have been recognized are represented in the accompanying illustrations (Fig. 11), to which the reader is referred for the names and disposition of the various veins and cells.

The Abdomen.—This region in ants is very highly specialized in all three sexual phases. In some of the most primitive tribes, like the Amblyoponii and Cerapachyis, there is no sharp separation of the segments into a pedicle and gaster; the basal, though somewhat narrower and more accentuated, preserving essentially the same structure as the more distal segments. In most ants, however, there is a well-defined pedicle which may consist of either one or two segments, very movably articulated with each other and with the thorax and gaster. In the subfamilies Dolichoderinae and Camponotinae the pedicle always consists of but a single segment, the petiole, which is morphologically the second abdominal segment. The same condition prevails in most Ponerinae, except that there is a constriction behind the following or third segment, foreshadowing the development of a postpetiole. This segment is clearly separated off in all Myrmicinae, so that in the ants of this subfamily the pedicle consists of two highly specialized, nodiform segments, and the first gastric is the fourth instead of the third abdominal segment, as in the Camponotinae, Dolichoderinae and Ponerinae. In the Dorylinae the genera Eciton and Xenictus have a distinct petiole and postpetiole in the worker, but only a single segment, the petiole, in the male and female. In Dorylus and Cheliomymex the base of the abdomen of the worker is more primitive and more like that of certain Ponerine ants (Amblyopone and Cerapachys).

The base of the abdomen is the seat of an interesting sound-producing, or stidulatory, organ. Landois, in a book called "Thierstimmen," published in 1874, was the first to find this organ in a Ponerine ant ("Ponera quadridentata," probably Ectatomma quadridens). He believed that he had seen a similar structure in the Camponotine Lasius fuliginosus, and a few years later Lubbock (1877) figured what he took to be a stidulatory organ in L. flavus. Sharp (1893) and Janet (1893b, 1894b) have since carefully investigated these organs in several different ants. The former succeeded in finding them only in the Ponerinae and Myrmicinae (excepting the Cryptocerii) and believed them to be absent in the Dorylinae, Dolichoderinae and Camponotinae. The organ (Fig. 12) is best described as a file made of extremely fine, transverse and parallel ridges on a small area in the mid-dorsal, chitinous integument at the very base of the first gastric segment, where it is covered by the overlapping portion of the preceding segment. The edge of this segment (Fig. 12, Bp) is sharp and
turned slightly downward or inward so that it may scrape back and forth over the file (str) when the two segments are moved on each other and thereby produce a sound of very high pitch. The file is, in all probability, merely a local specialization of the fine, polygonal elevations or asperities which cover the adjacent portions of the segment and are so characteristic of the chitinous investment of many parts of the body. Each of these minute elevations is evidently secreted by one of the hypodermal chitinogenous cells. Sharp found great diversity in the structure of the stridulatory organ both among the different species and in the castes of the same species.

![Diagram of Myrmica levinodis](image)

**Fig. 12.** Stridulatory organ of *Myrmica levinodis*. (Janet.) *A*, Surface view of right half of the organ; str, stridulatory surface; l, lateral, reticulate surface; so, sense-organs; m, tendon of muscle; ap, lateral apophysis; r, radiating rugae at base of first gastric segment. *B*, Median sagittal section of organ; str, stridulatory surface at extreme anterior border of first gastric segment; p, edge of postpetiole which scratches the stridulatory file str.

An interesting modification was found in an Australian Myrmicine ant of the genus *Sima*, which has the file divided into two parts, one consisting of coarse, the other of fine, ridges, and Sharp remarks that "a stridulatory performance by this insect might produce very extraordinary effects." Janet, in his studies of *Myrmica rubra*, calls attention to the fact that there are accumulations of chitinous asperities at various widely separated regions of the ant's body, especially on articulations which might, by their movements, produce sounds. But the true stridulatory organs he finds to be situated where they were seen by
LANDOIS and SHARP, i.e., at the base of the first gastric segment, and also on the corresponding part of the postpetiole. These two segments certainly admit of the greatest amplitude and freedom of movement and are, therefore, the most favorable spots for the development of organs like those under discussion. In *Myrmica rubra* there are more than 50 ridges to the postpetiolar file, but in the organ at the base of the gaster there are more than 130 and these are much finer. The ridges, however, are twice as broad in the anterior as they are in the posterior portion of the gastric file. It appears, therefore, that the most highly developed stridulatory surfaces of the Myrmicinae and Ponerinae are not strictly homologous, since in the former subfamily the principal organ is situated on the third abdominal, whereas the only stridulatory file of the latter is on the second abdominal segment. In both cases, however, the main organ is at the base of the first gastric segment. What seem to be incipient stages in the development of the organ from ordinary polygonal asperities of the chitinous integument, are seen in the Dorylinae. Of the first gastric segment in one genus of this subfamily Sharp says: "I have examined workers of several species of *Eciton*, and find that they have no stridulatory organ, the sculpture being uniform all over the dorsum of the neck of the segment." My own observations on the workers of several species of *Eciton*, *Æmictus*, *Dorylus* and *Chelomyrmex* confirm this statement. In all these genera the neck of the postpetiole and that of the first gastric segment are covered with polygonal asperities, but these are much more conspicuous than on other portions of the segments, and in one species (*Eciton opacithorax*) they are transversely lengthened in the mid-dorsal region so that they foreshadow the file ridges of the Ponerinae and Myrmicinae.

Although the number of segments in the gaster is morphologically eight, when the pedicel consists of a single segment, and seven when it consists of two, only four segments are externally visible in the worker and female and five in the male. The remaining segments are very small and telescoped into the larger ones in front of them. Tracheal stigmata are present on the eight basal abdominal segments, i.e., on the epinotum, pedicel and the five or six basal gastric segments.

The terminal segments in the female and worker may bear a sting, which is of considerable interest, because it can be traced back to its primitive homologue, the ovipositor. In many Orthoptera, like the katydids and crickets, this organ consists of three pairs of appendages, which, as I have shown (1893), are the modified embryonic legs of the eighth, ninth and tenth abdominal segments. Owing to a very early embryonic fusion of their corresponding segments the pair belonging to the tenth segment moves up and comes to lie between the ninth pair; so
that the ninth segment appears to bear two pairs of appendages. In the Hymenoptera the ovipositor is still retained with its Orthopteroid function in certain families like the ichneumons and gall-flies, which oviposit in the tissues of insects and plants. In the bees, wasps and ants, however, the organ has lost this primitive function and has become an organ of defence. Its embryological origin in these forms, however, is the same as in the Orthoptera. Dissections of the sting of the pupal and adult ant show that the pairs of appendages become closely applied to one another so that they appear as a single organ. The appendages of the tenth segment actually fuse to form a single, pointed, grooved piece, the gorgoret (Stachelrinne) which encloses the pair of appendages belonging to the eighth segment. These are very slender and pointed and are known as the stylets, or prickles (Stechborsten). The appendages of the ninth segment become somewhat lamelliform and, without fusing with each other, enclose the gorgoret as the sting-sheath (Stachelschiede). In stinging, the pointed gorgoret is thrust into the skin and then the stylets are alternately pushed deeper into the wound beyond the tip of the gorgoret which they do not surpass when the sting is at rest. The duct of the gland that supplies the poison, which produces the burning sensation, enters the base of the gorgoret. The stylets are smooth and not barbed on their sides as they are in the bee; hence the ant is able to withdraw its sting from the wound. While the sting is very large and well-developed in the Ponerinae, Dorylinae and most Myrmicinae, it is vestigial or absent in the other subfamilies.

At the tip of the male gaster there are three pairs of rather complicated appendages forming the genital armature. They are developed on the ninth abdominal segment, i.e., the segment in which the female gives rise to the sting sheath. The sternal plate of this segment, which in the male lies in front of the appendages, is known as the annular lamina (Fig. 19, la). The three pairs of appendages enclose one another, so that we may distinguish an outermost, a median and an innermost pair. The outermost pair has been called the stipes (st). The median pair is sometimes more or less completely divided into two pairs, known as the volsellae (ν) and laciniae respectively; and the whole group of appendages comprising the stipes, volsellae and laciniae are known as the external paramera (Verhöff and Emery). The innermost pair alone is known as the internal paramera. They are closely applied to each other in the median sagittal plane of the body and function as a penis (p). During copulation the stipes, which are large, robust and often covered with hairs, function as claspers. The volsellae and laciniae, which are smaller and less heavily
chitinized and furnished with numerous tactile sense organs, in all probability also have a clasping function. The inner paramera are very delicate. In some ants they have serrated edges which probably serve to hold them in place in the vagina of the female. In addition to the genital valves there is a pair of small, hairy appendages, the penicilli, attached to the tergite, or dorsal plate of the tenth abdominal segment. There can be little doubt that these represent the cerci of Blattoid and other primitive insects and must therefore belong to the anal or eleventh abdominal segment. The presence or absence of the penicilli and the conformation, permanent retraction or protrusion of the different paramera are used in classification as valuable diagnostic characters. Although we may be tempted to homologize the three pairs of male genital appendages with the three pairs of appendages which go to form the sting in the female, it is very doubtful whether more than one of these pairs, the stipites, develop from rudiments of the embryonic walking limbs. If this is true, the stipites correspond with the pair of appendages of the ninth segment in the female, which give rise to the sting sheath, and the volsellæ, laciniaæ and penis are merely differentiations of the median portion of the ninth sternite.
CHAPTER III

THE INTERNAL STRUCTURE OF ANTS

"In his tam parvis, atque tam nullis, quae ratio, quanta vis, quae inextricabilis perfectio!"—Pliny, "Historia Animalium," XI, 2.

The Alimentary Tract.—This extends the entire length of the body from the mouth to the anus as a tube with but a slight tendency to convolution in the gaster. The walls of this tube are curiously modified in different portions of its length, so that we can recognize a number of regions known as the infrabuccal chamber, buccal tube, pharynx, oesophagus, crop, proventriculus, stomach, small intestine and rectum. The shape and extent of these regions are indicated in the accompanying diagram taken from Janet (Fig. 13). Owing to the volume of the brain and cephalic glands, to the narrowness of the thorax and pedicel in the worker, and the great development of the wing muscles and glands in

![Diagram of Myrmica rubra](image)

Fig. 13. Sagittal section of worker *Myrmica rubra*. (Janet.) t, Tongue; lbr, labrum; clp, clypeus; sg, opening of salivary gland; bo, mouth opening; hp, infrabuccal chamber; ph, pharynx; phg, pharyngeal glands; oe, oesophagus; cr, crop; gs, gizzard; st, stomach; lin, large intestine; mp, Malpighian vessels; rc, rectum; reg, rectal gland; an, anus; fgl, frontal ganglion; rec, recurrent nerve; br, brain; mdg, mandibular ganglion; mxg, maxillary ganglion; lg, labial ganglion; soe, suboesophageal ganglion; cho, prothoracic chordotonal organ; thg, thg, thg, pro-meso- and meta-thoracic ganglia; ag-ag, ag, 8-11, first to eleventh abdominal ganglia; sym, sympathetic connective, running along oesophagus to pre stomachal ganglion (stg); st, sting; vg, vagina; ten, tentorium in section.

the thorax of the male and female, the alimentary canal is cramped for space and hence very tenuous, except in the gaster, where its most important parts are situated. The mouth opening, which, as we have
seen, is bounded above by the labrum and clypeus, on the sides by the maxillae, and below by the protrusible tongue, leads into a short, compressed buccal tube, dilated ventrally to form a spheroidal sac, the infrabuccal cavity or chamber (hp). This chamber is of great importance to the ant as a receptacle both for the fine particles of solid and semi-solid food rasped off or licked up by the tongue, and for the foreign matter scraped from the surfaces of the body by this organ and the strigils. Any juices that may be contained in the substance are sucked back through the pharynx into the crop and the useless solid residuum is eventually thrown out as a little body which preserves the form of the chamber in which it was moulded. Such bodies, called by Janet "corpsicles de nettoyage," are often seen scattered about the floors of artificial nests after the ants have been fed on starchy substances or after their bodies have been dusted with plaster of paris (Fig. 14). The short buccal cavity is continued back into the muscular pharynx which narrows still further to form the long oesophagus traversing as a slender tube the head, thorax and pedicel (Fig. 13, oe).

The buccal tube, which, according to Janet, "has a protractor and a retractor muscle, is provided with soft lips that can be applied to the surface of the substances previously rasped off by means of the tongue for the purpose of obtaining any liquid they may contain. Transverse scale-like folds with their points turned outward line the walls of the buccal tube and serve to retain any solid particles not sufficiently minute."

"The pharynx is a flattened cavity the dorsal and ventral walls of which are moved by powerful dilator muscles. Behind it is furnished with two expansions arising laterally and united at their tips by a transverse constrictor muscle. During aspiration the pharynx, through the action of its dilators and a kind of posterior sphincter, opens in front and closes behind. In swallowing there is first produced a steel-yard-like movement of the dorsal wall, whereupon the pharynx is opened behind, while the buccal tube is closed in front. Then, owing to the action of the transverse constrictor, the dorsal approaches the ventral wall from before backward. The two walls thus come in contact with each other and the liquid which was contained in the pharynx is pushed into the oesophagus." Immediately behind the pharynx two groups of finger-shaped post-pharyngeal glands open by a pair of orifices into the alimentary tract (Fig. 13, phg).
The thin chitinous lining of the oesophagus is covered with delicate hairs which point backwards. At the base of the gaster the oesophagus begins to dilate to form the ingluvies, or crop (Fig. 15, cr), a thin-walled, pyriform bag, whose walls, like those of the oesophagus, consist of a layer of longitudinal and one of transverse or ring-shaped muscle fibers and a delicate chitinous lining. In the oesophagus the chitinous lining is beset with fine hairs pointing backwards. There are no glands in the crop and the chitinous walls completely resist the absorption of food, so that this organ serves merely as a reservoir for the liquid that has been imbibed or lapped up directly or sucked out of the more solid substances moulded in the infrabuccal chamber. Forel aptly calls the crop "the social stomach," because the food it contains is at least in great part fed by regurgitation to the other ants of the colony or to the brood. The crop is remarkably distensible, especially in certain Camponotinae, like the honey-ants, so that its replete or deplete condition determines the volume, and in a measure also the shape of the gaster in the worker.

The crop is succeeded by a remarkable structure, the proventriculus, or pumping stomach, which has been carefully studied by Forel (1878b)
and Emery (1888c), who have found it to vary greatly and to afford valuable characters for the delimitation of genera and even of sub-families. The proventriculus of our common carpenter ants (Camponotus) may be described as a paradigm (Fig. 16, A). It is a narrowed or constricted portion of the alimentary tract and consists of several successive sections. The most anterior of these is the calyx (c). As the name implies, this is a cup-shaped section with chitinous walls differentiated into eight bands, four greatly thickened, and very convex towards the lumen, alternating with four thinner chitinous bands which are more or less concave towards the lumen. The thickened bands have been called the sepals. At the posterior narrow end of the calyx

![Diagram of ant proventriculus](image)

**Fig. 16.** The gizzard, or proventriculus, of various ants. (Emery.) A, Camponotus ligniperdus; B, Liometopum microcephalum; C, Atta sexdens; D, Cryptocerus atratus; E, Technomyrmex sirensus, seen from the anterior end; F, sagittal section of same; a, cesophagus; b, crop; c, sepal; d, membrane between sepals; e, valve; f, bulb of calyx (pumping stomach proper); g, cavity of bulb; h, cylindrical portion; i, knob-shaped valve; k, stomach, or ventriculus.

these can be applied so closely to one another as to shut off the lumen and thus assume the function of a valve at this point. Posterior to this valve, the walls of the organ again dilate suddenly to form a globose section, the bulb (f), which repeats the structure of the calyx with some
modification. This is the pumping stomach proper. It is succeeded by a slender, thin-walled tube, the cylindrical section (h), opening behind into the much more voluminous stomach on the summit of a knob, which is also valvular in structure (i). At this point the chitinous lining of the alimentary tract stops abruptly. The walls of the proventriculus, especially of its bulb, are furnished with powerful transverse and feebler longitudinal muscles.

The function of the proventriculus as a pump has been explained by Emery. It is clear from the shape of the chitinous folds in the bulb and the arrangement of the musculature that the contraction of the latter must bring the folds close together and occlude the lumen, whereas the relaxation of the muscles permits the chitinous folds to flatten out through their own elasticity and thus enlarge the cavity and suck the liquid back out of the crop. Hence the organ functions like a rubber bulb with a tube and an appropriately constructed valve at each end. When the bulb is squeezed its liquid contents are forced into one tube, and when it is permitted to expand, it draws the liquid out of the other tube. The proventriculus has an important function, not only in passing the liquid food back from the crop to the true stomach, but also in filling the crop in the first place.

The proventriculus of Camponotus may be regarded as representing a structure from which we can pass on the one hand through greater simplification to the Myrmicine and Ponerine proventriculus, and on the other through greater complication to that of the other Camponotinae (Plagiolepis, Prenolepis, etc.) and Dolichoderinae. This complication consists, in great part, in a shortening of the calyx and a spreading and recurving of its lips till they form a bell-shaped structure more or less completely enclosing the remainder of the proventriculus. Extreme forms of this kind are seen in Iridomyrmex and Technomyrmex (Fig. 16, E, F). In these ants it is possible to see how the proventriculus may play an important rôle in regurgitation as well as in ingurgitation, for the contraction of the walls of the crop, especially of the ring-muscles at the posterior end, and the pressure of its liquid contents must tend to close the openings between the sepals, thus preventing the liquid from moving backward and determining its flow in the opposite direction. As the musculature of the crop is poorly developed, some authors, like Janet, regard the pharynx as the organ which by its peristaltic contractions probably initiates regurgitation and may even be of great importance in filling the crop during ingurgitation.

All of the above-described regions of the alimentary tract arise in the embryo as a tubular infolding of the outside skin, or ectoderm, the so-called stomodeum. This is indicated in the adult by the almost
complete absence of glands and the presence of a chitinous lining which is continuous at the mouth with the chitinous investment of the body and appendages. The true or individual stomach (ventricle) which succeeds the proventriculus, represents a sudden departure in structure and function (Figs. 13 and 15, st). It is a small, elliptical sac, hardly capable of dilatation, with very glandular walls devoid of a chitinous lining. This region alone arises from the inner germ-layer of the embryo, in which it is called the mesenteron. Its structure shows very clearly that it is adapted to digesting and absorbing the liquid food that may be permitted to pass the valve at the posterior end of the proventriculus. Though of relatively large size in the embryo and larva, the stomach in the adult ant forms but a small portion of the alimentary tract. The portion lying between the stomach and anus, and comprising the small intestine (Fig. 15, lin), Malpighian vessels (mp) and the rectum (rc), arises in the embryo like the stomodeum from a tubular infolding of the ectoderm, the proctodaeum, and, like the stomodaenum, has a chitinous lining, which in this case is continuous with the integument at the anus and ends abruptly at the junction with the posterior end of the stomach.

The small intestine is a narrow tube usually more or less wrinkled by the action of its transverse musculature. Its histological structure is similar to that of the cylindrical section of the proventriculus. Near its insertion into the stomach, where it forms a valve, it receives the Malpighian, or urinary, vessels, which are merely so many long, tubular evaginations of its walls. These vessels seem to vary considerably in number in different ants. Thus, according to Adlerz (1886) there are 6 in Leptothorax, Formicoxenus and Harpagoxenus, 8 in Anergates, 8–10 in Lasius, 12 in Tapinoma, 14 in Polyergus and 20 in Formica and Camponotus. According to Meinert (1860) the number may vary in the different castes of the same species. Thus the female of Lasius flavus is said to have 7–14, the male 6–16 and the worker 7–8. According to Janet there are 6 in all three phases of Myrmica rubra.

The rectum consists of an ampulliform enlargement which narrows posteriorly to its termination in the anus. Its thin walls are furnished with a single dorsal and a pair of lateral lentiform glands. The faeces and the urinary excretions from the Malpighian vessels accumulate in the rectal ampulla and are expelled by a contraction of the thin muscle-layer in its walls. The anus (Fig. 15, an) is provided with a sphincter muscle and is situated on a papilla, which, in a state of repose, is concealed within the small, telescoped terminal segments of the gaster. In the Camponotinae the anal orifice is fringed with a regular row of delicate hairs, or cilia.
The Glandular System.—Glands are well-developed in ants, and, owing to their importance in the ethological relations of these insects, deserve particular notice. They have been studied by Meckel (1846), Leydig (1859), Meinert (1860), Forel (1874, 1878), Lubbock (1882), Nassonow (1889) and Janet (1894, 1898). The following groups may be distinguished:

1. Integumentary glands, arising in the embryo, larva or pupa as invaginations of the ectodermal cell-layer (hypodermis), and including the antennary, mandibular, maxillary, labial and metasternal glands, those of the sixth abdominal (third or fourth gastric) segment, and of the fore metatarsus. Here, too, may be included the unicellular glands connected with the olfactory and tactile organs, to be considered in the next chapter. All the integumentary glands are present in the male as well as in the worker and female ant.

2. Reproductive glands, including the penial glands of the male, and in the worker and female the homologous glands of the sting-sheath, belonging to the ninth abdominal (sixth or seventh gastric) segment; the poison, accessory and repugnatorial, or anal glands of the worker and female, and the glands of the seminal vesicle of the male.

3. Glands of the alimentary canal. These comprise the postpharyngeal, ventricular and rectal glands and the Malpighian vessels.

4. Glands of the circulatory system, including the oenocytes, pericardial cells and adipocytes, or fat body. These, unlike the three other categories of glands, are ductless.

The glands of the alimentary tract have been briefly described, and those of the circulatory and reproductive systems will be taken up later, so that here only the integumentary glands will be considered. The antennary glands consist of a few isolated cells with slender ducts opening on a small area in a depression at the base of each antenna. The mandibular glands (Fig. 17, mg) are well-de-
veloped and comprise a large cluster of cells in each side of the head just in front of the optic ganglia. Their ducts, grouped in bundles, but not uniting, open separately on a criblem, or sieve-like plate on the thin wall of a larger cavity, which narrows anteriorly and opens as a small slit at the base and near the upper surface of the mandible. The maxillary glands (m.r) consist of two groups of cells near the median sagittal plane of the head, above the buccal tube and near the infrabuccal pocket. Their separate ducts open on each side on a criblem in the lateral wall of the buccal tube. The labial, usually called the salivary glands, are paired, like the preceding, but are situated in the thorax. Their duct, however, is unpaired and opens on the labium. These glands are derived from the spinning glands, or sericteries of the larva. In Formica rufa, according to Meinert, each of the lateral ducts, before uniting with its fellow to form the unpaired terminal duct, becomes inflated and functions as a receptaculum for the glandular secretion.

The metasternal glands (Fig. 18), which were first seen by Meinert and Lubbock, have been carefully investigated by Janet. He regards them as belonging to the epinotum and calls them "glands de l’anneau médiaire," but Emery asserts positively that they belong to the metasternal or ventral pieces of the third thoracic instead of to the epinotal, or first abdominal segment. In Myrmica rubra, according to Janet, "the fine ducts of the numerous gland cells unite in a large bundle and open separately on a depressed criblem, situated on the ceiling of a large chamber formed by an invagination of the chitinous exoskeleton. From near the surface perforated by the orifices of the secretory ducts, seven or eight little chitinous folds arise and extend laterally along the walls of the chamber. These folds, which form small projecting ridges, soon unite in two groups which border a small gutter on a slight eminence. Towards the ventral region all traces of the ridges dis-
appear, but the gutter, reduced to a simple depression of the wall, is
continued very distinctly to the slit which forms the opening of the
chamber. This latter is always filled with air.” In *Lasius flavus* “the
chamber is widely open to the exterior and the grooves of its walls are
absent and replaced by hairs.” In one of his preparations Janet found
that “these hairs are inserted inside the chamber around the cribellum
and converge in such a way as to appear like a pointed, hollow brush,
i.e., one reduced to the hairs that form its external surface. This
pencil recalls the trichodes of myrmecophilous beetles (see Chapter
XXII). In *Formica rufa* the chamber is much reduced and opens
more widely to the exterior than in *Lasius flavus*. The cribellum is
beset with hairs which form a brush long enough to project outside
the chamber. The glands of the sixth abdominal segment consist of
two small clusters of cells whose ducts open on the dorsal interseg-
mental membrane just in front of the rigid chitinous border of the
seventh segment. The metatarsal gland is situated in the fore-leg at
the base of the tarsal comb of the strigil.

**The Reproductive Organs.**—In the female, or queen ant, the repro-
ductive organs comprise the two ovaries, each of which consists of a
number of tubes, or ovarioles, in which the elliptical eggs are formed
in a single series, very small at the distal or anterior and gradually
increasing in size towards the proximal or posterior end of the tube.
Each egg is surrounded by a follicular epithelium, which secretes from
its inner surface the thin, transparent chorion enveloping the ripe egg,
and is accompanied by a cluster of nurse cells. The ovarioles, which are
bound together in a fascicle by richly ramifying trachee, are attached
at their tapering anterior ends to the pericardium in the antero-dorsal
region of the gaster (Fig. 15, 0t). The number of ovarioles in each ovary
varies considerably in the queens of different ants. Miss Bickford (1895)
gives the following numbers for several European species: *Formica rufa*
scabrinodis 8–9, *M. sulcinodis* 9–11, *Anergates atratulus* 12, *Plagiolepis*
pygmaea 4–5; and Miss Holliday (1903) finds the following numbers
in several American ants: *Pachycondyla harpax* 5–7, *Odontomachus*
clarus 5, *Eciton schmitti* about 250, *Leptothorax emersoni* 2, *Cremastos-
gaster minutissima* 2, *Colobopsis etiolata* 6–7, *Camponotus decipiens*
12, *C. festinatus* 15–18, *C. santsbeanus* 6–17, *Pogonomyrmex mole-
faciens* 25–30. The ovarioles of each ovary unite at their posterior
ends to form a short oviduct, and the two oviducts in turn unite to form
the uterus, which bear on its dorsal surface a small subspherical pocket,
the seminal receptacle, which is filled with sperm by the male during
the nuptial flight. The sperm is kept alive in the receptacle for years, apparently by a nutritive fluid secreted into the cavity of the organ near its orifice by a pair of appendicular glands. The eggs are fertilized as they pass through the uterus by sperm which is permitted to escape in small quantities from the orifice of the receptacle. The uterus opens behind into the short vagina, which bears on its dorsal surface a rather thin-walled sac, the copulatory pouch (Fig. 15, bc). The vagina (vg) opens to the exterior by means of a transverse slit (vv) just in front of the sting or its vestige on the sternal articular membrane of the seventh abdominal (fourth gastric) segment.

In the worker the ovaries are also present, but, as a rule, with a greatly reduced and often highly variable number of ovarioles. Adlerz (1887) gives the following numbers for each ovary in the workers which he examined: Formica sanguinea 3–6, Camponotus herculeanus 1–5, Polyergus rufescens 3, Lasius flavus 1, Tapinoma erraticum 1, Harpagoxenus sublevis 3–6, and Miss Bickford gives the following data: F. pratensis 2–6, F. rufa 4–10, L. fuliginosus 1–2, Myrmica lecinodis, ruginodis, scabrinodis, Aphanagaster subterranea and Cremastogaster scutellaris 1. The numbers observed by Miss Holliday are: Leptogenys elongata 2–3, Pachycondyla harpax 2–9, Odontomachus clarius 2–8, Leptothorax emersonii 2–4, Colobopsis etiolata 1, Camponotus decipiens 1–4, C. festinatus 1–11, C. sansabeanus 1, Pogonomyrmex molefaciens 1–7.

Lespez (1863), Adlerz and Miss Bickford failed to find any tubules in the worker Tetramorium cespitum, and Miss Holliday had no better success with the worker of Eciton schmidtii. It is very doubtful, however, that the ovaries have completely disappeared in the workers of any of the Formicidae. A well-developed seminal receptacle was found in the workers of quite a number of species by Miss Holliday, but copulation of workers with males has not been observed.

In the male ant each testis (Fig. 19, ts) consists of a number of compact lobules (according to Adlerz 17 in Camponotus ligniperdus, 21 in Formica sanguinea, 3 in Leptothorax acervorum and Anergates atratulus; according to Janet 4 in Myrmica), occupying a position in the gaster like that of the ovaries in the female. The lobules, which are
crowded with cysts containing mature sperm, or testicular cells in various stages of spermatogenesis (s)p, unite in each testis to form a

**Fig. 20.** Poison apparatus of Formica. A, Lateral and slightly dorsal aspect of apparatus in Formica rufibarbis. (Forel.) a, Duct of poison vesicle, or reservoir; b, cushion formed by the long convoluted portion of the duct from the two free glandular tubes (c); d, trachea; e, ring-muscles of vesicle wall; f, nerves; g, intima of vesicle; h, accessory gland; i, its orifice; m, gland-cells of its walls; n, muscles; o, stingsheath; p, vestigial sting-groove; r, somewhat dislocated, vestigial right sting-stylet; s, piece of the cloacal membrane which has been almost entirely removed. B, Transverse section through poison apparatus of Formica rufa. (Beyer.) w, Dorsal wall of vesicle; x, sections of convoluted duct forming the cushion-shaped mass; y, opening of duct into the vesicle, the lining of which is represented by the more heavily shaded layer (z).
long deferent duct (vd). Each duct is enlarged near its posterior end to form a thick-walled seminal vesicle (vs). The two deferent ducts unite to form a slender ejaculatory duct (de) which opens on the ninth abdominal (sixth gastric) segment at the base of the paired penis (p).

The poison apparatus belongs morphologically to the sting, and is, therefore, absent in all male ants. It appears under two different forms, which Forel (1878) distinguishes as the pulvinate and the bourreled. The former is confined to the ants of the subfamily Camponotinae (Formica, Lasius, Camponotus, etc.), a group in which the parts of the sting have all but completely disappeared, the latter occurs in all the other subfamilies, which have the sting either highly developed or very small. In Formica the poison apparatus consists of a large, elongated, thin-walled but muscular sac or vesicle and a glandular portion (Fig. 20). The former opens by means of a rather large orifice between the scarcely recognizable sclerites of the highly vestigial sting. To the inside of the dorsal wall of this vesicle is applied an elongate, elliptical, flattened cushion made up of a delicate, much convoluted and somewhat branched glandular tubule, which is fully 20 cm. in length when uncoiled. One end of this tubule opens into the vesicle at the middle of the ventral surface of the cushion, the other leaves the posterior end of the vesicle in the mid-dorsal line and bifurcates to form a pair of glandular tubules which terminate blindly and lie freely in the body cavity. The walls of these tubules consist of polygonal cells, each of which has a minute duct starting within its cytoplasm and opening into the axial duct, or lumen of the tubules.

The second, or bourreled type of poison apparatus is of a much simpler structure. It, too, consists of a vesicular and a glandular portion, with the former opening into the groove of the sting. The vesicle is smaller, however, and more pyriform or globular, and its duct to the exterior is more slender than in the pulvinate type. The glands are a pair of tubules which unite and enter, and in Myrmica (Fig. 21, B) and many other genera, form an unpaired and somewhat convoluted tubule within the vesicular cavity. This tubule is enlarged or button-shaped at the free end where its opening is situated. In Bothriomyrmex (Fig. 21, A) Forel found the unpaired tubule reduced to a small sub-globular structure with the opening on its summit. As the bourreled gland is usually associated with a well-developed sting, except in the Dolichoderinae, and, moreover, closely resembles the poison gland of the wasp and bee, it must be regarded as the more primitive of the two types. The pulvinate gland secretes a more copious amount of liquid, which is stored in the vesicle whence it can be either ejected by some ants (Formica rufa and its allies) in a fine spray to a distance
of 20–50 cm., or injected into wounds inflicted with the mandibles. Beyer (1890), who has made a comparative study of the development of the poison apparatus in the honey-bee, wasp, Myrmica and Formica, finds that it is smallest in the forms with the largest sting (bee) and largest in forms with only a functionless vestige of this organ. The enlargement and extraordinary convolution of the gland in the Camponotinae is therefore correlated with a degeneration of the sting as an organ of defence and the development of a novel method of using the poison in conflicts with hostile ants and other animals.

Apart from a recent paper by Melander and Brues (1906), little has been published on the chemical constitution of the poison of ants in general. These authors find appreciable traces of formic acid, as a

Fig. 21. Poison apparatus of a Dolichoderine and a Myrmicine ant. (Forel.) A. Bothriomyrmex meridionalis; B. Myrmica leviodis. a, Sting; b, sting-groove; c, sting-sheath; d, accessory gland; e, duct of poison vesicle; f, poison vesicle; g, bourrelet-like termination of poison glands; h, poison glands; i, unpaired, convoluted portion of poison gland; k, film of secretion (?) surrounding bourrelet.

rule, only in the Camponotinae, that is, in the forms with the pulvinate glands. In this group, as would be expected, the species of Formica head the list with more than twice as much acid relatively to their size as the species of Camponotus. In the Doryline ants (various species of Eciton) the secretion has a very strong and nauseating, fecal odor like that of the lace-wings (Chrysopa). Melander and Brues believe this to be due to leucine, and they state that “these ants are totally blind, and migratory in their habits, so that they must depend almost entirely upon a sense of smell to follow one another about. Thus it
can easily be seen how such a strong odor might be developed through the action of natural selection, from the small trace of leucine that is usually present in insect feces.” As I have found a secretion precisely like that of Eciton in certain carnivorous Pheidole (Ph. ecitonodora and antillensis), I infer that its chemical constitution may, perhaps, depend on the diet of the insects.

In all ants, both in those with the pulvinate and those with the bour-releted glands, there is present a so-called accessory, or Dufour’s gland (Fig. 20, h, Fig. 21, d), which opens into the duct of the poison vesicle very near its termination. This gland is ventral to the poison apparatus and though of variable form (pyriform, cylindrical or bilobed) is rather uniform in structure throughout the family Formicidae. It is a small, elongated sac, with rather thin walls composed of polygonal gland cells enveloped by delicate muscles and tracheæ. Several authors have regarded its rather thick, yellowish secretion as a lubricant for the parts of the sting, but Janet has shown that no such lubricant is necessary. Moreover, the gland is often best developed in virtually stingless ants like the Camponotinae. Others have surmised that the secretion is added as a necessary ingredient to the poison. Janet finds that it is alkaline and conjectures that its chief use is to neutralize any of the highly acid poison which may happen to adhere to the ant’s own body or remain on the parts of the sting or on the anal circllet after the gland has been discharged. He also finds that all the other integumentary glands, except those of the poison apparatus, have an alkaline reaction, and believes that this is important in preventing the nest chambers from becoming acid, for the secretions of the poison glands, if allowed to accumulate in a closed cavity, soon

---

**Fig. 22. Repugnatorial glands and vesicles of worker Bothriomyrmex meridonialis.** (Forel.)

A. Whole structure seen from above; a, vesicles; o, common orifice of same; g, clusters of unicellular glands; d, duct; i, intima; m, muscles in wall of vesicle. B. Single gland cell (e) containing the convoluted termination of the ductlet (o) in its cytoplasm; d, main duct; t, tracheæ.
become fatal to the ants. This is easily demonstrated when Camponotinae are confined in a vial and irritated till they discharge their secretions. But as there seems to be little or no acid in the poison of any species except those belonging to this subfamily, Janet's conjecture, at least so far as the accessory gland is concerned, is far from being applicable to all ants.

The repugnatorial, or anal glands (Figs. 22 and 23), were discovered by Forel. They are present only in the female and worker Dolichoderinae and coexist with well-developed poison glands of the bourreleted type. They consist of grape-like clusters of large, spherical gland-cells, the fine intracytoplasmic ducts of which unite to form a pair of much larger ducts that open into the posterior portions of two large, thin-walled sacs, dorsal to the poison gland and closely applied to each other in the medium sagittal plane of the ant's body. These sacs have muscular walls and serve as reservoirs for the glandular secretion. They have a common opening just dorsal to the anus. Their secretion is quite unlike that of the poison glands described above, being more sticky and having in nearly all Dolichoderinae a very characteristic odor, which Forel calls the "Tapinoma odor" because it is very noticeable in the common species of this genus in Europe and North America (T. erraticum and sessile). Others aptly describe the odor as that of "rotten cocoaanuts." Melander and Brues have studied the secretion in Iridomyrmex analis (Forelius fatisus) and find that "when distilled with steam the odor passes over and remains dissolved in the aqueous distillate. Thus freed it retains the very evident odor of rancid cocoaanuts. By saponification with potassium hydroxide solution it loses all odor, but on adding dilute sulphuric acid to excess an odor closely resembling that of fresh cocoaanuts is developed. From this it is quite evident that the odorous principle is an ether of some sort." During conflicts with other ants the Dolichoderinae smear the secretion of their repugnatorial glands on the bodies of their enemies, and from the behavior of the latter it is evident that the liquid is fatal, or, at any rate, very irritating, and that it constitutes a most efficient protection
even for the most diminutive and soft-bodied species of *Iridomyrmex*, *Tapinoma*, *Azteca*, etc.

The Circulatory System.—Janet (1902) has studied this system in *Myrmica*. It comprises, as in other insects, the heart, aorta, haemolymph, or blood plasma, amöebocytes, or blood-corpuscles, and several ductless glands of very simple structure. The heart (Fig. 15, *ht*, Fig. 24, *c*) is a tube lying in the mid-dorsal region of the gaster and presenting five dilatations corresponding with the first to fifth gastric (fourth to eighth abdominal) segments, and each of these metameric regions is pierced by a pair of ostioles provided with valves. The wall of the tube is only a single cell-layer in thickness and the cells of its two halves are in pairs, indicating that they arise from the pairs of embryonic cells which I have called cardioblasts (1893). There is no layer of muscles enveloping the tube, but very contractile muscle fibrillae are differentiated in the cytoplasm of the cells themselves. The tube is held in place by numerous suspensory filaments and five pairs of so-called aliform muscles, belonging to the first to fifth gastric segments. These muscles are fan-shaped, with their broad ends meeting and uniting in the middle line below the cardiac tube and their pointed ends inserted on the supero-lateral walls of the gaster. Anteriorly the heart is continued through the slender abdominal pedicel and into the thorax as the aorta, a slender non-contractile tube which opens into the head cavity.

The blood, as in other insects, is a colorless liquid filling the body cavity or spaces between all the internal organs and containing very small, colorless, amöeboid and nucleated corpuscles. Circulation is effected by the systole and diastole of the heart, the pulsations of which proceed in a wave from its posterior to its anterior end. These movements are described as follows by Janet, with the aid of the accompanying diagram (Fig. 24, *B*): "During systole the aliform muscles (*am*), the suspensory filaments (*sf*) and the heart (*c*) occupy the positions represented by the unbroken lines. In contracting, the aliform muscles shorten, and owing to this shortening, they recede in the middle region from the dorsal integument and take the position represented by the dotted lines. This movement draws down the suspensory filaments attached to the muscles and changes the direction of those attached to the dorsal integument. As these filaments can be but slightly elongated, the changes of position here described are produced, so to speak, entirely at the expense of the elasticity of the cardiac wall, which dilates considerably. With this dilatation the valvules move away from the points to which they were applied and the blood streams through the ostioles and fills the heart. The blood, propelled by the contracting heart, pours
into the head, bathes all the organs and then leaves it through the neck to traverse the whole thoracic cavity in an antero-posterior direction. After having passed through the much constricted peduncle of the petiole and postpetiole, it enters the gaster and flows through two passages, separated by a diaphragm that divides the body cavity into a ventral, or neural, and a dorsal, or visceral, sinus. One current descends through the dorsal, another through the ventral sinus, following the latter to the tip of the gaster. The dorsal sinus, which is very large and supplies the heart with the blood it propels into the head, is thus supplied simultaneously by the posterior portion of the postpetiole and the posterior portion of the ventral sinus of the gaster.

Connected with the circulatory system are some four different kinds of cells, which are suspended either singly or in clusters in the blood current. These are the pericardial cells (Fig. 24, pc), the cœnocytes (oe), the adipocytes (f), forming the fat body, or corpus adiposum and the urate cells (u). The pericardial cells are of small size and are
attached to the suspensory filaments and aliform muscles. In the living insect these cells have an acid reaction. They probably function as ductless glands, taking certain substances from the blood, transforming them and returning them to the circulation in such a form that they can be absorbed and excreted by the Malpighian vessels (Cuénot). Some authors are of the opinion that these pericardial cells also give rise to the amebocytes, that they constitute, in other words, a hematopoietic organ. The echocytes are glandular cells which arise in segmental clusters from the ectoderm of the embryo just behind the tracheal invaginations. In the ants these cells are very small and in the adult scattered about among the fat cells. They are very conspicuous in the young larva and still occupy their embryonic position, but in aged ants, according to Janet, they disappear. Like the pericardial cells they are probably ductless glands, producing some unknown but physiologically important internal secretion. The fat cells form large masses or packets, often filling out all the spaces of the body cavity between the viscera, especially during the larval and pupal stages. As the name indicates,

![Figure 25](image.png)

**Fig. 25.** Longitudinal sections to show valve and method of closing the tracheae in *Myrmica rubra.* (Janet.) A, Last abdominal trachea open; B, closed; a, stigmatic orifice; b, anterior stigmatic chamber; c, occluding chamber; d, fixed insertion of occluding muscle; e, mobile insertion of same; f, occluding muscle; g, opening muscle; h, stiffened portion of trachea; i, stigmatic or main tracheal trunk.

these cells have their cytoplasm filled with fat globules, which are often so numerous that the nucleus is reduced to a stellate or irregular body. Unlike the echocytes, the fat cells are of mesodermal origin. The urate cells are found singly or in clusters among the fat cells. They are large and opaque, owing to a mass of urate crystals stored in their cytoplasm. They are most easily seen in larvæ and pupæ and may be regarded as a very primitive form of kidney adapted for storing instead of excreting the products of tissue metabolism.
The Respiratory System.—The tracheae of ants are not unlike those of many other insects, as shown by Janet's studies (1902) of Myrmica and other genera. In all ant-larvae there are ten pairs of stigmata or tracheal orifices occurring on the meso- and metathoracic and first to eighth abdominal segments. These stigmata also persist in the adult ant as small, round openings. According to Janet the metathoracic pair is closed in the Myrmicinae (Myrmica), but remains open in the Camponotinae (Formica) and Dolichoderinae (Tapinoma). Each stigmatic orifice leads into a short stigmatic trunk which is furnished with a very interesting valve by means of which it can be closed (Fig. 25). The stigmatic trunks of the thorax and gaster bifurcate in an anterior and posterior direction and the two branches fuse on each side of the body to form a continuous longitudinal trunk. This is very large in the gaster, but much more tenuous in the thorax, where a second pair of more dorsal longitudinal trunks is formed, which, in the queens and males, supplies the wing muscles with air. The gastric trunks dilate and contract with the so-called respiratory movements of the external skeleton and in this manner the air is pumped into and out of the finest ramifications of the tracheae. The gastric trunks are united by ventral, transverse, anastomosing tracheae and also give off segmental dorsal branches which break up into finer and finer ramifications to supply the various viscera.

The Muscular System.—For an account of this system in ants the reader must be referred to the articles of Janet, Nassonow, Berlese and Lubbock, as the subject is one of too great complexity and detail to be treated within the limits of this work. Still there is an ontogenetic change in the muscular system of the adult queen ants, which cannot be passed over, as it is of no little ethological importance. I have often observed that aged, deâlled queens will float when placed in water or alcohol, and that when the thorax of immersed specimens is pierced with a needle, large bubbles of air escape, showing that the wing muscles must have atrophied. Janet (1906, 1907a, 1907b) has studied the histological changes, which lead up to this peculiar condition in Lasius niger, and finds that the muscles, which in the virgin queen fill up most of the thoracic cavity and are well-developed and beautifully striated till the marriage flight occurs, are completely broken down within a few weeks after deâlisation (Fig. 26). He maintains that this sarcoysis is not due to phagocytes devouring the muscles piece-meal, but that the blood corpuscles (amöebocytes) which creep in among the fibrillae take up spontaneously the dissolving muscle substances and convert these within the cytoplasm into fat globules and albuminoid granules. Thus the amöebocytes become adipocytes and replace the muscle fibrillae (Fig.
26, B). Somewhat later the amœbocytes discharge the fat globules and albuminoid granules from their cytoplasm into the blood plasma, which from being a limpid liquid assumes a more granular appearance as it becomes charged with more and more of the metabolized products of sarcoclysis. Eventually nothing remains of the muscles but their sheaths, and the thoracic tracheæ become greatly enlarged, which accounts for the floating of the insect in liquid and the emission of air bubbles when the thorax is pricked under water (Fig. 26, D). The fatty and albuminoid substances derived from the histolyzed wing-muscles are carried in the blood to the abdomen, where they are taken up by the ovaries and, no doubt, contribute greatly to the growth of the eggs. The queen ant thus resembles the salmon, in which, according to Miescher, there is at the time of sexual maturity a conversion of part of the trunk musculature into substances that are appropriated by the reproductive cells and further their growth and maturation.
CHAPTER IV

THE INTERNAL STRUCTURE OF ANTS (CONCLUDED)

"It is certain that there may be extraordinary activity with an extremely small absolute mass of nervous matter; thus the wonderfully diversified instincts, mental powers, and affections of ants are notorious, yet their cerebral ganglia are not so large as the quarter of a small pin's head. Under this point of view, the brain of an ant is one of the most marvellous atoms of matter in the world, perhaps more so than the brain of man."—Charles Darwin, "The Descent of Man."

The Nervous System.—The structure of the central nervous system is best considered in connection with the primitive segmentation as this is revealed in the embryonic ant. As stated in a previous chapter, the body of the ant, like that of all other true insects (Pterygogena), consists of a series of twenty metameres, or segments. The first and last of these are peculiar in certain respects and have been called the acron and telson respectively. In the embryo the ectoderm of the mid-ventral portion of each segment (except the telson) thickens and gives rise to a pair of ganglia that soon split off from a thin surface layer of cells which then become the ventral integument. The ganglia of each segment are closely approximated and connected with each other by a pair of commissures, while the ganglia of successive segments are united by pairs of connectives which therefore run longitudinally. Later these connectives lengthen, and as the body grows more rapidly than the ganglia, we find the latter forming a chain extending through the ventral region of the head, thorax and abdomen. Not only do many of the ganglia thus become rather widely separated from one another, but there is also a tendency for some of them to fuse together and make larger masses. Thus the ganglia of the first (acron), second (antennary) and third (intercalary) segments, known respectively as the proto-, deutö- and tritocerebrum of Viallanes, fuse to form the brain, or supraoesophageal ganglion. As the latter term indicates, this mass is dorsal to the oesophagus, and therefore preoral. This is true, however, only of the protocerebrum of the embryo, the two other pairs of ganglia being postoral at first, but moving forward and becoming preoral before the hatching of the larva. The ganglia of the mandibular, maxillary and labial segments also unite to form a single mass, the suboesophageal ganglion, which, as its name implies, lies behind the gullet. This ganglion is united to the brain by means of a pair of circumoesophageal connectives. The pro- and mesothoracic ganglia
remain distinct and lie in their respective segments even in the adult ant. The first (mediary) and second abdominal ganglia, however, are drawn up into the metathorax and fused with the metathoracic ganglion, and the ganglion of the third abdominal segment comes to lie in the petiole (second abdominal segment) (Fig. 13, ag²). The fourth, fifth, sixth and seventh abdominal ganglia retain their independence, but the latter two are close together and are immediately succeeded by the fused eighth to tenth, which constitute a single ellipsoidal mass, terminating the chain and in the adult ant lying some distance in front of the posterior end of the gaster (Fig. 13, ag"-11"). The central nervous system of the adult ant therefore presents only eleven ganglionic masses, formed by condensation of the primitive nineteen. For convenience in description, this system may be divided into the brain and ventral cord, and these, with their ganglia and peripheral nerves, may be briefly considered before we take up the sympathetic nervous system and the sense organs.

The Brain.—I agree with those authors, who, following Rabl-Rückard (1875), restrict the term "brain" to the supraoesophageal ganglion, although it must be admitted that in ants and other Hymenoptera the circumoesophageal connectives are so short and robust that the supra- and suboesophageal ganglia seem to form but a single mass perforated by the gullet. Leydig called this whole mass the brain; Janet suggests for it the term "encephalon." The three primitive pairs of ganglia, constituting the proto-, deuto- and tritocerebrum, though intimately fused, can still be recognized in the adult brain, at least by their innervations, but the three apparent segments indicated by the outline of the organ do not correspond to the primitive segments. The protocerebrum is the largest single pair of ganglia in the central nervous systems and differs markedly from all the others in form and complexity of structure. It is broadest in the middle where it is continued on each side into the optic nerves (Figs. 28-30, on) to the compound eyes. The portion between the optic nerves may be called the mid-protocerebrum. It is flanked on each side by an optic ganglion (ag) of complicated structure and projects anteriorly as a pair of rounded frontal lobes (pb). From the notch between these, nerves are given off to the three stemmata, or ocelli (oc), when these organs are present. As the median stemma has two nerves, it must have been a paired structure originally. The deuto cerebrum is represented by a pair of rounded protuberances known as the olfactory lobes (ol), which are morphologically behind, though apparently somewhat in front of the other brain segments. According to Janet, each antenna is supplied with six nerves which arise close together from each olfactory lobe (Fig. 27). These
are: first, the infero-internal sensory nerve (\textit{nani}), second, the supero-external sensory (\textit{nans}), third, the chordotonal (\textit{acho}), fourth, the nerve to the anterior (adductor) muscles of the scape, fifth, the nerve to the posterior (abductor) muscles of the scape (\textit{nsc}), and sixth, a nerve which supplies the little muscles in the funicular joints (\textit{nft}). The tritocerebrum is so much reduced that it is represented only by a pair of small bodies, concealed under the olfactory lobes and connected with each other by a slender commissure, which, however, passes under the cesophagus, thus indicating the originally postoral position of this portion of the brain. Each tritocerebral lobe gives off a nerve which soon subdivides into two branches, one (Fig. 27, \textit{cnf}) going to the

![Diagram of head of worker Myrmica rubra](image)

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{acho}: Antennary chordotonal organ; \textit{cnf}: connective of frontal ganglion; \textit{art}: antennary articulation; \textit{nans}: superior antennary nerve; \textit{nani}: inferior antennary nerve; \textit{nft}: funicular nerve; \textit{nsc}: nerve to scape; \textit{nir}: labral nerve; \textit{soph}: sense-organs of pharynx; \textit{mph}: inferior dilator muscle of pharynx; \textit{no}: nerves to ocelli; \textit{hec}: hypocerebral ganglion; \textit{mam}: adductor muscle of mandible; \textit{ig}: labial sympathetic ganglion; \textit{lm}: labial sympathetic nerve; \textit{ml}: labial nerve; \textit{sol}: labial sense-organs; \textit{nmx}: maxillary nerve; \textit{mm}: mandibular nerve; \textit{s}: portions of salivary gland; \textit{cm}: connective between subcesophageal and prothoracic ganglion; \textit{mal}: adductor muscle of labium. Remaining letters as in Fig. 13.
\end{itemize}

frontal ganglion (to be described below in connection with the sympathetic nervous system) the other again subdividing to innervate the labrum and the wall of the pharynx (\textit{nir}).

The minute structure of the brain, with its ganglion cells and fibers, the former comprising the deeply-staining, the latter the more achromatic portions, or "Punktsubstanz" of authors, is too intricate to be considered in the present work. For these details the reader must be referred to the papers of Dujardin (1850), Leydig (1864), Rabl-
Rückard (1875), Brandt (1876), Dietl (1876), Flögel (1878) and Kenyon (1896). I cannot, however, omit consideration of two regions of the ant brain, namely, the frontal and olfactory lobes, which have frequently been compared with the cerebrum and olfactory lobes of vertebrates. The frontal lobes contain two pairs of extraordinary structures, the pedunculate, or mushroom bodies (Figs. 28-30, pb), each consisting of a cup-shaped mass of nerve-fibers, the calyx, with a stem formed of a stout bundle of similar fibers which run back into the mid-protocerebrum. The calyces are embedded in a dense accumulation of minute, deeply-staining ganglion cells, which form the bulk of the frontal lobes and evidently give rise to the fibers of the calyces and their stems. Each olfactory lobe consists of a central fibrous portion containing peripherally a large number of round bodies of still denser fibrous structure and a cortical portion made up of larger ganglion cells. The round bodies have been called glomeruli from their resemblance to the well-known structures in the olfactory lobes of vertebrates. Since the antennæ of ants are mainly organs of smell, the occurrence in the deutocerebrum of structures so much like those in the olfactory organs of vertebrates is not without interest.

Fig. 28. Heads of worker (A), female (B), and male (C). Lasius brevicornis, drawn under same magnification, with brain, eyes and ocelli viewed as transparent objects. (Original.) ac, Median ocellus; pb, pedunculate bodies; og, optic ganglion; on, optic nerve; ol, olfactory lobe; an, antennary nerve.

It has been customary since the time of Dujardin to compare the pedunculate bodies with the cerebrum of vertebrates and to regard them as an organ of intelligence. Dujardin based his opinion on the fact that these bodies are largest and most elaborately developed in the social Hymenoptera. Leydig and Rabl-Rückard expressed a similar opinion.
Forel (1874) first observed that these bodies are largest in worker ants, smaller in the queens and vestigial in the males, and as the worker was supposed to be the most, and the male the least, intelligent, this was regarded as additional evidence in favor of Dujardin's opinion. The condition described by Forel for the ants was affirmed by Brandt (1876) for the social Hymenoptera in general. More recently Kenyon (1896), after an elaborate study of the bee's brain, has reached a similar conclusion. He says: "All that I am able at present to offer is the evidence from the minute structure and the relationships of the fibers of these bodies. This seems to be of no inconsiderable weight in support of the general idea started by Dujardin. For in connection with what was made known by Flögel and those before him and has since been confirmed and extended by other writers, one is able to see that the cells of the bodies in question are much more specialized in structure and isolated from the general mass of nerve fibers in those insects where it is generally admitted complexity of action or intelligence is greatest." He also cites experiments of Binet (1894) which tend to show that in insects "when connections between the dorso- and ventro-cerebrum are destroyed, the phenomena afterwards observed are similar to those seen in a pigeon or mammal when its cerebral hemispheres are removed."

In support of Dujardin's hypothesis, Forel has published a series of figures of the brain of the worker, female and male of the European Lasius fuliginosus, drawn to the same scale (1904). I here introduce a similar series of the American L. brevicornis (Fig. 28). Comparison of these figures shows that the pedunculate bodies do, indeed, vary quite independently of other portions of the brain and in the manner

![Fig. 29. Heads of worker (A), female (B), and male (C), Formica fusca, drawn under the same magnification, with brain, eyes and ocelli viewed as transparent objects. (Original.) Letters as in Fig. 28.](image-url)
noticed by Forel. In a similar series of *Formica glacialis* (Fig. 29), however, there are no such striking differences in the three phases. The pedunculate bodies (*pb*) are as highly developed in the female as they are in the worker, and they can hardly be said to be vestigial in the male. In *Pheidole instabilis* (Fig. 30), too, the female and soldier have well-developed pedunculate bodies, though these seem to be insignificant in the male. While, therefore, the male brain in all these species, apart from the huge development of its optic ganglia and stemmatal nerves, is manifestly deficient, I doubt whether we are justified in regarding the brain of the female as being inferior to that of the worker. It is true that the worker brain is relatively larger, notwithstanding the smaller eyes and stemmata, or the complete absence of the latter, but I would interpret this greater volume as an embryonic char-

![Fig. 30. Heads of soldier (A), worker (B), female (C), and male (D) of *Pheidole instabilis*, drawn under the same magnification, with brain, eyes and ocelli viewed as transparent objects. (Original.) Letters as in Figs. 28 and 29.](image)

ter. The worker is, in a sense, an arrested, neotenic or more immature form of the female, and it is well known that the volume of the brain and of the central nervous system in general is much greater in proportion to that of the body in embryonic and juvenile than in adult animals. Forel was probably influenced in his interpretation by the view, so long accepted, but now abandoned by myrmecologists, that the
queen ant is a degenerate creature like the queen bee. In future chapters of this work I shall have occasion to show the untenability of this supposition in the light of recent observations.¹

The foregoing considerations do not, of course, invalidate Dujardin's hypothesis. It is also true that the conditions throughout the insect class point to a direct correlation between the development of the pedunculate bodies and the instinctive activities, but a study of these structures in other Arthropods is not so unequivocal. Turner, in a contribution from my laboratory (Zool. Bull., II, 1899, pp. 155–160), showed that the pedunculate bodies not only occur in Crustacea (Cambarus) and the king crab (Limulus), but also in annelids (Nereis, Lepidonotus, Polynoe), and that they reach their greatest development in the king crab. In this animal they are a much-branched mass, which forms the bulk of the brain, and as Turner says, "simulates in structure the vertebrate cerebellum." On Dujardin's hypothesis we should therefore expect the king crab to be the most intelligent of arthropods. But although no one will deny that this animal has had ages in which to acquire a high psychical endowment, it shows no signs of having profited by its opportunities. It would seem, therefore, that the pedunculate bodies must be subjected to a more critical morphological and physiological study before they can be accepted as the insectean analogue of the human fore-brain.

The Ventral Nerve-Cord.—Although the suboesophageal ganglion, like the brain, consists of three fused ganglia, these have become less modified and are clearly discernible in sagittal sections (Fig. 27). The rule that each ganglion of the central nervous system innervates only the segment in which it originated in the embryo also holds good of the suboesophageal ganglion. We find that it sends off three pairs of nerves, containing both motor and sensory fibers. The first pair (nm), which is stouter than the two others, innervates the sense organs and muscles of the mandibles, and the second (nmx) and third (nl) the corresponding parts of the maxillae and labium respectively. The three thoracic ganglia, owing to the voluminous and complicated leg and wing muscles which they innervate, are much larger than the abdominal ganglia. Each gives off a pair of crural nerves to the legs and the prothoracic ganglion also supplies a chordotonal organ near its antero-ventral end (cho). From

¹Comparison of my figures of L. brevicornis with Forel's of L. fuliginosus reveals the fact that the female brain of the latter species is no larger than that of the worker, whereas in brevicornis there is a slight difference in size in the corresponding phases. It appears from recent observations of De Lamnoy (1908) and Emery (1908) that the queens of L. fuliginosus are but little larger than the workers and are probably temporary parasites (see Chapter XXIV). This may at least partially account for Forel's finding the brain of the female ant inferior in organization to that of the worker.
the mesothoracic ganglion arises a pair of so-called alar nerves, which innervate the great longitudinal and transverse vibratory muscles of the wings. The musculature of the epinotum, petiole and postpetiole is supplied by the first to third abdominal ganglia, the two first of which are fused with the metathoracic ganglion. The fourth abdominal (first gastric in the Myrmicidae) remains in the segment to which it belongs, but lies at its extreme anterior edge. As both this and the succeeding gastric ganglia have been secondarily drawn forward, the pairs of nerves which they give off run obliquely backward, to their innervations. Janet (1902) has found that each of the two nerves arising from each of the four anterior gastric ganglia divides into a dorsal and a ventral trunk. The former sends off a sensory nerve to the corresponding dorsal quadrant of the segment and three motor nerves to its three muscles, the latter a sensory nerve to the ventral quadrant and six motor nerves to as many muscles. The sensory nerves go to the sense-hairs of the integument. The terminal (fifth gastric) ganglion, formed, as we have seen, by a fusion of the eighth to tenth abdominal ganglia, sends off four pairs of nerves, the first to the sense organs and muscles of the stylets of the sting, the second to the sense organs and muscles of the gorgon, the third to the anal sphincter and papilla and the fourth to the walls of the hind gut.

The Sympathetic.—This consists of several minute ganglia and nerves connected with the central nervous system and supplying the musculature of the alimentary tract. It is, to judge from Janet's account of Myrmica (1902), well developed in ants and not unlike that of other insects. It may be said to embrace two systems, one suprarectal and supplying the dorsal and lateral portions of the digestive tract, the other subintestinal and lying beneath the intestine and above the ventral nerve-cord. The suprarectal system may be divided into an unpaired and a paired portion. The former begins in the small frontal ganglion (Fig. 27, fgl), which lies anterior to the brain, to which it is joined by a pair of connectives. According to Janet, these connectives arise in the protocerebrum, but other authors believe that they are of tritocerebral origin. The frontal ganglion sends a pair of coalesced nerves to the supero-anterior wall of the pharynx and a much stouter unpaired nerve, known as the recurrens (ren), downward and backward along the dorsal wall of the pharynx, to a ganglion (the hypocerebral, hcs), which lies on the cesophagus just beneath the protocerebrum. Besides innervating the cesophagus this ganglion sends back a pair of long, slender connectives (syun) along the sides of the cesophagus and crop to the point where the latter contracts to form the gizzard. Here each connective termi-
nates in a so-called pre-stomachal ganglion, which innervates the surrounding wall of the crop and gizzard. The paired supraintestinal sympathetic has an anterior and a posterior portion. The former consists of the oesophageal ganglia, which lie on each side of the hypocerebral ganglion. They are united with this by commissures and with the tritocerebrum by connectives, and innervate the sides of the oesophagus and crop. The posterior portion of the paired system is very imperfectly known. Janet maintains that the fourth pair of nerves from the terminal ganglion of the ventral cord turns forward and innervates the posterior portion of the digestive tract in somewhat the same manner as the anterior portion is innervated by the brain through the frontal and oesophageal ganglia. He, therefore, calls these the proctodeal recurrent nerves. The subintestinal sympathetic system of Myrmica comprises a series of minute, unpaired, metameric ganglia connected with several of the ganglia of the ventral cord. This system, too, both in ants and in other insects, is imperfectly known.

The Sense-Organs.—The sense-organs of ants, like those of insects in general, are modifications of the integument and the terminations of sensory nerves. Hence there can be no sense-organs in the interior of the body unless they have been carried in secondarily on infoldings of the integument. As there are no openings anywhere in the chitinous investment of the insect's body, except those at the anterior and posterior ends of the midgut, the nerve terminations are never freely exposed on the surface, but always covered with at least a very delicate layer of chitin. The number and diversity of sense-organs in insects is very great, but nevertheless, attempts have been made to trace them all back to a common primitive type. One of the most recent of these attempts is that of Berlese (1907) who finds that nearly all these organs admit of hypothetical derivation from a "proæsthesi, att a sensilla, or sense-bud, consisting of one or a few chitin-secreting hypodermal cells, a gland cell and a nerve cell. It is possible to show that this type of structure keeps recurring in the various sense-organs of even such highly-specialized insects as the ants.

Tactile (Trichodeal) Sensillæ.—As stated in a previous chapter, ants are usually covered with hairs, which are coarse and long on the body and shorter and denser on the legs and especially on the antennæ. As all of these hairs are movably articulated to the general chitinous integument and are provided with fine nerve terminations, they are universally regarded as tactile sensillæ, although they also aid in the removal of the larval or pupal skin during ecysis, for they are at first bent at their bases and applied to the chitinous layer to which they belong, but later, in becoming erect, loosen and push the overlying
exuvia away from the surface of the body. In section each hair is seen to be a hollow chitinous tube, closed at its apex and open at its base, which is bulbously swollen and fits into a ring-shaped thickening

![Diagram of ant's sensilla](image)

**Fig. 31.** Trichodeal and campaniform sensilla of ants. (Janet.) A, Trichodeal sensilla from proximal border of fore coxa of female *Lasius niger,* × 1,000; B, single sensilla from the group represented in A, × 2,000; C, longitudinal section through tip of middle coxa, trochanter and base of femur of *Myrmica rubra* worker, × 100; D, cross-section of tip of hind tibia of *M. rubra,* × 200; E, F and G, sections of campaniform sensilla from tip of mandibles of *M. rubra;* H, campaniform sensilla near articulation of wing of female *Camponotus herculeanus,* × 500; t, chitinous hair; c, chitinous integument; h, hypodermis; n, nerve-termination; w, bell, or umbrella, in the center of which the nerve terminates; x, groups of campaniform sense-organs; d, fossa or pit in the chitinous integument; p, pore in same.

of the chitinous integument (Fig. 31, A, B, Fig. 32, b). This tube is secreted by one or more large hypodermal cells, and a delicate nerve fiber extends up into its base. When the tip of the hair touches an
object the tactile impulse is evidently transmitted to the nerve through the movement of the bulbous base in its cup-shaped socket. There is, therefore, no essential difference between the tactile function of the hairs of ants and the analogous structure in mammals.

**Olfactory and Gustatory Sensillae.**—It seems to be impossible to distinguish between these organs in insects, although it may be asserted that the organs of smell are situated mainly or exclusively on the antennæ, whereas, those of taste are found on the mouth-parts, especially on the maxillæ and labium and their paipi. The antennary sensillæ of ants have been studied by Hicks (1859), Leydig (1860), Forel (1874, 1884), Lubbock (1877), Kraepelin (1883), and more recently by Krause (1907). From the researches of these authors it appears that in addition to numerous tactile hairs like those described above, there are four more modified types of sensillæ which have been more or less definitely connected with an olfactory function. These do

![Figure 32](image)

**Fig. 32.** Subdiagrammatic section of the antennal sense-organs of an ant. (Kraepelin.) *a,* Basiconic sensilla; *b,* trichodeal sensilla, or tactile hair; *c,* cœloconic sensilla; *d,* ampullaceous sensilla; *f,* flask-shaped sensilla; *g* and *h,* openings of same on surface of antenna; *i,* gland cells; *k,* chitinous integument.

not occur on the scape and first funicular joint of the antennæ, but only on the remaining joints and especially on the enlarged terminal joint, which possesses by far the greatest number of all the various sensillæ. The following is a very brief description of these extraordinary structures:

(a) **Clubs of Forel** (now called basiconic sensillae by Berlese).—These resemble the tactile hairs, but are conical and immovable at the base and their chitinous investment is exceedingly thin (Fig. 32, a). What corresponds to the cavity of the hair contains a dense bundle of delicate protoplasmic threads, which are prolongations from as many
large elliptical cells situated in the hypodermis. These cells form a compact mass, formerly supposed to be a ganglion, but now interpreted as a cluster of unicellular glands that secrete a liquid through the thin chitinous cap of the organ onto the surface of the antennæ. It is, indeed, difficult to conceive such sensillæ as having an olfactory function unless their exposed surfaces are moist like the olfactory organs in the mucous membranes of vertebrates. The nerve termination to the basiconic sensillæ applies itself to the cluster of gland cells and then breaks up into delicate branches that pass around and between the latter and up into the conical portion of the organ.

(b) Clubs Lying in Elliptical Pits (cæloconic sensillæ of Berlese).
—These may be derived from the preceding type by supposing that the conical hair has come to lie horizontally and to be enclosed in an elongated cavity in the chitinous integument (Fig. 32, c). The cellular structure of the organ is essentially the same as that of the basiconic sensillæ.

(c) Champagne-cork Organs of Forel (ampullaceous sensillæ of Berlese).—These evidently represent a further modification of the cæloconic type, on the supposition that the hair becomes smaller and more erect and the pit in which it is enclosed becomes circular, much deeper and opens on the surface of the body by means of a small pore (Fig. 32, d).

(d) Flask-shaped Organs of Lubbock and Forel.—Hicks (1859) was the first to describe these extraordinary organs in Myrmica, but Forel and Kraepelin have given a more detailed account of their structure. They are really an extreme form of the ampullaceous sensilla, and may be derived from this by supposing that the chitinous ampulla has become enormously lengthened and attenuated till it forms a narrow sac enclosing the conical hair and connected with the pore in the integument by means of a slender tube running more or less parallel with the surface of the antenna (Fig. 32, g, h). That these sensillæ have developed from those of the preceding type (c) is shown by the existence of transitional forms both in ants and in other Hymenoptera. The cellular portions of all these forms of ampullaceous sensillæ are essentially the same as those of types a and b.

The gustatory sensillæ, situated on the mouth-parts and including those in the terminal joints of the palpi, though resembling the antennary sensillæ, in general reproduce only the more primitive of the above-mentioned types, that is, those most like the typical tactile and basiconic sensillæ. The more specialized ampullaceous types are found only in the antennæ.

The Chordotonal Organs.—Recent studies have shown that these
structures, which are present in a great many insects, even in the larval stages, are typically compact, spindle-shaped bundles of sensilla, each consisting of a chitin-secreting gland and a nerve cell. These cells are arranged in a series at an angle to the integument and are stretched, like a tendon, across a cavity between opposite points in the cuticle, or between a point in the cuticle and some internal organ. The gland cell secretes and retains within its cytoplasm a peculiar cone or rod, known as the scolopal body. The chordotonal organs are supposed to be auditory in function, because they are most elaborately developed in the stridulating Orthoptera (crickets and katydids), and because their structure would seem to be adapted to responding like the chords of a musical instrument to delicate vibrations. In ants the development of these sense-organs is greatly inferior to that of the Orthoptera just mentioned, but they are nevertheless very easily seen when one knows exactly where to look for them. They were first detected by Lubbock (1877) in the proximal portion of the fore tibiae of Lasius flavus, Myrmica ruginodis and Pheidole megacephala. He pointed out their resemblance to the subgenual chordotonal organs of Orthoptera, discovered by von Siebold in 1844, but although he fancied he could discern some of their minute structure, his account and figure are very primitive. The matter was re-investigated by Graber (1882), who found the organs in Solenopsis, Myrmecina and Tetramorium, and showed that they occur not only in the fore but also in the middle and hind tibiae, that they contain scolopal bodies and are also in other respects typical chordotonal organs.
Janet (1904) has recently studied their structure with great care, and has not only added many details to those seen by his predecessors, but has also discovered a number of less conspicuous chordotonal organs in other parts of the ant's body. He finds a pair in the head at the base of the antennæ (Fig. 27,acho), one in the prosternum, just under the prothoracic ganglion (cho), with which it is connected by short nerves, a similar pair in the metasternum and two pairs, one in the petiole and another in the postpetiole, which lie near the tracheal stigmata and are innervated by the ganglia of their respective segments. Eight pairs of chordotonal organs have, therefore, been seen in the ant's body, but it is not improbable, as Janet suggests, that others exist, for such minute and recondite objects are very easily overlooked even in well-prepared sections. I find that the tibial organs (Fig. 33) are very easily seen in light-colored ants that have been simply mounted in alcohol, and that they are clearer in males than in workers or females. In clove oil, or Canada balsam, however, the structures are seen only with difficulty and after they have been located in alcoholic specimens.

The Johnstonian Organ.—This peculiar structure, first described by Johnston in 1855, and since carefully investigated by Child (1894), is very similar to the chordotonal organs. It is found only in the second antennal joint of insects and seems to reach its highest development in certain Orthorrhaphous Diptera (gnats). Child found it also in the Hymenoptera (Formica, Vespa, Bombus) and Berlese has published some good figures of it in the hornet. I find that it is decidedly larger in male than in worker and female ants, especially in those genera like Pheidole and Solenopsis, in which the males have an unusually swollen or globular second antennal (first funicular) joint. Janet seems to have overlooked the Johnstonian organs in the Myrmica, which he has studied so exhaustively. In section the organ is seen to consist of a variable but considerable number of sensillæ differing but slightly from those of the chordotonal organs, and also containing scolopal bodily. These sensillæ are stretched more or less parallel with the long axis of the funiculus, through the cavity of the second joint. Their distal or hypodermal ends are attached to the articular membrane between the second and third joints, while their proximal ends are innervated by a portion of the antennal nerve. They form a compact cylinder enclosing the remainder of the nerve which passes on into the more distal antennal joints. Both Johnston and Child are inclined to regard the sense-organs under discussion as auditory, although the latter believes that their more primitive function is tactile. As will be shown in
Chapter XXVIII, the auditory and tactile sensations of insects are not sharply distinguishable.

**The Campaniform Sensilla.**—These problematic organs have a very simple structure, consisting of a thin, bell- or umbrella-shaped piece of the chitinous cuticle forming the floor of a cavity in the much thicker, undifferentiated chitinous layer of the integument (Fig. 31, C–H). This cavity is narrowed externally and usually, but not always, opens on the surface by means of a small pore (Ep). A very delicate nerve (n) terminates in the middle of the umbrella on its concave inner surface. Organs of this description are found in various parts of the insect body—in the borders of the mandibles, at the bases of the wing membranes, in the balancers of Diptera and in the trochanters and bases of the femora. They have been found in these joints of the legs and in the mandibles of ants by Janet (1904). In the mandibles occur also other organs which may represent modifications of the campaniform sensilla, although it seems more natural to refer them to the ampullaceous type. The function of the campaniform sensilla is quite unknown. Morphologically, according to Berlese, they may be derived from a simple protæsthesiæ, in which the glandular element is lacking and only the chitinogenous and nervous elements are present.

**The Lateral Eyes.**—Each of the lateral, or compound, eyes, consists of a closely aggregated mass of sensilla, which are usually called ommatidia and consist of the three elements of the typical protæsthesiæ: hypodermal cells, which secrete the cornea (facet), gland-cells, which secrete the crystalline cone and nerve-cells known as retinulæ. There seem to be no comparative studies on the minute structure of the ommatidia in ants. It is probable that they differ but little from those of other insects. The great differences in size in the eyes of the different species and castes and their almost universal reduction or degeneration in the workers, induced Forel (1874) to investigate the size and numbers of facets, which, of course, represent the ommatidia. He found the size of the facets varying but little in the different species. The smallest were seen in the male of *Cremastogaster sordidula*, the largest in the worker of *Messor barbarus*, but the latter were only twice as broad as the former. The number of facets is extremely variable—from 1 in the worker of *Ponera punctatissima*, to 1,200 in the male of *Formica pratensis*. The variation in number of the different castes of the same species is also very striking. Thus, in *Tapinoma erraticum*, the worker has 100, the female 260, the male 400 ommatidia in each eye; in *Formica pratensis*, the corresponding numbers are 600, 830 and 1,200, and in *Solenopsis fugax* 6–9, 200, 400. A similar study of certain tropical ants (*e. g.*, *Eciton*, *Dorylus*, *Ponerinae*, etc.) would give
an even more surprising range of intraspecific variation in the number of facets. The degeneration of the lateral eyes in the workers has proceeded furthest in the African drivers (*Dorylus*) and American legionary ants (*Eciton*). In the former the eyes have disappeared completely, and the same is true of certain species of *Eciton*, but in many of the latter each eye is reduced to a single facet, which, however, is no longer connected with the brain by an optic nerve. At any rate, in the specimens of *E. schmitti*, which I sectioned, I found the vestigial optic nerve reduced to a small thread depending freely from the inner surface of the eye at some distance from the optic lobe. In some species of *Eciton* and *Ænictus* the eyes are represented only by a pair of small, pale dots in the chitinous cranium. While the females of all these genera have no better eyes than the workers, these organs in the males are extremely large and contain many hundreds of ommatidia. It is obvious, of course, that such enormous differences in the size and development of the lateral eyes in different species and in the various castes of the same species must imply corresponding visual differences.

The Median Eyes, or Stemmata.—These occur in the males and females of nearly all ants and in the workers and soldiers of a number of genera. They are largest in the males and always of very small size in the workers. In the male Dorylli, Ecitonii and Ponerinæ they are unusually well developed. In general, it may be said that they tend to vary in correlation with the lateral eyes: the better these are developed, the larger are the stemmata. Structurally the latter cannot be derived from a simple type of sensilla, like that to which we have referred the lateral eyes and the other sense-organs above described. On this account some authors believe that the stemmata are unique and extremely ancient organs, i.e., relicts of eyes that preceded the lateral eyes in the phylogeny of insects. It should be noted, however, that both lateral eyes and stemmata present the same development in the earliest known fossil insects, the Carboniferous *Palæodictyoptera*, that they do in recent species. The stemmata are supposed to give an indistinct visual image of very near objects. Further consideration of the function of these and the other sense-organs briefly described in the preceding paragraphs is reserved for a future chapter.
CHAPTER V

THE DEVELOPMENT OF ANTS

"Incredibili ζωόμα καὶ cura Formicæ educant summamque dant operam, ne vel tantillum quod spectet eorum Vermiculorum educationem atque nutritionem omittant."—Swammerdam, "Biblia Naturæ," 1737.

"Ces insectes, si peu timides et qui ne craignent point pour eux-mêmes les intempéries de l'air, sont d'une extrême sollicitude pour leur petits, ils redoutent pour ces êtres, d'une constitution délicate, les plus légères variations de l'atmosphère; s'alarment au moindre danger qui semble les menacer, et paroissent jaloux de les soustraire à nos regards."—P. Huber, "Recherches sur Les Mœurs des Fourmis Indigènes," 1810.

Ants, like other metabolic, or metamorphosing insects, pass through four consecutive stages, or instars, before reaching their adult, or imaginal form. These stages, which are known as the egg, or embryo, the larva, the semipupa, or pseudonymph and the pupa, or nymph, are very similar to those of other Hymenoptera both social and solitary. Such close adherence to an ancient method of development in insects, which, in their adult stage, present so many idiosyncrasies of structure and behavior, must be attributed to a general principle according to which the developmental stages of an organism are much more conservative than the adult. The highly modified behavior of the ants themselves towards their brood certainly contrasts very forcibly with the monotonous repetition in the young of stages essentially like those of solitary wasps and gall-flies. This contrast becomes more intelligible, however, when we follow the various phylogenetic stages through which it has been attained. Even the solitary insects make some provision for their young by placing their eggs in suitable situations, and while, among insects of the lower orders, these situations represent merely an indefinite environment, like the earth or the water, in which the young will have to seek their food, the lower Hymenoptera (saw-flies and gall-flies) deposit their eggs only on certain plants. The solitary wasps and bees make ampler provision in constructing cells for the individual larvæ and in supplying them directly with prepared foods. In all of these cases the relation of parent to offspring is both protective and nutritive, but the protective relation is still incompletely developed, since these insects are unable to remove their brood when the nest is disturbed or destroyed. The ants, however, have entered into much more intimate relations with their progeny. They
never construct elaborate earthen, paper or waxen cells for the individual larvae, and, unlike the solitary bees and wasps, which never see their brood, or the social bees and wasps, whose experience is largely confined to the heads and gaping mouths of their progeny, the ants have acquired an extensive and uniform experience with all the developmental stages of their species from the egg to the adult.

Fig. 34. Interior of a formicary to show the classification of the larvae and pupae according to their stages. (Ern. André.)
They not only feed, but clean and transport the young from place to place, thus utilizing to the advantage of their development the ever-varying temperature and humidity of the soil. By this means they also protect them from exposure to light and enemies. Moreover, they assist the young to undergo their transformation by embedding them in the earth till the cocoons are woven, and eventually extricate the hatching callows from their envelopes. This freedom in dealing with the brood is certainly one of the most striking manifestations of the plasticity of ants. The remarkable consequences which it entails in their relations with other insects will be considered in future chapters.

As the eggs, larvæ and pupæ develop in the dark recesses of the nest, these stages are always of a pale color, usually translucent white or yellowish, more rarely greenish or roseate, like the corresponding stages of other insects that develop in dark cavities of the soil or in the tissues of plants or animals. Ants rarely or never bring the brood to the surface unless they feel compelled to move to another nest or belong to species like the slave-makers, which kidnap the young of other ants. Occasionally, however, during very warm weather, the young may be brought to the surface after nightfall. In the dry deserts of western Texas, I have seen *Ischnomyrmex cockerelli* bring its larvæ and pupæ out onto the large crater of the nest about 9 P. M. and carry them leisurely to and fro, much as human nurses wheel their charges about the city parks in the cool of the evening.

Since the brood is always nurtured in darkness we must suppose that the manipulation which this implies depends on highly developed tactile and olfactory senses to the exclusion of vision. Evidence of the exquisite perfection of these senses of contact-odor is seen in the segregation of the brood according to age and condition. The eggs, larvæ and pupæ of different sizes are placed in separate piles in the same or different chambers of the nest, reminding one, as Lubbock (1894, p. 7) aptly says, "of a school divided into five or six classes" (Fig. 34). Inspection of the nests of many species of ants shows that this habit is very prevalent, although it is not so clearly manifested in primitive
groups (Ponerinæ) or in species that form small colonies, as in the opulent formicaries of the more highly specialized genera (Myrmica, Aphanogaster, Formica, Camponotus, etc.). This classification seems to be an expression of a need for different degrees of moisture and temperature in different developmental stages, as Janet has shown (1904, pp. 38, 39). He says: "In regard to the degree of humidity most favorable for each class of progeny, I have made the following observation on artificial nests of a porous substance, in which the humidity was very regularly graduated, and containing a populous colony of Myrmica rubra laevinodis, with extremely numerous offspring. The

![Image](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

**Fig. 36. Larvae of Pogonomyrmez molefaciens, magnified about 5 diameters.**

(Original)

larvae of medium and large size had been placed on the floor of a very damp chamber. In the less humid neighboring chamber, enormous packets of eggs were found at the bottom of the wall, and above them, attached by their hooked hairs, were all the just-hatched larvae. All the pupae were in the even dryer adjacent chamber." As the ants are continually shifting their young about in the nest in response to diurnal changes of moisture and temperature, bringing them nearer the surface during the warm hours of the day and carrying them below during the cooler nights, the classification in wild colonies is best seen only when the weather has been unusually constant for several days.

The eggs of ants are minute bodies, hardly more than .5 mm. long even in the largest species, and usually much smaller. They are commonly overlooked by the casual observer who applies the term "ants'
eggs" erroneously to the cocoons or even to the larvæ and pupæ of many of our species. In a few groups, like the Attii, the eggs are nearly spherical or broadly elliptical, but in most species they are elongate elliptical (Fig. 45, a). In certain Ponerinæ (Parasycia, Lobopelta, Ponera, etc.) they are unusually long and slender and may be described as cylindrical (Figs. 37, a, and 40, a). The yolk, like that of the bee's and wasp's egg, is very thin and liquid and is enveloped by a delicate, transparent shell, or chorion. As in other elongated insect eggs, the longitudinal axis of the future embryo and adult insect is clearly predetermined and corresponds with the long axis of the egg. One of its poles therefore foreshadows the anterior, or cephalic, the other the posterior, or caudal end of the ant. There are said to be no differences in the eggs corresponding to the castes into which they develop, but this matter requires further investigation. It is certain that the eggs deposited by the same female often vary considerably in size and shape, and those laid by the workers are sometimes only half as large as those laid by females of the same species. As the ants frequently lick the eggs it is possible that the saliva may be absorbed by osmosis and increase their volume. This salivary coating is also important in causing the eggs to cohere in packets so that they can be quickly and easily carried away in case of danger. It is probable, moreover, that the saliva contains some antiseptic substance which prevents the destruction of the eggs by fungi.

While the eggs are passing out of the oviducts of the female they may be fertilized with some of the spermatozoa stored in the spermatotheca, or they may pass the orifice of this organ and escape from the body without fertilization. The latter, is, of course, always the case in old females whose supply of spermatozoa has been exhausted, or in workers, which usually lack the spermatotheca and are not known to mate with males. According to a well-known theory, advanced by Dzierzon for the honey-bee, the unfertilized eggs develop into males, the fertilized eggs into females or workers. Although it has been shown by a number of authors, and especially by Miss Fielde (1905f), that unfertilized eggs develop into males, Tanner (1892), Reichenbach (1902), and Mrs. Comstock (see Wheeler, 1903a, pp. 835, 836) have recorded observations which indicate that the unfertilized eggs of

---

**Fig. 37.** *Parasycia angusta.* (Original.) a, Eggs; b, young larva, lateral view.
certain species (*Lasius niger, Atta*) may develop into workers. The Dzierzon theory cannot, therefore, be rigorously extended to the ants till this matter has been more thoroughly investigated.

No complete embryological study of the ants has yet been undertaken. The earliest account of the development of these insects is by Ganin (1869). He studied the eggs of *Lasius flavus, Formica fusca, Myrmica levinodis* and *ruginodis* and *Tetramorium cespitum*, and described the formation of the amnion. This envelope, he maintained, arises by delamination from the blastoderm, but as his investigations were made before modern embryological methods were introduced, it is impossible to attach much importance to his statements. Several years ago Blochmann published two short papers (1884, 1886) on the growth of the ovarian egg, and the formation of the polar bodies and blastoderm in *Camponotus ligniperdus* and *Formica fusca*. I have examined some of the later stages of *F. gnava* and find them to be very similar to those of the bee (*Apis, Chalicodoma*) and wasp (*Polistes*). The accompanying sketch (Fig. 35) of a young embryo of *F. gnava* is interesting as showing some of the conservative traits in the development of ants. Not only are there distinct traces of the antennæ (not seen in the figure, as the head is folded over the anterior pole of the egg) and three pairs of thoracic legs, but there are also traces of the abdominal appendages, although all of these disappear before the hatching of the larva. The thoracic limbs and antennæ again develop in the larval stage, but the evanescent abdominal appendages, with the exception of those that go to form the parts of the sting of the adult, are mere vestiges, harking back, so to speak, to the legs of ancient larval types like the caterpillar, or eruciform larva of the sawflies or even to the Palæodictyopteroid ancestors of all insects.

The larva emerges from the egg as a soft, legless, translucent grub, usually shaped like a "crook-necked" squash or gourd, with a broad, straight posterior and narrower, curved anterior end terminating in a small but distinct head (Fig. 36). In some forms (*Eciton, Parasyctula, Lobopelta*, etc.) the body is more cylindrical (Fig. 37). In all cases, however, it consists of a head and thirteen more or less clearly marked segments. Three of these belong to the thorax, the remainder to the
abdomen, i.e., to the pedicel plus the gaster of the adult. In a few genera (*Pseudomyrma*) the head, as Emery (1899e) has shown, bears minute vestiges of antennæ. The mouth-parts are distinct and consist of a pair of mandibles, a pair of fleshy maxillæ and an unpaired labium. Both maxillæ and labium are furnished with small, conical tactile papillæ (Figs. 38–41), and the latter also bears the opening of the sericeteries, or spinning glands. No traces of eyes are visible. There are ten pairs of tracheal openings, a pair each for the meso- and metathoracic and the eight anterior abdominal segments.

The transparent chitinous integument is very thin and easily ruptured, so that handling the larvæ must require considerable care on the part of the ants. It is sometimes naked (*Platythyrea*), but much more frequently covered with chitinous hairs which in different species show a bewildering diversity of form and are most abundant and conspicuous in young individuals. These hairs, which Janet has called "poils d’accochage," may be long, simple and rigid, or flexuous, helicoid, furcate or tipped with single or double hooks, ramosed, plumose or serrate (Figs. 37–43). Some species have hairs of very different kinds on different parts of the body. These are all adaptive structures with well-defined functions, at least in certain species. The following are some of these functions:

1. The hairs may serve to protect the delicate larvæ from the mandibles of their voracious or underfed sister larvæ.

2. They prevent the body of the larva from lying directly in contact with the moist soil of the nest.

3. In many Myrmicinæ the pairs of very long, hooked, dorsal hairs which have an S- or C-shaped flexure in their bases (Fig. 43), serve to anchor the larvæ to the walls of the nest, the under surfaces of stones, etc. Janet (1904, p. 32) has shown that the flexure acts like a spring and prevents the rupture of the thin integument when the larva is hastily picked up by the ants, for when the hair is drawn out, the terminal hooks have time to become inclined and release their hold.

4. The hairs hold the young larvæ together in packets and thus
function like the salivary coating of the eggs, in enabling the ants to transport large numbers of their offspring with little effort. This is a matter of great moment when the colony is disturbed or attacked and the young have to be carried away and concealed with great dispatch.

Besides hairs, the larva of many Ponerine genera (Lobopelta, Pachycondyla, Ponera, Diacamma, etc.) have prominent, pointed, or rounded tubercles which probably have a protective function (Figs. 39–41), and in addition to these, Ponera has pairs of glutinous dorsal tubercles (Fig. 41) which, like the flexuous, hooked hairs of many Myrmicinae, serve to attach the larva to the walls of the nest (Wheeler, 1900e).

The feeding of the larva is of considerable interest owing to the prevailing supposition that the quantity or quality of the food, or both, determine whether the larva hatching from a fertilized egg shall become a worker or a female. Recent observations have shown that the different species adopt very different methods of nourishing their brood. Many ants, like most Camponotinae, Dolichoderinae and Myrmicinae, feed their larva only on regurgitated liquids, whereas the Ponerinae, many Myrmicinae and probably also the Dorylinae, feed them directly with pieces of the same kind of food that they bring into the nest for their own consumption. Carnivorous species give their larva pieces of insects, and the harvesting ants (Pogonomyrmex, some species of Pheidole) administer fragments of seeds. In larva that are habitually fed on such resistant substance the mandibles are apt to be more highly developed. Some species (Aphaenogaster, Lasius, Pheidole, etc.) undoubtedly feed their brood both with regurgitated and solid food. Certain groups of ants that have developed a specialized diet in their adult stages show a corresponding specialization in feeding their young. Thus the larva of the fungus-growing Attii of tropical America are nourished with wisps of fungus-hyphae, and according to Dahl (1901, p. 31) the larva of the East Indian Campo-
notus quadriceps feed directly on the pith of the plants in which the insects nest (see Fig. 168).

The internal structure of the larva, which is essentially that of the mature embryo, has been described by Ganin (1876), Dewitz (1877, 1878), Nasonow (1886) and Karawaiew (1898, 1900) for Formica, Myrmica and Lasius, by Berlese (1901) for Tapinoma, and by Pérez (1902) for Formica rufa. In the following account I have followed Pérez. The alimentary tract of the larva (Fig. 44) is much simpler than that of the adult described in Chapter III. The thin outer integument is folded into the body to form the walls of a slender pharynx and oesophagus, which is, therefore, of ectodermal origin and corresponds to the stomodæum of the embryo. Muscles extend from the walls of the pharynx to the dorsal integument and function as dilators during the sucking or imbibing movements of the larva. At its posterior end the pharynx opens on an elevated, valvular papilla into the chylific stomach, which is equivalent to the embryonic mesenteron, or mid-gut. It is a spacious, ovoid receptacle, somewhat attenuated anteriorly in the future proventricular region and closed posteriorly where it unites with the anterior end of the hind-gut, or embryonic proctodæum. The latter is formed by a tubular invagination of the ectoderm similar to that which forms the oesophagus. Owing to the closure between the chylific stomach and the hind-gut, all the undigested portions of the larval food enclosed in the series of successively sloughed peritrophic membranes, accumulate in the cavity of the stomach and form a black, elliptical mass, the meconium, which often shows through the translucent body walls of the larva. The hind-gut is differentiated into two regions, a more slender, tubular anterior portion, the small intestine, and a more capacious sac, the large intestine. The latter is constricted behind and opens on the surface as the anus, which has the form of a transverse slit and is provided with a sphincter muscle. * Four Malpighian tubules open into the anterior blind end of the small intestine and describe a few convolutions in the dorsal body cavity. In the ventral body cavity lies a pair of less
convoluted sericteries, or spinning glands, which unite to form a duct, opening on the tip of the labium. These organs are also present in larvae that do not spin cocoons. The nervous system consists of a cerebral ganglion, connected by a pair of commissures surrounding the oesophagus, with the most anterior of a series of twelve ganglia, which extend through the body on the ventral side of the alimentary tract. The first, or suboesophageal ganglion, is a fusion of the ganglia of the mandibular, maxillary and labial segments of the embryo. The tubular heart lies just under the dorsal integument and terminates anteriorly beneath the brain. The pericardial cells float out into the body like a velum on each side of the heart. The feebly developed muscular system consists of longitudinal fibres lying in two latero-dorsal and two latero-ventral zones in the various segments. Another set of muscles, which are oblique antero-posteriorly, have their dorsal insertions at the intersegmental constrictions near the stigmata and their ventral insertions at the anterior border of the preceding segment. Segmental groups of oenocytes are suspended near these oblique muscles. The tracheal system consists of a pair of longitudinal trunks which send off short branches to the adjacent stigmata. The greater portion of the spaces between the above-described organs is filled with lobes of the voluminous fat-body which shows through the transparent integument and gives the larva its shining white, greenish or pinkish color. The undeveloped reproductive organs are clearly discernible as small bodies in the postero-dorsal region of the abdomen, and the histoblasts, or imaginal discs, are present as small, paired clusters of formative cells in the hypodermis of the integument. They represent the adult antennae, legs, wings, copulatory organs, parts of the sting, etc. Each histoblast receives a slender nerve.

When the larva approaches its full size important changes occur in both its external and internal structure in preparation for metamorphosis, or pupation. For an account of the internal changes, which are too numerous and intricate to be described here, the reader is referred to the works of Karawaiw, Berlese and Pérez. The external changes may be briefly considered. When full-grown the larva passes
on to the semipupa stage, but in certain ants (Ponerinae and most Camponotinae) it first spins a cocoon (Figs. 45 and 46). Except for this episode, the development of all ants is essentially the same. The mature larvae of cocoon-spinning species have to be buried in the earth by the workers or covered with particles of detritus, since the larva cannot spin an elliptical envelope about itself while it lies freely in the nest, but must lie in a cavity so that it can fix the threads from its sericities to different points in an adjoining wall. The larva moves its head back and forth and lines the cavity in which it lies with a fine web of silk. As soon as this has been accomplished it is unearthed by the workers and the foreign particles adhering to the outer surface of the cocoon are carefully removed. The cocoon is now found to contain a semipupa (Figs. 47, a, and 49), which resembles the larva except that the body has become straight and rigid, with its anterior end no longer bent in an arc and with a pronounced constriction behind the epinotal segment. Beneath the cuticle the legs, wings and cephalic appendages, which have developed in the meantime from the histoblasts, are clearly discernible, though still of small size, more or less folded and closely applied to one another and to the surface of the body. The larval skin is soon ruptured along the back (Fig. 47, b), stripped from the body and pushed into the caudal pole of the cocoon. The small intestine has meanwhile formed an open communication with the chylific stomach and the mass of meconium and peritrophic membranes is voided through the large intestine and also deposited in the posterior pole where it forms a black or dark brown spot. In the meantime the appendages have been growing rapidly and assuming their adult structure, though they are still bent and closely applied to the body (Fig. 47, c). The further external changes in the quiescent pupa, which is now definitely formed, consist in a gradual deposition of pigment. This makes its appearance first in the eyes, which become intensely black before the color spreads over the remainder of the body (Fig. 49). Finally, when all the organs have reached their full development, the workers cut open the antero-ventral
wall of the cocoon, draw forth the young and strip the enveloping cuticle from its body and appendages. The newly hatched ant which has not yet acquired its deep adult coloration is known as a callow. Owing to the absence of wings, the hatching of the workers is somewhat more easily accomplished than that of the males and females. Dewitz (1878) has shown that the worker larva actually possesses minute histoblasts of these appendages, but they do not develop except in certain abnormal individuals which I have called pterergates (Fig. 63).

In ant larvae that do not spin cocoons, development and hatching are, of course, considerably simplified (Figs. 48 and 49). In such species the adult larva passes at once to the semipupa stage after discharging the meconium. A worker receives the black pellet in its mandibles, or even pulls it out of the large intestine and deposits it on the refuse heap of the nest. The fact that the cocoon is constantly present in the most primitive ants and as constantly lacking in large groups of highly specialized forms, shows that it is an ancient inheritance from solitary, wasp-like ancestors. Certain Camponotine genera and subgenera (Pre-nolepis, Ecophylla, Plagiolepis and Colobopsis) always have nude pupae, and in certain species of Formica and Lasius the cocoon may be present or absent in the brood of the same colony or even in the male and female pupae. Janet (1896c) regards the sudden elimination of the envelope in these species as a mutation, or saltatory variation. I have seen the nude pupae of a Dolichoderine ant (Iridomyrmex geinitzi) in the Baltic amber (Lower Oligocene), so that the complete elimination of the cocoon, in this subfamily at

---

**Fig. 44.** Anatomy of ant larva. (Pérez.) b, Brain; n, ventral nerve cord; o, oesophagus; p, proventriculus; s, midgut (stomach); v, mass of substance to be excreted; r, rectum; m, Malpighian vessel; g, spinning gland; d, duct of same opening on labium; h, heart.
least, is not a very recent development. The shape and color of the cocoon differ considerably in different species. In *Leptogenys*, for example, it is very long and slender and of a dark-brown color, in *Lasius* and *Formica* it is a pale buff or whitish and broadly elliptical, in *Ponera pennsylvanica* it is oblong and sulphur yellow.

![Image](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

**Fig. 45. Componotus americanus X 2.** (Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and Dr. O. S. Strong.) a, Egg; b, young larva; c, older larva; d, worker cocoons; e, female cocoon; f, worker major pupa removed from cocoon; g, worker media in the act of hatching; h, major workers; i, minor workers; k, virgin female; l, males.

Little attention has been paid to the coloration of the callows as compared with the mature ants. In certain species, when the latter
are black, the callows are drab or yellowish (*Formica subsericea*), while in others they may be orange or deep red (*Platythyrea punctata*). The callows of bright red ants are often sulphur yellow or orange (*Polyergus, Pogonomyrmex, Myrmica mutica*), while in the yellow species, like our North American *Lasius* of the subgenus *Acanthomyops*, the callows are sordid white or drab (Fig. 46, a).

![Image](image.png)

**Fig. 46.** *Acanthomyops claviger* workers and cocoons, \( \times 2 \). (Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and Dr. O. S. Strong.) a, Callow workers; b, queen cocoons; remaining cocoons those of workers.

The length of embryonic, larval and pupal life appears to be highly variable and to depend very intimately on temperature. Wasmann (1891c) and Miss Field (1905g) have shown that a rise of temperature at once induces both females and workers to lay and accelerates the
growth of the larvae. According to Miss Fielde: "It appears that the time of development may be altered by a change of the prevailing temperature and that an intervening period of recuperation will be maintained in spite of a temperature stimulus. Other factors being equal, the development of the eggs within the ovaries, the deposit of the eggs, the feeding and growth of the larva, the pupation and hatching, all appear to be determined by temperature. The degree of heat suiting the species probably varies for the different stages of development. . . Among the ant-young observed by me, none has developed at a temperature below 70° F., while long exposure to a degree of heat above 90° F. manifestly causes injury." Both Miss Fielde and Janet have taken pains to ascertain the duration of the embryonic, larval and pupal stages. Their results are remarkably similar when we consider that they were made on different species and in different countries. For *Aphænogaster fulva* Miss Fielde gives the duration of the embryonic period as 17 to 22 days (usually 19 days), that of the larval period as 24 to 27 and the pupal period as 13 to 22 days, while Janet gives as the corresponding periods for *Myrmica rubra* 23 to 24 days, 30 to 71 days, and 18 to 22 days. This makes the total for the entire development of *A. fulva* 54 to 141 days and of *M. rubra* 71 to 117 days. According to Miss Fielde, the parthenogenetic offspring of workers develop much more slowly than the offspring of females. In wild colonies development is most rapid during the spring and summer months, and undoubtedly in many species the larvae manage to live from November till the following March without showing any signs of development.

Although the developmental periods above given are unusually long for metabolic insects, the longevity of adult ants is still more remarkable. The male is supposed to be very short-lived and there can be little doubt that in most species it dies soon after the nuptial flight. Still Lubbock (1894) mentions males of *Myrmica ruginodis* which lived in an artificial nest from August 14 till the following April, and Janet (1904, p. 40) kept males of *M. rubra* alive from October 12 till the beginning of April. The males undoubtedly live
Fig. 48. Colony of Aphanogaster picea with naked brood, slightly enlarged. (Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and O. S. Strong.) a, Mother queen of colony; b, male.
as long or even longer in many species of *Camponotus* and *Prenolepis*, whose sexual forms do not mate till the following spring. The longevity of the workers is certainly much greater than that of the males. Lubbock (1894, p. 12) had workers of *Formica cinerea* that lived nearly five years, workers of *F. sanguinea* that had lived at least five years, and some individuals of *F. fusca* and *Lasius niger* that attained an age of more than six years. That the workers of the Myrmicinæ are almost or quite as long-lived may be inferred from the fact that Miss Fielde has kept those of *A. fulva* under observation for a period of three years. But even greater than the longevity of the worker is that of the female, as would be expected from the larger size and vigor of this caste. Janet (1904, p. 42–45) records the age of a female *Lasius alienus* as fully ten years, and Lubbock kept a female *F. fusca* alive from December, 1874, till August, 1888, "when she must have been nearly fifteen years old, and, of course, may have been more. She attained, therefore, by far the greatest age of any insect on record."

Closely related to the longevity of adult ants is the question of their resistance to adverse conditions. On this subject, which is of considerable importance in connection with the economic treatment of these insects, Miss Fielde has published (1901 to 1905) a number of interesting and painstaking observations. Although the optimum temperature for our northern ants lies between 70° and 80° F., the minimum and maximum to which they can be subjected and still survive, are very widely separated. Miss Fielde froze females, workers and a brood of *Aphanogetaster fulva* for twenty-four hours at — 5° C. (23° F.). The insects were then gradually thawed and all survived. Even the frozen eggs, larvæ and pupæ subsequently developed in a normal manner. When the temperature was raised to 30° C. (86° F.) the ants began to show signs of discomfort, at 35° C. (96° F.) the smallest individuals swooned, and even the most vigorous ants with which she experimented succumbed after two minutes' exposure to 50° C. (122° F.). It has been known for some time that female ants can go without food for the greater part of the year while they are founding their colonies. Miss Fielde has demonstrated that large workers can fast for almost equally long periods. She succeeded in keeping *F. subsericea* and *Camponotus americanus* workers alive without food for from 7 to 9 months. Ants are also able to endure long submergence in cool or cold water. Miss Fielde found that *Lasius latipes* survived 27 hours of this treatment; *C. pennsylvanicus*, 70 hours, and *Aphanogetaster fulva* eight days! This explains how ants that sometimes nest in the beds of streams, like the Texan *Pogonomyr-
Fig. 49. Adult worker larvæ, semipupæ, and nude and covered pupæ in various stages of pigmentation of *Formica subsericea*, X 2. (Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and Dr. O. S. Strong.)
*mex barbatus*, can survive a flood of several days' duration. She did not test the resistance of ants to drought, but that this is considerable in many species is shown by the rich ant-fauna of many deserts like the Sahara and the deserts of the Southwestern States and northern Mexico. Miss Fielde also found that ants exhibit considerable resistance to the action of very violent poisons such as corrosive sublimate, potassium cyanide and carbolic acid. Their tenacity is best shown, however, in the number of days they are able to live after severe maiming, like decapitation. Janet (1898, p. 130) kept a beheaded *F. rufa* alive for 19 days, and Miss Fielde kept a beheaded worker of *C. pennsylvanicus* alive for 41 days. And this ant walked about to within two days of its death! In their experiments Janet and Miss Fielde found that the males are least, the females most resistant to adverse conditions, and that the vitality of the workers varies directly as their size.

These facts, with others to be produced in the sequel, show that ants are made of remarkably tenacious protoplasm. Chained to the earth as they are, they have come to adapt themselves perfectly to its great thermal vicissitudes, its droughts and floods, and its precarious and fluctuating food-supply.
CHAPTER VI

POLYMORPHISM

"Ce peuple de Pygmées, de Troglodytes, est, en effet, digne de toute notre admiration. Peut-on voir une société dont les membres qui la composent aient plus d'amour public? qui soient plus désintéressés? qui aient pour la travail une ardeur plus opiniâtre et plus soutenue? Quel singulier phénomène! Je ne vois dans la très-grande majorité de ce peuple que des êtres sourds à la voix de l'amour, incapables même de se reproduire, et qui goûtent néanmoins le sentiment le plus exquis de la maternité, qui en ont toute la tendresse, qui ne pensent, n'agissent, ne vivent en un mot que pour des pupilles dont la Nature les fit tuteurs et nourriciers. Cette république n'est pas sujette à ces vicissitudes de formes, à cette mobilité dans les pouvoirs, à ces fluctuations perpétuelles qui agissent nos républiques, et font le tourment des citoyens. Depuis que la fourmi est fourmi, elle a toujours vécu de même; elle n'a eu qu'une seule volonté, qu'une seule loi, et cette volonté, cette loi ont constamment pour base l'amour de ses semblables."—Latreille, "Histoire Naturelle des Fourmis," 1802.

There is a sense in which the term polymorphism is applicable to all living organisms, since no two of these are ever exactly alike. But when employed in this sense, the term is merely a synonym of "variation," which is the more apt, since polymorphism has an essentially morphological tinge, whereas variation embraces also the psychological, physiological and ethological differences between organisms. In zoölogy the term polymorphism is progressively restricted, first, to cases in which individuals of the same species may be recognized as constituting two or more groups, or castes, each of which has its own definite characters or complexion. Second, the term is applied only to animals in which these intraspecific groups coexist in space and do not arise through metamorphosis or constitute successive generations. Cases of the latter description are referred to as "alternation of generations" and "seasonal polymorphism." And third, the intraspecific groups of reproductive individuals existing in all gonochoristic, or separate-sexed Metazoa are placed in the category of "sex" or "sexual dimorphism." There remain, therefore, as properly representing the phenomena of polymorphism only those animals in which characteristic intraspecific and intrasexual groups of individuals may be recognized, or, in simpler language, those species in which one or both of the sexes appear under two or more distinct forms.

As thus restricted polymorphism is of rare occurrence in the animal kingdom and may be said to occur only in colonial or social species where its existence is commonly attributed to a physiological division.
of labor. It attains its clearest expression in the social insects, in some of which, like the termites, we find both sexes equally polymorphic, while in others, like the ants, social bees, and wasps, the female alone, with rare exceptions, is differentiated into distinct castes. This restriction of polymorphism to the female in the social Hymenoptera, with which we are here especially concerned, is easily intelligible if it be traceable, as is usually supposed, to a physiological division of labor, for the colonies of ants, bees and wasps are essentially more or less permanent families of females, the male representing merely a fertilizing agency temporarily intruding itself on the activities of the community at the moment it becomes necessary to start other colonies.

![Males of Aphanogaster picea. (Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and Dr. O. S. Strong.)](image)

We may say, therefore, that polymorphism among social Hymenoptera is a physical expression of the high degree of social plasticity and efficiency of the female sex among these insects. This is shown more specifically in two characteristics of the female, namely the extraordinary intricacy and amplitude of her instincts, which are thoroughly representative of the species, and her ability to reproduce parthenogenetically. This, of course, means a considerable degree of autonomy even in the reproductive sphere. But parthenogenesis, while undoubtedly contributing to the social efficiency of the female, must be regarded and treated as an independent phenomenon, without closer connection with polymorphism, for the ability to develop from unfertilized eggs is an ancient characteristic of the Hymenoptera and
Fig. 51. Colony of Acanthomyops claviger, showing workers, deutilated and virgin females, males, worker, male and female cocoons. X 2. (Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and Dr. O. S. Strong).
many other insects, which made its appearance among the solitary species, like the Tenthredinidae and Cynipidae, long before the development of social life. Moreover, polymorphism may occur in male insects which, of course, are not parthenogenetic. That parthenogenesis is intimately connected with sexual dimorphism, at least among the

---

**Fig. 52. Pheidole instabilis.** (Original.) *a,* Soldier; *b–e,* intermediate workers; *f,* typical worker (micrergate); *g,* deâlated female; *h,* male.
social Hymenoptera, seems to be evident from the fact that the males usually if not always develop from unfertilized, the females from fertilized eggs.

While the bumble-bees and wasps show us the ancient stages in the development of polymorphism, the ants as a group, with the exception of a few parasitic genera that have secondarily lost this character, are all completely polymorphic. It is conceivable that the development of different castes in the female may have arisen independently in each of the three groups of the social Hymenoptera, although it is equally probable that they may have inherited a tendency to polymorphism from a common extinct ancestry. On either hypothesis, however, we must admit that the ants have carried the development of the female castes much further than the social bees and wasps,

Fig. 53. Cryptocerus varians. (Original.) a, Soldier; b, same in profile; c, head of same from above; d, worker; e, female; f, male.
since they have not only produced a wingless form of the worker, in addition to the winged female, or queen, but in many cases also two distinct castes of workers known as the worker proper and the soldier.

Different authors have framed very different conceptions of the phylogenetic beginnings of social life among the Hymenoptera and consequently also of the phylogenetic origin and development of polymorphism. Thus Herbert Spencer (1893) evidently conceived the colony as having arisen from consociation of adult individuals, and although he unfortunately selected a parasitic ant, the amazon (*Polyergus rufescens*), on which to hang his hypothesis, there are a few facts which at first sight seem to make his view applicable to other social Hymenoptera. Fabre (1894) once found some hundreds of specimens of a solitary wasp (*Ammophila hirsuta*) huddled together under a stone on the summit of Mt. Ventoux in the Provence, at an altitude of about 5,500 feet, and Forel (1874) found more than fifty deálated females of *Formica rufa* under similar conditions on the Simplon. I have myself seen collections of a large red and yellow *Amblytedeles* under stones on Pike's Peak at an altitude of more than 13,000 feet, and a mass of about seventy deálated females of *Formica gnavw* apparently hibernating after the nuptial flight under a stone near Austin, Texas. I am convinced, however, that such congregations are either entirely fortuitous, especially where the insects of one species are very abundant and there are few available stones, or, that they are, as in the case of *F. rufa* and *gnava*, merely a manifestation of highly developed social proclivities and not of such proclivities in process of development.

A very different view from that of Spencer is adopted by most authors, who regard the insect colony as having arisen, not from a chance concourse of adult individuals, but from a natural affiliation of mother and offspring. This view, which has been elaborated by Marshall (1889) among others, presents many advantages over that of Spencer, not the least of which is its agreement with what actually occurs in the founding of the existing colonies of wasps, bumble-bees and ants. These colonies pass through an ontogenetic stage which has all the appearance of repeating the conditions under which colonial life first made its appearance in the phylogenetic history of the species—the solitary mother insect rearing and affiliating her offspring under conditions which would seem to arise naturally from the breeding habits of the nonsocial Hymenoptera. The exceptional methods of colony formation seen in the swarming of the honey bee and in the temporary and permanent parasitism of certain ants, are too obviously secondary and of too recent a development to require extended comment. The
bond which held mother and daughters together as a community was from the first no other than that which binds human societies together—the bond of hunger and affection. The daughter insects in the primitive colony became dependent organisms as a result of two factors: inadequate nourishment and the ability to pupate very prematurely. But this very ability seems to have entailed an incompleteness of adult structure and instincts, which in turn must have confirmed the division of labor and thus tended to perfect the social organization.

Before further discussing the problems suggested by this view of the origin of the colony and the general subject of polymorphism, it will be advisable to pass in review the series of different phases known to occur among ants. This review will be facilitated by consulting the accompanying diagram, in which I have endeavored to arrange

the various phases so as to bring out their morphological relations to one another. The phases may be divided into two main groups, the normal and the pathological. In the diagram the names of the latter are printed in italics. The normal phases may be again divided into primary or typical, and secondary or atypical, the former comprising only the three original phases, male, female and worker, the latter the remaining phases, which, however, are far from having the
same dignity or frequency. The three typical phases are placed at
the angles of an isosceles triangle, the excess developments being placed
to the right, the defect developments to the left, of a vertical line
passing through the middle of the diagram. The arrows indicate the
directions of the affinities of the secondary phases and suggest that
those on the sides of the triangle are annexant, whereas those which
radiate outward from its angles represent the new departures with
excess and defect characters.

1. The male (anêr) is far and away the most stable of the three
typical phases which are found in all but a few monotypic and para-
sitic genera of ants. This is
best shown in the general uni-
formity of structure and color-
oration which characterize this
sex in genera whose female
forms (workers and queens)
are widely different; e. g., in
such a series of cases as Myr-
meccia, Odontomachus, Cryp-
tocerus (Fig. 53), Formica,
Pheidole (Fig. 52), etc. In all
of these genera the males are
very similar, at least superfi-
cially, whereas the workers
and females are very diverse.
The body of the male ant is
graceful in form, one might
almost say emaciated (Fig.
50). Its sense-organs (espe-
cially the eyes and antennae),
wings and genitalia are highly
developed; its mandibles are
more or less imperfectly de-
veloped, and in correlation with
them the head is proportionally
shorter, smaller and rounder
than in the females and workers of the same species. Even when the
latter phases have brilliant or metallic colors, as in certain species of
Macromischa and Rhytidoponera, the males are uniformly red, yellow,
brown or black. Yet notwithstanding this monotony of structure and
coloration, the male type may present interesting modifications.
2. The *macranér* is an unusually large form of male which occasionally occurs in populous colonies.

3. The *micranér* or dwarf male, differs from the typical form merely in its smaller stature. Such forms often arise in artificial nests.

4. The *dorylanér* is an unusually large form peculiar to the driver and legionary ants of the subfamily Dorylinæ (*Dorylus* and *Eciton*).

It is characterized by its large and peculiarly modified mandibles, long cylindrical gaster and singular genitalia (Figs. 141, E, and 142). It may be regarded as an aberrant macranér that has come to be the typical male of the Dorylinæ.

5. The *ergatanér*, ergatomorphic, or ergatoid male resembles the worker in having no wings and in the structure of the antennæ. It occurs in the genera *Ponera*, *Formicoxenus*, *Symmyrmica*, *Technomyrmex* and *Cardiocondyla*. In certain species of *Ponera* (*P. punctatissima* and *ergatanandria*) and in *Formicoxenus nitidulus* the head and thorax are surprisingly worker-like, in other forms like *Symmyrmica chamberlini* these parts are more like those of the ordinary ant, while *P. eduardi* shows a more intermediate development of the head with a
worker-like thorax. Forel (1904h) has recently shown that the ergatانâr may coexist with the anér, at least in one species of Ponera (*P. eduardi* Forel). In other words, this ant has dimorphic males (Fig. 54, B and C).

6. The *gynaecanér*, or gynœcomorphic male occurs in certain parasitic and workerless genera (*Anergates* and *Epacys*) and resembles a female rather than a worker form. The male of *Anergates* is wingless, but has the same number of antennal joints as the female (Fig. 279). In *Epacys* (Fig. 278) both sexes are very much alike and both have 11-12-jointed antennæ (Emery, 1906d).

7. The *phthisanér* is a pupal male which in its larval or semipupul state has its juices partially extracted by an Oraisema larva. This male is too much depleted to pass on to the imaginal stage. The wings are suppressed and the legs, head, thorax and antennæ remain abortive.

8. The female (*gyne*), or queen, is the more highly specialized sex among ants and is characterized, as a rule, by a larger stature and the more uniform development of her organs (Figs. 52, g, etc.). The head is well developed and provided with moderately large eyes, ocelli and mandibles; the thorax is large (macronotal) and presents all the sclerites of the typical female Hymenopteron; the gaster is voluminous and provided with well-developed reproductive organs. The latter possess a receptaculum seminis. The wings and legs are often proportionally shorter and stouter than in the male.

9. The *macrogynè* is a female of unusually large stature.

10. The *microgyne*, or dwarf female, is an unusually small female which in certain ants, like *Formica microgyna* and its allies, is the only female of the species and may be actually smaller than the largest workers (Fig. 262). In other ants, like certain species of *Leptothorax* and *Myrmica*, microgynes may sometimes be found in the same nest as the typical females.

11. The *β-female* is an aberrant form of female such as occurs in *Lasius latipes* (Fig. 55, C), either as the only form or coexisting with

---

**Fig. 56. Monomorium floricola.** (Original.) *a.* Worker; *b.*, apterous female (ergatogyne); *c.*, same seen from the side.
the normal female which is then called the \( \alpha \)-female. In this case, therefore, the female is dimorphic. The \( \beta \)-female is characterized by excess developments in the legs and antennae and in the pilosity of the body or by defective development of the wings.

12. The *ergatogyn*, ergatomorphic, or ergatoid female, is a worker-like form, with ocelli, large eyes and a thorax more or less like that of the female, but without wings. Such females occur in a number of species of ants. They have been seen in *Myrmecia, Odontomachus, Anochetus, Ponera, Polyergus, Leptothorax, Monomorium* and *Cremastogaster*. There is nothing to prove that they are pathological in origin. In fact, in *Monomorium floricola* (Fig. 56), and certain species of *Anochetus* they appear to be the only existing females. In other cases, like *Ponera eduardi*, as Forel has shown, they occur with more or less regularity in nests with normal workers. They also occur under similar conditions in colonies of the circumpolar *P. coarctata*, and among other species of the genus.

13. The *pseudogyn* (Fig. 57, b) is a worker-like form with enlarged mesonotum and sometimes traces of other thoracic sclerites of the female, but without wings or very rarely with wing vestiges. This form, when it occurs among species of *Formica*, is produced by the presence of Lomechusine beetles in the colony (see p. 407 et seq.).
14. The *phthisogyne* arises from a female larva under the same conditions as the phthisaner, and differs from the typical female in the same characters, namely absence of wings, stenonoty, microcephaly and microphthalmalmy. It is unable to attain to the imaginal instar.

15. The *worker* (ergates) is characterized by the complete absence of wings and a very small (stenonotal) thorax, much simplified in the structure of its sclerites (Fig. 8, C, etc.). The eyes are small and the ocelli are usually absent or, when present, extremely small. The gaster is small, owing to the undeveloped condition of the ovaries. A receptaculum seminis is usually lacking, and the number of the ovarian tubules is greatly diminished. The antennae, legs and mandibles are well developed.

16. The *gynaeoid* is an egg-laying worker. It is a physiological rather than a morphological phase, since it is probable that all the worker ants when abundantly fed become able to lay eggs. Wasmann (1904a) observed in colonies of *Formica rufibarbis* that one or a few workers became gynaeoid and functioned as substitution queens. In colonies of the Ponerine genus *Leptogenys* (including the subgenus *Lobopelta* (Fig. 137), and probably also in *Diancamma* and *Champsomyrmex*), the queen phase has disappeared and has been replaced by the gynaeoid worker.

17. The *dichthadiugyne*, or dichthadiiform female is peculiar to the ants of the subfamily Dorylinæ and probably represent a further development of the gynaeoid. It is wingless and stenonotal, destitute of eyes or ocelli, or with these organs very feebly developed, and with a huge elongated gaster and extraordinary, voluminous ovaries (Figs. 141, A, and 147, b and c).

18. The *macrergate* is an unusually large worker form which in some species is produced only in populous or affluent colonies (*Formica, Lasius*).

19. The *micrergate*, or dwarf worker, is a worker of unusually small stature. It appears as a normal or constant form in the first brood of all colonies that are founded by isolated females.

20. The *dinergete*, or soldier (Figs. 52, A; 60, a), is characterized by
a huge head and mandibles, often adapted to particular functions (fighting and guarding the nest, crushing seeds or hard parts of insects), and a thoracic structure sometimes approaching that of the female in size or in the development of its sclerites (*Pheidole*).

21. The *desmergat* is a form intermediate between the typical worker and dinergate, such as we find in more or less isolated genera

![Image: Aphanogaster picea, an ant with monomorphic workers.](image)

Fig. 59. *Aphanogaster picea*, an ant with monomorphic workers. (Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and Dr. O. S. Strong.)

of all the subfamilies except the Ponerinæ, *e. g.*, in *Camponotus* (Fig. 45, a), some species of *Pheidole* (Fig. 52, b–e), *Solenopsis* and *Pogonomyrmex*, *Azteca*, *Dorylus* (Fig. 62, b), *Eciton*, etc. The term might also be employed to designate the intermediate forms between the small and large workers in such genera as *Monomorium*, *Formica*, etc.
22. The pletergane, "replete," or "rotund," is a worker, which in its callow stage has acquired the peculiar habit of distending the gaster with stored liquid food ("honey") till it becomes a large spherical sac and locomotion is rendered difficult or even impossible (Figs. 218 and 219). This occurs in the honey ants (some North American species of Myrmecocystus, some Australian Melophorus and Camponotus, and to a less striking extent in certain species of Prenolepis and Plagiolepis).

23. The pletergane is a worker or soldier with vestiges of wings on a thorax of the typical ergate or dinergate form, such as occurs in certain species of Myrmica and Cryptocerus (Fig. 63).

24. The memiformergate is an enlarged worker, produced by Mermis parasitism and often presenting dinergate characters in the thorax and minute ocelli in the head (Fig. 254, B, C).

25. The phthisergate, which corresponds to the phthisogyne and phthisaner, is a pupal worker, which in its late larval or semipupal stage has been attacked and partially exhausted of its juices by an Orasema larva (Fig. 252, B and C). It is characterized by extreme stenonoty, microcephaly and microphthalmly, and is unable to pass on to the imaginal stage. It is in reality an infra-ergatoid form.

26. The gynandromorph is an anomalous individual in which male and female characters are combined in a blended or more often in a mosaic manner (Figs. 64 and 65).

27. The crgytandromorph (Fig. 66) is an anomaly similar to the last but having worker instead of female characters combined with those of the male (Wheeler, 1903b).

It is usually conceded that the fertilization or non-fertilization of the egg of the social Hymenopteron determines whether it shall give
rise to a male or a female. And as the queen represents the typical female form of the species, the problem of polymorphism is to account for the various worker forms, and those like the soldiers, pseudogynes and ergatoid females which are intermediate between the worker and the queen. The ergatomorphic males are usually regarded as inheriting worker characters. Thus the problem of polymorphism centers in the development of the worker. It must suffice in this place to give the briefest possible statement of the views of the various authors who have endeavored to account for the development of this caste. These authors may be divided into three groups:

1. Those who believe with Weismann that the various castes are represented in the egg by corresponding units (determinants). Fertilization is then regarded as the stimulus which calls the female determinants into activity and meagre feeding the stimulus which arouses the worker-producing determinants in young larvae arising from fertilized eggs. Such an explanation is obviously little more than a restatement or "photograph" of the problem. It seeks to account for the adaptive characters of the worker forms by natural selection acting on fortuitous congenital variations.

2. Those who believe with Herbert Spencer that there is no such predetermined of the various female castes, but that these are produced epigenetically by differences in the feeding of the larvae. The workers simply arise from larvae that are inadequately fed but are nevertheless able to pupate and hatch when only a part of their growth has been completed. This is not, like the preceding view, a restatement of the problem, since the modifications produced by inadequate feeding are conceived as somatic and not as germinal, but it fails to explain how the worker caste acquires its adaptive characters, unless this caste is supposed to reproduce with sufficient frequency to transmit acquired somatic modifications to the germ-plasm of the species.

3. A third group of investigators believes with Emery that the germ-plasm of the social Hymenopteron is indeed implicated in the problem, not as possessing separate sets of determinants, but as being
in a labile or sensitive condition and therefore capable of being deflected by differences in the trophic stimuli acting on the larva. According to Emery: "The peculiarities in which the workers differ from the corresponding sexual forms are, therefore, not innate or blastogenic, but acquired, that is somatogenic. Nor are they transmitted as such, but in the form of a peculiarity of the germ-plasm that enables this substance to take different developmental paths during the ontogeny. Such a peculiarity of the germ may be compared with the hereditary predisposition to certain diseases, which like hereditary myopia, develop only under certain conditions. The eye of the congenitally myopic individual is blastogenetically predisposed to short-sightedness, but only becomes short-sighted when the accommodation apparatus of the eye has been overtaxed by continual exertion. Myopia arises, like the peculiarities of the worker ants, as a somatic affection on a blastogenic foundation.

"With this assumption the problem of the development of workers seems to me to become more intelligible and to be brought a step nearer its solution. The peculiarities of the Hymenopteran workers are laid down in every female egg; those of the termite workers in every egg of either sex, but they can only manifest themselves in the presence of specific vital conditions. In the phylogeny of the various species of ants the worker peculiarities are not transmitted but merely the faculty of all fertilized eggs to be reared as a single or several kinds of workers. The peculiar instinct of rearing workers is also transmitted, since it must be exercised by the fertile females in establishing their colonies."

The views above cited show very clearly that authors have
been impressed by very different aspects of the complicated phenomena of polymorphism, and that each has emphasized the aspect which seemed the most promising from the standpoint of the general evolutionary theory he happened to be defending. Escherich (1906) has recently called attention to two very different ways of envisaging the problem; one of these is physiological and ontogenetic, the other ethological and phylogenetic. As these furnish convenient captions under which to continue the discussion of the subject, I shall adopt them, and conclude with a third, the psychological aspect, which is certainly of sufficient importance to deserve consideration.

While the ontogeny of nearly all animals is a repetition or reproduction of the parent, this is usually not the case in the social Hymenoptera, since the majority of the fertilized eggs do not give rise to

![Vestigial wings in worker ants](image)

**Fig. 63.** Vestigial wings in worker ants. (Original.) *A*, *Myrmica scabrinodis* var., with spatulate wing vestiges on mesothorax; *B*, and *C*, Thoraces of two other individuals from the same colony, showing a more vestigial development of the wings; *D*, Soldier of *Cryptocerus aztecus* with mesothoracic wing vestiges.

queens but to more or less aberrant organisms, the workers. And as these do not, as a rule, reproduce, the whole phenomenon is calculated to arouse the interest of both the physiologist and the embryologist. The former, concentrating his attention on the reactions of the animal to the stimuli proceeding from its environment, is inclined to study its later stages as determined by the reactions to such stimuli, without regard to any internal or hereditary predetermination or disposition, while the embryologist seeks out the earliest moment at which the organism may be shown to deviate from the ontogenetic pattern
of its parent. If this moment can be detected very early in the development he will be inclined to project the morphological differentiation back into the germ-plasm and to regard the efforts of the physiologist as relatively unimportant if not altogether futile. Now in his study of the social insects the embryologist is at a serious disadvantage, since he has hitherto been unable to distinguish any prospective worker or queen characters in the eggs or even in the young larvae. Compelled, therefore, to confine his attention to the older larvae, whose development as mere processes of histogenesis and metamorphosis throws little or no light on the meaning of polymorphism, he is bound to leave the physiologist in possession of the problem.

The physiologist, in seeking to determine whether there is in the environment of the developing social Hymenopteron any normal stimulus that may account for the deviation towards the worker or queen type, can hardly overlook one of the most important of all stimuli, the food of the larva. At first sight this bids fair greatly to simplify the problem of polymorphism, for the mere size of the adult insect would seem to be attributable to the quantity, its morphological deviations to the quality of the food administered to it during its larval life. Closer examination of the subject, however, cannot fail to show that larval alimentation among such highly specialized animals as the social insects, and especially in the honey-bees and ants, where the differences between the queens and workers are most salient, is a matter of considerable complexity. In the first place, it is evident that it is not the food administered that acts as a stimulus but the portion

Fig. 64. Gynandromorph of *Epipheidole inquilina*; male on the left, female on the right side. (Original.)
of it that is assimilated by the living tissues of the larva. In other words, the larva is not altogether a passive organism, compelled to utilize all the food that is forced upon it, but an active agent, at least to a considerable extent, in determining its own development. And the physiologist might have difficulty in meeting the assertion that the larva utilizes only those portions of the proffered food that are most conducive to the specific, predetermined trend of its development.

In the second place, while experiments on many organisms have shown that the quantity of assimilated food may produce great changes in size and stature, there is practically nothing to show that even very great differences in the quality of the food can bring about morphological differences of such magnitude as those which separate the queens and workers of many ants.

These more general considerations are reinforced by the following inferences from the known facts of larval feeding:

1. There seems to be no valid reason for supposing that the morphogeny of the queens among the social Hymenoptera depends on a particular diet, since with the possible exception of the honey- and stingless bees, to be considered presently, they differ in no essential respect from the corresponding sexual phase of the solitary species. In both cases they are the normal females of the species and bear the same morphological relations to their males quite irrespective of the nature of their larval food. Hence, with the above mentioned exception of the honey- and stingless bees, the question of the morphogenetic value of the larval food may be restricted to the worker forms.

2. Observations show that although the nature of the food administered to the larvae of the various social insects is often very different, even in closely related species, the structure of the workers may be extremely uniform and exhibit only slight specific differences. Among ants, as we have seen (p. 74), the larvae are fed with a great variety of substances. The quality of the food itself cannot, therefore, be supposed to have a morphogenetic value. And even if we admit what seems to be very probable, namely, that a salivary secretion—possibly
containing an enzyme—may be administered by some ants, at least to their younger larvae, the case against the morphogenic effects of qualitative feeding is not materially altered, as we see from the following considerations:

3. In incipient ant-colonies the queen mother takes no food often for as long a period as eight or nine months, and during all this time is compelled to feed her first brood of larvae exclusively on the secretions of her salivary glands. This diet, which is purely qualitative, though very limited in quantity, produces only workers and these of an unusually small size (micrergates).

4. In the honey-bees, on the other hand, qualitative feeding, namely with a secretion, the so-called "royal jelly," which according to some authors (Schiemenz) is derived from the salivary glands, according to others (Planta) from the chylific stomach of the nurses, does not produce workers, but queens. In this case, however, the food is administered in considerable quantity, and is not provided by a single starving mother, as in the case of the ants, but by a host of vigorous and well-fed nurses. Although it has been taken for granted that the fertilized honey-bee becomes a queen as the result of this peculiar diet, the matter appears in a different light when it is considered in connection with von Ihering's recent observations on the stingless bees (Meliponidae) of South America (1903). He has shown that in the species of Melipona the cells in which the males, queens and workers are reared are all of the same size. These cells are provisioned with the same kind of food (honey and pollen) and an egg is laid in each of them. Thereupon they are sealed up, and although the larvae are not fed from day to day, as in the honey-bees, but like those of the solitary bees subsist on stored provisions, this uniform treatment nevertheless results in the production of three sharply differentiated castes. On hatching the queen Melipona has very small ovaries with immature eggs, but in the allied genus Trigona, the species of which differ from the Melipona in constructing large queen cells and in storing them with a greater quantity of honey and pollen, the queen hatches with her ovaries full of ripe eggs. These facts indicate that the large size of the queen cell and its greater store of provisions are merely adaptations for accelerating the development of the ovaries. Now on reverting to the honey-bee we may adopt a similar explanation for the feeding of the queen larva with a special secretion like the "royal jelly." As is well known, the queen honey-bee hatches in about sixteen days from the time the egg is laid, while the worker, though a smaller insect and possessing imperfect ovaries, requires four or five days more to complete her development. That the special feeding of the
queen larva is merely an adaptation for accelerating the development of the ovaries is also indicated by the fact that this insect is able to lay within ten days from the date of hatching. If this interpretation is correct, the qualitative feeding of the queen larva is not primarily a morphogenic but a growth stimulus.

5. The grossly mechanical withdrawal, by parasites like *Ora serum* (see p. 418), of food substances already assimilated by the larva, produces changes of the same kind as those which distinguish the worker ant from the queen, i.e., microcephaly, microphthalm, stenony and aptery. This case is of unusual interest because the semipupa, after the detachment of the parasite, seems to undergo a kind of regeneration and produces a small but harmonious whole out of the depleted formative substances at its disposal. What is certainly a female or soldier semipupa takes on worker characters while the worker semipupa may be said to become infra-ergatoid as the result of the sudden loss of the formative substances. These observations clearly indicate that the normal worker traits may be the result of starvation or withholding of food rather than the administration of a particular diet.

6. The pseudogynes of *Formica* admit of a similar interpretation if it be true, as I am inclined to believe (see p. 408), that they arise from starved female larvae. Here too, the organism undergoes a kind of regeneration or regulation and assumes the worker aspect owing to a dearth of sufficient formative substances with which to complete the development as originally planned.

7. In the preceding cases the ants take on peculiar structural modifications as the result of tolerating parasites that bring about unusual perturbations in the trophic status of the colony. When ants themselves become parasitic on other ants a similar perturbation ensues, but in these cases the morphological effects are confined to the parasitic species and do not extend to their hosts. This must be attributed to the fact that the parasitic species live in affluence and are no longer required to take part in the arduous and exacting labors of the colony. Under such circumstances the inhibitory effects of nutricial castration on the development of the ovaries of the workers are removed and there is a tendency for this caste to be replaced by egg-laying gynæcid individuals or by ergatogynes, or for it to disappear.
completely. These effects are clearly visible in nearly all parasitic ants. In the European Harpagoxenus sublevis, for example, the only known females in certain localities are gynaeoid workers. In the American Leptothorax emersoni, as I have shown (1903f), gynaeoid workers and ergatogynes are unusually abundant, while the true females seem to be on the verge of disappearing. Among the typical amazon ants (Polyergus rufescens) of Europe, ergatogynes are not uncommon. In Strongylognathus testaceus the worker caste seems to be dwindling, while in several permanently parasitic genera (Anergates, Wheeleriella, Epacus, Epipheidole and Sympheidole) it has completely disappeared. Only one cause can be assigned to these remarkable effects—the abundance of food with which the parasites are provided by their hosts.

8. In the Ponerinae and certain Myrmicinae, like Pheidole, Pogonomymex and Aphenogaster, the larvae are fed on pieces of insects or seeds, the exact assimilative value of which as food can neither be determined nor controlled by the nurses. And while they may perhaps regulate the quantity of food administered, it is more probable that this must fluctuate within limits so wide and indefinite as to fail altogether to account for the uniform and precise morphological results that we witness in the personnel of the various colonies (Fig. 51). Moreover, accurate determination of the food supply by the workers must be quite impossible in cases like that of the Pachycondyla larva bearing the commensal Metopina (see p. 412).

9. The dependence of the different castes of the social insects on the seasons may also be adduced as evidence of the direct effects of the food supply in producing workers and queens. The latter are reared only when the trophic condition of the colony is most favorable, and this coincides with the summer months; in the great majority of species only workers and males are produced at other seasons. Here, too, the cause is to be sought in the deficient quantity of food rather than in its quality, which is in all probability the same throughout the year, especially in such ants as the fungus-growing Attii.

While these considerations tend to invalidate the supposition that qualitative feeding is responsible for the morphological peculiarities of the worker type, they are less equivocal in regard to the morphogenetic effects of quantitative feeding. Indeed several of the observations above cited show very clearly that diminution in stature and, in pathological cases, even reversion to the worker form may be the direct effect of underfeeding. To the same cause we may confidently assign several of the atypical phases among ants, such as the micrergates, microgynes, and micraners, just as we may regard the macrergates,
macrogynes, and macranêsrs as due to overfeeding. These are, of course, cases of nanism and giantism, variations in stature, not in form. Similarly, all cases in which, as in certain species of Formica, Camponotus, Pheidole, etc., the workers or desmergates vary in size, must be regarded as the result of variable quantitative feeding in the larval stage. Here we are confronted with the same conditions as Weismann observed in prematurely pupating blow-flies, and entomologists have noticed in many other insects. Such variations are of the fluctuating type and are therefore attributable to the direct effects of the environment. The soldier and worker, however, differ from the queen in the absence of certain characters, like the wings, wing-muscles, spermatheca, some of the ovarian tubules, etc., and the presence of other characters, like the peculiar shape of the head and mandibles. In these respects the sterile castes may be regarded as mutants, and Weismann's contention that such characters cannot be produced by external conditions, such as feeding, is in full accord with de Vries's hypothesis. His further contention, however, that they must therefore be produced by natural selection need not detain us, since it is daily becoming more and more evident that this is not a creative but an eliminative principle. It is certain that very plastic insects, like the ants, have developed a type of ontogeny which enables them, not only to pupate at an extremely early period of larval life, but also to hatch and survive as useful though highly specialized members of the colony. It is quite conceivable that this precocious pupation may be directly responsible for the complete suppression of certain organs that require for their formation more substance than the underfed larva is able to accumulate. At the same time it must be admitted that a direct causal connection between underfeeding on the one hand and the ontogenetic loss or development of characters on the other hand, has not been satisfactorily established. The conditions in the termites, which are often cited as furnishing proof of this connection, are even more complicated and obscure than those of the social Hymenoptera. While Grassi and Sandias (1893) and Silvestri (1901) agree with Spencer in regarding feeding as the direct cause of the production of the various castes, Herbst (1901), who has reviewed the work of the former authors, shows that their observations are by no means conclusive; and Heath (1902) makes the following statement in regard to his experiments on Californian termites: "For months I have fed a large number of termite colonies of all ages, with or without royal pairs, on various kinds and amounts of foods—proctodæal food dissected from the workers or in other cases from royal forms, stomadæal food from the same sources, sawdust to which different nutritious ingredients have been added—
but in spite of all I cannot feel perfectly sure that I have influenced in any unusual way the growth of a single individual."

This rather unsatisfactory answer to the question as to whether quantity or quality of food or both, have an ergatogenic value, has led some investigators to seek a solution along more direct lines. Thus O. Hertwig and Herbst suggest that the morphogenic stimulus may be furnished by some internal secretion of the reproductive organs. This, too, is possible, but owing to our very imperfect knowledge of the internal secretions, even in the higher animals, we are not in a position either to accept or reject this suggestion.

We may conclude, therefore, that while the conception of the worker phase as the result of imperfect nutrition is supported by a considerable volume of evidence, we are still unable to understand how this result can take on so highly adaptive a character. Such a concise effect can hardly be due to manifold and fluctuating external causes like nutrition, but must proceed from some more deeply seated cause within the organism itself. Of course, the difficulty here encountered is by no means peculiar to polymorphism; it confronts us at every turn as the all-pervading enigma of living matter.
CHAPTER VII

POLYMORPHISM (CONCLUDED)

"La conservation de ces animaux et la prospérité de leur famille ne pouvoient donc être assurées que par l'établissement d'un ordre particulier et nombreux d'individus qui suppléassent aux fonctions des mères et qui n'en eussent même que les sentiments et les affections. La nature, en formant ici des neutres, s'est vue contrainte de s'écarter de ses lois ordinaires, pour que son ouvrage subsitât, et sa prévoyance a modifié ses ressources selon les circonstances où les êtres devoient être placés."—Latreille, "Considerations Nouvelles et Générales sur les Insectes Vivant en Société," 1817.

An extensive study of the structure and habits of ants must inevitably lead to a certain amount of speculation concerning the phylogenetic development of their colonies. That these insects have had communistic habits for ages is clearly indicated by the fact that all of the numerous existing species are eminently social. There can be little doubt, however, that they arose from forms with habits not unlike those we find to-day in some of the solitary wasps, such as the Bembecidæ, or in the remarkable South African bees of the genus Allopora. Unlike other solitary wasps, the females of Bembex may be said to be incipiently social, since a number of them choose a nesting site and, though each has her own burrow, coöperate with one another in driving away intruders. Bembex has also taken an important step in the direction of the social wasps not only in surviving the hatching of her larvæ, but also in visiting them from day to day for the purpose of providing them with fresh insect food.

At a very early period the ants and social wasps must have made a further advance when the mother insect succeeded in surviving till after her progeny had completed their development. This seems to have led naturally to a stage in which the young females remained with their mother and reared their progeny in the parental nest, thus constituting a colony of a number of similar females with a common and indiscriminate interest in the brood. This colony, after growing to a certain size, became unstable in the same way as any aggregate of like units, and must soon have shown a differentiation of its members into two classes, one comprising individuals devoted to reproduction and another devoted to alimentation and protection. In this division of labor only the latter class underwent important somatic modification and specialization, while the former retained its primitive and more
generalized characters. It is more than probable, as I shall attempt to show in the sequel, that this differentiation was manifested in the sphere of instinct long before it assumed morphological expression. The social wasps and bumble-bees are still in this stage of sociogeny. The ants, however, have specialized and refined on these conditions till they have not only a single marked alimentative and protective caste without wings and lacking many other female characters, but in some species two distinct castes with a corresponding further division of labor. In the phylogeny as well as the ontogeny these characters appear as a result of nutricial castration.\textsuperscript{1}

If the foregoing considerations be granted the biogenetic law may be said to hold good in the sociogeny of the ants, for the actual ontogenetic development of their colonies conforms not only to the purely conjectural requirements of phylogeny but also to the stages represented by the various extant groups of social insects. It is clear that we cannot include the honey-bee among these groups, since this insect is demonstrably so aberrant that it is difficult to compare it with the other social insects.

Comparison of the different genera and subfamilies of ants among themselves shows that some of them have retained a very primitive social organization, and with it a relatively incomplete polymorphism, whereas others have a much more highly developed social life and a greater differentiation of the castes. Such a comparison, coupled with a study of the natural relationships of the various genera as displayed in structure, shows very clearly that the advance from generalized to highly specialized societies did not follow a single upward course during the phylogeny, but occurred repeatedly and in different phyletic groups. And since the complications of polymorphism keep pace with those of social organization, we may say that the differentiation of the originally single worker caste into dinergates, or soldiers on the one

\textsuperscript{1}"Nutricial castration" (from nutrix, a nurse), as understood by Marchal, must be distinguished from "alimentary castration" (Emery, 1896), although both are responsible for the infertility of the worker. Through alimentary castration the development of the reproductive organs is inhibited in the larva and pupa, and this inhibition is maintained in the adult by the strong nursing instincts which prevent the workers from appropriating much of the food supply of the colony to their individual use. In many of the higher animals also (birds, mammals) reproduction is inhibited by the exercise of the nutricial function. A third method of inhibiting or destroying the reproductive function is known to occur in the "parasitic castration" of certain bees and wasps (Andrena, Polistes) by Strepsiptera (Styllops, Xenos, etc.). See Pérez, "Des Effects du Parasitisme des Styllops sur les Apiaires du Genre Andrena," Actes Soc. Linn. Bordeaux, 1886, 40 pp., 2 pls. Westwood has also described a Strepsipteron (Myrmecolax nieteri) which, in all probability, produces this form of castration in certain Formicidae (1861).
hand, and micrergates, or small workers, on the other, has been several times repeated in remotely related genera. In some genera (Stenamma sens. str., Leptothenax) there are also indications of a lapsing of highly specialized into simpler conditions by a kind of social degeneration. In its extreme form this manifests itself as a suppression of castes and a consequent simplification of polymorphism. Beautiful examples of this condition are furnished by the parasitic species that have lost their worker caste. But there are also cases in which the queen caste has been suppressed and its functions usurped by workers.

Not only have these greater changes been effected and fixed during the phylogenetic history of the Formicidae, but also many subtler differences such as those of stature, coloration, pilosity and sculpture. And although such differences belong to the class of fluctuating variations and are usually supposed to have a greater ontogenetic than phylogenetic significance, they are undoubtedly of great antiquity and must therefore be regarded as more important than many of the minor morphological traits.

Emery was the first to call attention to a number of peculiar phylogenetic stages in the development of stature among ants (1894d). We find by comparison with the male, which may be regarded as a relatively stable and conservative form, that the cospecific females and workers may vary in stature independently of each other. The following are the stages recognized by Emery, with some additions of my own:

1. In the earliest phylogenetic condition, which is still preserved in the ants of the subfamily Ponerinae and in certain Myrmicinæ (Pseudomyrma, Myrmecina, etc.), the workers are monomorphic and about the same size as the males and females.

2. The worker becomes highly variable in stature from large forms (dinergets, or maxima workers) resembling the female, through a series of intermediate (desmergates, mediæ) to very small forms (minima workers, or micrergates). This condition obtains in the Dorylinæ, some Myrmicinæ (some species of Pheidole, Pheidoloton, Atta), Camponotinæ (Camponotus) and Dolichoderinæ (Azteca).

3. The worker becomes dimorphic through the disappearance of the desmergates, so that the originally single and highly variable caste is now represented by two, the soldier (dinerget) and worker proper. We find this condition in certain Myrmicinæ and Camponotinæ (Cryptocerus, Pheidole, Acanthomyrmex, Colobopsis, etc.).

4. The soldier of the preceding stage disappears completely, so that the worker caste again becomes monomorphic but is represented by individuals very much smaller than the female. Such individuals are
really micrergates. This condition is seen in certain Myrmicine genera, especially of the tribe Solenopsidii (*Carebara*, *Erebomyrma*, *Diplomorium*, most species of *Solenopsis*, etc.).

5. The worker form disappears completely leaving only the males and females to represent the species, which thus returns to the condition of sexual dimorphism seen in the great majority of insects and other Metazoa. This occurs in the parasitic ants of the genera *Anergates*, *Wheeleriella*, *Epacus*, *Symphidole* and *Epipheidole*.

6. In certain species the workers remain stationary while the female increases in size. This is indicated by the fact that the worker and male have approximately the same stature. Such a condition obtains in certain Myrmicine (Cremastogaster), Camponotinae (Lasius, Prenolepis, Brachymyrmex, North American species of Myrmecocystus) and Dolichoderinae (Iridomyrmex, Dorymyrmex, Liometopum).

7. The worker caste remains stationary while the female diminishes in size till it may become even smaller than the large workers. This occurs in certain parasitic species of North America, like Aphanogaster tennesseensis among the Myrmicine, and among the Camponotinae in the species of the Formica microgyna group (*F. difficilis*, nevadensis, impers, dakotensis, nepticula).

8. The female phase disappears completely and is replaced by a fertile, or gynaeclid worker form. This occurs in certain Ponerine genera like Leiptogenys (including the subgenus Lobopelta), and probably also in Diacamma and Champsomyrmex. The conditions in Acanthostichus and certain Cerapachysii (Parasyciscia peringueyi) indicate that the dichthadiigynes of the Dorylinæ may have arisen from such gynaeclid workers instead of from winged queens.

9. The female shows a differentiation into two forms (α- and β-females) characterized by differences in the structure of the legs and antennæ, in pilosity and coloration (Lasius latipes), or in the length of the wings (macropterous and micropterous females of *L. niger*). The macrocephalic and microcephalic females of Camponotus abdominalis and confusus described by Emery (1896k) may also be regarded as α- and β-forms.

In this series of stages, one to five represent changes in the worker caste while the female remains relatively stationary, whereas stages six to nine represent the converse conditions. Stages one to four probably succeeded one another in the order given, but stage five may have arisen either from the first or fourth. The sixth to ninth stages must, of course, be supposed to have developed independently of one another.

The stature differences described in the above paragraphs are, in
most, if not all cases, highly adaptive. This is clearly seen in such forms as the Indo-African Carebara, the huge, deeply colored females of which are more than a thousand times as large as the diminutive, yellow workers. This ant dwells in termite nests where it occupies chambers connected by means of tenuous galleries with the spacious apartments of its host. The termites constitute a supply of food so accessible and abundant that the workers are able to rear enormous males and females, while they themselves must preserve their diminutive stature in adaptation to their clandestine and thievish habits. Similar conditions are found in many species of the allied genus Solenopsis, which inhabit delicate galleries communicating with the nests of other ants on the larvæ and pupæ of which they feed. In one species of this genus (S. geminata), however, which leads an independent life and feeds on miscellaneous insects and seeds, the worker caste is still highly polymorphic.

Another interesting case of adaptation in stature is seen in the ants of the Formica microgyna group. The females of these species are temporarily parasitic in the nests of other Formicae and are therefore relieved of the labor of digging nests for themselves and rearing their first brood of larvæ. On this account they need not store up large quantities of food, so that the nourishment which in non-parasitic species goes to produce a comparatively few large females may be applied to the production of a large number of small females. This latter condition is necessary in parasitic species which are decimated by many vicissitudes before they can establish themselves successfully among alien hosts. I have already emphasized the adaptive significance of the disappearance of the worker caste among permanently parasitic species like Anergates, Wheeleriella, etc.

There are several cases in which the worker and female differ greatly in color, pilosity or sculpture, and in such cases either caste may be conservative or aberrant according to ethological requirements. Thus in certain temporary parasites like Formica ciliata, oreas, crinita, specularis and difficilis, the female is aberrant in one or more of the characters mentioned, while the cospecific worker retains the ancestral characters of its caste in the closely allied forms of F. rufa. The same condition is seen in a very different ant, Aphanogaster tennesensis, as the result of similar parasitic habits. In all of these species the females alone have developed myrmecophilous characters, like the long yellow hairs of F. ciliata, or the mimetic coloring of F. difficilis, which enable them to foist themselves on the allied species and thus avoid the exhausting labor of excavating nests and rearing workers.
POLYMORPHISM

The foregoing observations indicate that in morphological characters the worker and female of the same species have advanced or digressed in their phylogeny, remained stationary or retrograded, independently of each other. The same peculiarity is also observable in species with distinct worker and soldier castes. It thus becomes impossible, even in closely related species of certain genera, like *Pheidole*, to predict the characters of the worker from a study of the co-specific soldier or *vice versa*. And while adaptive characters in stature, sculpture, pilosity and color must depend for their ontogenetic development on the nourishment of the larvae, it is equally certain that they have been acquired and fixed during the phylogeny of the species. In other words, nourishment, temperature, and other environmental factors merely furnish the conditions for the attainment of characters predetermined by heredity. We are therefore compelled to agree with Weismann that the characters that enable us to differentiate the castes must be somehow represented in the egg. We may grant this, however, without accepting his conception of representative units, a conception which has been so often refuted that it is unnecessary to reconsider it in this connection.

Having touched on this broader problem of heredity it will be necessary to say something about the inheritance or non-inheritance of acquired characters, especially as Weismann and his followers regard the social insects as demonstrating the non-transmissibility of somatogenic traits. In establishing this view and the all-sufficiency of natural selection to which it leads, Weismann seems to have slurred over the facts. While he admits that the workers may lay eggs, and that these may produce male offspring capable of fertilizing females, he nevertheless insists that this is altogether too infrequent to influence the germ-plasm of the species. I venture to maintain, on the contrary, that fertile workers occur much more frequently in all groups of social insects than has been generally supposed. As this fertility is merely a physiological state it has been overlooked. Marchal has shown how readily the workers of the social wasps assume this state, and the same is true of the honey-bees, especially of certain races like the "Egyptians" and "Cyprians" (*Apis mellifica-fasciata* and *cypria*). In the hives of these insects fertile workers are either always present or make their appearance within a few days after the removal of the queen. In the termites fertile soldiers have been observed by Grassi and Sandias and fertile workers by Silvestri. Among ants fertile or gynecoid workers occur so frequently as to lead to the belief that they must be present in all populous colonies. Their presence is also proved by the production of considerable numbers of males in old
and queenless colonies. In artificial nests Wasmann, Miss Fielde and myself have found egg-laying workers in abundance.

Now as the males that develop from worker eggs are perfectly normal, and in all probability as capable of mating as those derived from the eggs of queens, we are bound to conclude, especially if we adopt the theory of heredity advocated by Weismann himself, that the characters of the mother (in this case the worker) may secure representation in the germ-plasm of the species. Weismann is hardly consistent in denying the probability of such representation, for when he is bent on elaborating the imaginary structure of the germ-plasm he makes this substance singularly retentive of alteration by amphimixis, but when he is looking for facts to support the all-sufficiency of natural selection the germ-plasm becomes remarkably difficult of modification by anything except this eliminative factor. Certainly the simplest and directest method of securing a representation of the worker characters in the germ-plasm would be to get them from the worker itself that has survived in the struggle for existence, rather than through the action of natural selection on fortuitous constellations of determinants in the germ-plasm of the queen. If we grant the possibility of a periodical influx of worker germ-plasm into that of the species, the transmission of characters acquired by this caste is no more impossible than it is in other animals, and the social insects should no longer be cited as furnishing conclusive proof of Weismannism.

Plate has attempted to overcome the difficulties presented by the normal sterility of the worker by supposing that the distinguishing characters of this caste arose prior to their inability to reproduce. He recognizes the following stages in the phylogeny of the social insects:

1. The presocial stage with but a single kind of male and female.

2. The social stage with but a single kind of male and female. The peculiarities in nesting, caring for the brood, and other instincts were already developed during this stage.

3. The social stage with one kind of male and two or several kinds of females, which were all fertile, but in consequence of the physiological division of labor became more and more different in the course of generations. The division of labor took place in such a manner that the sexual functions passed over primarily to a group A, while the construction of the nest, predatory expeditions and other duties devolved mainly on another group of individuals (B), which on that account used their reproductive organs less and less.

4. The present stage with one kind of male, a fertile form of
female, which arose from group A, and one or several kinds of sterile females, or workers (group B)."

Plate assumes that the differentiation into sterile and fertile forms did not take place until stage 3, and if I understand him correctly, not till after "the races had become differentiated morphologically." This view, as he admits, resembles Spencer's (p. 100). The two views, in fact, differ merely in degree, for the underlying contention is the same, namely that sterility is one of the most recently developed characters among the social insects. There can be little doubt, however, that the smaller adaptive characters, for example, those of the families of certain species of *Formica* above mentioned, must have made their appearance in the fourth stage of Plate's scheme. The view which I have advocated differs from Plate's in admitting that even in this stage the workers are fertile with sufficient frequency to maintain a representation of their characters in the germ-plasm of the species. Conclusive evidence of the presence or absence of such representation can be secured only by experimental breeding, and especially by hybridizing the male offspring of workers of one species (a), with females of another (b) that has workers of a different character.

In the foregoing discussion attention has been repeatedly called to adaptation as the insurmountable obstacle to our every endeavor to explain polymorphism in current physiological terms. Of course, this is by no means a peculiarity of polymorphism, for the same difficulty confronts us in every biological inquiry. As the type of polymorphism with which we are dealing has been developed by psychically highly endowed social insects, it cannot be adequately understood as a mere morphological and physiological manifestation apart from the study of instinct. This has been more or less clearly perceived by nearly all writers on the subject. However various their explanations, Spencer, Weismann, Emery, Forel, Marchal and Plate all resort to instinct. Emery especially has seen very clearly that a worker type with its peculiar and aberrant characteristics could not have been developed except by means of a worker-producing instinct. In other words, this type is the result of a living environment consisting of the fostering queen and workers which instinctively control the development of the young in so far as this depends on external factors. Only under such conditions could a worker caste arise and repeat itself generation after generation. This caste may be regarded as a mutation comparable with some of De Vries's *Euhemer* mutations, but able to repeat and maintain itself for an indefinite series of generations in perfect symbiosis with its parent form, the queen, because, notwithstanding its relative infertility, it can be put to very important social use. Among ants this social
use not only pervades the activities of the adult worker but extends even to the more inert larval stages. Thus the latter represent a rich and ever-fresh supply of food that can be devoured whenever a temporary famine overtakes the colony. In certain species, like the East Indian *Ecophylla smaragdina* and the South American *Camponotus senex*, the larvae are more humanely employed as spinning machines for constructing the silken nest inhabited by the colony (see p. 216). These examples also illustrate the purposive manner in which an organism can satisfy definite needs by taking advantage of ever-present opportunities.

In the lives of the social insects the threptic, or philoprogenitive instincts are of such transcendent importance that all the other instincts of the species, including, of course, those of alimentation and nest-building, become merely tributary or ancillary. In ants, especially, the instincts relating to the nurture of the young bear the aspect of a dominating obsession. Their very strength and scope render the insects more susceptible to the inroads of a host of guests, commensals and parasites. Besides the parasitic larvae of Chalcidids, Lomechusini and *Metopina*, to be described in Chapter XXII, there are many adult beetles and other insects on which the ants lavish as much attention as they do on their own brood. And when the ants themselves become parasitic on other ants, it is always either for the sake of having their own brood nurtured, as in the temporarily and permanently parasitic forms, or for the purpose of securing the brood of another species, as in the slave-making species.

The philoprogenitive instincts arose and were highly developed among the solitary ancestral insects long before social life made its appearance. In fact, social life is itself merely an extension of these instincts to the adult offspring, and there can be no doubt that once developed it reacted rapidly and powerfully in perfecting these same instincts. It is not so much the fact that all these activities of the social insects converge towards and center in the reproduction of the species, for this is the case with all organisms, as the elaborate living environment developed for the nurture of the young, that gives these insects their unique position among the lower animals. A full analysis of the threptic instincts would involve a study of the entire ethology of the social insects and cannot be undertaken at the present time. Nevertheless the bearing of these activities on the subject of polymorphism can hardly be overestimated and deserves to be emphasized in this connection.

All writers agree in ascribing polymorphism to a physiological division of labor among originally similar organisms. This is tanta-
mount to the assumption that the phylogenetic differentiation of the castes arose in the sphere of function before it manifested itself in structural peculiarities. Although this view implies that the female, or queen was the source from which the instincts and structures of the worker were derived, it has been obscured by an improper emphasis on the instincts of the honey-bee, in which the female is clearly a degenerate organism, and on certain specialized instincts, supposed to belong exclusively to worker ants like those of the slave-makers (*Polyergus* and *Formica sanguinea*). We have therefore to consider first the instincts of the queen, and second, any evidence that may go to show that instinct-changes precede morphological differentiation in the phylogeny of the species.

It is evident that the social insects may be divided into two groups according to the instinct rôle of the queen. In one group, embracing the social wasps, bumble-bees, ants and termites, the female is the complete prototype of her sex. Even the queen of the slave-making ants, manifests in the founding of her colonies all the threptic instincts once supposed to be the exclusive prerogative of the worker caste. These may be called the primary instincts. After the colony is established, however, and she no longer needs to manifest these instincts, she becomes a mere egg-laying machine and her instincts undergo a corresponding change and may now be designated as secondary. She thus passes through a gamut of instincts successively called into activity by a series of stimuli which in turn arise in a definite order from her changing social environment. The workers, however, are capable of repeating only a portion of the female gamut, the primary series. In gynæcoid individuals there is also a tendency to take up the secondary series, but in most workers this has been suppressed by countless generations of nutriciaal castration. The social insects of this type may be called *gynacotelic*, to indicate that the female preserves intact the full series of sexual attributes inherited from her solitary ancestors. In these the primary and secondary series are simultaneous or overlap completely, in the gynacotelic social insects they are extended over a longer period of time and overlap only in part, as social life permits the extension of the secondary long after the primary series has lapsed into desuetude. It will be seen that the division of labor which led to the special differentiation of like females into workers and queens is clearly foreshadowed in the consecutive differentiation of instincts in the individual queen. The second group of social insects is represented by the honey-bees and probably also by the stingless bees (Meli-ponidae). In these only the secondary instincts are manifested in the queen, while the worker retains the primary series in full vigor and
thus more clearly represents the ancestral female of the species. This
type may therefore be called *ergatotelic*. The suppression of the
primary instincts in the queen honey-bee was undoubtedly brought
about by the change in the method of colony formation. When the
habit of swarming superseded the establishment of colonies by solitary
queens, as still practiced by the gynaeotelic insects, the primary in-
stincts of the female lapsed into abeyance or became latent. This
change took place so long ago that it has had time to express itself in
the structure of the queen honey-bee as compared with the worker
(shorter tongue and wings, feebler sting, degenerate structure of hind
legs, etc.).

The first of the following examples, which seem to indicate the
occurrence of instinctive prior to morphological differentiation, shows
at the same time how the ergatotelic type of the honey-bee may have
arisen from the gynaeotelic type of the social wasps and bumble-bees.

1. The queens of certain species of *Formica* (*F. rufa*, *exsectoides*,
e tc.), are no longer able to establish colonies without the coöperation
of workers. The common method of colony formation among these
insects is by a process of swarming like that of the honey-bees: a cer-
tain portion of the colony emigrates and founds a new nest with one
or more queens. When this method is impracticable the young queen
seeks the assistance of an allied species of *Formica* (*F. fusca*), the
workers of which are willing to take the place of her own species in
rearing her brood. In *F. rufa* and *exsectoides* there is nothing in the
stature or structure of the queen to indicate the presence of these
parasitic instincts, but, in many of the allied species like *F. ciliata*,
*microgyna*, etc., the colonies of which are smaller and no longer swarm,
or do so only to a very limited extent, the queens have become more
dependent on the workers of other species of *Formica* and have devel-
oped mimetic characters or a dwarf stature to enable them to enter and
exploit the colonies of their hosts.

2. In many ants the callows, or just hatched workers, confine them-
selves to caring for the larvae and pupae and do not exhibit the foraging
instincts till a later period. But even adult workers may perform
a single duty in the colony for long periods of time, if not indefinitely.
Thus Lubbock (1894) and Viehmeyer (1904) have observed in certain
*Formica* colonies that only certain individuals forage for the com-
munity. The latter has also noticed that certain individuals, indis-
tinguishable morphologically from their sister workers, stand guard at
the entrances. In other genera, like *Camponotus*, *Atta*, *Pheidole*, etc.,
with species that have desmergeates, the morphological differentiation
between foragers and guardians is still unsettled. It becomes com-
pletely established, however, in certain genera and species with the suppression of the desmergates. A remarkable example of division of labor, without corresponding structural differentiation, is seen also in the *Ecophylla* above mentioned, an ant which inhabits nests of leaves sewn together with fine silk. According to the observations of Dodd (1902) and Doflein (1905), when the nests are torn apart the monomorphic workers separate into two companies, one of which stations itself on the outside of the nest, draws the separated leaves together and holds them in place with the claws and mandibles, while the other moves the spinning larvae back and forth within the nest till the rent is repaired with silken tissue (see p. 216).

3. An interesting case is presented by the honey-ants (*Myrmecocystus melliger* and *mexicanus*). All the workers of these species, though variable in size, are structurally alike. Among the callows, however, and quite independently of their stature, certain individuals take to storing liquid food, as I have found in my artificial nests of the latter species, and gradually, in the course of a month or six weeks, become repletes, or plerergates. Except for this physiological peculiarity, which gradually takes on a morphological expression, the plerergates and ordinary workers are indistinguishable. We must assume, therefore, that the desire to store food represents an instinct specialization peculiar to a portion of the callow workers. There can be no doubt that as our knowledge of the habits of ants progresses many other cases like the foregoing will be brought to light.

It may be maintained that in these cases physiological states must precede the manifestation of the instincts, and that these states, however inscrutable they may be, are to be conceived as structural differentiations. There is undoubtedly much to justify this point of view. The elaborate sequence of instincts in the queen ant, for example, is accompanied by a series of physiological changes so profound as to be macroscopical. After the loss of her wings, the wing muscles degenerate and the fat-body melts away to furnish nourishment for the ovaries, which in the old queen become enormously distended with eggs as the breeding season approaches. Such changes would seem to be amply sufficient to account for the changing instincts. I have found that mere artificial deälation at once alters the instincts of the queen, probably through a stimulus analogous to that which leads to the atrophy of a muscle when its nerve is severed, and in the case under consideration leads to the degeneration of the wing-muscles and to changes in the ovaries. In the mermithergates and pseudogynes we also have peculiarities of behavior which are attributable to peculiar
physiological states. Similarly, nutricial castration may be said to be a physiological state, namely that of hunger.

We may conclude therefore that the worker, both in its ontogenetic and phylogenetic development, is through and through a hunger-form, inured to protracted fasting. Miss Fielde has shown (1904f) that the workers of *Camponotus americanus* may live nearly nine months without food, which is as long as the much larger and more vigorous queens are known to fast while establishing their colonies. The larvæ of ants, too, are known to remain alive in the nests for months without growing. And even when food is abundant the workers appropriate very little of it to their individual maintenance, but distribute it freely among their sister workers, the brood and queen. It is not improbable, moreover, that the single instinct peculiar to workers, the instinct to leave the nest and forage, is the direct result of a chronic state of hunger.
CHAPTER VIII

THE HISTORY OF MYRMECOLOGY AND THE CLASSIFICATION OF ANTS

"Les mœurs des fourmis sont si variées qu'il est important de connaître à quelle espèce se rapporte chaque trait d'industrie, chaque particularité de leur histoire."—P. Huber, "Recherches sur les Mœurs des Fourmis Indigènes," 1810.

Myrmecology has been more fortunate than many other branches of entomology in the men who have contributed to its development. These have been actuated, almost without exception, not by a mania for endless multiplication of genera and species, but by a temperate and philosophical interest in the increase of our knowledge. The reason for this fortunate circumstance is probably to be sought in the ingenium formicarum, the fact that ants are small, homely organisms with nothing to attract the amateur who cares only for size and beauty of form and color. This is, perhaps, regrettable as it has

![Ant Illustration]

**Fig. 67.** Worker of *Sima allaborans* of India. (Bingham.)

certainly retarded the accumulation of study materials in our museums and private collections, and has left the subject in the hands of a few devotees. But this disadvantage is not so great as might be supposed, because the species of ants, though far less numerous than those of butterflies and beetles, are nevertheless more abundant in individuals and hence more easily obtained. Undoubtedly the great difficulty of the study has had much to do with limiting the number of myrmecologists, especially in America. Here the literature of descriptive myrmecology, which is widely scattered through somewhat obscure serials and is written very largely in the German, French and Italian languages, has remained quite inaccessible to the average student. Even a knowledge
of the literature, however, does not overcome all of the difficulties of
the subject, for the species of ants often differ from one another by
characters too subtle and intangible to be readily put in words. The
"habitus" of a species, as every taxonomist knows, is something one
may take in at a glance, but be quite unable to express without wearis-
some prolixity. Hence the importance of large collections, thoroughly
studied and identified and accessible to every student. Such collections
have been lacking in America and those interested in ants have had
to send their specimens abroad for identification. This is time-con-
suming, to say nothing of the inconvenience to which it often puts the
overworked specialist.

Ants, like other organisms, may be studied from at least three
different points of view, according as the observer is most interested
in their classification, or taxonomy (including geographical distribu-
tion), their morphology (anatomy and development) or their ethology,
that is, their functional aspect (physiology and psychology). Even in
such a small group of insects these various subjects are so extensive
and intricate that very few observers have been able to cultivate them
all with equal success. This has, perhaps, been accomplished only by
Emery and Forel, each of whom has de-

oted more than forty years of unremitting
study to the ants. Other workers have
been able to cultivate only one or at most
two of the subjects above mentioned. Be-
fore considering the classification it may be
well to sketch with the utmost brevity the
history of myrmecology in its various
branches.

The foundations of the taxonomy of ants were laid in the closing
years of the eighteenth and the opening years of the nineteenth cen-
tury by Linné, Fabricius and Latreille. Linné (1735) in his "Systema
Naturæ" briefly described eighteen species, eight from Europe, eight
from South America and two from Egypt as belonging to the
single genus Formica. Some of these, like other well-known Linnaean
species of animal and plants, are collective species, that is, they embrace
several of what would now be regarded as distinct species. Fabricius
(1804), besides describing a number of additional species, created five
more genera: Lasius, Cryptocerus, Attà, Myrmecia and Dorylus. Of
course, none of these corresponds fully to the genus bearing the same
name at the present time. He still retained the great majority of the
species in the Linnaean genus Formica, but divided it into two purely
artificial categories, one for the species with, and one for the species
THE HISTORY OF MYRMECOLOGY

without spines on the thorax. Neither Linné nor Fabricius seems to have paid much attention to the habits of the ants.

The third and by far the most important of the pioneers in myrmecography was Latreille (1798b, 1802b). He collected the ants of Europe, studied their habits assiduously and described many species that had been overlooked by his predecessors, including a number of interesting forms. He produced good descriptions of nearly a hundred species which he had himself examined. All of these he placed in the single genus Formica which he divided into nine “families”: the Formica arcuata (corresponding to our present genera Camponotus and Polyrhachis), camelina (our Formica, Lasius, Myrmecocystus, Ecophylla and Dolichoderus in part), atomaria (our Dolichoderus in part, Tapinoma and Acantholepis), ambigua (Polyergus), chelata (Odontomachus), coarctata (Ponera, Pachycondyla, Neoponera, Ectatomma, Myrmecia, etc.), gibbosa (Atta, Pheidole, Messor, Pogonomyrmex, etc.), punctoria (Eciton, Myrmica, Tetramorium, Myrmecina, Leptothorax, Selenopsis, etc.) and caperata (Cryptocerus, Ecophylla).

It is impossible to run over this arrangement without admiring Latreille’s acumen in so clearly forecasting the limits of many of our modern subfamilies, tribes and genera.

For nearly fifty years after the publication of Latreille’s work systematic myrmecology stagnated, till a revival of interest in the subject began to set in about the middle of the past century with the work of Nylander and Mayr. Both of these authors devoted themselves to a careful study of the European species, Nylander to the boreal, French and Mediterranean, and Mayr to the Austrian and eventually to the whole European fauna. Both authors, but especially Mayr, defined the genera and species more accurately than any of their predecessors. Later Mayr extended his studies to the faunas of foreign countries and published several important works on the ants of Asia, Africa, Australia, and North and South America. Forel, in commenting on his work says: “His remarkable perspicacity in creating genera, and in general in the distinction of the comparative value of zoological characters, and the minute exactitude of all his writings, which represent a vast amount of labor, have raised myrmecology to the rank of

![Fig. 69. Worker of Aphanogaster beccarii of the Indomalayan region. (Bingham.)](image-url)
the best known portions of entomology.” A well-known English hymenopterist of the same period, Frederick Smith, undertook a similar universal study of the ants, basing his descriptions on the numerous specimens from all parts of the world in the collections of the British Museum. Many of his species are so inadequately described that the writers of today are obliged either to discard them or to make pilgrimages to the British Museum for the sake of consulting the types from which they were drawn, and while some of his species bear appropriate or even elegant names, and have been identified after much labor with a fair degree of certainty, his generic distinctions give evidence of deficient classificatory sense.

During the latter half of the nineteenth century a considerable number of local European ant faunas were published and our knowledge of the ants of other lands grew apace. Adlerz studied the ants of Sweden; Ernest André of France, Europe and North Africa; Bos, Meinert and Wasmann of the Netherlands; Curtis, Saunders and F. Smith of England; Forel of Switzerland; Emery of Italy; Gredler of Tyrol; Nassonow and Ruzsky of Russia; Schenck and Förster of Germany, while some accomplished entomologists like Roger, Gerstaecker, Shuckard and Westwood evinced a greater interest in the exotic genera and species. Nor was this activity confined to the recent ants. Heer, Mayr, Emery, Ernest André and others published descriptions of many fossil species preserved in the Baltic and Sicilian ambers and in the strata of Oeningen and Radoboj.

Among this group of diligent investigators two are facile principes, Emery and Forel. In 1874 Forel published at a remarkably early age what must always be regarded as one of the finest natural histories of any group of insects, the “Fourmis de la Suisse,” a work to which the student must constantly turn both for information and encouragement. Emery and Forel, who both began to publish in 1869 and have continued ever since to make important contributions to our knowledge, combine an excellent zoological and philosophical training with rare judgment and acumen. Building on the excellent foundations laid by Latreille, Nylander and Mayr, they have been able to make our knowledge of the ants more complete than that of any other family of the vast Hymenopteran order. Not only have they perfected the
system of the European species, but they have published excellent monographs and revisions of the faunas of other continents, so that the student of today finds it a comparatively easy task to continue the work.

Although the ant-fauna of North America is vastly richer than that of Europe, few of our entomologists have cared to study its taxonomy and as a rule these few have been poorly prepared to undertake the work. Species have been described by Buckley, Cresson, Fitch, Haldeman, McCook, Norton, Pergande, Provancher, Scudder, Viereck and Walsh, but the really valuable work on our fauna has been accomplished by Mayr, Emery and Forel.

The study of ant ethology has had a more continuous, though perhaps slower, development than the taxonomy. It is also much older, and may be said to date back to the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, to authors like Wilder (1615) Bonnet (1779-’83), Swammerdam (1682), Leuwenhoek (1695), Gould (1747), De Geer (1778) and Christ (1791). The subject does not begin to assume definite form, however, till we reach the writings of Latreille (1802) and especially of Pierre, the son of the celebrated François Huber. P. Huber’s work entitled “Recherches sur les Mœurs des Fourmis Indigènes” published in 1810, is perhaps the most remarkable of all works on the habits of ants. It has been widely quoted and has never ceased to be an inspiration to all subsequent workers. It covers much of the subject of the habits of ants in an attractive and luminous style and abounds in accurate and original observations. The most interesting portions of the work treat of the slave-making habits of the sanguinary ant (Formica sanguinea) and the amazon (Polyergus rufescens). Huber was not only the first to discover and interpret the symbiotic relations of these species but his account is so complete that even Forel could add to it little that was really new. Huber also observed the relations of the ants to the aphids and of the various castes to one another and correctly interpreted the origin of colonies.

Since the publication of Huber’s work the habits of ants have been studied by an ever increasing number of investigators. The most comprehensive contributions have been made by Forel and Emery, but important work has been done by Adlerz, Ernest André, Bates, Belt, Bethe, Brauns, von Buttel Reepen, Ebrard, Escherich, Goeldi, Heer, J. Huber, von Ihering, Janet, Karawaiew, Lameere, Lespès, Lubbock, Mayr, Moggridge, Reichenbach, Reuter, Rothney, Santschi, Sykes,
Tanner, Trimen, Ule, Urich, Viehmeyer, Wasmann, Wroughton, and Yung, and in the United States by Buckley, Miss Fielde, Leidy, Lincecum, McCook, Pricer, Mrs. Treat and Turner.

The study of myrmecophily, or the relations of the numerous guests and parasites to the ants, and of the plants frequented by ants, has developed into a very interesting and important branch of ethology which must be mentioned in this connection. An extra-

Fig. 72. Species of *Macromizcha*. (Original.) *A* and *B*, Worker of *M. izabella* of Porto Rico; *C* and *D*, worker of *M. albispona* of Culebra.

ordinary number of articles has been published on animal myrmecophily, especially by Wasmann, who since 1886 has devoted himself to this subject with great ardor, and has brought to light many curious facts which have a bearing not only on the ethology of ants but of
many other groups of insects. Other students of this subject are Casey, Donisthorpe, Escherich, von Hagens, Kraatz, Lespes, George Lewis, Lichtenstein, Lucas, Raffray, Reuter, de Saulcey, Joh. Schmidt, Sharp, Trimen, Viehmeyer, and in the United States Cockerell, Brues, Hamilton, Haldemann, King, Schwarz and Wickham. The relation of plants to ants has been studied by many botanists, notably by Delpino, Huth, Holmgren, A. Møller, Fritz Mueller, Schimper, Treub, von Ihering, Rettig and Ule.

Although the history of ant morphology also goes back to such investigators as Swammerdam and Leuwenhoek, little headway could be made with the study of structure and development in such small organisms till the microscope and the technique of sectioning and staining had been perfected, and this was accomplished only within the last quarter of a century. Forel and Emery, and more recently Janet, have done very important work on the anatomy of ants. Other authors worthy of mention in this hasty review, are Adlerz, Berlese, Bos, Dewitz, Fenger, Karawaiew, Leydig, Lubbock, Meinert, Nassonow, Pérez and Sharp. As yet American zoologists have accomplished little in this interesting and accessible field of investigation. After this hasty sketch of the history of myrmecology we may take up a somewhat more detailed consideration of the taxonomy of the Formicidae.

Inasmuch as the generic and specific characters of ants are to be derived not only from a male and female, but also from a worker caste, the classification of these insects presents certain difficulties and peculiarities not encountered in classifying most other animals. The exact status of a species can, of course, be determined only when all of its phases are known. The worker, as the most abundant, is usually first to fall into the hands of the systematist, and many years may elapse before the corresponding female and male are discovered. There are still a great many exotic and even several European species that are known only from one or at most two of the castes. Moreover, the resemblances between the different phases of the same species are often so remote that it is impossible to correlate workers and females, workers and males, or males and females, unless they have been taken
from the same nests. It is, therefore, largely a matter of convenience that the soldier or worker is selected as the paradigm of the species and takes precedence of the other forms in systematic descriptions. It is obvious that the female, as presenting more numerous and complete characters, would occupy this position, were it not that this caste is, as a rule, less easily obtainable. Except for the same reason, the male would also occupy a more important place in generic and specific diagnosis, since this sex is very stable and often presents important characters, especially in the structure of the genitalia. It is probable, therefore, that at some future time, when large numbers of male and

![Ant Illustration](image)

Fig. 74. Worker of *Myrmicaria brunnea* of India. (Bingham.)

female specimens have accumulated in our collections and have been carefully studied, the present classification of the Formicidae will undergo considerable alteration. Until this time arrives, however, it will be prudent to move slowly in establishing new genera. Mayr, Forel and Emery have all shown admirable conservatism and a laudable absence of the “mihi-itch” in dealing with this aspect of the subject.

Another difficulty arises from the great variability of ants, both among members of the same colony and hence among the progeny of a single or a very few mothers, and among colonies of the same species in different stations or localities. In the former case we have what are known as “nest varieties,” in the latter “local or geographical varieties.” The danger of basing species on mere nest varieties is often considerable and can be overcome only by studying large series of specimens collected from the same colony. Probably many of the “species” of exotic ants included in our faunistic lists are nothing more than nest varieties. The local varieties are of peculiar interest. Like other animals, certain species of ants may be very stable though widely distributed, others highly variable though very restricted in their range. Some widely distributed species may be stable in some portions of their range and highly variable in others. And finally, some widely distributed species seem to be decidedly variable wherever
they occur. Such a species is *Camponotus maculatus*, which occurs on every continent and many islands, and varies *ad infinitum*. In studying such species we are often presented with two sets of variable characters, one of which is adaptive and largely morphological, while the other comprises small indifferent traits of no considerable value to the organism in its struggle with its environment, such as slight peculiarities in size, sculpture, pilosity and color. These characters, which remind one of the De Vriesian “unit characters,” are relatively stable in particular races or varieties and have a tendency to combine and recombine in endless permutation. Besides *C. maculatus*, many of the species of the large genera *Formica* and *Pogonomyrmex* are admirable examples of this phenomenon.

Characters of importance in classification may be drawn from all parts of the ant’s body, but the most useful are furnished by the number of palpal joints, shape of the clypeus, mandibles, shape and comparative length of the antennal joints, shape of the thorax, petiole, postpetiole, spurs of the middle and hind tibiae, tarsal claws, genitalia of the male, the venation of the wings of both sexes, the structure of the gizzard, larva and pupa. The tribes, genera and species are built on combinations of these characters. But as there are many minor characters, especially in sculpture, pilosity and color, which though constant for all the members of a caste, may nevertheless vary in colonies in different localities, it becomes necessary to recognize smaller divisions than that of the species. These subdivisions are of different rank for the reason that slight differences in form or sculpture are more important, because less variable, than pilosity and coloration. Myrmecologists have therefore recognized two categories within the species, one more important and called the *race* by Forel, the *subspecies* by Emery, and another less important category which has been called the *variety* by both of these authorities. Subspecies may be regarded as small or incipient species in the De Vriesian sense. They are much less frequently connected by transitional forms than the varieties.

The recognition of these various categories necessitates the employment of a quadrinominal nomenclature. Thus one of our common carpenter ants is known as *Camponotus herculeanus* Linn. subsp. *ligniperdus* Latreille var. *noveboracensis* Fitch. This is a strictly North American variety, with red head and thorax, of a smooth race, or subspecies, of the dark-colored, opaque, circumpolar species *herculeanus*, the typical form of which is confined to Europe. This method of
naming ants has great advantages and some disadvantages. It shows the relationships of the different forms very clearly and this is an admirable trait in nomenclature, but it is also very cumbersome. For ordinary purposes it is sufficient to treat the varietal name as if it were specific and designate the ant mentioned above simply as *Camponotus noveboracensis* Fitch. This is the more justifiable as the variety among ants is very nearly equivalent to the species among many other groups of animals, such as birds and mammals. In the present work I shall use the binomials as a rule and refer the reader for the full terminology of our North American ants to the catalogue in Appendix C.

This chapter may be concluded with a conspectus of the present classification of the Formicidae compiled very largely from the works

![Ants](image-url)

**Fig. 76.** Worker of *Strumigenys obscuriventris* of Porto Rico. (Original.)

**Fig. 77.** Worker of *Strumigenys lewisi* of Japan. (Original.)

of Emery and Forel. Concerning the important details of this classification these authorities are unanimous but there are certain points on which they differ, and many which they have left undecided till more material is forthcoming and profounder studies of whole groups of genera have been undertaken. They differ mainly on the limits of two of the five subfamilies, the Ponerinae and Dorylinae, Emery maintaining that the tribe Cerapachysii belongs with the Dorylinae whereas Forel assigns it to the Ponerinae. The tribe in question certainly possesses peculiarities which ally it with both subfamilies, but the
development and habits of its species are so imperfectly known that its exact position cannot be determined at the present time. I have followed Forel in placing it with the Ponerinae though I appreciate Emery's reasons for dissenting from this procedure. Some of the tribes, especially the Ponerii and Myrmicii still embrace very heterogeneous groups of genera, and many of the genera, especially those which are known only from specimens of a single caste, are probably placed in the wrong tribes. Ashmead (1905c) recently undertook to construct a new arrangement of the genera, but as Emery has shown (1906a), it is anything but an improvement on the existing classification. What we need for the present as not a new arrangement, the erection of a lot of new genera on superficially aberrant species and the raising of every subgenus to generic rank, but a painstaking study of all the species in the existing groups. Until such studies have made appreciable headway, the existing avowedly imperfect classification should not be discarded without at least as much thought as has been devoted to its construction.

1Since these remarks were written, Emery (Deutsch. Ent. Zeitsch., 1909, p. 355) has changed his views on the position of the Cerapachyssii. He now places them under the new caption Prodoryline, but within the subfamily Ponerinae.
Family FORMICIDÆ (Heterogyna)

Subfamily I. PONERINÆ Mayr

Worker always with highly developed sting. Frontal carinæ vertical, oblique or forming horizontal lobes partly covering the antennal insertions. Antennæ 12-, rarely 9-, 10- or 11-jointed. Palpal joints nearly always reduced. Clypeus well-developed. Pedicel nearly always 1-jointed; first gastric segment usually narrowed behind where it encloses the basally constricted second segment, which bears a stridulatory organ on its dorsal surface.—Female usually winged and but little larger than the worker; ergatoid, apterous or gynæcoid in some forms.—Male usually with long gaster; genitalia partially exserted or in a few tribes (Cerapachyssii and Proceratii), completely retractile. Pedicel like that of the worker. Wings usually with 2 closed cubital cells. Wingless, ergatoid males occur in a few species.—Pupæ always enclosed in cocoons.

Tribe 1. MYRMECII

Australian.—Worker and female: Pedicel distinctly 2-jointed as the second abdominal (first gastric segment of other Ponerinae) is narrower than the succeeding segment and strongly constricted behind. Frontal carinæ as in the Ectatommi. Eyes large. Mandibles narrow, with bicuspidate teeth. Palpi with the full number of joints. Females winged, barely larger than the corresponding workers.—Male pedicel like that of the workers. Genitalia bulky, of complicated structure; stipes with dorsal and terminal branches, volsella with a well-developed lamina.

Myrmecia (Fig. 3, B).

Tribe 2. AMBLYOPONII

Cosmopolitan.—Worker and female: Pedicel 1-jointed, articulating over its whole posterior surface with the first gastric segment. Mandibles usually narrow, inserted at the corners of the head. Palpal joints reduced. Eyes of worker vestigial. Posterior tibiae with double spurs.

Amblyopone, Stigmatomma (Fig. 131), Mystrium (Fig. 129), Prionopelia, Myopopone.

Tribe 3. ECTATOMMI

Cosmopolitan.—Worker and female: Pedicel 1-jointed, often scale-like, with slender insertion usually at half the height of the first gastric
segment. Palpal joints reduced in number. Frontal carinae diverging behind or feebly converging, their anterior ends rarely dilated to form narrow lobes, but then their posterior ends are widely separated.

*Typhломyrmex, Paraponera, Ectatomma* (with subgenera: *Ectatomma, Acanthoponera, Stictoponera, Mictoponera, Rhytidoponera, Holcoponera and Gnamtogenys*, *Thaumatomyrmex* (Fig. 3, 1), *Alfaria, Emeryella*.

**Tribe 4. Poneri**

Cosmopolitan.—Pedicel of worker and female 1-jointed, usually scale-like, with slender articulation usually at the ventral side of the first gastric segment. Palpal joints reduced in number. Frontal carinae converging posteriorly, often closely approximated behind and usually forming a flattened plate anteriorly into which the posterior end of the clypeus is inserted like a wedge. (*Odontoponera* is transitional to *Ectatomma* in the structure of its frontal carinae.)

*Odontoponera* (Fig. 136), *Diacamma, Ophthalmopone, Dinoponera* (Fig. 132), *Megaloponera* (with subgen. *Megaloponera* and *Hagensia*), *Paltothyreus, Plectroctena, Neoponera* (Fig. 134; with subgen. *Neoponera* and *Eumecopone*), *Pachycondyla* (with the subgenera *Pachycondyla* (Fig. 133), *Bothroponera* and *Ectomomyrmex*), *Ponera* (Fig. 131), *Euponera* (with the subgenera *Euponera, Mesoponera, Pseudoponera* and *Brachyponera* (Fig. 135)), *Trapeziopelta, Cryptopone, Strebiognathus, Belonopelta, Centromyrmex, Psalidomyrmex, Platythere, Rhopalopone, Myopias, Onychomyrmex, Prionogenys, Leptogenys* (with the subgen. *Leptogenys* and *Lobopelta*, Fig. 137), *Harpegnathus*. 

---

Fig. 79. Worker of *Dolichoderus bituberculatus* of the Indomalayan region.
(Bingham.)
Tribe 5. Odontomachii

Cosmopolitan.—Worker and female characterized by the peculiar configuration of the head and mandibles (Fig. 3, K).

_Anochetus_ (with the subgen. _Anochetus_ and _Stenomyrmex_), _Champsomyrmex_, _Odontomachus_ (Fig. 3, K).

Tribe 6. Proceratii

Cosmopolitan, but not yet known from the Indian and Ethiopian regions.—Worker with vestigial eyes and sutureless thorax. Tip of large first gastric segment turned downward and the succeeding seg-

![Image](image-url)

_Fig. 80. Species of Liometopum._ (Original.) _a_, Worker of _L. apiculatum_ of Southwestern North America; _b_, petiole of same seen from behind; _c_, petiole of female; _d_, worker of _L. microcephalum_ of Southern Europe; _e_, petiole of same.

ments forming a cone with its tip directed anteriorly.—Females winged and with well-developed eyes. Male genitalia completely retractile.

_Sympincta_ (Fig. 128, _a_), _Proceratium_ (Fig. 128, _b_), _Discothyrea_.

Tribe 7. Cerapachyssii

Cosmopolitan.—Workers blind or with vestigial eyes. Antennae 9–12 jointed. Frontal carinæ erect. Males and females imperfectly known; in some cases the latter are apterous and dichthadiiform (_Acanthostichus_). Males with furcate subgenital plate.
Subtribe (a) Acanthostichii

Acanthostichus, Ctenopyga.

Subtribe (b) Cerapachysii s. str.

Cerapachys (with the subgenera Cerapachys, Parasycia (Fig. 125), Oöceræa, Syscia and Cysia), Phyracaces, Lioponera, Sphinctomyrmex (with the subgen. Sphinctomyrmex (Fig. 126) and Eusphinctus), Probolomyrmex.

Subtribe (c) Cylindromyrmii

Cylindromyrmex (Fig. 127), Simopone.

Subfamily II. Dorylinæ Shuckard

Worker with sting, sometimes vestigial. Frontal carinæ vertical or subvertical, closely approximated or even fused, usually leaving the antennal insertions completely uncovered and curved anteriorly around the antennal foveæ. Clypeus usually much reduced or even fused with the frontal carinæ. Pedicel 1- or 2-jointed. Stridulatory organ im-

![Ant illustration](image_url)

perfectly developed.—Female apterous, much larger than the worker but like the worker blind or with vestigial eyes. Pedicel always 1-jointed.—Male large, with 1-jointed pedicel; anal segment without cerci (penicilli); genitalia completely retractile.—Pupæ naked or enclosed in cocoons.

Tribe 1. Dorylæi

Paleotropical.—Worker eyeless; strongly polymorphic in Dorylus. Pedicel 1–2-jointed. Antennal joints usually reduced in number — Female eyeless, with gaping end to the gaster and peculiarly formed hypopygium. Sting vestigial.—Male with one cubital cell in wings. Genitalia with very narrow lamina annularis; subgenital plate furcate.

Dorylus (with subgen. Dorylus (Fig. 141), Anomma, Typhlopsone, Dichthadia, Alaoçone, Rhogmus, Shuckardia), Ænictus (Fig. 143), Ænictogeton.
Tribe 2. Ectonii

Neotropical.—Workers eyeless or usually with vestigial eyes; polymorphic. Antennae 12-jointed. Pedicel 2-jointed (1-jointed in Chelioniomyr'mex).—Female resembling that of Dor'ylus but with vestigial eyes. Gaster not gaping at the tip. Sting vestigial.—Male with 2 closed cubital cells in the wings. Genitalia with strongly developed lamina annularis; subgenital plate furcate.

*Ecton* (with subgen. *Eciton* (Fig. 145) and *Acamatus* (Fig. 147)), *Chelioniomyr'mex* (Fig. 148).

Tribe 3. Leptanillii

Paleotropical.—Worker minute, monomorphic, eyeless. Antennae 12-jointed, inserted further apart than in the preceding tribes. Labial palpi 1-jointed.—Female resembling that of Dor'ylus, eyeless. Gaster gaping at the tip.—Male minute, with small eyes, ocelli and mandibles and no veins in the wings.

*Leptanilla* (Fig. 149).

Subfamily III. *MYRMICINÆ* Mayr

Worker with a sting. Frontal carinæ and clypeus usually as in the Ectatommi. Palpal joints commonly reduced in number. Pedicel distinctly 2-jointed; very rarely the postpetiole is campanulate and as

![Worker of Myrmoteras binghami of Tenasserim. (Bingham.)](image)

broad as the succeeding segment. A stridulatory organ is present in at least many of the genera.—Female usually winged, often very different from the worker and much larger; very rarely ergatoid.—Male with cerci (absent in *Anergates*). Genitalia usually partly concealed, rarely completely retractile (*Carebara*). Gaster usually short. In some genera there are wingless, ergatoid males.—Pupae always naked, without cocoons.
Tribe 1. Pseudomyrmic

Tropicopolitan.—Characterized by the closely approximated frontal carinæ in the worker and female (in Pseudomyrmica even recalling the conditions in the Dorylinæ). Clypeus not distinctly wedged in between the frontal carinæ.

Sima (Fig. 67), Pseudomyrmica.

Tribe 2. Myrmicini

A cosmopolitan, negatively characterized group comprising all the genera that have the clypeus produced back between the frontal carinæ and that are not at present assignable to the other tribes.

Myrmecina, Pristomyrmex (Fig. 73), Acanthomyrmex, Podomyrmica, Lordomyrmica, Dacryon, Odontomyrmex, Atopomyrmex, Rogeria, Leptotheorax (with the subgen. Leptotheorax, Tomnothorax, Goniothorax and Dichotheorax), Trigono-

![Ant A](image1)

![Ant B](image2)

Fig. 83. Two species of Polyrhachis of the Indomalayan region. (Bingham.) A, P. mayri; B, P. bikanara.

gaster (Fig. 68), Macromischa (Fig. 72), Harpagoxenus, Vollenhovia, Stereomyrmex (Fig. 71), Megalomyrmex, Ocymyrmex, Sifolinia, Myrmoxenus, Monomorium (with the subgen. Monomorium, Adlersia, Martia and Holcomyrmex), Cardiocondyla (Fig. 70), Emerya, Xenomyrmex, Huberia, Phacota, Epæcus, Anergates, Wheeleriella, Liomyrmex, Machomyrmica, Symmyrmica, Formicoxenus, Pheidole (with
the subgen. *Pheidole* and *Ceratopheidole*, *Epipheidole*, *Sympeidole*, *Stenamma*, *Aphænogaster* (with the subgen. *Aphænogaster* and *Ischnomyrmex*), *Messor*, *Oxyopomyrmex* (with the subgen. *Oxyopomyrmex* and *Goniomma*), *Myrmica*, *Pogonomyrmex* (with the subgen. *Pogonomyrmex*, *Janetia* and *Ephebomyrmex*), *Cratomyrmex*, *Trichomyrmex*.

**Tribe 3. Cremastogastrii**

Cosmopolitan.—With the characters of the single genus: *Cremastogaster* (with the subgen. *Cremastogaster* and *Oxygyne*).

**Tribe 4. Solenopsidii**

Cosmopolitan.—Workers often highly dimorphic, or very small when monomorphic. Antennæ with a reduced number of joints and usually 2-jointed club. Male and female often very large compared with the workers, always winged. Male genitalia sometimes completely retractile. Many of the species are decidedly subterranean, or hypogæic.

*Pheidologeton* (with the subgen. *Pheidologeton* and *Anceles*), *Aëromyrmca*, *Solenopsis*, *Oligomyrmex*, *Carebara*, *Carebarella*, *Erebomyrmca*, *Tranopelta*, *Rhopalomastix*, *Allo-
mcrus, Lophomyrmex, Diplomorium, Melissotarsus (Fig. 139).  

Tribe 5. Myrmicarrii
Indo-African.—With the characters of the single genus:
Myrmicaria (Fig. 74).

Tribe 6. Tetramorii
Cosmopolitan.—Usually characterized by the 10-jointed antennæ in the male, with 9–12-jointed antennæ in the worker and female, in the latter the frontal carinæ are often moved a great distance towards the sides of the head and form deep grooves for the antennæ.

Tetramorium (with the subgen. Tetramorium, Tetrognmus and Xiphomyrmex), Eutetramorium, Triglyphothrix, Mayriella, Calyptomyrmex, Meranoplus, Strongylognathus, Rhoptromyrmex, Wasmannia, Ochetomyrmex.

Tribe 7. Dacetonii
Cosmopolitan.—Antennæ of worker 5–12-jointed, in the male always 13-jointed.

Daceton, Acanthognathus, Orectognathus, Strumigenys (Figs. 76 and 77), Epitritus (Fig. 75), Rhopalothrix, Ceratobasis.

Tribe 8. Attii
Neotropical.—Antennæ of worker and female 11-jointed, with a tendency to form a 1-jointed club; 13-jointed in the male. All the known species cultivate fungi for food.

Apterostigma, Myrmicocrypta, Sericomymex, Cyphomyrmex, Atta (with the subgen. Atta, Acromyrmex, Mællerus, Trachymyrmex, Mycterosoritis and Mycocepurus).

Tribe 9. Cryptocerii
Neotropical.—Characterized mainly by the peculiar mushroom-shaped gizzard. Frontal carinæ in the worker and female prolonged backward above the eyes to form deep scrobes for the antennæ.—Male very different from the female.

Procryptocerus, Cryptocerus (Figs. 53 and 78).

1 This aberrant genus, known only from the peculiar dimorphic workers, has been recently assigned to the Poneriæ by Emery.
Tribe 10. Cataulaci

Paleotropical.—Worker and female with deep antennal scrobes on the sides of the head but formed by the true frontal carinæ only in front; further back they are bounded by special prolongations.—Male very similar to the female. Antennæ in both sexes 11-jointed.

*Cataulacus* (with the subgen. *Cataulacus* and *Otomyrmex*).

Subfamily IV. *Dolichoderinae* Forel

Gizzard with a 4-sepaled, reflected calyx, completely enclosed within the crop, or without a calyx. Pedicel 1-jointed. Poison gland of worker and female without pulvinus, invaginating the cuticle of the vesicle, becoming enclosed within this organ and terminating in a knob. Tube of gland straight throughout, and furnished with lateral tubes for each cell. Poison vesicle variable in form, usually small, sometimes like the gland itself, highly vestigial. Sting very small (except in *Aneuretus*), vestigial, but not transformed into an organ to support the orifice of the vesicle. Cloacal orifice large, forming a non-ciliated, transverse slit, usually ventral to the tip of the gaster. Pygidium commonly vertical or oblique antero-posteriorly and concealed under the fourth gastric segment. Antennæ 12-jointed. Anal glands almost always present and secreting an aromatic product of characteristic odor (Tapinoma odor).—Pupæ naked, never enclosed in cocoons.

Cosmopolitan.

*Aneuretus* (Fig. 140), *Dolichoderus* (with subgen. *Dolichoderus* (Fig. 79), *Hypoclinea* and *Monacis*), *Leptomyrmex*, *Liometopum* (Fig. 80), *Azteca*, *Semonius*, *Tapinoma* (with the subgen. *Tapinoma*, *Echthorella* and *Doleromyrma*), *Turneria*, *Technomyrmex*, *Dorymyrmex*, *Forelius*, *Iridomyrmex* (Fig. 86), *Engramma*, *Bothriomyrmex*, *Linepithema*.
Subfamily V. CAMPONOTINÆ Forel

Gizzard with a 4-sepaled straight, recurved or reflected calyx, which however, is always covered with circular muscles that separate it from the cavity of the crop. Pedicel 1-jointed. In the worker and female the poison gland forms a flat or oval cushion in the back of the vesicle, with a large tube but without accessory tubules for each cell. Poison vesicle large and elliptical. Sting transformed into a small vestigial apparatus which serves to support the orifice of the vesicle. All the gastric segments visible from above. Terminal segment conical, bearing at its apex the small, round, ciliated cloacal orifice. Anal glands lacking.—Pupae usually enclosed in cocoons, but sometimes naked.

The following tribes are established mainly on peculiarities in the structure of the gizzard.

Tribe 1. PLAGIOLEPIDII

Cosmopolitan but mostly paleotropical.

Plagiolepis (Fig. 87), Acropyga, Rhizomyrma, Acantholepis (with subgen. Acantholepis and Stigmaticus), Brachymyr- mexit, Myrmelachista, Melophorus (with subgen. Melophorus and Lasiophanes), Notoncus, Aphomomyrmeex, Rhopalo- myrmex.

Tribe 2. DIMORPHOMYRMII

Paleotropical.

Dimorphomyrmex (Fig. 98).

Tribe 3. MYRMOTERATHI

Paleotropical.

Myrmoteras (Fig. 82).

Tribe 4. CECOPHYLLII

Tropicopolitan.

Cecophylla (Fig. 123), Gigantiops, Gesomyrmex (Fig. 100).

Tribe 5. FORMICII

Cosmopolitan.

Prenolepis (with the subgen. Prenolepis, Euprenolepis and Nylanderia), Pseudolasius (Fig. 81), Lasius (with the sub- gen. Lasius, Prolasius and Acanthomyops), Polyergus, Formica (with the subgen. Formica and Proformica),
ANTS

*Myrmecocystus* (with the subgen. *Myrmecocystus* and *Cataglyphis*).

Tribe 6. **CAMPONOTII**

Cosmopolitan.

*Camponotus* (with the subgen. *Camponotus* and *Colobopsis*), *Rhinomyrmex*, *Mayria*, *Myrmecopsis*, *Calomyrmex*, *Myrmecorhynchus*, *Dendromyrmex*, *Opisthopsis*, *Echinopla*, *Polyrhachis* (Figs. 83 and 84), *Hemioptica* (Fig. 85).
CHAPTER IX

THE GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF ANTS

"These craggy regions, these chaotic wilds,
Does that benignity pervade, that warms
The mole contented with her darksome walk
In the cold ground; and to the emmet gives
Her foresight, and intelligence that makes
The tiny creatures strong by social league;
Supports the generations, multiplies
Their tribes, till we behold a spacious plain
Or grassy bottom, all, with little hills—
Their labour, covered, as a lake with waves;
Thousands of cities, in the desert place
Built up of life, and food, and means of life!"
—Wordsworth, "The Excursion," Book IV.

Few circumscribed groups of animals have a more significant geographical distribution than the ants. As colonies they are fettered to the soil or vegetation, but their winged females, though feeble flyers, may be wafted long distances by the wind and thus overcome mountain and water barriers of considerable magnitude. In these respects ants resemble plants, which, though rooted in the ground, are able nevertheless greatly to extend the range of their species by means of wind- or animal-borne seeds. That ants are often carried by air currents to great distances beyond their normal range is attested by a number of facts. Annually numbers of female ants are wafted out to sea or into our great lakes to be drowned and eaten by fishes, or conveyed to desolate mountain summits where they perish in futile attempts to found colonies. Occasionally however such widely dispersed females do succeed in establishing themselves and in rearing their offspring. According to Forel (1901m) the occident ant (*Pogonomyrmex occidentalis*), a species peculiar to the Great Plains, has been taken in Hawaii, and King (1901a) has found in Massachusetts a single colony of *Formica neoclera*, an ant restricted, so far as known, to the mountain valleys of Colorado.

This method of dispersal is, of course, denied to all ants like the Dorylinæ, certain Ponerinæ and Myrmicinæ, whose females are wingless, since these insects cannot cross bodies of water nor high mountain ranges. But as the Dorylinæ are migratory ants, and, as a rule, do not inhabit permanent nests, their colonies compensate, to a certain
extent, for the aperous condition of their females. There is, however, a passive displacement or dissemination of whole colonies in certain species like the fire-ant (*Solenopsis geminata*), which often nests in low-lands subject to frequent and sudden inundations. Von Ihering (1894) has made the interesting discovery that when a nest of these ants is flooded, they agglomerate to form a ball 16–25 cm. in diameter, which encloses the brood in the center. This ball is borne along on the surface of the water while its living units keep shifting their position to avoid too prolonged immersion, till the shore or some projecting rock or tree-trunk is reached, when the colony scrambles out of the uncongenial element. I am informed by a gentleman from Louisiana that this same ant resorts to the same method of saving its colonies in the flooded bayous of the Southern States. Similar observations have been made by Savage (1847) on the African driver ants (*Anomma arcens*) and by Ern. André (1885) on European ants.

Finally, ant colonies or fertile female ants are often transported by man from land to land as stowaways in the cargoes of ships and railway trains. Every botanical garden annually receives several species of these insects from the tropics in the pseudobulbs of orchids, among the leaves of aroids or tillandsias, or in the soil and moss adhering to the roots of plants, and some of the smaller species thus unintentionally imported manage to establish themselves permanently in the hot-houses.

Owing to these various means of dissemination, the species of ants have become more widely distributed than any other insects, with the possible exception of the Diptera. Some of our American forms, for example, *Dorymyrmex pyramicus*, range from Illinois to Argentina. Many species, like *Eciton cactum* and *Solenopsis geminata*, are coextensive with the tropical and subtropical portions of America, and the latter also occurs in the tropics of the Old World. The former, being a Doryline ant, does not occur in the West Indies. Still other species, like *Camponotus herculeanus*, *Formica fusca* and *sanguinea*, extend over the whole north temperate portion of the globe, and *C. maculatus* is represented by subspecies or varieties on every continent and on many of the outlying islands.

The distribution of ants may be studied either from a faunistic or from an ethological point of view. In faunistic studies the emphasis is placed on the areas or ranges covered by the various species, subspecies and varieties and on the bearing of such distribution on the genesis or descent of taxonomic groups as units. And since the existing fauna is unquestionably derived from previous faunas, which must have determined its character and composition, we are compelled to
seek for antecedent explanatory conditions in geology and paleontology. In ethological studies, on the other hand, one turns at once to the adaptations of the living forms to their specific environment and works back from these adaptations to the geographical and geological conditions by which they are influenced. Of these two methods, which necessarily supplement each other, the latter leads to more detailed and positive results, since our knowledge of previous faunas is in all cases more or less vague and problematic. A résumé of what has been ascertained concerning fossil ants will be given in the next chapter, but owing to its fragmentary character, will be used rather as a confirmation than as a foundation for inferences drawn from our existing fauna.

Emery (1893-'94) and von Ihering (1894) have shown that there is a very significant parallelism between the distribution of mammals and that of ants. Both groups appear to have arisen simultaneously during the Triassic or possibly during some previous period, and to have spread over the earth's surface in much the same manner, although, if we except the bats, few mammals have possessed such power of dispersal as the ants. A study of the mammals indicates that during the Mesozoic era there were extensive land connections between the present continents of Eurasia, Africa, America and Australia, and that these various regions were inhabited by a primitive, widely-distributed but now extinct fauna. During this era New Zealand was cut off from Australia and during the following Eocene epoch Africa, South America and Australia were in turn separated from the great continental mass. During the Oligocene a boreal and Indian fauna became differentiated in Eurasia and their separation was emphasized during the Miocene and Pliocene periods by an upheaval of the boundaries between the respective regions. During the early Tertiary, also, the connection between North and South America was severed and was not restored, according to some paleontologists, till the Pliocene epoch. It is highly probable, as Emery has suggested, that the Ponerinae correspond to the primitive, widely-distributed mammals of the Mesozoic era, and together with certain Myrmicinae, like Solenopsis, Pheidole, etc., represent an ancient cosmopolitan ant-fauna. Ponerinae occur even in New Zealand, which appears to have been isolated ever since the Jurassic. Since the Dorylinae are well developed in the tropics of both hemispheres, these ants must have arisen before Africa was separated from South America, probably from some primitive and widespread Ponerine forms like the Cerapachyidae. The almost complete absence of Dolichoderinae in Africa shows that this subfamily must have made its appearance after Africa had been separated from Eurasia. That the Dolichoderinae came from Ponerine ancestors is indicated.
by the annexant genus *Aneuretus*, still living in Ceylon, and the genera *Prolaneuretus* and *Paraneuretus*, which I have detected in the Baltic amber. The Camponotinae are a thoroughly cosmopolitan group, though represented by the greatest variety of types in the Old World. They must have arisen from the Ponerinae at a very remote period during Mesozoic times. It is very probable that the separation of the Indian from the South American region preceded the development of certain peculiar tribes among the Myrmicinae and Camponotinae since we find the singular Cryptocerii and Attii confined to the American tropics, whereas, the Indian region has the Cataulacii, *Polyrhachis*, and several remarkable Camponotine genera. The Tetramorii, too, are almost exclusively Indo-African, being represented in America only by a few more or less aberrant species.

The north temperate regions both in Eurasia and America seem to have remained long enough in connection with the Indian region to acquire an admixture of types from this source. Purely north temperate elements are the genera *Formica*, *Polyergus*, *Lasius*, *Myrmica*, *Stenamma s. str.* and certain species of *Leptothorax* (acervorum) and *Camponotus* (herculeanus). Europe acquired its species of *Monomorium*, *Tetramorium*, *Cremastogaster*, *Plagiolepis*, *Acantholepis* and *Bothriomyrmex* from southern Asia, and North America received its species of *Monomorium* and *Cremastogaster* from the same source.

The history of the North American ant-fauna deserves somewhat fuller treatment. This fauna, which during preglacial times was probably exceedingly rich in genera and species, must have been largely exterminated when the northern portion of our continent was buried under the great ice-sheet. Further southward a few of the more warmth-loving forms managed to survive, where they have persisted as relicts, while somewhat more numerous remnants of the ancient preglacial arctic fauna survived along the edge of the ice-sheet or possibly on small non-glaciated islands farther north. South of the ice-sheet the survival of the old forms was greatest in the Sonoran province, *i. e.*, in Northern Mexico and the Southwestern States. This seems to have been an arid region even at that time and was, therefore, warmer than the more humid southeastern portion of the continent. The recession of the ice-sheet at the close of the glacial epoch was followed by a northward migration of the ants. This appears to have taken place in much the same manner as Adams has described for other North American animals and plants: "The returning biota followed, in all probability, a definite successional relation and was composed of three general belts or 'waves,' concentrically distributed south of the ice margin. The first one was of the barren ground type, the
second was represented by distinct eastern and western coniferous forest types, and the third by the biota of the southeastern and southwestern states. The first wave was of a trans-continental extent, the second while coniferous and transcontinental was composed of two distinct types, the eastern, represented by the biota of northeastern North America, and the western by that of the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Coast. The northeastern biota overflowed to the north, to the northwest into the Mackenzie basin and even a few forms into the Yukon valley and to the Rocky Mountains. The northwestern biota spread from the Rocky Mountains and Pacific Coast region in the United States north to British Columbia and Alaska. The third wave spread from the southeastern centre of dispersal northward to the conifers and west to the Great Plains. From the southwestern centre the life spread north on each side of the Rocky Mountains into Canada, and only stragglers spread eastward into the humid region."

Besides the three waves recognized by Adams it is necessary to recognize a fourth or tropical wave of species, which have been moving up into North America from South America. As this has come over two distinct routes, namely by way of the West Indies and Mexico, we may recognize an eastern and a western center as in the second and third waves.

At present our knowledge of the ants of British America and Alaska is so incomplete that it is impossible to state whether there is a distinct tundral fauna, that is, a fauna living beyond the coniferous tree-belt. Observations in the mountains of Colorado, however, indicate that ants do not occur far above timber-line, which is there at an altitude of about 4,000 meters. Isolated females may sometimes be found under stones at a greater elevation, but these have been borne aloft by air-currents and perish without being able to establish formicaries. This is also the case at more moderate elevations above the timber-line, as, for example, on the summit of Mt. Washington (Wheeler, 1905a).

Even the non-glaciated portion of North America, however, has retained an ant-fauna composed very largely of well-known Eurasian genera and relics of a more southerly type which have been unequally preserved in the eastern and western portions of the United States. The eastern portion retained a very small number of these ancient genera, probably on account of its much colder climate during the glacial epoch. Nevertheless, the eastern and western centers of the areas covered by Adams's second and third waves each retained a certain number of relics, which seem to have formed as many constellations of species, subspecies and varieties within comparatively recent
times. Although these have spread from their centers of origin and intermingled with the northern circumpolar fauna, they have not been sufficiently displaced to prevent the recognition of the four centers of dispersal which Adams calls the northeastern, northwestern, southeastern and southwestern respectively. Of these the first has contributed very little, the last more considerably to our ant-fauna, and the northeastern and northwestern have more species in common than the other two centers. The former, in addition to the subboreal types above mentioned, is characterized by the following: Stigmatomma pallipes, Cremastogaster lineolata, Camponotus fallax, Prenolepis imparis, Polyergus and the species of Lasius of the subgenus Acanthomyops. These species, however, are often represented by distinct eastern and western subspecies and varieties and usually the western are more closely related to the Eurasian than to the eastern forms of the species. This difference in relationships is even more striking when distinct but allied species are compared in the two centers. Thus the western Stenamma nearcticum is more closely related to the European S. westwoodi than to the eastern S. brevicorne; the eastern Aphanogaster fulva is represented in the west by A. occidentale which is merely a variety or subspecies of the European A. subterranea; the eastern Camponotus fallax, Formica rufa and Polyergus lucidus are represented in the western region by subspecies or varieties very much like the Eurasian forms. The northeastern center retains at least three relicts, Myrmecina graminicola, Ponera coarctata and Harpgoxenus common to the Eurasian fauna, but apparently absent from the northwestern center; whereas Myrmica mutica, which is hardly more than a subspecies of the European M. rubida, occurs only in the mountain valleys of the northwest. This center also has three genera, Symmyrmica, Sympherideole and Epipheideole, not known to occur elsewhere. These are, however, parasitic species and have probably developed from Leptothorax- and Pheidole-like forms within comparatively recent times. Although several species of Acanthomyops occur in the Rocky Mountains, representatives of this subgenus are far more abundant in the northeastern center from which they probably radiated. On the other hand, the species of Formica allied to the European F. rufa have had their center of origin and dispersal in the northwest.

The southeastern and southwestern centers contain more relics of the southern preglacial fauna and have, moreover, received many accessions from the fourth, or tropical wave which started in South America, probably in Archiguania, and reached North America by way of Central America and Mexico on the one hand, and the Antilles on the
other. The southeastern and southwestern centers exhibit some blending of forms through an eastward migration from Mexico across the Gulf States and a counter westward migration of forms from the southeastern center.

The southeastern center is characterized by several species of *Dolichoderus* of the subgenus *Hypoclinea*, closely related to the Eurasian *H. 4-notata*. This group is not represented in the southwest. The species of *Systincta* and *Proceratium* have been retained as relicts. The latter genus seems not to occur in Eurasia. Several peculiar species of *Aphanogaster* (*treatae*, *maria* and *lamellidens*) have evidently had their origin in the southeastern center, to which we must also assign *Pogonomyrmex badius*, a single genus, *Epacius*, and a subgenus of *Leptothorax* (*Dichotheora*).

In the arid southwestern center there are a number of relicts which seem to have been actively producing new forms since they were relegated to this area. Such are the genera *Liometopum*, *Myrmecocystus*, *Messor* and the subgenus *Ischnomyrmex* and the sections of the genus *Camponotus* which comprise the species allied to *C. maculatus* and *fallax*. These forms are closely related to Old World species of Indian origin.

The admixture of adventitious tropical forms both in the southeastern and southwestern centers is considerable. In the latter these have nearly all arrived by way of Mexico, in the former many are of Antillean provenience, but a certain number seem to be Mexican. The genus *Eciton*, e. g., is well represented in Texas and there are a few species in the Southeastern States. As this genus is not represented in the West Indies or even in Florida, the eastern forms must have immigrated from the southwest. The same is true of species like *Odontomachus clarus* which is said to occur as far east as Georgia. *O. hematodes*, *Xenomyrmex stolli*, *Cryptocerus varians*, *Pseudoponera stigma* and *Camponotus abdominalis*, however, must have entered Florida directly from the West Indies. It is equally clear that *Cryptocerus angustus*, the species of the Ponerine genera *Pachycondyla*, *Platythyrea*, *Neoponera*, *Acanthostichus* and *Cerapachys*, the Myrmicine forms *Macromischia* and *Xiphomyrmex* and the Attiline genera and subgenera *Atta*, *Messorius*, *Mycterosoritis*, *Trachymyrmex* and *Cryptomyrmex* (in part) reached the southwestern center from tropical Mexico. Other genera widely distributed in the American tropics, like *Iridomyrmex*, *Dorymyrmex*, *Pseudomyrmex*, *Strumigenys*, certain species of *Ponera* (*ergatandria*, *trigona*, *opaciceps*) and *Camponotus* (*maculatus* and *planatus*) may have reached the adjacent portions of the United States both from Mexico and the West Indies. This is
clearly the case with *C. planatus*, which occurs in the United States only at the southern tip of Florida and in southwestern Texas.

It is not so easy to account for the distribution of species of a few tropical and subtropical genera like *Pogonomyrmex*, *Erebomyrma* and *Pheidole* within the United States. *Pogonomyrmex* is a peculiarly American genus ranging from Montana to Argentina. It is represented in the Southwestern States by a number of species, one occurs in Florida and Georgia and at least one in the West Indies. The southeastern species (*P. badius*) differs from all the others in having polymorphic workers, the West Indian form belongs to the subgenus *Ephebomyrmex*, which is also represented in Brazil, Mexico, Texas and Arizona. Recently the number of known South American species of *Pogonomyrmex* has been considerably augmented (Emery, 1905b). The question arises as to whether this genus had its center of origin in South America and radiated its species northward or whether it arose in the southwestern center of North America and extended thence southward to Argentina. The former supposition is supported by analogy with the advent of so many South American forms in North America, the latter by the fact that *Pogonomyrmex* is closely related in structure, though not in habits, with the boreal genus *Myrmica*. Of *Erebomyrma* only a single species (*E. longi* of Texas) was known till recently, when Emery described another (*E. peruviana*) from Peru. This genus, too, is probably of South American origin. This may be inferred from the fact that the allied genera *Tranopelta* and *Carebarella* are exclusively neotropical. Moreover, the allied genus *Solenopsis* is represented by a much greater number of species in South than in North America. The genus *Pheidole* is widely distributed and represented by numerous species in the Southeastern and Southwestern States and a few species (*Ph. vincendica, tysoni, pilifera*) have spread into the Northern States. Most of the North American species are quite distinct and may be regarded as endemic. I know of no species common to the West Indies and the southeastern center, and although many southwestern species occur in northern Mexico they seem to be for the most part quite distinct from the southern Mexican and South American species. As the genus is cosmopolitan it is not improbable that our species may be derived from relicts of Mesozoic forms that were preserved in the southeastern and southwestern centers during glacial times. Perhaps further studies of the Mexican and West Indian, and especially of the Cuban and Haytian species may throw some light on the American distribution of this interesting genus.

A few words must be said about the ants that have been imported into North America by commerce, for although these comprise a com-
paratively small number of species, they have considerable economic importance. The following have been brought to our shores and have succeeded in gaining a foothold, especially in dwellings where they do

![Diagram of ants](image)

Fig. 86. The Argentine ant (*Iridomyrmex humilis*). (Courtesy of Mr. W. Newell, drawing by Miss Charlotte M. King.) A, Worker; A', head; A'', petiole of same in profile; B, deálated female; B', head; B'', petiole of same; C, male; C', head; C'', petiole.

not come into competition with our native species: *Monomorium pharaonis, salomonis, destructor* and *floricola, Solenopsis rufa, Pheidole megacephala and flavens, Tetramorium cespitum, guineense and*
*simillimum, Prenolepis fulva* and *longicornis, Plagiolepis longipes, Tapinoma melanocephalum* and *Iridomyrmex humilis*. All of these, with the exception of the pavement ant (*T. cespitum*), are of tropical origin, and nearly all of them have come from the Old World. *T. cespitum* of Europe is now common about New York, Washington and Philadelphia, but it is so sporadic that we must conclude either that it is of comparatively recent importation, or is prevented from spreading by competition with our native ants.¹

All of the other species cited above require considerable warmth and even *Monomorium pharaonis*, the tiny yellow house-ant, which is often a pest in ships or in the dwellings of sea-port towns, does not nest out of doors except in southern latitudes. Some of our tropical ants (*Neoponera villosa, Camponotus floridanus* and *Pheidole flavens*) manage to live for considerable periods of time in our northern hot-houses. At least one species from the American tropics (*Iridomyrmex humilis* (Fig. 86)) has acquired a much wider range, having recently made its appearance in New Orleans. In this locality, where its habits have been carefully studied by Titus (1905) and Newell (1908a), it has become a serious pest and is driving out the native ants. That it is spreading rapidly over the warmer portions of the globe is shown by the fact that I have recently received specimens from various localities in California and from Cape Colony. It has also become a pest in Portugal (Martins, 1907), and, according to Stoll (1898) has been imported into Madeira where it has supplanted another previously introduced species, *Pheidole megacephala*, which was the house-ant of the island in the days of Heer (1852).

Some idea of the abundance of this ant in the middle of the last century may be gained from the following extract from Heer’s work: “It occurs throughout the southern portion of the island of Madeira up to an elevation of 1,000 feet in prodigious numbers, especially in hot, sunny places, where it is to be found under eight out of every ten stones that may be overturned. In the city of Funchal there is probably not a single house that is not infested with millions of these insects. They climb to the top stories, issue in swarms from the cracks in walls and floors and keep crossing the rooms in regular files in all directions. They creep up the legs of tables, along their edges and into cupboards, chests, etc.” This ant is very common in the Bermudas and West Indies and will probably be found in Florida. There can be little doubt that wherever it gains a foothold in tropical or

¹According to Marlatt (1898) this species has long been a resident of the Eastern States. He believes that it may be the species referred to by Kalm as occurring in the houses of Philadelphia as early as 1748.
subtropical countries it is able to propagate very rapidly and to exterminate the indigenous ant-fauna. This seems to be the case in Bermuda, and I have recently seen a good illustration of its habits in the Virgin Islands. During March, 1906, I devoted ten days to a careful study of the ant-fauna of the little island of Culebra, off the eastern coast of Porto Rico, without seeing a single specimen of *Ph. megacephala*. This island is, however, completely overrun with a dark variety of the vicious fire-ant (*Solenopsis geminata*). One day, on visiting the island of Culebrita, which is separated by a shallow channel hardly a mile in width from the eastern coast of Culebra, I was astonished to find it completely overrun with *Ph. megacephala*. This ant was nesting under every stone and log, from the shifting sand of the sea-beach to the walls of the light-house on the highest point of the island. The most careful search failed to reveal the presence of any other species, though the flora and physical conditions are the same as those of Culebra. It is highly probable that *Ph. megacephala*, perhaps accidentally introduced from St. Thomas, a few miles to the east, had exterminated all the other ants which must previously have inhabited Culebrita. The absence of *megacephala* on Culebra is perhaps to be explained by the presence of the equally prolific and pugnacious fire-ant.

The recent displacement of *Ph. megacephala* in Madeira and of our native ants in Louisiana by *Iridomyrmex humilis* is analogous to the

![Ant](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

**Fig. 87.** Worker of *Plagiolepis longipes*, now spread over the tropics of both hemispheres. (Bingham.)

well-known displacement in Europe and America of the black house-rat (*Mus rattus*) by the brown species (*M. decumanus*). In a similar manner, according to Stoll, another ant, *Plagiolepis longipes* (Fig. 87), introduced into the island Reunion from its original home in Cochin China, has driven out some of the primitive autochthonous species. We may also look forward to the appearance of this same ant within the warmer portions of the United States, since it has already been recorded by Pergande (1894) from Todos Santos, in Lower California.
Still another ant that has acquired a footing in tropical Florida, and probably also in other localities in the Gulf States, is *Prenolepis longicornis*. It has long been a common species in the green-houses of temperate Europe and America. In some of these, as in the Jardin des Plantes in Paris, it has been a permanent resident for more than forty years. In the city of New York it may sometimes be found even on the top floors of the great apartment buildings. Wasmann (1905g) and Assmuth (1907) give good reasons for believing that the original home of this ant is India, and that it has been carried to all parts of the tropics in ships. They show that it has been accompanied in its wanderings by two myrmecophiles, a Lathridiid beetle (*Coluocera madera*) and a small cricket (*Myrmecophila acerzorum* var. *flavocincta*). The peregrinations of *Tapinoma melanocephalum*, which also occurs in northern dwellings and green-houses, are similar to those of *P. longicornis*.

The foregoing sketch of the distribution of North American ants shows that our fauna is very rich in comparison with that of Europe. Nevertheless it must be admitted that we have few distinctive types—apparently only the specialized parasitic genera *Epexus*, *Symmyrmina*, *Symphidole* and *Eipheidole*, the subgenera *Dichocephora* and *Acanthomyops* and the ancient relict *Proceratium*. Kobelt has been led by his studies on the distribution of other animals to the conclusion that our existing North American fauna, like that of other countries, "apart from the introduced and feral domestic animals and the English sparrow—has shown no evidence of enrichment since the diluvial period. The present is a depauperate diluvial fauna. America, too, proves that we are not living in an incipient, but in a declining geological epoch, not at the beginning of a youthful, creative Quaternary, but at the close of the Tertiary period, whose generative power has been extinguished."

This statement may not be strictly true of dominant insect groups like the Formicidae. Not only is it probable that our fauna is being slowly but continually enriched by accessions from the tropics, but a comparison of the list of North American ants at the end of this volume with the lists of European species compiled by Mayr, Forel, Emery, Ern. André and others, shows that the related and identical species of both continents have a greater number of subspecies and varieties in North America. This would seem to force us to the conclusion that many of our ants are actually in a mutational or premutational phase.

Turning from this more general, faunistic account to the ethological distribution of ants, we observe considerable differences in the frequency with which the colonies occur within the range of each species. When we thus concentrate our attention on a single form,
we find that the colonies are not uniformly distributed over their whole range, but only in particular stations, or habitats, showing that these insects, like plants and many other animals, depend very intimately for their welfare on precise physical and organic environments, such as the nature of the soil and vegetation, the amount of moisture and the exposure to sunlight. Colonies that happen to be established in unfavorable localities take on a more or less depauperate appearance. This is indicated by their scarcity and the small size of the colonies and individuals, and is particularly noticeable at the very limits or just beyond the limits of the normal range of a particular form. I find that according to the station inhabited by the various species, subspecies and varieties, at least in North America, we may distinguish the following ethological groups, or associations:

1. The woodland, or silvicolous association, comprising the species that inhabit our moist, shady northern and eastern forests. With the extinction or drainage of these forests or the removal of the undergrowth, this characteristic, and in many respects, very primitive fauna rapidly disappears.

2. The glade, or nemoricolous association, comprising the ants that prefer open, sunny woods, clearings or the borders of woods. A portion of this fauna maintains itself even in the gardens and parks of our cities.

3. The field, or cespiticolous association, comprising the ants that prefer to nest in grassy pastures and lawns, in situations exposed to the full warmth and light of the sun.

4. The meadow, or praticolous association, comprising the ants which inhabit low, grassy meadows or bogs.

5. The heath, or ereticolous association, comprising the ants that inhabit rather poor, sandy or gravelly soil exposed to the sun and covered with a sparse growth of weeds or grasses.

6. The sand, or arenicolous association, comprising the ants that prefer to nest in pure sand.

7. The desert, or deserticolous association, comprising the ants that inhabit the dry, open deserts and plains.

A few of our species, like Lasius americanus and Formica subsericea, are so adaptable that they occur more or less abundantly in all or nearly all of the above stations. Owing to intergradation of these stations in some places, there is, of course, a corresponding mingling of forms. Thus certain species, like Monomorium minimum, seem to belong indifferently either to the heath or sand fauna. In the deserts of the Southwestern States these two faunas may either mingle or be sharply separated from each other. In the Northeastern and
Middle States a similar relation obtains between the glade and field faunas, which it is often impossible to separate by a hard and fast line. *Formica schaufussii*, for example, seems to occur indifferently in either station.

With the exception of the sand and desert associations, which depend very largely on physical conditions, like soil, warmth and moisture, the above list comprises mainly adaptations to particular types of vegetation. Other associations of a similar character undoubtedly exist in other countries, especially in the tropics, where the relations between ants and plants are often more intimate than in temperate regions. A very striking ethological association, depending on relations to the soil and consisting of species common to many of the above groups, is represented by the so-called hypogæic ants. These occur in all parts of the world, and, owing to their exclusively subterranean life, have acquired a peculiar adaptive facies. They are aptly described by Emery (1875a) as "the inhabitants of the most remote and obscure hiding places of the soil, dwellers in the narrow crannies beneath the heaviest rocks, in the very pores of the earth, blind and ambylocopic pygmies of slow gait and strangely varied forms, microscopic remnants, so to speak, of extinct genera, that have found in the bosom of the earth a respite from the invasion of more robust and prolific types." As a rule these hypogæic ants are of small size, pale color and have no eyes or only vestiges of these sense-organs, although all of these peculiarities may be found in certain epigæic species. We find, indeed, all gradations in habits between ants that live in exposed situations and extremely hypogæic forms, and there can be no doubt that the latter ethological group has been recruited from unrelated genera among the former. As nearly all ants live much of the time in dark subterranean galleries and chambers, the transition to a completely hypogæic habit is easily effected, especially when food is more accessible in the soil than on the surface, or when larger and more pugnacious ants make life at the surface intolerable. But no matter how hypogæic a species may become, it always retains enough of its ancestral habits to come to the surface for the nuptial flight of the males and females. At such times the blind and etiolated workers excavate a gallery to the surface and conduct the winged sexes to the opening. In North America there are hypogæic species of *Eciton*, *Stigmatomma*, *Cerapachys*, *Syphincta*, *Proceratium*, *Ponera*, *Solenopsis*, *Eremonyrmex*, *Strumigenys* and *Lasius*, and in other parts of the world species of the genera *Dorylus*, *Leptanilla*, *Aëromyrmex*, *Diplomorium*, *Epitritus*, *Rhopalothrix*, etc., have very similar habits, although these in most cases are very imperfectly known. Facts of
great interest will surely be brought to light, when hymenopterists devote as much attention to these insects as the coleopterists have bestowed on hypogaeic beetles. Many of the species (†Ecton cacum, Stigmatomma, etc.) feed on larvæ and subterranean arthropods in general; others, like some of the small species of Solenopsis, Aëromyrma, Ereboxyrma, etc., live in cleptobiosis with other ants or termites and feed on their brood; still others, like our yellow species of Lasius s. str. and all the species of the subgenus Acanthomyops, pasture droves of aphids and coccids on the roots and subterranean stems of plants.

In conclusion it should be noted that the habitat of a particular species, subspecies or variety is selected in the first instance by the fertile female ant when she establishes her colony. If the physical and living environment is congenial and moderately stable, the colony, in the great majority of cases, remains stationary, but if the conditions become unfavorable, it migrates to another site. In such cases the workers not only select the new habitat, but also determine and bring about the change of dwelling.
CHAPTER X

FOSSIL ANTS

Dum Phaëthontea formica vagatur in umbra
Implicuit tenuem succina gutta feram,
Sic modo quæ fuerat vita contempta manente
Funeribus facta est nunc pretiosa suis.

Before proceeding further with our account of existing ants, it will be advisable to review what is known of the extinct species. And as the Formicidæ are one of the most specialized families of the Hymenoptera, which are themselves a highly specialized order, this review may properly begin with a few remarks on the paleontological history of the order as a whole.

The Hymenoptera first make their appearance during Mesozoic time, but concerning the families to which the few fossil remains belong, there is considerable difference of opinion. Heer in 1865 described from the Lower Liassic of Aargau, Switzerland, a specimen which he regarded as an ant and named *Palaomyrnx prodromus*. This has long been regarded as the most ancient not only of known ants but also of Hymenoptera. According to Handlirsch (1906–1908), however, who has recently subjected our knowledge of extinct insects to a critical revision, this fossil “certainly does not belong to the Hymenoptera, but presumably to the Homoptera.” In 1854 Westwood described two wing impressions from the Lower Purbecks of Durdlestone Bay, England (Jurassic), as those of a couple of huge ants, *Formicium brodiei* and *Myrmicium heeri*. These are now shown by Handlirsch to belong to saw-flies of the genus *Pseudosirex*, which also comprises thirteen other species from the Solenhofen deposits of the same age. This singular genus is the most primitive of known Hymenoptera and has been assigned by Handlirsch to a special family, the Pseudosiricidæ, differing from the Siricidæ and other recent Hymenoptera in having numerous longitudinal veins in the wings, a distinctly Orthopteroid character which, like many other peculiarities of the Hymenoptera, points to a derivation of the order from Blattoid, or cockroach-like ancestors. The only other Hymenopteron known from the Mesozoic is *Ephialtites jurassicus*, based on a specimen from the Kimmeridge (Malm) of Spain. This insect is evidently a member of
the higher, or apocrital division of the order, but its affinities are very obscure. We are thus led to the conclusion that, although both the lower and higher divisions of the Hymenoptera are represented in the Mesozoic, no ants are included in the number. But so many genera and species of these insects appear full-fledged in the early Tertiary that we are compelled to believe that they must have existed in the Trias or even in the Lias, but belonged to so few genera and species or lived in such small communities that they left no remains.

The numerous species of Tertiary ants not only belong to many different genera but often to living genera, and even the extinct types are readily referable to the recent subfamilies and to no others. The extinct genera, moreover, are of such a character that one would not be surprised to discover any of them alive today in some of the unexplored portions of the Old World tropics. Among these Tertiary ants the male, female and worker phases were as sharply differentiated as they are today. Joseph Le Conte ("Elements of Geology," p. 511) is, therefore, mistaken when, from the fact that nearly all the fossil ants

![Ant](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

Fig. 88. Worker of Prionomyrmex longiceps, a primitive Ponerine ant from the Baltic Amber. (Original.)

Fig. 89. Worker of Bradoponera meieri from the Baltic Amber, (Mayr.)

a, From the left side; b, head from above.

of Oeningen and Radoboj are males and females, he infers that "the wingless condition, the neutral condition, the wonderful instincts and organized social habits, have been developed together since the Miocene epoch." I shall show presently that had he consulted Heer's work on these insects (1847), he would not have made this statement.

Tertiary ants have been found in both Europe and North America in some 23 localities, representing several geological periods and formations. The following are the European formations: Baltic amber, beds of Aix in the Provence and Gurnet Bay, Isle of Wight (Lower Oligo-
cene); Schossnitz in Silesia, Krottensee in Bohemia and Rott in the Rhinelands (Upper Oligocene); Radoboj in Croatia, Falkenau and Kutschlin in Bohemia and Cape Staratschin, Spitzbergen (Lower Miocene); Sicilian amber and the beds of Brunnstatt in Alsacia (Middle Miocene); Oeningen in Baden, Parschlug in Styria, Tallya and Thalheim in Hungary, Gabbro in Italy (Upper Miocene); Sinigallia in Italy (Pliocene). The age of the North American deposits has not been accurately determined. Ants have been seen in the amber of Nantucket (Goldsmith, 1879) which is attributed to the Tertiary. Other localities are Green River, Wyoming; White River, Colorado and Quesnel, British Columbia, which are referred to the Oligocene, and Florissant, Colorado, which is said to belong to the Miocene.

The Baltic and Sicilian ambers and the beds of Radoboj, Oeningen and Florissant have yielded far and away the greatest number of ants. The most beautiful specimens are those of the amber, which are often so perfectly preserved that they may be as readily studied as recent ants mounted in Canada balsam. Most of these specimens are workers and belong to more or less arboreal species, but there are also quite a number of males and females. As nearly all of the latter have wings they must have been caught in the liquid resin just before or after their nuptial flight. The preservation of the Oeningen, Radoboj and Florissant specimens is very inferior to those of the amber. The deposits in these localities are lacustrine, that is, they consist of fine sand or volcanic ashes laid down in fresh water lakes. This accounts for the fact that nearly all the specimens are males and females, for as Heer says: "With few exceptions only winged individuals are found, because the wingless individuals, in this case the workers, were drowned less frequently than the others. Both males and females occur, but the former are much rarer than the latter, probably because the females, having a
much larger and heavier abdomen, fell into the water more often than the males.” The fossil ants of Florissant show the same peculiarities, except that the males are not much rarer than the females. Thus the condition which Le Conte interpreted as indicating an absence of the worker caste during Miocene and premiocene times, is easily and naturally explained. It is strange that he failed to see this, especially as in the paragraph immediately preceding the remark above quoted, he calls attention to the following interesting resemblance between modern

![Image of a male ant](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

![Image of a worker ant](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

lacustrine conditions and those which must have prevailed at Oeningen:

“On Lake Superior, at Eagle Harbor, in the summer of 1844, we saw the white sands of the beach blackened with the bodies of insects of many species, but mostly beetles, cast ashore. As many species were here collected in a few days, by Dr. J. L. Le Conte, as could have been collected in as many months in any other place. The insects seem to have flown over the surface of the lake; to have been beaten down by winds and drowned, and then slowly carried shoreward and accumulated in this harbor, and finally cast ashore by winds and waves. Doubtless at Oeningen, in Miocene times, there was an extensive lake surrounded by dense forests; and the insects drowned in its waters, and the leaves strewn by winds on its surface, were cast ashore by its waves.”

The conditions described by Le Conte for Lake Superior are common to all our Great Lakes. The insects drowned in them are often buried in the sand of the beaches and might eventually fossilize, but
the Tertiary lakes of Oeningen, Radoboj and Florissant must have been much smaller, shallower and calmer bodies of water, and the insects that dropped into them or were swept into them by streams, were probably imbedded in the mud under water. Many of them were, of course, devoured by fishes. Professor Cockerell has sent me from Florissant several specimens of fossil fish excrement consisting almost entirely of the hard indigestible heads of ants. It is very unfortunate for the student that so few of the workers of the Oeningen, Radoboj and Florissant ants have been preserved, for our knowledge, as we have seen, is largely based on the worker caste and the males and females even of recent forms are so imperfectly known that fossils of these sexes are very difficult to classify, especially when the characters of most taxonomic value, such as the shape of the head, mouth-parts and abdominal pedicel are obliterated by flattening and distortion. Another great difficulty is encountered in attempting to correlate the

![Ant](image)

**Fig. 94.** Worker of *Elec-
tromyrmex klebsi* sp. nov. from the Baltic Amber. (Original.)

**Fig. 95.** Worker of *Stig-
omyrmex venustus* from the Baltic Amber. (Mayr.)

males, females and workers of the same species. This is no easy task with carelessly collected recent ants, but with fossils, except those of the amber, it becomes almost impossible.

The ants of Oeningen and Radoboj were first studied by Heer (1849, 1856, 1867) before the taxonomy of recent ants had been placed on a firm basis by the researches of Mayr. It is therefore impossible to assign most of Heer’s species to their proper genera, and although Mayr (1867b) was able to examine a number of the Swiss paleontologist’s species, he did not have access to the types. Hence the whole ant-fauna of Oeningen and Radoboj must be reinvestigated by some one thoroughly acquainted with the recent ants. The species
of the Baltic amber have been studied in a masterly manner by Mayr (1868a). A few additional species from the same formation were subsequently described by Ern. André (1895a) and Emery (1905c), and the latter has also described fourteen species from the Sicilian amber (1891e).

According to Handlirsch's list of fossil insects, of the 600 species of Hymenoptera that have been described from the Tertiary, 307 or more than half are ants. These insects must therefore have been very numerous in individuals, just as they are to-day. This is true alike of the Baltic amber and the shales of Radoboj, Oeningen and Florissant. Mayr examined 1,460 ants from the amber, Ern. André 698 and through the kindness of Prof. R. Klebs, of the Royal Amber Museum of Königsberg and Prof. W. Tornquist of the Königsberg University, I have been able to study nearly 5,000 of these beautiful specimens. Heer says: "The ants are among the commonest fossil animals of Oeningen and Radoboj. In the latter locality they pre- dominate even more in proportion to the other insects than they do at Oeningen. Altogether I have examined 301 specimens, representing 64 species; from Oeningen 151 specimens of 30 species, from Radoboj 143 specimens of 37 species and from Parschlug 7 specimens belonging to 4 species." According to Scudder (1890), "the ants are the most numerous of all insects at Florissant, comprising, perhaps four-fifths of all the Hymenoptera; I have already about four thousand specimens of perhaps fifty species (very likely many more); they are mostly Formicidae, but there are not a few Myrmicidae and some Poneridae." I have recently made a rapid preliminary study of the 4,000 specimens of the Scudder collection belonging to the Museum of Comparative Zoology, and of nearly 3,000 more found at Florrisant by Prof. T. D. A. Cockerell, Mrs. W. P. Cockerell, S. Rohwer and myself, and am able to confirm Scudder's statement. There are probably not more than 50 species in both collections, many of them being represented by a great number of specimens, and hardly 70, or one per cent., of the 7,000 specimens are workers.

Of the described Tertiary ants that can be unmistakably assigned to their respective subfamilies, 139 species are Camponotinae, 25 are Dolichoderinae, 85 Myrmicinae and 27 Ponerinae. A single species (Anomma rubella) is referred to the Dorylinae by F. Smith (1868). I have not seen his description and figure of this insect, but his generic determinations of recent ants were often so erroneous that his competence to assign a fossil species to its proper genus may be doubted. The proportion of species in the other subfamilies is interesting because it is not unlike that obtaining at the present day. The number of indi-
viduals belonging to each subfamily can be satisfactorily given only for the ants of the Baltic amber. Of the 2,158 specimens examined by Mayr and André, 764 were Camponotinae, 1,310 Dolichoderinae, 59 Myrmicinæ and 25 Ponerinæ. The great preponderance of Dolichoderinae is due to two species, Bothriomyrmex gapperti (889 specimens) and Iridomyrmex geinitzi (248 specimens), which are represented by 1,137 specimens, or more than half of the total number. The species of Myrmicinæ and Ponerinæ are each represented by only a few individuals. From these facts Mayr concludes “that the Ponerinæ of the Tertiary exhibited the weakest development and have reached their full efflorescence in recent times.” He advances a similar opinion in regard to the Myrmicinæ. Emery, however, has shown that this inference is erroneous, for the Ponerinæ—and the same is true of the Myrmicinæ—are much less arboreal in their habits than the Dolichoderinae and Camponotinae, and would therefore be much less frequently entrapped in the liquid exudations of succiniferous trees. Then, too, the Ponerinæ probably formed small colonies as they do at the present time. I have found several undescribed Ponerinæ and Myrmicinæ both in the Baltic amber and in the shales of Florissant, showing that these groups must have been at least as highly diversified in the Miocene and lower Oligocene as the other two subfamilies.

Only in the amber species have the genera been at all satisfactorily established. Those described from other formations are very largely guesswork. This is especially true of such genera as Heer’s Imhoffia, Attopsis and Poneropsis. Other species were placed by him and Scudder in the recent genera Lasius, Formica, Dolichoderus, Camponotus, Myrmica and Aphanogaster, but probably many of these allocations are erroneous. The only genera not represented in the amber, but occurring in the Tertiary strata, are Lonchomyrmex (Fig. 90) and Liometopum. We may divide the genera of the Baltic and Sicilian ambers into two groups, the extinct and recent, and the latter may be subdivided into those still represented by species in Europe (palearctic), which are nearly all common to the nearctic region as well (circumpolar), and those now confined to the tropics of the Old World (paleotropical). Grouping the genera thus, we have the table on page 167.

Of the 40 genera included in this table, 13 are extinct and 27, or more than two thirds, are still living. Of the latter, a little more than half (14) are still represented in Europe and a little less than half (13) in the Old World tropics. It will also be seen that the ratio (7:4) of exclusively paleotropical to palearctic genera in the Sicilian amber is nearly twice that of the Baltic amber (11:13), although very few specimens of the former have been examined. But it should
FOSSIL ANTS

BALTIC AMBER       SICILIAN AMBER

1. Extinct Genera

Prionomyrmex
Bradoponera
Propodomyrma gen. nov.
Nothomyrmica gen. nov.
Electromyrmex gen. nov.
Stigmomyrmex
Lampromyrmex
Encamurus
Paraneuretus gen. nov.
Protaneuretus gen. nov.
Rhopalomyrmex

Acrostigma
Hypopomymex

2. Recent Genera

(a) Paleartic

Ponera
Monomorium
Aphanogaster
Myrmica
Leptothorax
Dolichoderus
Bothriomyrmex
Tapinoma
Plagiolepis
Prenolepis
Lasius
Formica
Camponotus

(b) Paleotropical

Ectatomma
? Anomma
Sima
Oligomyrmex
Æromyrmex
Cataulacus
Iridomyrmex
Æcophylla
Dimorphomyrmex
Gesomyrmex
? Polyrhachis
be noted that all the palearctic genera enumerated for the Sicilian amber are also common to the paleotropical fauna of the present day. This will explain the following quotation from Emery (1893-'94): "My studies on the ants of the Sicilian amber have demonstrated that at the beginning of the Tertiary, Europe had an ant-fauna of Indoaustralian character, still living and exclusively of this character in Sicily during the formation of the amber; while to the north of the sea which at that time extended across Europe, representatives of this fauna, mingled with Formica, Myrmica and other recent holarctic types, lived in the forests of the Samland. After the disappearance of this sea the northern fauna pushed its way southward as far as the Mediterranean. Then came the Glacial epoch, which extinguished the Indian fauna in the north and drove its feeble remnants, mingled with arctic forms to the warmer localities of southern Europe. From these regions the present ant-fauna wandered back, with the disappearance of the ice, into the middle and northern portions of the continent. But the tropical forms had difficulty in returning, because the Mediterranean, the African deserts and the steppes to the eastward were so many barriers to their progress. The European ant-fauna therefore remains comparatively poor."

The mixture of arctic and tropical forms in the amber, a peculiarity which characterizes the other insects and the plants no less than the Formicidae, has not been satisfactorily explained. Heer endeavored to account for it on the following assumption: "It is probable that the succiniferous forests also covered Scandinavia and that the conifers were able to grow even on the high mountains. As the amber region extended from Scandinavia to Germany, where a sea separated it from the remainder of the Germanic continent, we may see in this natural barrier the cause of the peculiar facies of the amber flora. It presents to our view the Scandinavian type of the Tertiary, mixed, in all probability, with a mountain or subalpine type. It is, in fact, conceivable that the plants and animals, embalmed as they were in their

---

**Fig. 96.** A, Female of Hypopomymex bombicci, a singular Myrmicine ant from the Sicilian Amber. (Emery.) b, Side of head, showing eye and antenna more enlarged.
elegant amber sarcophagi, could be carried long distances without sustaining the slightest injury and could, therefore, present this exceptional appearance, which is seen nowhere else in the plants and animals of the ancient world. If we suppose that a river flowed down from the Sweden of that day and opened into the Tertiary sea near Dantzig, there would be nothing irrational in admitting that this stream might easily carry the amber in the resinous state from the distant localities and mountains of Sweden, so that the organic remains enclosed in the amber may have been gathered together from an extensive territory, from low as well as from mountainous countries, and may even belong

Fig. 97. Worker of Cataulacus silvestrii from the Sicilian Amber. (Emery.) a, From the right side; b, from above; c, head from above.

to different Tertiary periods. . . If we admit that the amber does not belong to one and the same epoch, we can explain why in the plants and animals of this formation the mixture of northern and southern types is so much more striking than it is in the remainder of the European Tertiary, and why among these we find several types peculiar to high latitudes or even to mountains.”

At first sight Heer’s assumptions are plausible and would seem to be supported by the fact that although ants of different genera are occasionally found enclosed in the same block of amber, these never, to my knowledge, belong to both arctic and tropical types. On the other hand, the fact that the tropical, like the extinct genera of the
above table, are represented by very few specimens compared with the boreal genera, is not readily explained by assuming that a river brought down lowland and mountain forms from Tertiary Scandinavia and deposited them together in the beds of northern Germany, for on this assumption we should expect to find the lowland or tropical greatly in excess of the boreal specimens. It seems more natural to suppose that during the Lower Oligocene both the extinct and the tropical genera were already reduced to dwindling relicts, though co-existing with the circumpolar ant-fauna which had taken possession of the amber forests. In other words, even at that time the modern genera were far and away the more vigorous and prolific in the Samband, which was to become their exclusive heritage after the glacial epoch had wiped out the tropical genera that were leading a precarious existence in the warmer and more sheltered spots. We may assume, therefore, that the greatest development of these southern genera in this northern region occurred during the Eocene or even during the

![Figure 98](image.png)

**Fig. 98. Worker of Dimorphomyrmex theryi of the Baltic Amber. (Emery.) a, From the right side; b, head from above.**

Mesozoic and that the adverse conditions, which culminated in the glacial epoch, were already beginning to destroy the older, tropical components of the Lower Oligocene fauna.

To this consideration of the amber ants a few remarks on some of the more interesting genera and species may be appended:

1. *Ponerina.*—The most conspicuous of these is the large *Prionomyrmex longiceps* (Fig. 88) of the Prussian amber. Mayr described this species from a single specimen and I have found several more in the collections loaned me by Professors Klebs and Tornquist. This ant is allied to the Australian *Myrmecia*, the most primitive of living Formicidae, but is even less specialized in the structure of the mandibles and abdominal pedicel. Another interesting but much smaller species is *Bradoponera meieri* (Fig. 89), which foreshadows our modern species

---

1 Since these lines were written, I have found in one of the Königsberg collections a single block of amber containing a tropical *Dolichoderus* and a specimen of *Formica flori*. These ants, therefore, not only nested in the same locality, but foraged on the same tree.
of *Sysphincta*, *Proceratium* and *Discothyrea*. I have also found in the Prussian amber two new Ponerine genera related to the Indian *Diacamma* and *Lioponera*.

2. *Myrmicinae*.—Of this subfamily there are several genera which show a wide range of organization and specialization in both the Baltic and Sicilian ambers. *Hypopomyrmex bombiccii* (Fig. 96), a singular ant described by Emery from the latter formation, although possessing 10-jointed antennæ and a well-developed venation in the wings, seems to represent a generalized type from which the modern Dacetonii may have sprung. In the Baltic amber *Stigmomyrmex* (Fig. 95), with 10-jointed, and *Enneamerus* with only 9-jointed antennæ, are remarkable forms. The latter, except in the small number of antennal joints, resembles the paleotropical *Pristomyrmex*. Several species referred by Mayr to the genus *Macromischa*, because they lack spurs on the middle and hind tibiae, do not belong to this genus, which is exclusively neotropical and largely West Indian, but must be placed in a new genus, which may be called *Nothomyrmica*. Much more like the true *Macromischa* than any of Mayr's species, especially in the structure of the thorax and petiole, is the extraordinary ant which I shall call *Electromyrmex klebsi* (Fig. 94). This and many other amber *Myrmicinae* are as exquisitely sculptured as any of our modern species. *Propodomyrma* (Fig. 93) from the Baltic and *Acrostigma* from the Sicilian amber are related to the paleotropical *Podomyrma* and *Atopomyrmex*, but are simpler and more primitive in their structure.

3. *Dolichoderinae*.—This subfamily is represented by a number of
interesting forms, many of which Mayr originally assembled in the genus *Hypoclinea*. Among these it is now possible to recognize species of *Dolichoderus, Iridomyrmex* and *Bothriomyrmex*. I have already called attention to the great abundance of two of the species of *Bothriomyrmex* and *Iridomyrmex*. In the material sent me by Professors Klebs and Tornquist there are single specimens of two new genera (*Protaneuretus* and *Paraneuretus*) of unusual interest. Both of these are closely allied to *Aneuretus*, a genus which is now represented by a single species, *A. simoni*, described by Emery from Ceylon (Fig. 140). This ant combines both Dolichoderine and

Ponerine characters, having the head of the former, and the petiole and sting of the latter subfamily. In the Sicilian amber Emery has recognized a male *Leptomyrmex* (*L. maravigna*), a genus now confined to Australia and New Guinea, an extremely small *Tapinoma* (*T. minutissimum*) and a *Technomyrmex* (*T. delectus*). As the Dolichoderinae are practically absent from the African continent, the great development of this subfamily in the two amber shows that the complexion of the European Tertiary ant-fauna was decidedly Indo-africanian.

4. *Camponotinae*—The amber species of *Æcophylla, Gesomyrmex, Dimorphomyrmex* and *Rhopalomyrmex* are worthy of note. *Æcophylla* and *Gesomyrmex* occur both in the Baltic and Sicilian ambers, *Æ. brischkei* and *G. harnesi* (Fig. 100) in the former and *Æ. sicula* and *G. corniger* (Fig. 101) in the latter. These species of *Æcophylla* are closely related to *Æ. smaragdina*, the well known red tree ant of the
Old World tropics. *Gesomyrmex* was supposed to be an extinct genus till Érne. André (1892c) described a species (*G. chaperi*) from Borneo. In the same paper and from the same locality he described the type of another interesting Camponotine genus, *Dimorphomyrmex janeti*. This has polymorphic workers with large reniform eyes and 8-jointed antennae. Some years later (1905c) Emery found a species (*D. theryi*, Fig. 98) of this same genus in the Baltic amber. *Rhopalomyrmex* (Fig. 91) resembles the neotropical *Myrmelachista*. It has 10-jointed antennae, with 4-jointed clubs. Only a few species of the recent genera *Lasius*, *Formica* and *Camponotus* have been described from the Baltic amber. The workers of one of the *Camponoti, C. constrictus* (Fig. 102), are peculiar in possessing ocelli and in having a thorax like *Formica*. Of this latter genus Mayr described only a single species, *F. flori*, which is very closely related to the existing *F. fusca*.

![Fig. 102. Worker of Camponotus constrictus, with ocelli and sellate thorax, from the Baltic Amber. (Mayr.)](image)

Our knowledge of the fossil ants of North America is insignificant. Scudder (1890) described *Lasius terreus* and a *Myrmica* sp. from the Green River Oligocene, *Camponotus vetus* and *Liometopum pingue* from the White River Oligocene and *Formica arcania, Dolichoderus obliteratus* and *Aphænogaster longaeva* from the Quesnel formation, but neither the descriptions nor the figures make it at all certain that these ants are assigned to their proper genera. He also described and figured (p. 606, pl. III, fig. 32) the wing of an ant as that of a Bracoid, *Calyptites antediluvianus*. Cockerell (1906) has described a *Ponera hendersoni* from the Florissant shales but the size of the specimens shows that it cannot be a true *Ponera*. My own studies on the Florissant ants are not yet completed.

Very few ants are known from the Quaternary, or Pleistocene. Some Camponotinae and Dolichoderinae are recorded by Handlirsch as having been found in the interglacial deposits of Re, Italy by Benassi (1896) and a number of unidentified species are enumerated from the copal, an amber-like fossil resin found in several tropical countries (Africa, Brazil, New Zealand, etc.). One of the earliest accounts of copal ants is that of Blochs (1776) who describes and figures specimens of what he calls *Formica saccharivora, salomoni, nigra* and *Formica* sp. In a fine series of copal specimens from Zanzibar in the American Museum of Natural History, I find well-preserved specimens belong-
ing to the following genera: Camponotus, Polyrhachis, Myrmicaria, Cremastogaster, Pheidole, Cataulacus, Atopomyrmex, Ponera and Anomma, and to species very closely related to living forms of the same territory if not identical with them. In a specimen of copal from Demerara in the same collection there is a worker Astecta.

In reviewing the Tertiary and Quaternary ants one is impressed with two facts that have not been emphasized in the preceding pages. One of these is the close similarity of some of the ants of the Baltic amber to species now living in the same region. So intimate is this similarity that it may, in a few cases at least amount to identity, e. g., in Ponera atavia, Lasius schiefferdeckeri and Formica flori which neither Mayr nor myself have been able to distinguish by any satisfactory characters from the living Ponera coarctata, Lasius niger and Formica fusca! Such cases bring home to us very forcibly the enormous age and stability of species which the student, dealing exclusively with living forms, would be inclined to regard as of very recent origin.

The second fact is one to which attention seems not to have been called by previous authors, namely, the absence of polymorphism in the workers of the Tertiary ants. There are, indeed, differences in stature between workers of the same species, but I have seen no specimens with sufficient differences in the size and shape of the head to indicate the existence of soldiers and workers proper. This is the more noticeable, because there are recorded from the amber several genera whose living species have polymorphic workers, such as Anomma, Aëromyra, Oligomyrmex, Camponotus and Dimorphomyrmex. The known specimens of Aëromyra and Oligomyrmex are all males and females, so that nothing is known concerning the workers, which may have been monomorphic. To the former genus belongs also, according to Emery, the Pheidologeton antiquus described by Mayr from a female specimen. The occurrence of Anomma in the amber is very doubtful. There remain then only the genera Camponotus and Dimorphomyrmex in which we might expect to find polymorphic workers. I have examined a number of specimens of the three species of Camponotus (mengei, igneus and constrictus) described by Mayr, but all of them have the form of the minor workers of our existing Camponoti. Dimorphomyrmex theryi was based on a single specimen, but several others which I have seen are monomorphic and in this respect unlike the living type of the genus from Borneo. It may be objected, of course, that no conclusions as to the presence or absence of polymorphism in the workers can be drawn from the amber material, both because it is too meager and because the soldiers do not forage like the workers and would not therefore be caught in the liquid resin.
This is certainly true of some genera, but not of *Camponotus*, to judge from our modern species. The fact remains that no polymorphic workers have been seen in the amber, that the great majority of the species certainly had only monomorphic workers, and that genera like *Pheidole* and *Pheidologeton*, so prominent in the Old World tropics to-day, are conspicuous by their absence. In the Pleistocene, however, genera like *Pheidole* and *Anomma* have their worker polymorphism fully developed, as I have observed in the Zanzibar copal, so that this condition must have made its appearance during the late, if I am right in concluding that it was absent during the early Tertiary.
CHAPTER XI

THE HABITS OF ANTS IN GENERAL

"La fourmi, qui n'est point dédaigneuse et accepte toute nourriture, est, pour cela même, moins inquiète et moins égoïste. C'est bien à tort qu'on l'appelait avarie. Loin de la, elle ne semble occupée qu'à multiplier dans sa ville la nombre des copartageants. Dans sa maternité généreuse pour ceux qu'elle n'a pas enfantés, dans sa sollicitude pour ces petits d'hier qui deviennent aujourd'hui de jeunes citoyens, nait un sens tout nouveau fort rare chez les insectes, celui de la fraternité."—Michelet, "L'Insecte," 1857.

Before proceeding to a more detailed account of the extraordinary habits and instincts exhibited by certain groups of ants, it will be advisable to say something about the activities that are more generally manifested by these insects as a group. And as the ants, like all other living organisms, pursue the three-fold aim of securing food, perpetuating their species, and shielding themselves and their offspring from enemies and the inclemencies of a changing physical environment, I may properly include my remarks under the general heads of nutrition, protection and reproduction. The activities implied by these terms, which must, of course, be taken in an elastic sense, necessarily complicate and supplement one another in the most manifold and intimate manner.

Permanent social life is, generally speaking, possible only for animals that have access to an abundant food supply. Species that have great difficulty in securing food or succeed in finding only a scanty and precarious amount, are compelled to lead solitary lives, or at any rate, can never form populous communities of long standing. It is evident, moreover, that only vegetable food is ever really abundant and that animal food is in the majority of cases limited in amount, difficult to obtain, or abundant only during certain seasons or in circumscribed localities. Predatory animals like the mammals, birds and insects of prey, are, therefore, solitary in their habits, whereas vegetarians, like the rodents, ruminants and many plant-eating insects, are prone to be more or less social. Ants, at first sight, would seem to be an exception to this rule, but this is only conditionally true. Although primitively carnivorous, these insects are unreservedly such only in the lower subfamilies like the Ponerinae and Dorylinae. The colonies of the former are usually rare, like those of the social wasps, and of small size, and the colonies of the Dorylinae, though often very
THE HABITS OF ANTS IN GENERAL

populous, lead a nomadic existence, since they must continually seek fresh hunting grounds in order to obtain the requisite amount of food. The ants of the three remaining subfamilies, though often predatory, have adapted themselves to a more varied diet and many of them have come to rely almost exclusively on vegetable food. The following are the sources from which these insects as a family derive their nourishment:

1. The original food of ants consists of other insects, especially helpless larvæ and other terrestrial arthropods such as spiders, myriopods and isopods, the drying imagines of the countless insects which fall to the earth when their life-work is completed, those which are just leaving their pupa-cases, and the fragments rejected by insec-tivorous birds and mammals.

2. The larvæ and pupæ of ants are a favorite food of certain species of Eciton and Formica, which are sufficiently intrepid to pillage the nests of other species. And, in fact, in times of need many species will eat their own offspring, which may, therefore, be considered as an ever-present and available food-supply stored up against periods of famine.

3. The excretions of plants, such as the sweet liquids exuding from the leaves and especially from the floral and extrafloral nectaries, the sap escaping from wounded stems, etc.

4. The honey-dew excreted by plant-lice (aphids), mealy bugs (coccids) and leaf-hoppers (membracids), and the secretions of the caterpillars of the butterfly family Lycaenidæ. These liquids are, of course, plant juices that have undergone certain changes in the alimentary tract or glands of the insects.

5. The seeds of plants, especially of grasses and berries, drupes and fruits of all kinds, that have been injured by birds or other insects or by falling to the ground, for the ants are unable to gnaw through the tense skins or rinds of fruits. Some hypogæic species also feed on bulbs or tubers, the tender bark of roots, or the cotyledons of germinating seeds.

6. One tribe of ants, the Attii of tropical America, lives exclusively on fungus hyphæ, which they cultivate on vegetable substances carried into the nests.

Probably no single species of ant is able to draw on all of these sources of nutrition, but many species are sufficiently adaptable to utilize several of them. The fungus-growing ants are the most highly specialized in their diet and next to these some of the seed-storing, or harvesting species. Many ants, however, are more or less omnivorous, and many find it an easy matter to pass from one kind of food
to another, if only it will yield to their mouth parts, that is, if it can be imbibed directly as a liquid or rasped off in minute particles from which the liquid can be expressed in the hypopharyngeal pocket. Ants with a specialized diet are described in detail in several of the chapters of this volume.

The protective habits are always very complex in colonial organisms, and this is particularly true of ants. These embrace nidification, to which Chapters XII and XIII are devoted, the care of the young, which has already been briefly considered, their personal care, and that of one another, their methods of defending themselves against enemies, of keeping their nests clean, of preserving the colony free from admixture with other species, etc.

The care which ants lavish on their young is the manifestation of an instinct so all-pervasive and obsessional that we are not surprised to find it embracing the adult members of the colony as well. That it extends even further and envelopes a motley multitude of alien arthropods, enabling them to live as guests or parasites in the ant colonies, will be shown in the chapters on myrmecophiles. Many observers, especially McCook, have dwelt on the exquisite care bestowed by ants on their own bodies and those of their comrades. Much of the time spent by these insects in the dark recesses of their nests is devoted to cleansing the surfaces of their bodies with their tongues and strigils. This process is not only necessary for removing all particles of the earth in which the ants work so much of their lives, but it also invests their bodies with a coating of slightly oleaginous saliva, which probably protects them from moisture and may be sufficiently antiseptic to prevent the growth of lethal moulds and bacteria.

This care of one another, however, does not cease with mutual cleansing and feeding, but is also exhibited in their habit of deportation. There can be little doubt that this peculiar habit has developed out of the instinct to carry the brood from place to place. It may be observed under certain conditions, as when a colony is moving to a new nest, or towards nightfall when inexperienced or weary workers have strayed some distance from the nest. In the former instance the workers that initiate the change of quarters carry their indifferent or recalcitrant companions bodily to the new nest. Of deportation under the latter conditions I once saw a beautiful example on the sandy deserts about Monahans, in western Texas. The straggling workers of the slow-moving harvesting ant, *Ischnomyrmex cockerelli*, were returning from all directions to their nests just as the cold December twilight was setting in. Each worker bore in her slender jaws a fellow worker that she had picked up while on her way home. In a similar
manner the amazons are carried back to the nest by their slaves. In all cases the deported, on being seized by the deporting ant, assumes a quiescent attitude with her body curled and her legs drawn up as if she were dead. The position in which she is carried seems to be characteristic of certain species, though this matter has not been studied in any great detail. In Formica the deporting ant seize the ant to be deported by the mandibles and holds her with back directed forward and downward and head uppermost. The deporting Texas harvester (Pogonomyrmex molefaciens), as McCook has shown (1879c), seize her companion by the back of the pedicel and holds her head uppermost and ventral surface facing forward. These ants also have a peculiar habit of walking "tandem," sometimes in threes, the middle ant holding the pedicel of the first with her mandibles and the hind ant doing the same with the middle individual. In this position I have occasionally seen them returning to the nest and have wondered whether this strange performance could be a manifestation of the play-instinct, which Huber and Forel believe they have detected in certain species of Formica. In Leptothorax another position is assumed by the deported ant, which is held by her mandibles and curls herself up over the head of her carrier with dorsal surface directed forward. Still another position is adopted by Leptogenys, at least by the deported males, which are held by the neck and lie stretched out under the body and between the long legs of the deporting worker. The long slender cocoons of this ant are carried in the same manner.

The care of the nest is an important matter with all ants, for convenience no less than sanitation requires that the galleries and chambers be kept scrupulously clean. All species, therefore, remove any refuse food, empty cocoons, pupal exuviae, meconial pellets, dead members of the colony, etc., to a proper distance from the living apartments. Veritable kitchen middens are established for this purpose, either in the open air or, if the colony is nesting under a large stone, in one of the deserted surface galleries.

A peculiar reaction is exhibited by nearly all ants in the presence of some substance that they cannot remove, such as a strong-smelling liquid. They throw pellets of earth or any other débris on the substance, sometimes in sufficient amount to bury it completely. The origin of this reaction which is often manifested in artificial nests, is very obscure. The fact that it is more frequently called forth by the presence of liquids would seem to indicate that it may be a normal method of staying the invasion of water into the galleries of the nest. It certainly has all the characters of a pure reflex, although, curiously enough, its manifestation under certain conditions has been regarded
as a demonstration of reasoning power. One observer who placed tobacco juice across the path of some ants that were attending aphids on a tree and saw the workers cast pellets of earth on the liquid, concluded that they were intentionally building a bridge, and therefore credited them with a high degree of intelligence, whereas they were merely exercising one of their customary reflexes and happened to use enough earth to enable them to cross the obstacle and reach their charges.

When a colony is attacked by alien ants or disturbed by larger organisms, the character of the reaction varies with the species and the size of the community. The workers of large colonies are usually aggressive, those of small colonies are timid and resort to more passive means of defence. Usually the most immediate response, at least on the part of a considerable portion of the colony, is precipitate flight into the surrounding vegetation. This is invariably the resort of small colonies of fleet-footed ants. Others, like Myrmeclina and the smaller species of the slow-footed Attii, "feign death" after the manner of weevils or "skip-jack" beetles. They roll themselves up and remain motionless for a time. In this posture the opaque, rough-bodied species of Cyphomyrmez, Trachymyrmez and Mycocepurus are almost indistinguishable from particles of earth or sand.

Several species with peculiar mandibles manage to escape from their enemies by leaping. In Odontomachus, the "tic-ant" of the tropics, for example, the linear mandibles are inserted close together at their bases and provided along their inner edges with a few sense-hairs which are nearly as long as the mandibles. When the ant is excited it opens its mandibles to their utmost extent, till they form together a straight line at right angles with the long axis of the body. Then as soon as a hard object is touched by the sense-hairs the blades are suddenly closed, striking the object with their tips with sufficient force to throw the insect backwards into the air for a distance of several inches. This habit is also exhibited by other genera and species with similar mandibles, for example by Anochetus sedilloi (Wroughton, 1892), Strumigenys saliens (Mayr, 1892a, 1893a) and probably also by Daceton and Acanthognathus. According to Emery (1893h) the large-eyed Brazilian Gigantios destructor is able "to leap from twig to twig," and an Indian ant with extraordinary mandibles, Harpegnathus cruentatus, is said to leap forward like a grass-hopper to a distance of eighteen inches (Wroughton).

In many species the tough integument or specially developed spines are an important means of defense. The workers of the large species of Atta and Acromyrmex bristle with hard spines and tubercles, and
many other Myrmicinæ have at least a single pair of spines on the epinotum, apparently to protect the vulnerable pedicel from the mandibles of their enemies. Other species (Cryptocerus, Cataulacus, Strumigenys and Meranoplus) can conceal their sensitive antennæ in deep grooves or under broad projecting ridges along the sides of the head.

But ants do not have to rely altogether on such passive means of defence. The means of direct attack on their enemies are almost as varied and usually more efficacious. The mandibles are the principal weapons and these alone in the larger species of Camponotus and Atta are sometimes employed with telling effect. In the Myrmicinæ and Ponerinæ their action is often supplemented by that of a well-developed sting. Many species of Formica spray their enemies with formic acid, or inject it into their victim by moving the gaster forward and centering its tip on the wound made by their mandibles. In battles with other species or aliens of their own species they pull their opponents legs or antennæ with their mandibles and spray the tense mem-

Fig. 103. Virgin females and workers of Camponotus americanus, showing five pairs of the latter in the act of feeding by regurgitation. (Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and O. S. Strong.)
branes between the joints. Enough of the acid is absorbed by the vic-
tim's blood to cause temporary paralysis or even death. The Dolicho-
derinae and some Myrmicinae (*Ischnomyrmex*, *e.g.*) smear their victims
with a malodorous secretion from the anal glands, which seems to have
an equally irritating and noxious effect. While in many species some or
all of these aggressive measures may be adopted by the workers in
general, other species have a specially protective caste in the soldiers
(*Camponotus*, *Atta*, *Pheidole*, etc.). In the subgenus *Colobopsis* the
soldiers guard the circular nest-entrance which they may even plug up
completely with their peculiarly modified heads (see p. 210). In *Poly-
ergus* and *Leptogenys* all the workers have sickle-shaped mandibles
adapted to piercing the heads or bodies of their victims.

Since many species of ants often live together in the same stations,
means have been developed for preventing the fusion or mixture of
colonies and the consequent exploitation of one species by another.
The general truth of this statement is not invalidated by the existence
of a small number of interesting species that have developed symbiotic
or parasitic instincts. As a rule, members of different colonies, even of
the same species, are so hostile to one another that they cannot meet in
numbers without a pitched battle. This hostility tends to restrict the
feeding grounds of certain species within very narrow limits. It is
generally admitted that this segregation of colonies is due to the pres-
ence of characteristic odors which vary with the species, colony and
caste, and, according to Miss Fieuste, also with the developmental stages
of the individual. The specific odor may be readily detected even by the
blunted human olfacitories. Thus the odor of *Formica rufa* is pungent and
ethereal, of *Hypoclinea gagates* and *maria* smoky, of *Acanthomyops*
like the lemon geranium or oil of citronella, of the species of *Eciton*
and some *Pheidole*, like mammalian excrement, of *Cremastogaster lineo-
lata* fainter but equally unpleasant, of *Tapinoma* like rotten cocoa-nuts,
etc. Undoubtedly ants are very quick to react to these various odors as
well as to the "nest-aura," or odor which every colony derives from
its immediate environment, brood, etc. For interesting accounts of
this important subject the reader is referred to the recent papers of
Bethe (1898) and Miss Fieuste (1905c to e).

While the protection of the colony centers in the activities of the
workers, the reproduction both of the individual ants and of the colony
as a whole centers in the males and females. The mating of the sexes
differs according to whether only one or both of the sexual forms
possess wings. No species are known in which both sexes are apte-
rous. In forms like *Anergates*, *Symmyrmica*, *Formicoxenus* and some
species of *Cardiocondyla* and *Ponera* the male is wingless, whereas this
is the case with the female in the Dorylineæ and in Leptogenys. In these cases mating must take place either within the nest or on the ground outside. When only the female is winged, unless it be possible for sisters and brothers of the same colony to mate,—and this is actually the case in Anergates,—she must enter strange nests or meet the male while she is wandering about in the open. Observations on this subject are, unfortunately, very meager.

When both sexes are winged mating nearly always takes place in the air on what is called the nuptial, or marriage flight. Even among these species however, mating or attempts to mate have been observed in artificial nests, but this is certainly exceptional and its normal occurrence in wild colonies is rather doubtful. Apparently there are provisions for favoring cross fertilization between the sexes of different colonies. In the first place, it is rare to find colonies at the breeding season containing equal numbers of males and females. Usually one or the other sex greatly predominates and often only one is represented in a colony. Then, too, the nuptial flight for all the colonies of a particular species in the same neighborhood usually takes place on the same day or even at the same hour, so that the males of one colony have an opportunity of mating with the females from others. It is certain that the workers forcibly detain the impatient sexes in the nests till the propitious hour arrives. Why this should be the same for all the colonies in a given locality is not easily determined, but it is generally conceded to be due to meteorological conditions. This, indeed, seems to be the most natural explanation of the phenomenon.

When the hour for the nuptial flight draws near, a strange excitement pervades the ranks of the workers. At such times even the blind and etiolated workers of the hypogæic species venture out into the sunlight and accompany the males and females to the entrance of the nest. The winged forms move about in tremulous indecision, but, finally venture forth, run about on the stones or climb about on the grass-blades till they have filled their tracheæ with a plentiful supply of oxygen. Then they spread their wings and are soon lost to view high in the air. Their evolutions, so far as they can be observed, resemble those of the honey-bee so vividly described by Maeterlinck:

"She, drunk with her wings, obeying the magnificent law of the
race that chooses her lover, and enacts that the strongest alone shall
attain her in the solitude of the ether, she rises still; and, for the first
time in her life, the blue morning air rushes into her stig mata, singing
its song, like the blood of heaven, in the myriad tubes of the tracheal
sacs, nourished on space, that fill the center of her body. She rises
still. A region must be found unhaunted by birds, else that might
profane the mystery. She rises still; and already the ill-assorted troop
below are dwindling and falling asunder. The feeble, infirm, the aged,
unwelcome, ill-fed, who have flown from inactive or impoverished
cities, these renounce the pursuit and disappear in the void. Only a
small, indefatigable cluster remain, suspended in infinite opal. She
summons her wings for one final effort; and now the chosen of in-
comprehensible forces has reached her, has seized her, and bounding
aloft with united impetus, the ascending spiral of their intertwined
flight whirls for one second in the hostile madness of love.”

It must be noted, however, that there are several important differ-
ences between the nuptial flights of ants and honey-bees. In the case
of the bees there is a single female for whom the males compete,
whereas among ants there may be hundreds of females. Moreover the
pairs of ants often descend to the earth in copula and always separate
without the female tearing away the male genitalia. Nor does the
female ant as a rule, return to the colony in which she was born. In
both cases the males die soon after mating.

In the European literature there are many accounts of great nuptial
swarms of ants, visible from afar like clouds of smoke. Similar
swarms have also been witnessed in the United States. The species
usually concerned in producing this phenomenon are the common
_Lasius niger_ and _Myrmica rubra_. The nuptials of our other species
take place, as a rule, without attracting particular attention.

On descending to the earth the fertilized female divests herself of
her easily detached wings, either by pulling them off with her legs and
jaws or by rubbing them off against the grass-blades, pebbles or soil.
This act of déshabitation is the signal for important physiological and
psychological changes. She is now an isolated being, henceforth re-
stricted to a purely terrestrial existence, and has gone back to the ances-
tral level of the solitary female Hymenopteron. During her life in the
parental nest she stored her body with food in the form of masses of
fat and bulky wing-muscles. With this physiological endowment and
with an elaborate inherited disposition, ordinarily called instinct, she
sets out alone to create a colony out of her own substance. She begins
by excavating a small burrow, either in the open soil, under some
stone, or in rotten wood. She enlarges the blind end of the burrow to
form a small chamber and then completely closes the opening to the outside world. The labor of excavating often wears away all her mandibular teeth, rubs the hairs from her body and mars her burnished or sculptured armor, thus producing a number of mutilations, which, though occurring generation after generation in species that nest in hard, stony soil, are, of course, never inherited. In her cloistered seclusion the queen now passes days, weeks, or even months, waiting for the eggs to mature in her ovaries. When these eggs have reached their full volume at the expense of her fat-body and degenerating wing-muscles, they are laid, after having been fertilized with a few of the many thousand spermatozoa stored up in her spermatheca during the nuptial flight. The queen nurses them in a little packet till they hatch as minute larvae. These she feeds with a salivary secretion derived by metabolism from the same source as the eggs, namely, from her fat-body and wing-muscles. The larvae grow slowly, pupate prematurely and hatch as unusually small but otherwise normal workers. In some species it takes fully ten months to bring such a brood of minim workers to maturity, and during all this time the queen takes no nourishment, but merely draws on her reserve tissues. As soon as the workers mature, they break through the soil and thereby make an entrance to the nest and establish a communication with the outside world. They enlarge the original chamber and continue the excavation in the form of galleries. They go forth in search of food and share it with their exhausted mother, who now exhibits a further and final change in her behavior. She becomes so exceedingly timid and sensitive to the light that she hastens to conceal herself on the slightest disturbance to the nest. She soon becomes utterly indifferent to her progeny, leaving them entirely to the care of the workers, while she limits her activities to laying eggs and imbibing liquid food from the tongues of her attendants. This copious nourishment restores her depleted fat-body, but her disappearing wing-muscles have left her thoracic cavity hollow and filled with air which causes her to float when placed in water. With this circumscribed activity she lives on, sometimes to an age of fifteen years, as a mere egg-laying machine. The current reputation of the ant queen is derived from such old, abraded, toothless, timorous queens found in well-established colonies. But it is neither chivalrous nor scientific to dwell exclusively on the limitations of these decrepit belles without calling to mind the charms and sacrifices of their younger days, for to bring up a family of even very small children without eating anything and entirely on substances abstracted from one's own tissues, is no trivial undertaking. Of the many thousands of ant queens annually impelled to enter on this ultra-strenuous life,
very few survive to become mothers of colonies. The vast majority, after starting their shallow burrows, perish through excessive drought, moisture or cold, the attacks of parasitic fungi or subterranean insects, or start out with an insufficient supply of food-tissue in the first place. Only the very best endowed individuals live to preserve the species from extinction. I know of no better example of the survival of the fittest through natural selection.

It is certain that the colonies of most species are founded in the manner here described. It is certain, moreover, that all this is rendered possible by the nutritive endowment of the queen. As the winged germ of the species she has all the advantages that a yolk-laden has over a comparatively yolkless egg. Now among the 5,000 known species of ants we should expect to find considerable differences in the quantity of nutriment stored up in the young queen. And this is unquestionably the case. In some species the queens are of enormous size, in others they are very small compared with the workers. And since the queens of average dimensions are able to start colonies by themselves alone, we should expect unusually large queens to accomplish even more, and very small ones less. This, too, is borne out by observation.

Unusually large queens are found in the genus *Attta*, a group of American ants that raise fungi for food, and are, so far as known, quite unable to subsist on anything else. The female *Attta* on leaving the parental nest is so well endowed with food-tissue that she not only can raise a brood of workers without taking nourishment, but has energy to spare for the cultivation of a kitchen garden.

Very different is the condition of certain queen ants poorly endowed with food-tissue, especially of some whose bodies are actually smaller than the largest workers of their species. Such queens are quite unable to bring up colonies unaided. They are, therefore, compelled after fertilization to associate themselves with adult workers either of their own or of a closely allied species. In the former case the queens may either remain in the parental nest and omit the nuptial flight, or return to the parental or to some other colony of the same species. In either case they add to the reproductive energy of an already established colony and thus prolong its life. If one of these poorly endowed queens, however, happens to alight from her nuptial journey far from any colony of her own species, she is obliged to associate with alien workers. And in this case, according to the species to which she belongs, one of three courses is open to her:

First, she may secure adoption in a small queenless colony of an allied species. Here she is fed, lays her eggs, and the resulting larvæ
are reared by the strange workers. Eventually the alien workers die off and leave the queen and her own workers as an independent and sufficiently established colony, capable of rapid and often enormous multiplication. This I have called temporary social parasitism.

Second, the poorly endowed queen may establish herself in a colony of another species, but be unable, even after the workers have matured, to survive the death of the host colony, except, perhaps, by migrating to another nest of the same species. This is permanent social parasitism.

Third, the queen may enter a small colony of alien workers, and, when attacked, massacre them, appropriate their larvæ and pupæ, carefully secrete and nurse them till they hatch and thus surround herself with a colony of young and loyal workers that can bring up her brood for her without any drain on her food-tissues. This is the method of colony formation adopted by queens of Formica sanguinea. These queens thus manifest an instinct, hitherto supposed to be exclusively peculiar to the workers, namely, the instinct to rob the larvæ and pupæ of another species and bring them up as auxiliaries, or slaves.

Pierre Huber (1810) was the first to call attention to the method of colony formation adopted by the great majority of ants, but while we must still admire, in the light of our present knowledge, the accuracy of his statements, we must not forget that he did not actually observe the female ant bringing her firstling brood of workers to maturity. Subsequent authors have not failed to notice this important hiatus in the work of that gifted naturalist. Although Mayr in 1864 observed isolated female ants with eggs, the actual founding of a colony by a single queen was first witnessed by an American of somewhat doubtful reputation as a myrmecologist, Dr. Gideon Lincecum (1866, 1874a). Essentially the same account is repeated in McCook's larger work on the Texan agricultural ant (1879c).

The first to witness the founding of a colony in an artificial nest, that is, under conditions accurately controlled, was Sir John Lubbock. His account, originally published in 1879, is reproduced in the various editions of his well-known book on ants, bees and wasps. August 4, 1876, he isolated two pairs of Myrmica ruginodis and succeeded in keeping them in a perfectly healthy condition through the winter. The males died during the following April and May. The females laid during the latter part of April. Some of the young had pupated by the first of July and the firstling workers appeared and began to care for the remainder of the brood by the end of that month and the first week in August. This demonstrated, as Lubbock said, "that the queens of
Myrmica ruginodis have the instinct of bringing up larvæ and the power of founding communities."

McCook (1883a) published several careful observations by Edward Potts to show that young females of Camponotus pennsylvanicus "when fertilized, go solitary, and after dispossessing themselves of their wings, begin the work of founding a new family. This work they carry on until enough workers are reared to attend to the active duties of the formicary, as tending and feeding the young, enlarging the domicile, etc. After that, the queens generally limit their duty to the laying of eggs."

To any one who has given even a little attention to the insect life of our northern woods, it must seem strange that the founding of colonies by this ant should not have been recorded till 1883. Certainly no observation could be more easily made, for in many localities it is hardly possible to tear a strip of bark from an old log without finding one or more females of C. pennsylvanicus or of the allied varieties ferrugineus and novaboracensis, each in her little cell brooding over a few eggs, larvæ, cocoons or minim workers. Usually the cell is carefully excavated just under the loose bark in the decayed wood, but where pine logs are abundant these females often prefer to take possession of the deserted pupal cavities of a longicorn beetle (Rhagium lineatum). These cavities are surrounded by a regular wall of wood fibers arranged like the twigs in a bird's nest (Fig. 105).

Within more recent years the observations of Lincecum, Lubbock, McCook, and Potts have been repeatedly confirmed by continental authors. Blochmann (1885), Forel (1902d), Janet (1904), von Buttel-Reepen (1905a), Emery (1904d) and Mrázek (1906) have all published interesting notes on colony formation by isolated females of ants belonging to the common genera Myrmica, Cremastogaster, Formica, Lasius and Camponotus.

On more than one occasion during the past ten years I myself have been able, both in the field and in the laboratory, to test the truth of these observations. In fact, a catalogue of the North American species, in which I have seen evidence of the founding of colonies by isolated females, would comprise nearly all of our common ants. I have observed it in members of all the subfamilies except the Dorylinae. Even the Ponerinae, which I at one time supposed to be an exception, conform to the general rule, for I have found isolated females of Odontomachus clarus and hamatodes in the act of establishing their formicaries. During May, 1895, I observed an unusually striking case of colony formation by queens of the Californian harvester (Pogonomyrmex californicus) on the edge of the Mojave Desert. This recalls the
above cited observation of Lincecum on the Texan harvester. I arrived at Needles, California, May 23, a day or two after the nuptial flight of *P. californicus*. This was proved by the thousands of isolated females of this species, in the act of establishing their formicaries. The country in which I observed them was the sandy bottom on the right bank of the Colorado River and the adjacent low escarpment of the desert. The latter is interrupted by numerous short "draws," which are more or less sandy like the river bottom into which they open. The surface of the escarpment, however, is very hard and stony, but it, too, is furrowed by very small draws, often only a few inches wide and containing sand washed from the surrounding surfaces by the winter showers. After their nuptial flight myriads of *Pogonomyrmex* females had rained down over the whole hot, dry country for a distance of at least three miles to the south and as many to the west of the Needles. After losing her wings, each female sought out the regions of pure sand, avoiding the hard surfaces, and set to work digging a hole. The earth was brought out to one side of the

Fig. 105. *Camponotus pennsylvanicus* queen with incipient colony in abandoned cocoon of *Rhagium lineatum* under pine bark, slightly enlarged. (Original.)
burrow so as to form a diminutive mound, which when completed was about two inches in diameter. On May 23, during the hot morning hours the females could be seen at work everywhere in the draws and river bottom, often within a few inches of one another. Many had already completed their burrows, which extended down obliquely to a depth of three to four inches, and had closed the opening behind them. It was an easy matter to dig a deëlated female from each spot indicated by a small fan-shaped mound or to tempt her to the surface by inserting a straw into her burrow. A wind- or rain-storm would have obliterated at once all traces of the whereabouts of these insects. That they actually sought the pure sand, which is also the substance in which the adult colonies are found, was seen on the top of the escarpment. There each tiny draw was literally filled with incipient nests, although none could be found on the hard intervening spaces often hundreds of feet wide. The ants would, in fact, be quite unable to excavate the hard soil. The comparatively small number of adult colonies in the vicinity proved that but few of these isolated females ever succeed in rearing a colony. They are doomed to rigid, all but catastrophic, elimination, which only the best endowed and most favorably situated can survive.

In the foregoing paragraphs attention has been repeatedly called to the fact that an ant colony is started by a single isolated female. This requires some qualification, since under very exceptional circumstances a couple of females from the same maternal nest may meet after their marriage flight and together start a colony. During August, 1904, I found two deëlated females of Lasius brevicornis occupying a small cavity under a clump of moss on a large boulder near Colebrook, Conn. They had a few larvæ and small cocoons and a couple of small callow workers. The colony was transferred to an artificial nest and kept for several days. Both females were seen to take part in feeding and caring for the single packet of larvæ and freeing the remaining callows from their cocoons. Without doubt these twin females were sisters that had accidentally met under the same bit of moss and had renewed the friendly relations in which they had lived before taking their nuptial flight. June 16, 1907, I found a very similar colony consisting of two deëlated queens of L. flavus near Sion in the valley of the Rhone. They were in a small earthen cavity under a stone and had eggs and young larvæ, which they hastened to conceal when the nest was uncovered. These cases are of considerable interest because, as a rule, sister ants seem to be averse to such postnuptial partnerships.

Among certain ants the females may be retained and deëlated by the workers in the parental nest, or carried in and readopted just after
they have descended from the nuptial flight, for we often find more than one queen in a colony. In some species of *Formica* a single colony may thus accumulate more than fifty deálated queens. Certain observations also show that colonies may multiply by fission, the offshoots migrating to new nests and taking with them some of the queens. These nests may remain connected with the parental colony by runways, but in some cases (*Formica exsectoides*) they probably become independent commonwealths. This whole subject, however, is in urgent need of careful investigation, as it has important bearings on some of the cases of symbiosis to be described in future chapters.

The number of ants in a colony varies greatly according to the species, and evidently depends on the number and fertility of the queens and the nature and amount of the available food. In many species, like most Ponerinae, and the ants of the genera *Leptothorax*, *Cardiocondyla*, *Xenomyrmex*, etc., among the Myrmicinæ, the colony, even at the apogee of its development, comprises only a few dozen, or at most, a few hundred individuals. But the average number for most species is much greater and may exceed a thousand or ten thousand. It is, however, very easy to overestimate the population of a colony. Forel (1874) estimated that a *Formica pratensis* mound of medium size contains 114,000 ants and that the largest formicaries may contain as many as 500,000. But Yung (1899, 1900) who has actually counted the ants in several hills of *F. rufa*, an ant which has larger colonies than *pratensis*, found the numbers to vary between 19,933 and 93,694. These numbers are not proportional to the size of the nest. He, therefore, believes that Forel's estimates are excessive. Pricer (1908) has recently given valuable statistics of *Camponotus pennsylvanicus* colonies from their inception to their adult stage, which is marked by the throwing off of males and virgin females. He finds that such adult colonies contain from 1,943 to 2,500 workers, and that they must be from three to six years old before they produce the sexual phases. It is very probable that the population of the adult ant colony, which is, after all, merely an enlarged family, fluctuates about a specific average or mean. With the exception of Pricer's work, no attempts have been made to determine this mean for our various species or its relation to the ethological environment. Here is a promising field for statistical study.
CHAPTER XII

ANT-NESTS

"Le premier objet qui frappe nos sens en commençant à étudier les mœurs des fourmis, c'est l'art avec lequel elles construisent leur habitation, dont la grandeur paroit souvent contraster avec leur petitesse; c'est la variété de ces bâtiments, tantôt fabriqués avec de la terre, tantôt sculptés dans le tronc des arbres les plus durs; ou composés simplement de feuilles et de brins d'herbe ramassés de toutes parts; c'est enfin la manière dont ils répondent aux besoins des espèces qui les construisent."—P. Huber, "Les Mœurs des Fourmis Indigènes," 1810.

Nothing is better calculated to illustrate the marvellous plasticity of ants than the study of their nesting habits. Not only may every species be said to have its own plan of nest construction, but this plan may be modified in manifold ways in order to adapt it to the particular environment in which the species takes up its abode. Even the same colony may adopt very different methods of building at different periods in its growth and development. Hence the study of formicine architecture becomes one of bewildering complexity and defies all attempts at rigid classification. Owing to this complexity it is impossible to form a correct conception of the general plan of architecture in a particular species without studying its nesting habits throughout its whole geographical range. In such a subject recourse to laboratory methods is of little avail, whereas careful and extensive observation in the field is all-important.

One remarkable peculiarity of ant-nests impresses us at the very outset when we compare them with the nests of the social wasps and bees, namely, their extreme irregularity. The ants have abandoned, if indeed they ever acquired, the habit of constructing regular and permanent cells for their brood. The advantages of such cells to the ants evidently do not outweigh the disadvantages of being unable to move their larvæ and pupæ from place to place when danger threatens or in response to the diurnal variations of warmth and moisture. In its essential features the typical nest is merely a system of intercommunicating cavities with one or more openings to the outside world (Fig. 106). Even these openings, or entrances, as they are called, are absent in the nests of hypogæic species, except at the time of the nuptial flight. The intercommunicating cavities may be excavated in the soil or in plants, and even preëxisting cavities often answer every purpose and
save labor. The irregular form of the cavities is a characteristic so universal in ant-nests that it would seem to be preferred to a monotonous regularity. It may be important, in fact, in enabling the ants to orient themselves readily. The nest entrance is sometimes peculiarly modified to suit the needs of the various species. It may be left permanently open and guarded by workers or soldiers, or it may be closed at night; it may be enlarged or constricted for the purpose of regulating the ventilation of the cavities and preventing the inroads of enemies, it may be adroitly concealed or exposed to view and surrounded by conspicuous earth-works.

Even in this prevailing and opportunistic irregularity, however, there are singular differences of degree. The more primitive ants, like the Ponerinae, build with a certain irregularity devoid of character. The Dorylinae may hardly be said to build nests at all, but merely to bivouac in some convenient cavity under a stone or log, or they may temporarily occupy the nests of other ants or dig irregular runways beneath the surface of the soil. The higher ants, however, which form

---

**Fig. 106.** Superficial galleries of *Acanthomyops latipes* as they appear on removing the stone that covers them. About ¼ natural size. (Original.)
stationary and populous formicaries, devote a great deal of attention to architecture and work according to a more or less definite plan, which they skilfully modify to suit the conditions of a specific environment.

The nests of nearly all ants are the result of two different activities, excavation and construction. Both of these may be simultaneously pursued by the workers, or either may predominate to the complete exclusion of the other, so that some nests are entirely excavated in soil or wood, whereas others are entirely constructed of soil, paper or silk. As the nests of the latter type resemble those of the social wasps, one might be led to suppose that they represent the original ancestral form and that the excavated are degenerate types, but the prevalence of earthen nests among ants of the most diverse genera in all parts of the world, as well as the occurrence of similar nests among the solitary bees, wasps and Mutiliids, would seem to indicate that even the most

Fig. 107. Crater of *Myrmecocystus semirufus* of the Mojave Desert; ½ natural size. (Original.)

ancient ants practiced both methods of nesting. In other words, the variable architecture of ants may be an inheritance from presocial ancestors and may have been well-established before these insects came to live in communities.

The methods employed by worker ants in making their nests are
easily observed, and have been described in detail by Huber (1810) and Forel (1874). According to Forel, "They use their mandibles in two ways. When closed these organs form a kind of trowel, convex in front and above, concave beneath and behind, and pointed at the tip. This trowel is used for raking up the soft earth and also for moulding and compressing their constructions and thus rendering them more solid and continuous. This is accomplished by pushing the anterior portion of the closed mandibles forward or upward. In the second place, the mandibles, when open, constitute a veritable pair of tongues with toothed edges, at least in all of the workers of our native ants that do any excavating. They thus serve not only for transporting but also for moulding or comminuting the earth." The forelegs are used for scratching up the soil, in moulding pellets and patting them down after they have been placed in position by the mandibles, and are of so much assistance in this work that when they are cut off the insects are unable to excavate or build without great difficulty and soon abandon their work altogether.

Ants dislike to excavate in soil that is too dry and friable. When compelled to do this in artificial nests they will sometimes moisten it with water brought from a distance, as Miss Fielde (1901) has observed. She says that the workers of Aphaniogaster picea, "like the Termites, are able to carry water for domestic uses. They probably lap the water into the pouch above the lower lip [the hypopharyngeal pocket] and eject it at its destination. A hundred or two of ants that I brought in and left in a heap of dry earth upon a Lubbock nest, during the ensuing night took water from the surrounding moat, moistened a full pint of earth, built therein a proper nest, and were busy depositing their larvae in its recesses when I saw them on the following morning."

As even the most extensively excavated nests represent little labor compared with the nests of social wasps and bees, ants are able to leave their homes and make new ones without serious inconvenience. Such changes are often necessitated by the habit of nesting in situations exposed to great and sudden changes in temperature and moisture or to the inroads of more aggressive ants and larger terrestrial animals. Barring the intervention of such unusual conditions, however, most ants cling to their nests tenaciously and with every evidence of a keen sense of proprietorship, although there are a few species, besides the nomadic Dorylinae, that seem to delight in an occasional change of residence. Wasmann has shown that Formica sanguinea often has summer and winter residences analogous to the city and country homes of wealthy people. The ants migrate from one to the
other during March and April and again during late summer or early autumn (September). The summer nests are built in open, sunny places where food is abundant and the conditions most favorable to rearing the brood, whereas the winter nests are built under stumps and rocks usually in protected spots in the woods, and are used as hibernacula, or, very rarely, for protection from excessive heat during the summer.

The migration of ants from one nest to another is determined upon and initiated by a few workers which are either more sensitive to adverse conditions or of a more alert and venturesome disposition than the majority of their fellows. These workers, after selecting a site, begin to deport their brood, queens, males, fellow workers and even their myrmecophiles. The deported workers are at first too strongly attached to their old quarters to remain in the new ones and therefore keep returning and carrying back the brood. The enterprising workers, however, obstinately persist in their endeavors to move the colony till their intentions are grasped and become contagious. The indecision or indifference of many of the workers may last for days or even for weeks, during all which time files of ants move back and forth between the two nests carrying their larvæ and pupæ in both directions. But
more and more workers keep joining the ranks of the radicals till the conservative individuals constitute such a helpless minority that they are compelled to abandon the old nest and join the majority. I once observed a colony of agricultural ants (*Pononomyrnex molefaciens*)
which for at least two years had occupied a nest directly in front of my house in Austin, Texas. In the autumn of the third year when certain workers decided to establish a new nest in a vacant lot about seventy feet away, I observed that it required nearly three weeks to overcome the attachment of all the workers to their old home.

Forel and Escherich (1906) distinguish two types of ant-nests, the temporary and the permanent, but this does not involve corresponding differences in architecture. The same is true of Forel's convenient distinction of monodomous and polydomous colonies. The nest of a monodomous colony is a circumscribed unit, whereas a polydomous colony, as the name implies, spreads over several nests, the inhabitants of which remain in communication with one another and may visit back and forth. This may lead to the development of accessory structures, like covered runways, but in other respects the architecture is merely a repetition of that of the simple nest. For convenience we may adopt the following classification:

A. Nests in the Soil.
   a. Small crater nests.
   b. Large crater nests.
   c. Mound or hill nests.
   d. Masonry domes.
   e. Nests under stones, logs, etc.

B. Nests in the Cavities of Plants.
   1. Nests in preformed cavities of living plants.
      a. In hollow stems.
      b. In hollow thorns.
      c. In tillandsias.
      d. In hollow bulbs.

   2. Nests in woody plant-tissues, often in cavities wholly or in part excavated by other insects.
      a. In or under bark.
      b. In twigs.
      c. In tree-trunks.
      d. In galls, pine-cones, seed-pods, etc.

C. Suspended Nests.
   a. Suspended earthen nests.
   b. Carton nests.
   c. Silken nests.

D. Nests in Unusual Sites (in houses, etc.).
E. Accessory Structures.
   a. Succursals nests.
   b. Covered runways.
   c. Tents, or pavilions.

Accurate delimitation of the foregoing categories is, of course, impossible, since two or more of them may be combined in the same nest. Thus some ants construct carton nests in dead logs or under stones, others extend their galleries from dead logs into the underlying soil. Then there are also transitional forms between the various categories, as, for example, between the small and large crater nests, and between the latter and mound nests. And lastly, a single formicary may gradually pass through a series of these categories during its growth and development.

Nests in the Soil.—These always consist of a subterranean portion comprising a number of more or less irregular excavations and may or may not have a definite superstructure surmounting the entrance or entrances (Fig. 106). The excavations, which are usually widely separated but are occasionally compactly branching or anastomosing, may be divided into chambers and galleries. The former are more spacious, with flattened floors and vaulted roofs, but of extremely variable size and outline; the latter are more tenuous, being more or less tubular connections between the chambers themselves and between these and the nest openings. Chambers and galleries are most sharply differentiated from each other in the fungus-growing ants, especially in the typical genus *Atta*. These nests will be described in greater detail in a future chapter. Suffice it to say in this place that the chambers of ants of the subgenera *Trachymyrmex* and *Mycetosoritis* are large spherical cavities, whereas the galleries are uniform, tubular passages entering and leaving the chambers at rather definite points. In several species the chambers have the appearance of being strung along a single vertical gallery like beads on a thread. The chambers in most ant-nests are used as nurseries for the brood and for the assemblage of the ants themselves. In species which store seeds several of the chambers near the surface may be set apart as granaries, and in the Attii nearly all the chambers of the nest are given up to fungus gardens. In the nests of the honey-ants the replete workers, or honey-bearers, hang from the hard, vaulted roofs of the chambers furthest removed from the surface, while the brood is reared in the small and more superficial apartments.

The incipient nests of all soil-inhabiting species are essentially alike in presenting only the subterranean excavations. Ants in this stage of colonial development are exceedingly timid and take the greatest care
to conceal the situation of their nests. The excavated soil pellets are
therefore carried some distance from the nest opening and scattered
about irregularly, and the entrance itself is often kept closed with a few
pebbles or so adroitly concealed in a tuft of grass or under a prostrate
leaf that it is impossible to find the nest without carefully following
some worker that happens to be returning from a foraging excursion.
This habit of concealment is retained even by adult colonies of timid
species (*Dichothonax* and *Leptothonax*). Sometimes the earthen pel-
lets are scattered over a wide circular area so as to produce what may

![Image of an ant nest](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

**Fig. 110.** *Formica rufa* nest 2.15 meters high and 9.8 meters in diameter; pine
forests of Belgium. (Photograph by G. Severin.)

be called a rudimental crater (*Myrmecocystus mojave* and *Aphano-
gaster treata*.) Another form of rudimental crater is seen in species
like *Trachymyrmex septentrionalis*, which dumps all the excavated soil
in an elliptical or crescentric heap at a distance of several inches from
the opening, and in *Pogonomyrmex occidentalis* and *californicus*, which,
on first establishing their nests, arrange the soil in a fan-shaped sector
at the opening (Fig. 165, A). In older nests of these ants the crater is
completed by the gradual enlargement of the sector along its radii and
arc till it becomes a circle (Fig. 165, B). The typical crater which is the
commonest form of ant-nests in regions devoid of stones and is best
developed in light soil or pure sand, is often constructed with exquisite
care. It is at once restored or rebuilt after destruction by rain or wind. In sandy regions most ants carry out the sand-grains one by one and deftly lay them on the walls of the crater. Among the Attii, however, the excavated sand is moulded into large polygonal pellets of uniform size in which the grains are agglutinated by moisture.

What I have called small craters vary from a couple of centimeters to 10 or 15 cm. in diameter. They are constructed by many of our species of *Pheidole, Myrmica* and *Prenolepis*, by *Lasius americanus*, *Dorymyrmex pyramicus*, *Monomorium minimum*, *Camponotus americanus* and by the smaller species of *Pogonomyrmex, Myrmecocystus* (Fig. 107), etc. These craters vary greatly in size and shape, some being very flat and ring-like, with a clear space between the central opening and the crater wall (*Nylanderia arenivaga*), others very high and narrow, and almost chimney- or tower-shaped, with the opening on the summit (*Trachymyrmex turritex, Mycetosoritis hartmani* and *Lasius americanus*). In some species there are numerous craters corresponding to as many nest entrances, and the walls of these craters may be strung along in a series (*Pheidole vinelandica*) or more or less fused with one another (*Ph. dentata* and *morrisi, Solenopsis geminata*).

Large craters, from 20–50 cm. or even more in diameter, are constructed by several of our North American ants, notably by *Atta texana, Mellierius versicolor, Ischnomyrmex cockerelli* (Fig. 156), *Messor pergandei* (Fig. 152), *Pogonomyrmex badius, comanche* and *californicus, Myrmecocystus melliger* and *hortideorum*, and several species of *Formica* (*F. schaufussii, munda, subpolita*, etc.). These craters, especially in *Formica*, may be multiple and fused with one another like the small craters, and thus form extensive flattened elevations, perforated with openings (*F. subsericea, neoclara, neocinera*, etc.). It has been suggested that the craters, though consisting of materials brought to the surface and rejected during excavation, may nevertheless be of use to the ants in protecting their nest entrances from the wind. Forel has observed that the walls of the craters of certain desert ants, like *Messor arenarius* of the Sahara, are raised to a greater height on the windward side.

Just as it is difficult to make anything more than a purely artificial distinction between small and large crater nests, so it is by no means easy to distinguish certain large craters from mound, or hill nests. The latter are usually much larger than the craters, not because they represent more extensive excavation in the underlying soil, but because they represent a large amount of material collected by the workers from the territory surrounding the nest. This accumulation is perforated throughout with galleries and chambers and consists of earth, small
pebbles and vegetable detritus such as straws, twigs, pine-needles, leaves, etc. The proportions of these various constituents differ greatly in the different species. In our eastern *Formica exsectoides* (Fig. 109) which constructs conical mounds sometimes a metre in height and two to three in diameter at the base, earth greatly predominates, whereas in the European *F. rufa* (Fig. 110) and our western subsp. *obscuripes*

![Fig. 111. Mound of thatching ant (*Formica obscuripes*) of Colorado, made of coarse twigs and grasses. (Original.)](image)

(Fig. 111) the dome-shaped nest consists of a mass of sticks or pine-needles resting on a large crateriform earthen base. In *Pogonomyrmex molefaciens* and *occidentalis* (Fig. 108) the mound consists very largely of pebbles. The number and position of the nest openings is also highly variable. In *F. rufa* the numerous openings are scattered over the whole surface of the mound, in *F. exsectoides* they are mostly aggregated in a broad belt around the base, in *molefaciens* there is a single opening at or near the summit, whereas in *P. occidentalis* the single entrance is situated at the base, and almost invariably on the southern or eastern side (Fig. 108). There can be little doubt that the mound nests of the species of *Pogonomyrmex* mentioned above have arisen from the large crater, which is the only form of nest in most species of the genus, through stages like those
shown in Fig. 165. In *F. rufa* and *exsectoides*, however, the mound seems to have developed from multiple fused craters like those of *F. sanguniea, neocinerea* and *subsericea*, species which are also in the habit of accumulating a certain amount of detritus about the openings. This habit in the various mound-building ants is most easily observed when their nests are constructed near railway tracks. In such situations the *Pogonomyrmex* and *Formica* workers bring together great quantities of locomotive cinders and place them on their nests, so that the latter stand out as black hillocks in striking contrast with the surrounding soil and vegetation. In certain localities in Arizona, *P. occidentalis* also covers its mounds with the dung-pellets of spermophiles, and Wasmann has noticed that the European *F. pratensis* employs rabbit dung and the dried flower-heads of *Centaurea* in the same manner.

Forel has shown that the mounds of *F. rufa* serve the important purpose of incubators for the brood. During the breeding season the leaves and sticks of which they consist tend to acquire the high temperature of a compost heap, and thereby accelerate the development of the larvae and pupae. Escherich has found that the temperature of the mounds is sometimes 10° C. higher than that of the surrounding air and must be much higher than that of the galleries in the subjacent soil. Undoubtedly the gravel mounds of *Pogonomyrmex barbatus, molefaciens* and *occidentalis* are equally useful as incubators.

Other mound nests, differing from the foregoing in their smaller size and compact earthen structure, have been designated by Forel as masonry domes (domes maçonnés). This authority, who in 1900 made a hurried myrmecological excursion through the Atlantic States, was surprised to find that many circumpolar ants (*Lasius niger* and *flavus, Formica fusca* and *sanguinea*), which construct masonry domes in Europe, fail to exhibit this peculiarity in the United States. He concluded that these structures, which, like the large mounds, serve as incubators, must be unnecessary in this country on account of its great annual extremes of climate. This inference is certainly premature, for although it is true that many of the circumpolar species do not make domes in the Atlantic States, they have this habit in the Mississippi Valley and Rocky Mountains, where the annual extremes of temperature are even greater. *Formica subsericea* and many species of *Lasius* and *Acanthomyops* become dome builders in Illinois and Wisconsin, although it must be admitted that the term "masonry domes" is not always strictly applicable to their nests, since the earth of which they consist is not firmly compacted but carried up rather loosely around grass and plant stems. I have frequently seen such mounds of *Lasius aphidicola, Acanthomyops interjectus* and *claviger* and *F. subsericea*
fully 30 cm. in height and 60 cm. to 1 m. in diameter. In the Rocky Mountain region large mound nests of *Pogonomyrmex occidentalis*, *Formica obscuripes*, *opaciventris* and *argentata* abound, and in these regions they are much needed for maturing the brood, as the nights are cold in the summer and the heat of the daylight hours must be utilized. *Formica glacialis*, one of the varieties of *F. fusca*, in Maine, makes

![Image](image_url)

**Fig. 112. Nest of Formica integra** in a huge pine stump, showing vegetable detritus accumulated by the workers in the crevices of the bark and about the roots. (Original.)

true masonry domes like the European ants, and in this region such nests must be very useful as incubators since the summers are short and comparatively cool.

I am able to confirm Forel's statement that in hilly or mountainous regions ant-nests are most abundant on the eastern and southern slopes. He says: "I have observed this repeatedly and also more recently here in America. Here, too, the same explanation applies: The morning sun awakens and urges the ants to work. During the afternoon it is sufficiently warm so that this stimulus is unnecessary. Hence
the advantage of an eastern exposure which lengthens their daily activity. On a western slope, on the contrary, they lose the early morning hours, are too warm in the afternoon and are unable to do much after nightfall." Those nests, therefore, have the most favorable position which are exposed to the sun in the morning and shaded in the afternoon. Not only is this advantage apparent in the greater abundance of nests on southern and eastern slopes, but the nests themselves may show structural adaptation to the position of the sun. I have already called attention to the constant position of the nest opening at the base of the southern or eastern slope of the mounds of *Pogonomyrmex occidentalis*. Huber says that the yellow ants (*Lasius flavus*) of Switzerland "serve as compasses to the mountaineers when they are enveloped in dense fogs or have lost their way at night; for the reason that the nests, which in the mountains are much more numerous and higher than elsewhere, take on an elongated, almost regular form. Their direction is constantly from east to west. Their summits and more precipitous slopes are turned towards the winter sunrise, their longer slopes in the opposite direction." These remarks of Huber have been recently confirmed by Tissot (Wasmann, 1907a) and Linder (1908). The latter has shown that the elongate shape of the mounds is due to the fact that the ants keep extending them in an easterly direction in such a manner that only the extreme easterly, highest and most precipitous portions are inhabited by the insects. I have observed a similar and equally striking orientation of the mounds of *Formica argentea* in the subalpine meadows of Colorado.

By far the greatest number of ant-nests, at least in many parts of the world are excavated in the soil under stones, logs, boards, etc. Most of our ants, including even those that construct large mounds, are very fond of nesting in such places during the younger colonial stages. In fact only two of our terricolous species—*Dorymyrmex pyramicus* in the Southern, and *Prenolepis impolis* in the Northern States—are so rarely found under stones as to indicate that they have a pronounced aversion for such sites. The advantage of nesting under stones is considerable, for these not only protect the entrances, galleries and chambers from rain and wind and enable the ants to dispense with the labor of roofing over their surface excavations, but they are of even greater service in conserving the moisture in the underlying soil while rapidly taking up the sun's heat and thus accelerating the incubation of the brood. Nearly all ants prefer flat stones of moderate dimensions and not too deeply buried in the soil. Many *Formica* of the *rufa* and *sanguinea* groups (*neptica*, *difficilis*, *consocians*, *microgyna*, *obscuriventris*, *orcas*, *ciliata*, *dakotensis*, *integra*, *rubicunda*, etc.) bank the
edges of the stones with earth or plant detritus into which they often extend their galleries and chambers for the aération and incubation of the brood. Even the mound-building forms frequently start their nests in this way and gradually heap the detritus up over the stones till they are concealed under typical domes and the original lapidicolous habit of the colony is no longer recognizable. In the North American forests the logs and branches strewn about on the ground afford a substitute for stones and cover the nests of many glade ants, such as *F. rubicunda, integra, haemorrhoidalis, Aphaenogaster fulva*, etc., *F. integra* (Fig. 112) in the Eastern and *haemorrhoidalis* in the Western States fill out the spaces in and under logs with vegetable detritus. Ants are not fond of nesting under cow dung, but in Texas I have found *Solenopsis geminata* and *Camponotus fumidus* resorting to such nesting sites in regions where stones were scarce and moisture and protection from the intense heat of the sun nowhere else to be found. Forel has made similar observations in the high mountain pastures of Switzerland (1874).
CHAPTER XIII

ANT-NESTS (CONCLUDED)

"Je me suis assuré que chaque fourmi agit indépendamment de ses compagnes. La première qui conçoit un plan d'une exécution facile en trace aussitôt l'esquisse; les autres n'ont plus qu'à continuer ce qu'elle a commencé; celles-ci jugent par l'inspection des premiers travaux de ceux qu'elles doivent entreprendre; elles savent toutes ébaucher, continuer, polir ou retoucher leur ouvrage, selon l'occasion: l'eau leur fournit le ciment dont elles ont besoin; le soleil et l'air durcissent la matière de leurs édifices; elles n'ont d'autre ciseau que leurs dents, d'autre compas que leurs antennes, et de truelle que leurs pattes de devant, dont elles se servent d'une manière admirable pour appuyer et consolider leur terre mouillée.

"Ce sont là les moyens matériels et mécaniques qui leur sont donnés pour bâtir; elles auraient donc pu, en suivant un instinct purement machinal, exécuter avec exactitude un plan géométrique et invariable; construire des murs égaux, des voûtes dont la courbure, calculée d'avance, n'aurait exigé qu'une obéissance servile; et nous n'aurions été que médiocrement surpris de leur industrie; mais, pour élever ces dômes irréguliers, composés de tant d'étages; pour distribuer d'une manière commode et variée les appartements qu'ils contiennent, et saisir les tems les plus favorables à leurs travaux; mais surtout pour savoir se conduire selon les circonstances, profiter des points d'appui qui se présentent, et juger de l'avantage de telles ou telles opérations, ne fallait-il pas qu'elles fussent douées de facultés assez rapprochées de l'intelligence, et que, loin de les traiter en automates, la nature leur laissât entrevoir le but des travaux auxquels elles sont destinées?"—P. Huber, "Les Moeurs des Fourmis Indigènes," 1810.

Nests in the Cavities of Plants.—Ants, through their very intimate relations to plants, have come to take every advantage of cavities found in these organisms. This is especially true in the tropics where the prevailing temperature is so high that no special contrivances for incubating the brood are needed, and where sufficient moisture and protection are abundantly afforded by the walls of vegetable cavities. Indeed, many tropical plants present cavities so admirably suited to the accommodation of ant colonies as to appear to have been developed for this particular purpose. Such, for example, are the hollow stems of trees like Cecropia and Triplaris, the hollow petioles of Tococa, the hollow thorns of Acacia, and the bulbs of Lecanopteris, Hydnophytum and Myrmecodia. Other plants, like certain epiphytes of the genus Tillandsia are often inhabited by colonies of ants which nest in the spaces enclosed by their overlapping leaves. All of these cases may be more properly treated in the chapter on the relations of ants to plants.

Another set of cases, in which, however, symbiosis is out of the question, comprises the nests of ants in the woody portions of plants,
in cavities that have been wholly or in part excavated by wood-destroying larvae, beetles, etc. A number of species which live in small colonies have learned to take advantage of such cavities in the bark of trees, in twigs, woody galls, etc. These cavities may be modified and extended to suit the convenience of the ants. Some of our species of *Leptothorax (canadensis, schaumi, fortinodis)* prefer the cork-like bark of dead or living tree-trunks, our *Colobopsis* species and numerous varieties of the circumpolar *Camponotus falax* inhabit the solid wood of hickory, pine or oak twigs 3 to 4 cm. in diameter. The dead wood

![Fig. 113. Gall of Holcaspis cinerosus inhabited by colony of Leptothorax obturator. (Original.) The large opening through which the gall fly escaped has been plugged with carton by the Leptothorax queen and subsequently perforated by her workers to form the permanent entrance.](image)

![Fig. 114. Ends of broken twigs of Sea-grape (Coccoloba uvifera) showing carton diaphragms of Camponotus sexguttatus, with circular entrances. (Original.) a, With a flat, b, with a cone-shaped diaphragm, the latter being an adaptation to the oblique fracture of the hollow twig.](image)

of standing or prostrate trunks is often extensively riddled by the galleries of *Cremastogaster lineolata* and *Camponotus pennsylvanicus, nubeobracensis, ferrugineus*, and *levigatus*. These insects, which are popularly known as carpenter ants, apparently start their intricate galleries in spots where the wood has decayed or has been in part destroyed by other insects. The galleries are often continued down into the underlying soil, especially in arid regions where the wood dries out in summer.

In some parts of the country the old woody galls on oaks furnish the ants with exceptionally convenient quarters in which to start colonies or even for the permanent accommodation of small communities. This is especially true of the galls of a Cynipid (*Holcaspis cinerosus*) on the live-oaks of central Texas. These spherical galls, which measure from 2-4 cm. in diameter, after being deserted by the insects that produce them, remain attached to the twigs for several years. Much of
the interior has been eaten out by the Cynipid larva, the imago of which leaves the gall by a circular aperture in its side. Hundreds of recently fertilized females of several different species of ants annually take up their homes and start their formicaries in these hollow spheres. On examining several thousands of these galls in the vicinity of Austin, Texas, I found a considerable percentage of them inhabited by colonies of the following ants which are here enumerated in the order of increasing frequency: Leptothorax fortinodis, Leptothorax obturator, Colobopsis etiolata, Cremastogaster clara, Camponotus decipiens, Camponotus rasilis. The species of Leptothorax and Colobopsis, which never form large colonies, inhabit the galls permanently, the Cremastogaster and Camponotus use them mainly during the incipient colonial period. Two of the species, L. obturator and C. etiolata are especially interesting on account of their methods of modifying and guarding the nest entrance. The former ant is very small, and the solitary female on entering the gall finds the opening made by the gall-fly inconveniently large. She therefore plugs it up with wood-fillings mixed with saliva. When the small workers of her first brood hatch, they perforate the middle of the diaphragm with an opening just large enough to permit their bodies to pass in and out (Fig. 113). Occasionally this same ant nests in twigs of the hop-tree (Ptelea trifoliata) that have been hollowed out by a small carpenter bee (Ceratina nana). In such nests the larger opening at the end of the twig is occluded and then perforated in the

---

**Fig. 115. Colobopsis etiolata of Texas.** (Original.) a, Soldier in profile; b, head of same, dorsal view; c, head from anterior end; d, worker.
same manner. The same habit is also seen in other ants, for example in *Camponotus sexguttatus* of the American tropics. Fig. 114 shows the ends of a couple of twigs of the sea-grape (*Coccoloba uvifera*) which I found at San Juan, Porto Rico. They have been plugged with
ligneous carton by the nest-founding queens and subsequently perforated by the workers.

Even more interesting is the behavior of *Colobopsis etiolata* when it nests in *Holcaspis* galls. This ant (Fig. 115) has strongly marked soldiers, with peculiar truncated, roughened, stopper-shaped heads which exactly fit the circular holes in the galls (Figs. 116 and 117). These individuals are, therefore, told off to act as animated portals to the nest. When a worker wishes to forage on the branches of the oak, it approaches the stationary soldier from behind and palpates its gaster.
The soldier moves aside to let the worker pass out and then at once moves its head back into the circular aperture. In order to enter, the returning worker has to stroke the soldier's truncated forehead, and the guardian again steps aside for a moment. Though most abundant in the oak-galls, *C. etiolata* occasionally nests in the hard wood of tree trunks and branches (*Carya myristicifolia*), apparently in preformed larval burrows. This seems to be the usual method of nesting of *C. pylartes* of Texas. Forel has described very similar nests and habits for the European *C. truncata* (1874, 1893h, 1894e, 1903f) which nests in twigs of the walnut tree. More recently I have seen another species (*C. culmicola*) nesting in the hollow culms of sedges (*Cladium jamaicense*) in the “swashes” of the Bahamas. In this case the nest often extends over several internodes of the plant and each is perforated with a circular opening occluded by the head of a soldier (Fig. 118). The slightly truncated heads of the soldiers of many wood-inhabiting species of *Camponotus* suggest very similar habits. The same inference may be drawn from the structure of the head in the soldiers of a peculiar Texan *Pheidole* (*Ph. lamia*) which nests in slender galleries under stones. In this insect the anterior surface of the head is remarkably like that of *Colobopsis* and may be said to present a striking case of convergence (Fig. 3H).

The old galls on our northern oaks, and especially those of *Eurosta solidaginis* and *Gelechia gallasolidaginis* on the stems of golden rod (*Solidago*) are often tenanted by colonies of *Leptothorax curvispinosus* (Patton, 1879). This ant, however, is more frequently found in hollow twigs, especially in those from which the pith has been removed by small carpenter bees (*Ceratina dupla*). Even dried seed-pods, nuts and pine-cones may furnish convenient quarters for ant colonies. *Leptothorax longispinosus* occasionally nests in hickory nuts from which the kernel has been removed by squirrels. Professor C. H. Eigenmann sent me from Cuba some dried bean-pods containing colonies of the pale yellow *Camponotus inaequalis*; and Mr. William T. Davis has given me
a couple of cones of *Pinus rigida* from Lakehurst, N. J., each inhabited by a colony of *C. nearcticus*.

**Suspended Nests.**—The suspended nests, like the majority of epiphytic plants, are found only in the forests of the tropics. They are true constructions throughout, consisting of earth, carton or silk, built so as to enclose anastomosing chambers and galleries. Earthen suspended nests, or "ant-gardens," were recently discovered by Ule (1905) in the forests of Brazil (Fig. 179). They are constructed by several species of ants (*Azteca olithrix, ulzi* and *traili* and *Camponotus femoratus*), which carry up particles of earth and build them into spherical masses, sometimes of the size and appearance of bath-sponges around the branches of trees. According to Ule, the ants even plant the seeds of epiphytes in this earth, so that it may be held together by the roots and thus acquire greater consistency for the support of the enclosed galleries. This statement is open to some doubt, as it is evident that such suspended earth-masses in a humid tropical forest may easily become seeded with epiphytes without the intervention of the ants. Even in temperate regions there is a slight approach to this kind of nest in the

![Image](image_url)
masses of earth which are sometimes built up around the stems of herbaceous plants by certain European species of *Lasius*, *Myrmica* and by *Tapinoma erraticum*. I have seen similar nests fashioned by *Myrmica canadensis* in the bogs of New England.

Although a few ants in temperate regions are able to make carton nests, the majority of carton-builders are found in the tropics and it is only in these regions, as I have said, that the nests are suspended from trees. In Europe *Lasius fuliginosus* and *Liometopum microcephalum* construct carton nests in hollow logs, and in the Western and Southwestern States *Liometopum apiculatum* and *Cremastogaster lineolata* (Fig. 119) make similar nests under stones. In the tropics suspended carton nests are built by ants belonging to the genera *Camponotus,*
Polyrhachis, Asteca (Fig. 120), Dolichoderus (Fig. 121), Cremastoagaster, Macromisca, Myrmicaria and Tetramorium, representing the three more specialized subfamilies. The genera Asteca and Cremastoagaster, the former a cosmopolitan, the latter an exclusively neotropical group, seem to contain the greatest number of carton-building species. Certain Indian and African species of Cremasto-
gaster have long been known to construct large spherical or egg-shaped paper formi-
caries. Sykes (1836) and Kirby (1837) described and figured those of C. kirbyi of India. Later Mayr (1878), Wroughton (1892) and Roth-
ney (1895) published accounts of the similar nests of C. rogenhoferi and eburninus.
Another species (C. artifex) according to Mayr, builds carton nests in Siam and Singapore. In Madagascar, according to Forel (1891b),
the carton nests of C. ranavalona may reach a diameter of 30 cm., and C. tricolor makes similar structures. In
the same island the nests of C. schencki are said to be large enough to enclose the body of
a man. In Africa, according
to Mayr (1896, 1901), C. inconspicua, marginata, stadelmanni, opaciceps, hova and
peringueyi all make carton nests. Tropical America is also rich in species with simi-
lar proclivities. F. Smith
(1858) figured and described the paper nests of the Mexican C. montez-
sumia, and Forel (1899a) has more recently shown that similar structures are built by C. sulcata, ramulinida and stolli. Even in North
America C. lincolata, which usually nests in logs or in paper nests
under stones (Fig. 119), occasionally makes suspended nests on bushes
(Atkinson, 1887).
Many species of the highly arboreal genus *Asteca* build carton nests, and these show considerable range of variation in form and structure. The suspended nests of *A. aurita*, *mathilda trigona*, *multinida*, *lallemandi*, *schimperi*, etc., are more or less egg-shaped or cylindrical and resemble the carton nests of termites and *Cremastogaster*. Other species (*Asteca barbifex*, *stalactitica*, *decipens* and *lanians*) build their paper nests in the form of long pendant stalactites. *A. hypophylla* lives under leaves whose edges are attached to tree-trunks by means of carton, *A. xysticola* lives in meandering carton galleries on the surface of large stones in forests, and *A. muelleri*, *constructor* and *nigriventris* use more or less carton in the construction of their galleries in plant cavities.

The interesting paleotropical genus *Polyrhachis* contains several carton-building species. These ants like the African *Tetramorium aculeatum* and certain species of *Dolichoderus* attach their small, and often very symmetrical nests to the surfaces of leaves. Forel has examined the condition of the carton in the different genera above mentioned and finds that it varies greatly in its consistency, from the hard ligneous substance of *Lasius fuliginosus* to the finest, thinnest and most pliable paper. It consists of vegetable particles glued together with a secretion of the maxillary glands, which are enormously developed in the workers of some of the species. When the nests are built in hollow logs (*Lasius fuliginosus*, *Limometopum microcephalum*) wood filings are used in making the carton. In some species like the South American *Dolichoderus attelaboides* cow-dung is employed. According to Forel (1893h), *D. bispinosus* of tropical America uses the seed-hairs of the silk-cotton tree (*Bombax ceiba*). *Tetramorium africanum* and *aculeatum* of the Congo line their nests with a thin layer of carton consisting of vegetable detritus and fungus hyphae (Santschi, 1908). The flexibility of the carton in all cases depends on the amount of glandular secretion mixed with the vegetable particles.

The most extraordinary ant-nests are undoubtedly the silken structures inhabited by certain species of *Ecophylla*, *Camponotus* and *Polyrhachis*, all genera belonging to the same subfamily. The following description of several silken nests of *Polyrhachis* and the nests of *Ecophylla* is taken from Forel (1894e):

"The nest of the *Polyrhachis jerdonii* Forel which I received from Ceylon through Major Yerbury is very interesting. This species builds upon leaves small nests, the wall of which greatly resembles in appearance the shell of many Phryganeidae larvae. Pebbles, and especially small fragments of plants, are cemented together by a fine web or
woven together, and form a rather soft, tough web-like nest wall of a greyish-brown color. . . . We see here unmistakable small fragments of plants bound together in a web by peculiar silk threads. These silk threads are found, upon close examination, to be of very irregular thickness, often branching, and in many cases issuing from a thicker crosspiece. . . . Polyrhachis dives, however, no longer needs any foreign materials. It makes its nest wall out of pure silk web, exactly like coarse spun yarn or the web of a caterpillar. The web is of a brownish-yellow color and is fixed between leaves, which are lined with it and are bound together. Mr. Wroughton, of Poonah, India, sent me such a nest, simply between two leaves. A still finer, softer silk web, finer and thicker than the finest silk paper, very soft and as pliable as the finest gauze, though much thicker, of a brown color, is produced by Polyrhachis spinigera Mayr. . . . Here we find no more crosspieces but only silk webs. They are, however, still irregular, of varying thickness, spun across each other into a web. This web is fixed in a wonderful manner in the ground, where it forms the lining of a funnel-shaped cave which is widened out into a chamber at the bottom. . . . The large nest constructed in the foliage of trees, between the leaves by Ecophylla smaragdina Fabr., one of the most common ants of tropical Africa, forms, however, the prototype of spun ant-nests. A great number of leaves are fastened together by a fine white web, like the finest silk stuff. This web, apart from the color, has exactly the same appearance, both to the naked eye and under the microscope, as that of Polyrhachis spinigera. The leaves are usually fastened together by the edges. The nest is larger, and the large, long, very vicious, reddish or greenish worker ants live in it, with their grass-green females, their black males, and the whole brood. They form very populous colonies in the
branches of the trees." A similar nest is constructed by *Camponotus senex* in the forests of Brazil.

As no adult insects are known to produce silk, the question naturally arises as to how the ants manage to make these nests. Misled by some inadequate observations on *Ecophylla* published by Aitken in 1890, Forel concluded that the silk was spun by the workers from the maxillary glands. In other words, he believed it to be equivalent to the glandular component of the carton manufactured by other ants. Subsequent observations, however, have shown that it has a very different and more remarkable origin. Ridley (1890) discovered in Singapore that *Ecophylla* uses its larvae for spinning the silk of its nest. His observations were confirmed by Holland and Green (1896, 1899) and Dodd (1902). Chun in 1903 observed that the spinning glands or sericeteries of *Ecophylla* larvae are enormously developed and Saville Kent is said to have figured the spinning larvae of *Ecophylla* from specimens found in Australia (1897). More recently (1905) Doflein has published some interesting observations on the nest-building habits of this ant. I here reproduce his account together with three of the accompanying figures. On opening a nest for the purpose of studying its reconstruction Doflein observed "that while the majority of the workers betook themselves to defending their home, a small troop went to work to repair the rent I had made in its wall. They lined up in a very peculiar manner in a straight row as shown in the figure. They seized the edge of the leaf on one side of the rent while they fastened themselves by means of the claws on their six feet to the surface of another leaf (Fig. 122). Then they began to pull, slowly and cautiously, carefully placing one foot behind the other, while the edges of the rent were seen gradually to approach each other. It was a bizarre sight to see the animals thus working side by side with their bodies in a regular parallel series.

"Now others came and began to cut away very carefully the remnants of the old web along the edges of the rent. They bit through the web with their mandibles and tugged at it till it came away in shreds. These shreds they carried off in their mandibles to an exposed part of the nest and let them fly away in the wind, opening their mandibles whenever there was a gust. I also saw a whole row of ants carry a big piece of web to the tip of a leaf, open their mandibles as if at command and permit the piece to flutter away.

"These operations lasted nearly an hour when suddenly a strong gust of wind tore the edges of the rent out of the ants' mandibles and frustrated all their efforts. But the ants were not discouraged. Again
a long row of them lined up along the slit and in half an hour they had again brought the edges pretty close together.

"I was about to despair of seeing the important part of the performance, when several workers emerged from the interior of the nest, each with a larva in its mandibles. And they did not run away with the larva in order to deposit them in a place of safety, but came right up to the exposed opening of the slit. There they were to be seen climbing about behind the row of workers making very odd motions with their heads. With their mandibles they held their larva so tightly that the bodies of the latter appeared to be compressed in the middle. Perhaps this pressure is necessary in order to excite the function of the spinning glands. It was a strange sight to see them passing between the ranks of the workers that were holding the leaves. While the latter remained on the outside, the former carried on their

![Ants working](image)

**Fig. 123. Cephysilla smaragdina** worker using a larva as a shuttle in weaving the silken tissue of the nest. (Doflein.)

work within the nest. This made it more difficult to observe what was going on. But after some time I could see very clearly that the larva were carried with their anterior ends directed forward and upward (Fig. 123) and were kept moving from one side to the other of the rent. At the same time each worker waited an instant on one side of the rent, as if it were gluing fast the thread spun by the larva by pressing its head against the leaf, before the head of the larva was carried across the rent and the same process repeated on the other side. Gradually, while they tirelessly pursued their task, the rent was seen to be filled out with a fine, silken web.

"There could be no doubt that the ants were actually using their larva both as spools and shuttles. As several workers toiled close together, they were able to cross and re-cross the threads and thus produce a rather tenacious tissue. This could be cut with the scissors and the small pieces presented a singular appearance under the microscope.
A lot of threads were seen crossing one another and in some places a number of the threads had a common direction. This agrees very well with my observations on the origin of the web. The ants are in the habit of moving to and fro with the larvae many times in the same place before changing their position and running the thread crosswise. In this way strands are soon formed on the outside of the web and evidently save labor on the part of the ants that are holding the leaves together. Under the microscope the threads appear to be glued together at many points. This condition is very easily explained when we consider that each thread is moist and sticky for a few moments after leaving the sericetries of the larva.

"I was unable to see the thread itself while it was being spun as it is too delicate and transparent to be visible to the unaided eye. I tried to see it with a strong lens, but in a twinkling dozens of ants had covered my eyelids and after brushing them away I was only too glad to be able to see at all." Dofflein (1906) has recently described and figured the voluminous spinning glands of Ecophylla (Fig. 124, D).

Dodd's account of the nest-building of Ecophylla virescens in Queensland, published in 1902, is also worth quoting, as it contains some interesting details not observed by Dofflein:

"It is decidedly interesting to observe the insects engaged upon the construction of their domiciles. If the foliage is large or stiff, scores or even hundreds of the ants may be required to haul a leaf down and detain it in place until secured, both operations taking considerable time. It is quite a tug-of-war matter to bring the leaf into position and keep it there. The insects holding it have a chain of two or three of their comrades fastened on to them, one behind the other, each holding its neighbor by its slender waist, and all at full stretch and pulling most earnestly. What a strain it must be for poor number one! When the leaf is far apart the ants form themselves into chains to bridge the distance and bring it down; many of these chains are frequently required for a single leaf. I have seen a large colony at work upon a new nest, and several of these chains were from three to four inches long; altogether there were many of them in evidence, some perpendicular, others horizontal. Up or along these living bridges other ants were passing."

"Now for the web material used to build the nests. It is furnished in fine and delicate threads by the larvae; moreover, I have only seen what appears to be half-grown examples used for the work—I have

1 There can be no doubt of the accuracy of this extraordinary observation. During the summer of 1909 Prof. Ed. Bugnion showed me some fine drawings of these chains of Ecophylla workers, which he had recently observed in Ceylon. Prof. Bugnion did not know of Dodd's observations.
never seen a large larva being made use of. The soft and tiny grubs are held by the larger ants, who slowly move up against those pulling. Each grub is held by the middle, with head pointing forward, its snout is gently made to touch the edges of the leaves where they are joined, it is slowly moved backwards and forwards and is undoubtedly issuing a thread during the operation, which adheres to the leaf edges, and eventually grows into the web. When this web is completed it must be composed of several layers to be strong enough for the purpose of securing the leaves. Whether the larva is an unwilling instrument or not in its captor’s mandibles is a point which cannot be ascertained. Maybe it is, for it cannot be comfortable in such a position. However, it supplies the web; perhaps if it were not robbed of the web for the benefit of the community it would be able to spin a cocoon for itself, in which to undergo the delicate change into the pupa state, for I have never seen a cocoon, all pupae being quite naked.

“When contemplating the work done in these nests one cannot but marvel at the wonderful ingenuity displayed, or in endeavors to form some idea of the vast number of larvae which must be utilized to supply the connecting web even for a moderately sized nest, for with trees with narrow leaves, like Eucalyptus tessellaris for instance, many scores of leaves are required to form a nest, and each must be sewn.”

Without knowing of these various observations on the Old World Ecophyilla, Goeldi discovered the same method of nest-weaving in the Brazilian Camponotus senex. His observations together with a figure of a nest of this ant, have been published by Forel (1905d). Similar observations made by Jacobson (1905) on Polyrhachis dives (edited by Wasmann, 1905) and by Karawaiw (1906) on P. muelleri and alexandri prove that the silken nests of the ants of this genus are also spun by the larvae. The latter author has described the complicated and voluminous sericeties in the larvae of P. muelleri (Fig. 124A). Thus we have indisputable proof that the ants of three different genera, inhabiting the tropics of both hemispheres, have acquired the extraordinary habit of employing their young as instruments, or utensils, in the construction of their nests. Here, as in so many other instances, organs and functions originally developed for a very different purpose—in this particular case for spinning the pupal cocoon—have been adapted and transferred to a very different purpose.

Nests in Unusual Situations.—In this category we may include ant-nests in human dwellings, ships, etc., tenanted by such species as Monomorium pharaonis and destructor, Pheidole megacephala, Solenopsis molesta and Prenolepis longicornis. These, of course, originally lived in nests in the soil, but on becoming house-ants they took to the crevices.
of the walls and woodwork. According to Forel (1874), certain European ants (*Lasius marginatus* and others) often nest in stone masonry. In our Atlantic States *Leptothorax longispinosus*, which originally nested under small stones lying on boulders or in old nuts lying on the ground, frequently nests between the stones of the rough stone walls that enclose woods or pastures.

**Accessory Structures.**—Ant colonies do not always confine their constructive activities to the nest in which they are rearing their brood, but may extend their influence over the wider area on which they are accustomed to seek their subsistence. Evidences of this influence are seen in the great, bare clearings, sometimes 3–10 meters in diameter, with which *Pogonomyrmex occidentalis*, *P. barbatus* and its several varieties surround their gravel cones or discs. In addition to these clearings, *P. barbatus* also makes paths that radiate out into the surrounding vegetation, sometimes to a distance of 20 to 30 meters. These

![Diagram of ant larvae](image)

**Fig. 124.** The spinning glands (sericetries) of ant larvae. (Karawajew and Doflein.) *A*, Larva of *Polyrhachis muelleri*; *B*, of *Lasius flavus*; *C*, of *Tetramorium cespitum*; *D*, of *Ecophylia amaragdina*; the spinning glands (shp) are most highly developed in the two forms (*A* and *D*) which are used as shuttles in weaving the nest.

are most beautifully developed on the high plateau not far from the City of Mexico, where they are sometimes 10–20 cm. broad and resemble footpaths. More boreal species, like *Formica pratensis* of Europe and *F. integra* of the United States, often make tenuous paths which are roofed over along much of their extent with vegetable detritus and connect the different nests of a colony with one another. These and other species of *Formica* are also fond of constructing along
their pathways, what Forel (1874) has called succursal nests, small excavations often resembling true nests, but used by the workers merely as places in which they can rest while foraging or escape from the heat of the sun or the pelting rain.

The tendency to construct such succursals or to establish several nests connected by run-ways is also apparent in many arboreal ants like the species of *Æcophylla*, *Polyrhachis*, *Cremastogaster* and *Lio-metopum*. To this habit must also be traced the construction of aphid or coccid tents, sheds or pavilions, as they are variously called. Though often at some distance from the true nests in which the brood is reared, these structures, which are usually made of carton or agglutinated earth may be regarded, nevertheless, as vestigial nests adapted to a specific purpose. Huber (1810) and Forel (1874) have described the aphid and coccid tents of European ants. Similar structures may also be seen in the tropics. On the island of Culebra I found carton tents that had been built by a variety of *Cremastogaster victima* over coccids on the lower surfaces of the leaves of *Cordia macrophylla*, and in the mountain forests of Porto Rico a yellow *Iridomyrmex* (*I. melleus*) was seen to make similar structures along the prominent ribs on the under sides of the gigantic reniform leaves of the ortegon (*Coccolobis rugosa*). Titus (1905) has shown that in Louisiana *Iridomyrmex humilis* occasionally makes coccid sheds on the surfaces of fruits like the persimmon. In our Northern States the versatile little *Cremastogaster lineolata* builds earthen or carton sheds which have been described by Osten Sacken (1862), Couper (1863), Trelease (1882) and myself (1906b). These structures are of small size, rarely more than 4 cm. long, more or less cylindrical or fusiform, enclosing some twig covered with plant-lice or mealy bugs (Figs. 205–209). A small round opening is left in the wall of the tent for the ingress and egress of the workers. Even the ants which spin silken nests among leaves often construct pavilions for their aphids, coccids, membracidids and Lycænid caterpillars. Jacobson has observed this in *Polyrhachis dives* and Dodd gives the following description of these tents in *Æcophylla virescens*: “Not only do these strangely used larvæ provide the web to build up the nests, but they are carried considerable distances to various branches, generally near the ends, and they are there induced to furnish material for forming shelters and retreats for various scale insects, ‘hoppers’ and caterpillars with which the ants fraternize. Upon a tree may be seen several of these enclosures, or a dozen, occasionally many more; as a rule a few leaves joined together. Upon large-leaved trees, like *Careya australis* or *Eucalyptus platyphylla* a single leaf doubled over and fastened down will form a sufficient
cover. Upon pulling any of these apart a small flat scale in great numbers will be found adhering to the leaf. Upon another species of tree, *Acacia* say, perhaps 'hoppers' only of a particular kind, with horned head, and their larvæ and pupæ may be found."

The striking character of the tents described in the preceding paragraph leads naturally to the question of their function and of the instincts of which they are an expression. There are several possible answers to such a question. We may suppose that the tents are built, first, for the purpose of preventing the escape of the aphids and coccids to other plants or to other parts of the same plant; second, for the purpose of protecting these insects and the ants themselves from exposure to cold, air-currents, moisture, or light; third, for the purpose of protecting the aphids and coccids from their natural enemies or from other ants. For some or all of these purposes the tents would seem to be admirable contrivances. It is probable that the aphids and coccids make the same appeal to the ants' sense of ownership as their own larvæ and pupæ. This is certainly true of some ants, like our species of *Lasius* which are fond of cultivating snow-white root aphids and coccids in their subterranean galleries. Whenever the stones covering the nests are overturned, the workers seize their charges in their mandibles and hurry away with them to a place of safety. It is natural, therefore, that ants should try to prevent the escape of their charges from a sense of proprietorship such as all ants display towards their own brood. Protection of the ants themselves from the air, and especially from the sunlight, is of great importance while they are waiting among the plant-lice for the accumulation and excretion of the honey-dew. Indeed, few of the species known to construct pavilions are at all fond of the open sunlight. This is certainly true of many of those mentioned in the preceding paragraphs. We may infer, therefore, that the ants probably build tents primarily for their own comfort and protection.

In concluding this chapter attention must be called to the fact that ants which have become parasitic on other species tend to lose completely the ability to excavate or construct nests. It is believed that even *Formica sanguinea*, which is only slightly dependent on its slaves, shows an inclination to neglect the labors of excavating. More completely parasitic genera, like *Polyergus*, though still possessing worker forms, are able to dig in the earth with their fore feet when opening up the galleries of the ants whose brood they are robbing, but they leave the construction of the nest entirely to the slaves. In highly parasitic genera, such as *Anergates, Wheeleriella*, etc., which have no worker forms, nest-building is, of course, a long-lost art.
CHAPTER XIV

THE PONERINE ANTS

"Si tout est matière en ce monde, on surprend ici le mouvement le plus immatérial de la matière. Il s'agit de passer de la vie égoïste, précaire, et incomplète à la vie fraternelle, un peu plus sûre et un peu plus heureuse. Il s'agit d'unir idéalement par l'esprit ce qui est réellement séparé par le corps, d'obtenir que l'individu se sacrifie à l'espèce et de substituer ce qui ne se voit pas aux choses qui se voient... Aussi est-il curieux, presque touchant, de voir comme l'idée nouvelle tâtonne d'abord dans les ténèbres qui enveloppent tout ce qui naît sur cette terre. Elle sort de la matière, elle est encore toute matérielle. Elle n'est que du froid, de la faim, de la peur transformés en une chose qui n'a pas encore de figure. Elle rampe confusément autour des grands dangers, autour des longues nuits, de l'approche de l'hiver, d'un sommeil équivoque qui est presque la mort."—Maeterlinck, "La Vie de L'Abeille."

The doubtful or indifferent attitude which investigators have assumed of late towards phylogeny, partly through abuse of the historical method on the part of some of its advocates, who have failed to emphasize the provisional and highly problematical character of their speculations, and partly through the attacks of a few experimentalists, who would make us believe that they alone possess the key to all biological knowledge, can hardly be regarded as more than temporary—a silence without complete acquiescence in the prevailing fashion of scientific thought. Although biologists now rarely undertake phylogenetic speculations on a grand scale, they are, perhaps, more active than ever in pursuing such speculations within the more modest confines of species, genera and families, where comparatively slight differences between organisms restrict the problem and the investigator moves with surer touch and deeper conviction. It may, indeed, be confidently asserted that no one can undertake the study of any small group of animals or plants in all its aspects without feeling the need of an historical explanation of the manifold relationships which he constantly witnesses. This is particularly true of such compact groups as the Formicidae, which are represented by a sufficient number of closely related genera and species to show, both in structure and habits, certain definite, progressive tendencies of development.

Of the five subfamilies of Formicidae only one, the Ponerinae, comprises unmistakably primitive and generalized forms and therefore constitutes a group of two-fold interest, first, as the ancestral stirp of the higher subfamilies, and second, as the oldest existing expression of
social life among the Formicidae—the stage in which we have just passed, to use Maeterlinck’s words, from the “precarious and incomplete egoistic to a social life with its slight accession of certainty and happiness.” In order to appreciate this prospective and retrospective value of the Ponerinae, it will be necessary to consider the taxonomy and especially the habits of these insects. Unfortunately many of the species are rare and live only in the inaccessible portions of the tropics, so that little is known of their habits. I have published some observations (1900a, 1900b, 1903) on our North American species, representing several of the tribes (Parasycia augustae, Stigmatomma pallipes, Lobopelta elongata, Pachycondyla harpax, Pseudonera stigma, Neoponera villosa, Ponera pennsylvanica, Platythyrea punctata, Odonto-

![Image of ants](image)

**Fig. 125.** *Parasycia augustae* of Texas. *a*, Worker; *b*, apterous female. (Original.)

*machus clarus* and *hamatodes*). Cook has observed the habits of the Guatemalan kelep (*Ectatomma tuberculatum*), recently introduced into Texas for the purpose of exterminating the cotton-boll weevil, and there are some notes on other forms scattered through the literature.

The classification on pages 134–137 shows that the Ponerinae comprise a number of different tribes, and this number will undoubtedly be augmented, when the subfamily has been carefully studied, beyond that of any of the other subfamilies. So much differentia-
tion would seem to contradict the statement that the Ponerinae represent the ancestral stirp of the Formicidae, but when we stop to consider that we are dealing with a very ancient group, the surviving relicts of a great cosmopolitan and probably Mesozoic fauna, this differentiation is what we should expect. The more recent and specialized subfamilies, with the exception of the Myrmicinae, though very rich in species, have not yet been able to develop an equal variety of generic and tribal types, whereas the Ponerinae have had time and opportunities to advance and retrograde along many different lines and to attain a high degree of specialization in certain genera. We may roughly divide the genera of this subfamily into three groups: those which are eminently primitive and generalized (*Myrmecia*), those which exhibit a mingling of primitive and degenerate traits (*Cerapachys, Acanthostichus, Stigmatomma, Amblyopone, Proceratium, Sphincta*, etc.), and those in which primitive are more or less overlaid by highly specialized characters (*Odontomachus, Anochetus, Leptogenys, Prionogenys, Harpegnathus, Thaumatomyrmex, Ectatomma*, etc.).

Although the Ponerinae represent a much larger portion of the ant-fauna in tropical than in temperate regions, they are nowhere a dominant group, except in Australia. There these ancient insects occupy a position among ants analogous to that of the monotremes and marsupials among mammals, and the Rhynchocephalia among reptiles. And it is especially the genus *Myrmecia*, comprising the “bull-dog ants,” which may be said to characterize this fauna and at the same time to represent the prototype of all ants.

This genus *Myrmecia* contains a number of species, nearly all of large size (2–2.5 cm.). They are often conspicuously colored, have long, lithe bodies, long legs, well-developed ocelli and large eyes even in the worker phase, and the full number of palpal joints. The structure of the base of the abdomen differs from that of other Ponerinae in the powerful constriction between the postpetiole and first gastric segment, so that there is marked off a true postpetiole as in the Myrmicinae and worker *Eciton*. Our knowledge of the habits of these remarkable insects is still very imperfect and conflicting for they bite and sting with such ferocity that few observers have cared to study them at close quarters. According to Froggatt (1901) the species of *Myrmecia* are largely confined to the Australian littoral, “only one
being common inland.” According to Sharp (1899) the nests of these ants are “said to be sometimes five feet high,” but it is probable that this statement refers either to unusual nests of *Iridomyrmex purpureus* or to certain termite nests which Froggatt has recently described and figured. Barker (1903) has published some observations on the black bull-dog ant (*M. forficata*) and a red species (*M. sanguinea*) in Victoria. The colonies of the former number from 500–1,000, of the latter from 200–500 individuals. Externally the nests of both species show only a little loose earth and few holes. “Both nests go down to two to four feet through the surface soil into yellow clay, and I have found these where the clay was particularly hard, so that considerable labor with pick and shovel is required in taking them out. There are exceptional cases where the form of the nest is modified, which it may be from the strength of the colony, the time it has been established, the nature of the soil, or the advantage taken of its local surroundings.” Barker found that “the Blacks show a greater preference for old tree roots, and in one case they had made a nest near a fallen tree, one of the limbs of which dipped into the ground; where it had rotted away, the
ants had returned up the limb, so that the nest was not only below but also two feet above ground, and larvæ were found in the portion above the ground level.” M. forficata is unusually fierce and will “follow an intruder for quite thirty feet from the nest in the hope of getting a parting bite.” This ant is also more nocturnal in its habits, F. sanguinea more diurnal and of a gentler disposition, although both species are fond of the light and inhabit spots exposed to the sun. The bulldog ants, according to Barker, are very fond of water. They not only drink it but bathe and swim in it. He frequently saw them “voluntarily leave one side of a six-inch dish and swim across to the other.” Sharp cites Lowne as saying “that M. gulosha attacks large beetles of the genus Anoplognathus and buries them; and he also adds the statement that M. nigrocincta, when running, is able to take leaps of a foot in length.” Froggatt (1905) has published on Myrmecia forficata,

![Ants](https://example.com/ant_images)

**Fig. 128.** North American Proceratii. a, Sysphiincta pergandei, worker; b, Proceratum silaceum. (Emery.)
gulosha, tarsata and nigrocincta, a number of notes which confirm many of the statements of previous observers. M. nigrocincta he designates as the “jumper” and says that “at the first alarm they come jumping out from the side door of their raised mound, which is generally on the ground level, one after the other, like a pack of dogs, and fasten on to the first thing they come across; as there is usually a large opening in the top of the nest, the unwary investigator, who has not learned about the side door, generally discovers it through a rear attack when the jumpers swarm up his legs and begin their investigations.” The jumping habit of this ant is not surprising when we consider that several other Ponerinæ (Harpegnathus, Odontomachus) also have the power of leaping (see p. 186). The establishment of colonies by species of Myrmecia has not been observed, but that they have a nuptial flight.
seems to be proved by the observations of Tepper (1882) who came upon a swarm of these ants early in April. "This was rather a formidable affair, owing to many hundreds of the large creatures (the female above an inch in length while alive) flitting about one's head, all armed with a sting about a quarter of an inch in length, while the shrubs near the nest were covered with scores of pairs and single ones."

The majority of Ponerine genera, in their structural characters at least, stand in rather marked contrast to *Myrmecia* in exhibiting certain degenerative or highly specialized traits in combination with a rather low organization. The Cerapachysii, Proceratii and Amblyoponii are all very timid, lead a hypogaeic life and have greatly reduced eyes, at least in the worker caste. On the other hand, genera like *Odontomachus* (Fig. 3K), *Mystrum* (Figs. 3A and 129), *Eummyella*, *Leptogenys* (Fig. 3O), *Harpennathus* (Figs. 3D and 138), *Thamatomyrmex* (Fig. 3I) and their allies, have a very highly specialized development of the head and mandibles. They are undoubtedly very old forms, some of which have managed to survive as conservative relicts in remote and protected corners of the tropics, whereas others, like *Odontomachus* and *Anochetus*, are widely distributed and have not altogether lost the ability to produce local races and varieties.

With the exception of *Myrmecia* and certain species of *Lobopelta* to be considered presently, all Ponerinae form small colonies, often of a few dozen individuals. This indicates either a low degree of fertility in the females or shortness of life on the part of the individual workers, or both. It also accounts for the rare or local occurrence of these insects.

As a rule the females are but little larger, the males but little smaller than the workers. The similarity of stature of the workers and females indicates a low degree of fertility on the part of the latter. These phases also differ very little in other characters such as color, pilosity and sculpture. The possession of wings, the consequent modification of the thorax, the larger eyes, ocelli and slight differences in the shape of the petiole, usually constitute the only peculiarities of the female
This sex, moreover, does not occupy a privileged position in the community, like the females of the higher ants. She is not attended by a body-guard of workers as she moves about the nest but seems to receive only the same attentions as the workers. And as the latter are often fertile, there is little to distinguish the queen from the other members of the colony. This is true at least of the species of *Odontomachus, Stigmatomma, Pachycondyla* and *Ponera* which I have studied. Cook says, however, that the queens of *Ectatomma tuberculatum*, "even
when young are distinctly less active than the workers. Isolated queens have shown no ability or inclination to excavate nests and very little interest in eggs or larvæ which have been entrusted to them."

The workers of the various species of Ponerinæ are monomorphic and do not exhibit the singular polymorphism seen in the workers of many genera in all the other subfamilies of ants. The only exception is Melissotarsus, an aberrant genus somewhat doubtfully referred to the Ponerinæ and unique among all ants in having worker and soldier forms of the same size (Fig. 139).

Owing to the small size of the colonies, the nests are usually small and obscure. They are, moreover, even in the tropics, excavated in the soil or in old logs. Few of the species ascend trees and most of these, like Myrmecia, Neoponera and Ectatomma, nest in the ground. The nests are simply and rudely excavated, without smoothly finished chambers and galleries or carefully constructed craters around their entrances. As a rule the colonies are strictly monodomous, but Cook has made the interesting observation that Ectatomma tuberculatum is polydomous. In this ant a single colony often extends over several nests, and he is of the opinion that new colonies are formed by a process of budding, like that seen in several of the higher ants, and not by

---

**Fig. 131.** Ponerine ants. (Original.) A, B and C, Worker, female and male of Stigmatomma pallipes; D, E and F, worker, female and male of Ponera pennsylvanica.
isolated females. I had previously reached this conclusion from a study of Ponera and Stigmatomma, but later, on finding an incipient colony of Odontomachus clarus in Texas and several isolated females of O. hæmatodes in cells under stones in the West Indies, I concluded that the Ponerinae probably resemble the great majority of ants in their method of founding colonies. That Myrmecia has a nuptial flight is shown by the passage quoted from Tepper (p. 230). A proneness to subdivision of colonies as in the case observed by Cook would account for the small number of ants found in the nests of most Ponerinae and may, perhaps, as in some of the higher ants, coexist with the formation of colonies by isolated females.

The Ponerinae are eminently entomophagous. Ectatomma tuberculatum, according to Cook, also visits the extrafloral nectaries of plants, but none of the species is known to attend aphids, garner seeds, or raise fungi. There is, however, a marked specialization in diet in certain species. I have shown that the Texan Lobopelta elongata (Fig. 137) feeds mainly, if not exclusively, on land-isopods, or slaters, and certain species of Leptogenys, Lobopelta, Ophthalmopone and Diacamma are much given to preying on termites. I have never seen any of our North American Ponerinae feed one another by regurgitation, but Cook's observations on Ectatomma tuberculatum leave little doubt that this ant practices a similar, if not identical, method of distributing ingluvial food to different members of the colony.

The great differences between the various tribes of Ponerine ants are reflected in the structure of their larvae. At least three different types may be distinguished among the species that have been studied by Emery (1899e) and myself (1900b, 1900e, 1903i, 1907d):

1. Smooth, thickset larvae, with short, sparse hairs and peculiar unpaired tubercles on the midventral surface of some of the abdominal segments (Platythyrea).

2. Smooth, slender larvae, with a rather dense covering of hairs (Myrmecia, Stigmatomma, Parasystcia, Ectatomma).

3. Larvae furnished with rows of tubercles which may be pointed or boss-like, tipped or merely encircled with stout hairs (Pachycondyla,

---

**Fig. 132.** Worker of Dinoponera grandis of Brazil. (Sharp.)
ANTS

_Ponera, Pseudoponera, Leptogenys, Diacamma, Odontomachus, Anochetus_. Some of the species of _Ponera_ also have long cylindrical dorsal tubercles which are glutinous at their ends and serve to anchor the larva to the walls of the nest.

The bristly tubercles of the third group of Ponerine larvae are so prominent as readily to suggest the question of their function. Professor L. Biró, who made some observations on the larvae of _Pseudoponera stigma_, which he sent to Professor Emery, believes that the pointed tubercles are organs of defence. He saw these larvae, when disturbed by some termites, move their long necks back and forth with sufficient force to drive away the intruders. It is possible that the tubercles, at least in the younger larvae, may function as "poils d’accrochage" in assisting the workers to carry their brood in packets instead of singly. Possibly, too, they are used in defending the larvae from one another, for the larvae, like the adults, are highly carnivorous and when food is scarce probably attack one another.

All Ponerine larvae, so far as observed, are fed with pieces of insect food. This method, which is undoubtedly very primitive, is also adopted by many specialized ants, but as a rule their larvae are given regurgitated food. My first observation on this singular method of feeding the larvae was made on a colony of _Pachycondyla harpax_ found May 5 under a stone at the foot of Mt. Bonnell, near Austin, Texas. Before the ants could carry them away, I scooped up a fine lot of larvae, together with the earth in which they were lying. Among these were several pieces, one or two segments long, of a recently killed
Myriopod (Scutigera). Into these pieces the larvæ, some of which were nearly full-grown, had inserted their heads and were devouring the softer tissues. This could be distinctly seen with the pocket lens through the glass of the vial to which the larvæ had been transferred. In another nest of the same species, uncovered May 16, I observed the larvæ lying on their backs, devouring pieces of some insect which I could not identify.

The former of these observations made in the field led me to observe the feeding of the larvæ in my artificial nests of Lobopelta elongata. I had frequently wondered at the way in which these ants decapitated termite nymphs or cut off their abdomens and scattered these about among their larvæ. It was all quite clear to me now; examination with the lens showed that the larvæ had inserted their long necks through the cut surfaces into the soft parts of the termites and were feeding exactly like the larvæ of Pachycondyla.

During the month of May I had frequent opportunity to see Odon-

tomachus clarus feeding its larvæ in my artificial nests. These larvæ are placed by the ants on their broad backs, and their heads and necks are folded over onto the concave ventral surface, which serves as a table or trough on which the food is placed by the workers. The fol-

May 13.—This evening several house-flies, placed in the Janet nest
of *Odontomachus*, were at once shorn of their legs, then decapitated, and finally their thoraces and abdomens cut into smaller pieces and distributed among the larvæ. One was given a fly's head, which it kept twirling around in a comical manner, while it devoured the brain through the small cervical orifice. Another was given a piece of a thorax with one of the wings still attached, another a piece of an abdomen, still another, a leg with a mass of muscle at its coxal end, etc.

*May 16.—*This evening a small Homopterous insect was placed in the *Odontomachus* nest. One of the ants (A) snapped at it, disabled and then left it. A few moments later it was picked up by another ant (B) and carried into the chamber containing the larvæ and pupæ. Thereupon a third ant (C) took hold of it and began to tug at it with B till it was torn open, but not into pieces. B then placed it on the flat ventral surface of a medium-sized larva, which began to feed at once, moving the Homopteron around with its jaws. After four minutes had elapsed, another ant (D) that had been standing nearby, apparently much interested in the feeding, suddenly tore the morsel away and placed it on a small larva. This larva was permitted to feed ten minutes, closely watched during all this time by ant D and another (E) which had come up in the meantime. Then ant D tried to tear the morsel away from the small larva, but apparently unable to do so, took up the larva with the morsel and dumped both on the ventral surface of a large larva. This creature seized the Homopteron and forced the small larva to release its hold and to drop to the ground. The large larva fed for fully twenty minutes, closely watched by the ant D and two others (E and F). All of these ants tried at different times to wrench the morsel away from the larva, but failed. Suddenly a small ant (C) rushed up, tore it away and ran off with it. By this time very little was left of the Homopteron and I lost track of it.

*May 23.—*A few crumbs of cake moistened with water were placed
in the *Odontomachus* nest at 11.07 P. M. A worker soon carried one of the crumbs into the breeding chamber and gave it to a large larva at 11.20. This larva fed only a few moments, but the cake was not removed till 11.35 when it was carried into another chamber, then at once brought back and placed between three larvæ, from one of which it had just been taken. The smallest of these three larvæ nibbled at it for a short time, beginning at 11.40. But one minute later this larva was carried away by a worker and the cake was taken by another worker and given to a small larva at 11.43. This larva, too, was carried away (at 11.48), and the cake was taken to a large larva, which would have none of it. It was not removed, however, till 11.50. Then it was given by another worker to a large larva, which did eat some of it. At 11.51 the piece of cake, but little diminished in size after all its peregrinations, was taken to another large larva. The ant remained over the larva holding the cake in place till 11.58, when another worker came up and ran away with the larva. While the larvæ were feeding, the ants themselves could be plainly seen to partake of the cake from time to time. During the whole period of the above observations, and for some minutes later, i. e., for over an hour, one little larva was permitted to feed without interruption on what seemed to be a piece of a house-fly.

I have cited these observations at length because of the doubt they cast on the usually accepted view that the workers are able to determine the character of the adult ant by the quantity or quality of the food administered to the larvæ. It is evident not only that the morsels set before the larvæ must be of very unequal nutritive value, but that the very method of their distribution is far too capricious and irregular to produce such clean-cut results as the adult worker and female.

The pupæ of the *Ponerinae*, so far as known, are always enclosed in cocoons. This is undoubtedly the primitive ancestral condition from which the absence of a cocoon in the *Myrmicinae*, *Dolichoderinae*, *Dorylinæ* and many *Camponotinae* has been derived by a suppression of the spinning habit of the larvæ, or as in *Ecophylla* by the use of the silk for other purposes (building nests and aphid-tents).

There is some evidence to indicate that certain *Ponerinae* are more negligent of their brood than other ants. Forel (1899c) who observed our North American *Ponera pennsylvanica*, was of the opinion that this ant neglects its cocoons when the nest is uncovered and makes no attempt to assemble or save them. I am convinced, however, from frequent observation of *Ponera*, that Forel's account is incomplete. It is true that the sudden admission of light into the nest causes the ants to forsake their cocoons, but when one stops to watch the nest
for a few moments, one is sure to see the ants returning one by one and stealthily removing their charges. This they do rather awkwardly, walking backwards and dragging the cocoons away without lifting them from the ground, in marked contrast with Lobopherta elongata, which straddles the cocoon with its long legs and carries it away with surprising dexterity. A simple experiment with the artificial nest shows that the cocoons of Ponera, when removed to a distance of three or four inches from the chamber in which the ants have stored them, are taken back in the space of ten to thirty minutes. Forel deserves credit for directing attention to this matter of the care of the cocoons, for when one has observed the way in which a large and highly specialized ant, like Formica schaufussi, for example, when its nest is uncov-

![Fig. 136. Odontoponera transversa of the Indomalayan Region.](image)

ered, rushes out in the very face of danger to rescue its cocoons, the slow and awkward movements of Ponera certainly indicate a more primitive, or possibly degenerate condition quite in harmony with its other habits. Further evidence that it cares for its cocoons is seen in its habit of continually creeping in and out among them, and in the time which it devotes to licking and cleansing them when there are no longer any larvae to require its attention.

Forel is also of the opinion that Ponera callows, unlike those of higher ants, may be able to escape from their cocoons without the assistance of the workers. I have not observed the hatching of P. pennsylvanica, but in another Ponerine of similar habits, Stigmatomma pallipes, I have surprised the callows in the act of escaping from their cocoons. Several cocoons were isolated in a watch-glass, and I had an opportunity of seeing a female, two males and several workers emerge entirely by their own efforts. The ant gnaws through the wall of the cocoon at a short distance behind the anterior pole. The shape of the incision at once indicates whether a male or female (or worker) is about to emerge. In the latter case the opening, which is produced by the huge mandibles, has the form of a transverse slit, extending half way around the cocoon. The small, sharp mandibles of the male, however, make a hole with irregular edges and of a much smaller size.
The insect, after periods of struggling, alternating with periods of rest, succeeds in getting first one antenna, then the other, and then the fore legs through the orifice, and finally, with considerable effort, creeps out. After making this observation on isolated cocoons I had an opportunity of making it in the artificial nests. In these the hatching cocoons were often carried about and placed on or under the stack of other cocoons, while the callows, struggling to emerge, seemed to hold out their antennae and fore legs in a supplianting attitude to the completely indifferent workers. In a few instances the callows died while halfway out of the cocoons and were carried to the refuse-heap in this condition. Occasionally, when the young callows had emerged with their hind legs still ensnared and encumbered by the white pupal skin, the workers would pull this away. They also occasionally licked and

![Image](image_url)

Fig. 137. Male, worker and gynæcoid female of *Lobopelta elongata* × 2. (Original.)

fondled the newcomers as if their bodies were covered with some pleasant secretion, but beyond these acts their helpfulness did not extend. The same workers, however, frequently opened cocoons and extracted dead, immature pupæ, cut them up, and then placed them on the refuse heap.

The newly hatched *Stigmatomma*, as we should naturally expect from the above observations, is not as feeble as the callows of the more specialized ants. The males and females issue with their wings fully expanded; the former have their bodies completely pigmented and are able to run about briskly; the latter, as well as the worker callows,
although of a rich yellowish red color, which they retain for several days, are nevertheless soon able to run about and to join in the labors of the colony. The queens show no tendency to leave the nest and usually lose their wings (after copulation?) while still in the red, callow condition.

In none of our North American Ponerinae have I seen any tendency to deport adult members of the colony, except in Lobopelta elongata, the workers of which, when the nest is disturbed, carry the males away as if they were cocoons or larvae. Nor have I seen any tendency on the part of the workers to hunt in files. But both of these habits, which are so conspicuous in more specialized ants, appear to be developed in some of the tropical Ponerinae. Forel (1894f) quotes the following observations of Ilg on Ophiopone igit of southern Abyssinia: "One day my servants came to tell me that if I wished to see a great many ants at one time, there was a fine opportunity, as every evening, about an hour before sunset, a whole compact army crept out of a hole to disappear into it half an hour later. Having had my attention called to the matter and wishing to know what was going on, I posted a servant in front of the hole, where not a single ant was to be seen, and hurried to the spot as soon as I was told that the performance was about to begin. I saw, in fact, a dense procession of large black ants issuing from the hole and collecting in front of it till they formed a stately assemblage. Suddenly the whole mass, headed by a leader, hurried forward in a dense file, while one company of barely fifty individuals stood for a few moments in front of the hole and then disappeared into it. Curious to know what the little fellows were about, I followed them cautiously, in order not to disturb them, for a distance of about fifty meters. They directed their course towards my traveling bags, and I began to suspect that they were going to steal my rice. To my great astonishment, however, they crept under the covers of my water-bags and I surmised that they might be thirsty. Nothing of the kind. When I carefully raised the covers, I found my rascals fighting fiercely with the white ants (termites) which make their appearance in the desert wherever water has soaked into the ground. Notwithstanding the valiant opposition they encountered, each of the black rascals eventually seized a poor little termite between its shining mandibles, bore it aloft and hurried back as fast as the grass, stones, etc., would permit. I was surprised to see a rather large fellow about two meters from the battle-field halt each termite-laden robber as he came up, till nearly all of them, each with his poor victim, were assembled on the same spot. But this was not all. About thirty or forty of the ants dropped their booty and returned to the battle-
field. This time, to my astonishment, they did not look for their little white opponents, but for their black comrades, each of whom they bore back in their mandibles to the company still assembled and waiting on the same spot. When there were no more stragglers the troop hurried back to the hole and disappeared into it with their booty and what I took to be their wounded.”

It is very probable that the “wounded” individuals mentioned by Ilg were merely stragglers forcibly deported in the same manner as many of the higher ants carry home belated members of their colonies (see p. 178). Cook has actually witnessed the deportation of queens and workers in *Ectatomma tuberculatum*. He says: “If the kelep queen does not follow at once to the new nest a worker seizes her by her mandibles, raises her in the air, and carries her over bodily. This has been observed repeatedly in connection with the prompt transfers which many of the imported colonies made from their cages into the ground. The queen submits to this treatment as though it were a regular occurrence, and remains quiet and rigid while being carried about. In one instance several workers also remained behind, but were caught and carried by their sisters into the new burrow.”

The habit of foraging in files has also been observed by Wroughton (1892) and Aitken in two Indian species of *Lobopelta* (*L. distinguenda* and *chinensis*). Concerning the former Wroughton writes as follows:
"This species is fairly common from Poona westward to the Ghats. The idea of a disciplined army has been fairly developed in this genus. *L. distinguenda* may sometimes, it is true, be found loafing about singly, but these individuals are probably only scouts; ordinarily, she is met, in the early morning or late in the afternoon, travelling in an unbroken column from six to eight abreast, straight, or rather by the easiest road, to the scene of operations. This is usually a colony of white ants whose galleries have been broken open by the hoof of a passing beast, or some similar accident. Arrived at their destination each worker seizes her termite prey, tucks it under her thorax in the orthodox ponerine fashion, and the column then returns (but marching 'at ease' and much less regularly than on the outward journey) to the nest." Bingham (1903) confirms Wroughton's observations on the termitophagous habits of *Lobopelta* and its methods of foraging in files. He says that "*L. chinensis*, *L. birmana* and *L. kitelli* seem always to march in columns of four; while *L. binghami* and *L. aspera* I have only seen in single or double file, and very often singly, wandering about foraging like *Diacamma*." Dahl (1901) also has seen a troop of about fifty *Lobopelta bismarckensis* workers marching in file in the Bismarck Archipelago, and *Dinoponera grandis* of Brazil, the largest of all Ponerine ants, is described by Bates (1892) as "marching in single file through the thickets." These observations are of unusual interest because they are suggestive of the concerted forays of the Dorylinæ and slave-making *Polyergus* and *Formica sanguinea*.

The ants of the genus *Leptogenys* (including the subgenus *Lobopelta*) are also interesting in another respect. The Texan *L. elongata* has no winged females, but instead a single gynaeclid worker usurps this rôle in each colony. This individual is indistinguishable from the workers except for the more rounded petiolar node and more voluminous gaster. As the difference in the petiole is not always constant the question arises as to whether the gynaeclids are not merely workers that have assumed the reproductive rôle. Conclusive evidence in favor of this supposition has been furnished by my former pupil, Miss M. Holliday (1903), who found the gynaeclids to possess a well-
developed receptaculum seminis. The number of ovarian tubules is the same as in the workers, which also occasionally possess a receptaculum. Of course, there can be no nuptial flight, and the gynæcoids must be fertilized either by the males of their own or other colonies, and either in the nest or while traveling over the ground.

That the same peculiar usurpation of the queen function by gynæcoid workers obtains among other species of *Leptogenys* is indicated, first, by the fact that winged *Leptogenys* females have never been seen, although the genus is a very large one and widely distributed through the tropics of both hemispheres, and second by Wroughton's observations on the Indian *L. diminuta* (Forel, 1900-'03). At Forel's request Wroughton carefully excavated an enormous formicary of this species, "but looked in vain for a female among the many thousands of workers. All he could find was a worker whose abdomen was conspicuously distended with the ovaries. This worker differed in absolutely no particular from the others, and there was nothing very extraordinary even about its abdomen." It is probable that several other *Ponerine* genera are in the same condition, for example the paleotropical *Diacamma* and *Champsomyrmex*, of which the winged females have never been seen. Wasmann (1904a) has recently shown that even in the highly specialized genera *Formica* and *Polyergus* single gynæcoid workers may assume the rôle of queens that have been removed from the colony. It seems probable, therefore, that the *Ponerinae* above mentioned present a degenerate, or, at any rate, secondary stage of colonial development in which the true female form has disappeared and is supplanted by a worker, elected, so to speak, to the reproductive office. If this be true, we may be able, as I shall endeavor to show in the next chapter, to account for the peculiar dichthadiiform females of the *Dorylinae*.

The habits of the *Ponerine* reviewed in the preceding paragraphs present a mingling of primitive and specialized features, both very interesting, the former because they throw light on the more intricate ethological conditions in the higher ants, the latter because they suggest the enormous antiquity of certain formicine instincts, which must have persisted with little change since Mesozoic or early Tertiary times. Several peculiarities, such as the highly entomophagous habits of the adults, the feeding of the larvae with pieces of insect food, the retention of the cocoon, the ability of the callows to hatch unaided, the small size of the colonies and the slight fecundity of the females in many species, coupled with many morphological characters, leave little doubt that the *Ponerinae* arose from solitary wasps. Emery, who has studied this subject (1895), believes that the immediate ancestors of the ants are
to be sought in the group of wasp-like forms represented by the Sco-
liidae, Thynnidae and Mutiliidae. He leaves the Scoliidae and Thynnidae
out of consideration on account of the un-antlike structure of their
male genitalia, and regards the Mutiliidae, or velvet ants, as having
many points of resemblance to the Ponerinae and especially to the Cera-
patchyisii. Existing Mutiliids, however, present two highly specialized
characters which would seem to eliminate them also from the hypo-
thetical ancestral series: they are, so far as known, parasitic and their
females are wingless. Emery does not attach much weight to these
considerations, for it is not from the modern Mutiliidae that he would
derive the ants, but from their more ancient, entomophagous and non-
parasitic precursors. He believes, however, that the ancestral female
ants were wingless and have re-ac-
quired wings by inheritance from the
males. For reasons to be given in the
next chapter, in connection with the
wingless females of the Dorylinae, I
am unable to accept this view and am,
therefore, inclined to regard the
apterous condition of the female
Mutiliids as a very serious obstacle
to Emery's hypothesis. Handlirsch
(1908) has shown that in seeking the
ancestors of ants it is necessary to
turn to forms in which both sexes are
winged. In this respect, and also in
being non-parasitic and in hunting
their prey under ground, the Scoliidae
seem to present a more faithful pic-
ture of the ancestral ants than the existing Mutiliidae.

That the phylogenetic relations of the Ponerinae to the four other
formicine subfamilies are capable of rather satisfactory formulation is
evident from Forel's statement (1903b) that if, as can hardly be doubted,
the Ponerinae represent the living remnants of the primitive formicine
stock, a stock in turn derived from the Scoliids, "the four other sub-

families must all be considered as specialized and more or less parallel
derivatives of the Ponerinae, i.e., as all arising from this common stock,
but without connection among themselves.

"The Dorylinae, arising directly from the Cerapachyii (a tribe of
Ponerinae), have no direct points of relationship with the three other
subfamilies, notwithstanding the convergent character presented by the pedicel of certain workers (Eciton, Anectus and the Myrmicinae).

"The Myrmicinae have no direct connection either with the Camponotinae or with the Dolichoderinae. This is evident. On the contrary, the connection of the Myrmicinae and the Ponerinae through groups like Myrmecia, the Cerapachyii, and perhaps Pseudomyrma, admits of no doubt. The structure of the Myrmicine gizzard and poison apparatus remains the same.

"The Dolichoderinae were derived directly from the Ponerinae through a gradual transformation of the gizzard and a shortening and reduction of the poison apparatus, which has become rudimental and almost replaced by the anal glands. Nevertheless, the fundamental plan of the poison apparatus remains the same as in the Ponerinae. . . . The discovery of the genus Aneuretus Emery (Fig. 140) has enabled us to put our finger on the direct derivation of the Dolichoderinae from the subfamily Ponerinae. Indeed the genus Aneuretus constitutes a true connecting link between these two subfamilies, as is shown by the fact that Emery first placed it among the Ponerinae, but later came to accept my opinion that it should be attributed to the Dolichoderinae.

"There remain the Camponotinae, of which we have been speaking. The transformation of the gizzard is explained by the intermediate forms in the inferior genera of this subfamily (Myrmotera, Dimorphomyrme, etc.). But it is very difficult to understand the complete transformation of their poison apparatus. Here the series is incomplete. Let us hope, nevertheless, that the future discovery of some extant relict of paleontological times will give us the key to this enigma, as has been done by the genus Aneuretus for the Dolichoderinae."
CHAPTER XV

THE DRIVER AND LEGIONARY ANTS

"When we see these intelligent insects dwelling together in orderly communities of many thousands of individuals, their social instincts developed to a high degree of perfection, making their marches with the regularity of disciplined troops, showing ingenuity in the crossing of difficult places, assisting each other in danger, defending their nests at the risk of their own lives, communicating information rapidly to a great distance, making a regular division of work, the whole community taking charge of the rearing of the young, and all imbued with the strongest sense of industry, each individual labouring not for itself alone but also for its fellows—we may imagine that Sir Thomas More's description of Utopia might have been applied with greater justice to such a community than to any human society. ' But in Utopia, where every man has a right to everything, they do all know that if care is taken to keep the public stores full, no private man can want anything; for among them there is no unequal distribution, so that no man is poor, nor in any necessity, and although no man has anything, yet they are all rich; for what can make a man so rich as to lead a serene and cheerful life, free from anxieties, neither apprehending want himself, nor vexed with the endless complaints of his wife? He is not afraid of the misery of his children, nor is he contriving how to raise a portion for his daughters, but is secure in this, that both he and his wife, his children and grandchildren, to as many generations as he can fancy, will all live both plentifully and happily.'"—Thomas Belt, "The Naturalist in Nicaragua," 1874.

The driver and legionary ants are the Huns and Tartars of the insect world. Their vast armies of blind but exquisitely coöperating and highly polymorphic workers, filled with an insatiable carnivorous appetite and a longing for perennial migrations, accompanied by a motley host of weird myrmecophilous camp-followers and concealing the nuptials of their strange, fertile castes, and the rearing of their young, in the inaccessible penetralia of the soil—all suggest to the observer who first comes upon these insects in some tropical thicket, the existence of a subtle, relentless and uncanny agency, directing and permeating all their activities. These marvellous insects have been studied by many travellers—for they are among the most conspicuous creatures in the tropics—but although our knowledge of them has been notably increased within recent years, we still have much to learn concerning their habits and development.

By its latest and most careful student, Professor Emery, the subfamily Dorylinae was taken in a broad sense to include not only the drivers (Dorylii) of tropical Africa and Asia, and the legionary, or visiting ants (Ecitonii) of the warmer portions of America, but also
the tribes Leptanillii, Cerapachysii, Proceratii and Acanthostichii. I have followed Forel in including the last three tribes among the Ponerinae, while admitting that they have close and important genetic

**Fig. 141.** Castes of *Dorylus kelvolus* drawn under same magnification. (Emery.)
A, Female (dichthadiigyn) in dorsal view; B, profile view of same; a, vestige of eye; b and c, vestiges of wings; d, metathoracic stigma; C, worker major; D, worker minima; E, male; F, tip of gaster of female in profile; G, tip of gaster of female *D. furcatus* in dorsal view; H, same in profile.
affinities with the Dorylinæ. Little is known of the minute Leptanillii (Fig. 149) except that they are hypogæic and probably live in small colonies. In the present chapter I shall consider only the Dorylæ and Ecitonii, treating the two groups in succession in an endeavor to bring out their similarities and differences, even at the risk of some repetition.

The Dorylinæ seem to have undergone much greater morphological differentiation in the Old than in the New World, for although Emery recognizes only three genera of Dorylæ, Dorylus, Ænictus and Ænictotogeton, the first of these covers a number of subgenera (Anomma, Dorylus s. str. Typhlopone, Dichthadia, Alaocone, Rhogmus and Shuckardia), several of which have been regarded by other authors as distinct genera. All the species of Dorylus s. lat., some two dozen in number, are confined to Africa (excluding Madagascar), southern Asia and the adjacent larger islands. The workers are completely blind, without vestiges of eyes, and vary greatly in size in the same colony, from large soldiers with toothed mandibles and excised clypeus, through intermediates to small workers with small heads and mandibles, more convex clypeus and sometimes fewer antennal joints (Fig. 62). The females (dichthadiigynes) are huge, unwieldy creatures, blind and wingless like the workers, and with a peculiar pygidium and an enormous gaster to accommodate the voluminous ovaries. The males (dorylaners) are also very large, with great eyes and ocelli, sickle-shaped mandibles and peculiar genitalia. The wings have only one cubital cell. All three of the phases have but a single joint in the pedicel of the abdomen.

Owing to the extraordinary differences between the phases, the nomenclature of the species of Dorylus has been in great confusion. At first only the male of one of the African forms, D. helvolus, was known and this was consigned by Linné to the genus Vespa (1764).
Later Fabricius erected the genus Dorylus for it and a few other species (1793). The worker of this species was first described by F. Smith sixty-five years later (1858) as Typhlopone punctata. In 1880 Trimen discovered the female which proved to be similar to a couple of insects that Gerstaecker (1872) had previously placed in the genus Dichthadia. In 1887 Emery described and figured all three phases of D. helvolus (Fig. 141), and in a later paper (1895b) gave good reasons for supposing that Typhlopone levigata F. Smith, Dichthadia glaberrima Gerst., and Dorylus klugi Emery are merely the worker, female and male respectively of a single species, which should be known as D. levigatus. These forms have all been taken in Java, Sumatra and Borneo. Recently Ern. André (1900) and Brauns (1903) have discovered the dichthadiigynes of Dorylus (Anomma) nigricans and D. (Rhogmus) fimbriatus respectively, two African species of which the males and workers were previously known. As nothing but males or workers of many of the other species have been described, it is probable that the discovery of the remaining phases will lead to considerable changes in the synonymy.

The habits of Dorylus have been observed by Smeathman, Savage (1845), Trimen (1880), Unger, Green (1900b), Forel 1890c), Perin¬guey, Emery (1905b), Marshall, Brauns (1901), Vossler (1905, 1906), Santschi (1908) and others. Most of the species are hypogæic in their habits, but those of the subgenus Anomma live a more exposed life, and one of these, A. arcens, a subspecies of nigricans, was made the subject of the earliest and most detailed observations by Savage near Cape Palmas, in West Africa. Smeathman, who first saw the armies of these ants, concluded that they had no fixed habitation, but wandered from place to place in long files. Savage confirms this supposition and describes the temporary nest in which they bivouac—a shallow depression under the roots of trees, shelving rocks or in any situation that will afford shelter. They seem to construct no chambers or galleries but merely take advantage of fissures in rocks or the crevices under stones or in the soil. Their sorties are made only on cloudy days or in the night, preferably in the latter, for they cannot endure the direct or even the reflected rays of the sun. “If they should be detained abroad till late in the morning of a sunny day by the quantity of their prey, they will construct arches over their path, of dirt agglu¬tinated by a fluid excreted from their mouth.” While running under thick grass, sticks, etc., they dispense with the arch. “In cloudy days, when on their predatory excursions, or migrating, an arch for the protection of the workers, etc., is constructed of the bodies of their largest class (soldiers). Their widely extended jaws, long slender
limbs and projecting antennae intertwining, form a sort of net-work that seems to answer well for their object. Whenever an alarm is given the arch is instantly broken, and the ants, joining others of the same class on the outside of the line, who seem to be acting as commanders, guides and scouts, run about in a furious manner in pursuit of the enemy. If the alarm should prove to be without foundation, the victory won or the danger passed, the arch is quickly renewed, and the main column marches forward as before in all the order of an intellectual military discipline.” This habit of hanging together in clusters by means of their hooked claws and slender legs is very striking. Savage saw a colony camping on a tree: “From the lower limbs (four feet high) were festoons or lines of the size of a man’s thumb, reaching to the plants and ground below, consisting entirely of these insects; others were ascending and descending upon them, thus holding free and ready communication with the lower and upper portions of this dense mass. One of these festoons I saw in the act of formation; it was a good way advanced when first observed: ant after ant coming down from above, extending their long limbs and opening wide their jaws, gradually lengthened out the living chain till it touched the broad leaf of a Canna coccinea below. It now swung to and fro in the wind, the terminal ant the meanwhile endeavoring to attach it by his jaws and legs to the leaf; not succeeding, another ant of the same class (the very largest) was seen to ascend the plant, and, fixing his hind legs with the apex of the abdomen firmly to the leaf under the vibrating column, then reaching with his fore-legs and opening wide his jaws, closed in with his companion from above, and thus completed the most curious ladder in the world.” These living chains are also made for the purpose of bridging small streams. The peculiar clustering habit was also observed by Savage during inundations when these insects resort to the same means of survival as Solenopsis geminata in tropical America. “In such an emergency they throw themselves into a rounded mass, deposit their ‘feebler folk,’ pupae and eggs in the center,
and thus float upon the water till a place of safety is reached, or the
flood subsides."

Savage describes the predatory habits of *Anomma* at considerable
length. "They will soon kill the largest animal if confined. They
attack lizards, guanas, snakes, etc., with complete success. We have
lost several animals by them—monkeys, pigs, fowl, etc. The severity
of their bite increased to great intensity by vast numbers, it is impos-
sible to conceive. We may easily believe that it would prove fatal to
almost any animal in confinement. They have been known to destroy
the *Python natalensis*, our largest serpent. When gorged with prey it
lies motionless for days; then, monster as it is, it easily becomes their
victim. . . . Their entrance into a house is soon known by the simul-
taneous and universal movement of rats, mice, lizards, Blapsiæ, Blat-
tiæ and of the numerous vermin that infest our dwellings. Not being
agreed, they cannot dwell together, which modifies in a good measure
the severity of the driver's habits, and renders their visits sometimes
(though very seldom in my view) desirable. Their ascent into our
beds we sometimes prevent by placing the feet of the bedsteads into a
basin of vinegar, or some other uncongenial fluid; this will generally
be successful if the rooms are ceiled, or the floors overhead tight;
otherwise, they will drop down upon us, bringing along with them their
noxious prey in the very act of contending for victory. They move
over the house with a good degree of order, ransacking one point after
another, till, either having found something desirable, they collect upon
it, when they may be destroyed 'en masse' by hot water; or, disap-
pointed, they abandon the premises as a barren spot, and seek some
other more promising for exploration. When they are fairly in we
give up the house, and try to await with patience their pleasure, thank-
ful, indeed, if permitted to remain within the narrow limits of our
beds or chairs. They are decidedly carnivorous in their propensities.
Fresh meat of all kinds is their favorite food; fresh oils also they love,
especially that of *Elais guiniensis*, either in the fruit or expressed.
Under my observation they pass by milk, sugar, and pastry of all
kinds, also salt meat; the latter, when boiled, they have eaten, but not
with the zest of fresh. It is an incorrect statement, often made, that
'they devour everything eatable' by us in our houses; there are many
articles which form an exception. If a heap of rubbish comes within
their route, they invariably explore it, when larvæ and insects of all
orders are borne off in triumph—especially the former." That the
hypogæic species of *Dorylus* are very fond of foraging for larvæ in
compost heaps has also been shown by Forel (1890c), Peringuey,
Emery (1905b) and Brauns (1901).
Savage has also recorded some observations on the behavior of the various castes of *Anomma* workers. The large soldiers with falcate, unidentate mandibles defend the colony or seize and rend the prey. The latter office is also performed by the intermediates, which have multidentate jaws. The small workers, however, confine themselves to carrying the brood and other burdens. "They carry their pupae and prey longitudinally under their bodies, held firmly between their mandibles and legs, the latter of which are admirably calculated by their length and slenderness for this purpose." The pupae are nude, at least in nearly all the species of Dorylii.

The large males and females have been very rarely observed in the nests. Savage saw a number of deèlated males of *Anomma nigricans* marching in file with the workers. He endeavored to divert some of them from their companions but they kept returning. This observation is of considerable interest, because the males of all other ants show no ability to return to the colony or the nest, nor do they voluntarily accompany the workers on their foraging expeditions or migrations. It is said that the males of *Dorylus* leave the nests at night as they are often found about lights, but according to Marshall and Brauns the males of *D. fimbriatus* (Fig. 142) and *brevipennis* are expelled by the workers and at once take flight. This expulsion requires several days and does not necessarily take place at night. Marshall succeeded in finding a nest of *fimbriatus* containing a female and several males. It consisted of a broad, spheroidal cavity in the earth, about 70 cm. in diameter and completely filled with a damp, friable mass of earth perforated throughout with tenuous galleries. The cavity was connected with the surface by means of five or six galleries 15 to 25 mm. in diameter. Brauns believes that such nests are excavated and occupied only during the breeding season. There seems to be only a single female to each *Dorylus* colony and she is dragged along by the workers when they migrate. Evidences of this habit are seen in the scratched ventral
surface and the absence of some of the tarsal joints in all the various dichthadiigynes of this genus that have come under the observation of myrmecologists.

Some recent observations indicate that certain species of *Eciton* and *Dorylus* may have permanent nests and that their expeditions are of two kinds, predatory and migratory. According to Vosseler (1905) *Anomma molestum* of German East Africa occupies the same nest till it has destroyed all the available prey in a locality. This requires some eight or ten days. Then the colony migrates to a new nest. He observed one of these migrations which continued without interruption for twenty-four hours. Santschi (1908) recently discovered under an oven in a dye-shop in Tunis, a large *Typhlopone fulvus* nest from which hundreds of males took flight about four o’clock in the afternoon of six consecutive days. The dyer stated that he had observed this flight at the same season for four years. “This indicates,” as Santschi remarks, “that even if the migrations of *Dorylus* are of general occurrence, they are not obligatory and that under certain circumstances these ants may inhabit the same nest for long periods of time.”

The majority of species of *Dorylus* are undoubtedly carnivorous or entomophagous, but Green (1900b) has shown that at least one species, *D. orientalis* of India, is herbivorous, that is, feeds on the bark of trees and the tubers of plants such as the potato.

The genus *Ænictus* comprises more than thirty species, the majority of which are south Asiatic, whereas most of the species of *Dorylus* are African. The workers of *Ænictus* (Fig. 143) have two joints in the abdominal pedicel although the males and females have only one. Wroughton and Forel (1890e) first identified the males of *Ænictus* (Fig. 144) as belonging to workers that had been placed in the genus *Typhlatta*, so that this latter name had to be abandoned. More recently Emery (1901h) has described and figured the female of *Æ. abeillei*. It differs from the dichthadiigynes of *Dorylus* in its smaller stature and in having a very small, pointed pygidium. The genus *Ænictogeton* is known only from a single male specimen from the Congo, on which Emery (1901h) founded the species *fossiceps*.

The habits of *Ænictus* have been observed by Wroughton (1892) and Brauns (1901). It is much less hypogæic than *Dorylus*. Of an undetermined Indian species Wroughton says: “This is the only species of worker I have ever met; but it is far from uncommon in the Dekhan. Notwithstanding the possession by the *Ænictus* worker of two knots in the pedicel like the Myrmicidae, she is distinctly ponerine in character and carries her booty exactly as do the Poneridae. She has brought the military organization to perfection. Perhaps on
account of her small size (single-handed she does not seem to be able to cope with a Pheidole, as small as or smaller than herself), she cannot afford to relax discipline, like Lobopelta, even in the moment of victory. Whatever the reason, a column of Enictus (five or six abreast), so long as it is above ground, never shows the slightest irregularity. The destination of the column is not fixed before hand by scouts, as is apparently the case with Lobopelta. It starts, and proceeds at a long slinging trot, until a likely hole, crevice or ant's nest is met with, when it pours in, until enough having entered, the remainder of the column goes on, in search of another hole. Moreover, at times, when on the march, the column at a certain point in its length, turns off at an angle, striking out a new line, and, though this manœuvre is often repeated, so far as I have seen, it never happens a few files from the head of the column, but always so that each column shall be strong enough to cope with any ant community likely to be met with. Indeed, this manœuvre seems often to be of the nature of a flanking movement. I have seen a strong column, marching on a white ant heap, detach in this way, columns right and left, and the several detached columns enter the heap from different points of the compass. The notion irresistibly forced on anyone, watching these manœuvres, is that they are either the result of preconcerted arrangement, or are carried out by word of command."

Brauns makes a similar observation on the South African species: "Enictus is not as sensitive to sunlight as Dorylus and therefore moves over ground for considerable distances, especially after rain and when twilight is setting in, or even in the bright sunshine. The files resemble those of Anomma, in miniature, of course, and are narrow, regular columns. Of several expeditions of Enictus eugenii which I have witnessed in the Orange Free State, one was noteworthy. In this instance the ants carried their brood on the under side of their bodies, just as it is borne by the Ponerinæ, especially by Leptogenys, according to my observations."
Wroughton has seen the workers of the Indian *Æ. wroughtoni* expelling the males from the nest. These males escaped on two consecutive days from "a small hole in the floor of a mudwashed verandah, and it did not appear to be a hole used for the regular traffic of the nest." It is an interesting fact that the males of the Dorylidi have nearly always been found escaping from holes in the floor or foundations of human dwellings.

In tropical and subtropical America the Dorylinæ are represented by two genera, *Eciton* and *Cheliomyrmex*. Of the former about seventy species are known, of the latter but one, *C. nortoni*. The genus *Eciton* is so homogeneous that it has been split into only two subgenera, *Acamatus* and *Eciton s. str.* It resembles the Old World *Œnicus* in having the pedicel two-jointed in the worker, and in the structure and smaller size of the female. Both worker and female usually have vestiges of eyes, consisting of a single ommatidium on each side of the head, but not connected with the brain by means of optic nerves, so that they must be useless as visual organs. In some species (*E. hamatum* (Fig. 3C and 145), *lucanoides* and *foreli*) the largest workers, or soldiers, have peculiarly elongated and hooked jaws of unknown function. The males of *Eciton* resemble those of *Dorylus* (Figs. 146 and 147d), but they are smaller, have two complete cubital cells in the wings, and their mandibles are usually longer and more falcate.

As in the case of *Dorylus*, the three phases of *Eciton* have been placed in as many different genera, the worker in *Eciton*, the female in *Pseudodichthadia* and the male in *Labidus*. Hetchko, Mayr (1886b) and W. Müller (1886) first showed that the insects which entomologists had been in the habit of calling *Labidus* were the males of *Eciton*, and Ern. André has recently found that the insect which he described as *Pseudodichthadia incerta* is the female of *E. cæcum*. Although the males of several species are known, few have been taken with their workers, and are described in the literature under independent names. In addition to that of *E. cæcum* the females of only three species are known, that of *E. opacithorax*, discovered by Schmitt in North Carolina, that of *E. carolinense* taken by Forel in the same state, and that of *E. schmitti* (Fig. 147c) taken by myself in Texas. All the phases are known only of *E. cæcum*, *opacithorax* and *schmitti*.

The genus *Cheliomyrmex* is confined to the warmest parts of America and appears to be rare except in certain localities. I have recently received a number of specimens of *C. nortoni* (Fig. 148) from British Honduras, but it is recorded also from Colombia and Mexico. Only the worker form is known, and that is remarkable for the hooked and bidentate mandibles of the soldier form, and in having only a single
joint in the pedicel like the Old World Dorylus. Eciton has a much wider distribution, ranging from North Carolina and Colorado to Patagonia, but the largest and most numerous species are found only within the tropics. According to von Ihering (1894) the prominent species do not extend southward beyond the Cebus-line in Brazil, and in Mexico they probably cease with the northern limit of the terra caliente on the eastern coast. No species are known from the West Indies.

Observations on the habits of Eciton are more numerous than those on Dorylus. They have been made in Brazil by Lund (1831), W. Müller (1886), Hetchko, Bates (1892) and von Ihering (1894), in Trinidad by Urich (1893-'94), in Guiana by Bar, in Colombia by Forel (1901h), in Nicaragua by Belt (1874), in Mexico by Sumichrast (1868) and myself (1901a), in North Carolina by Schmitt and Forel (1899c), in Texas, New Mexico and Colorado by Long and myself (1900a, 1901). All residents in the American tropics are familiar with these ants, which are variously designated as "padicours," "tuocas," "tepeguas," "soldados" army, foraging, legionary, or visiting ants. Their habits are similar to those of Dorylus and Aenictus, but there are interesting differences among the various species. Some, like the widely distributed, eyeless E. caecum, are completely hypogaeic, or subterranean, others like E. crassicorne, are subhypogaeic, or creep along under cover of the dead leaves and other vegetable detritus on the surface of the soil. Most species, however, carry out their expeditions in full view and often exposed to the sunlight (E. pradator, hamatum, pilosum, schmitti, etc.). Bates has described differences in the methods of making forays in the various Brazilian species, and some of these same species have been studied by Belt. His description of a foray of E. pradator may be regarded as typical of all the epigaeic forms: "One of the smaller species (Eciton pradator) used occasionally to visit our house, swarm over the floors and walls, searching every cranny, and driving out the cockroaches and spiders, many of which were caught, pulled, or bitten to pieces and carried off. . . I saw many large armies of this, or a closely allied species, in the forest. My attention was generally first called to them by the twittering of some small birds, belonging to several different species, that followed the ants in the woods. On approaching to ascertain the cause of the disturbance, a dense body of the ants, three or four yards wide, and so numerous as to blacken the ground, would be seen moving rapidly in one direction, examining every cranny, and underneath every fallen leaf. On the flanks, and in advance of the main body, smaller columns would be pushed out. These smaller columns would generally first flush the cockroaches,
grashoppers and spiders. The pursued insects would rapidly make
off, but many, in their confusion and terror, would bound right into
the midst of the main body of ants. . . . The greatest catch of the
ants was, however, when they got amongst some fallen brushwood.
The cockroaches, spiders and other insects, instead of running right
away, would ascend the fallen branches and remain there, whilst the
host of ants were occupying all the ground below. By
and by up would come some of the ants, following every
branch, and driving before them their prey to the ends
of the small twigs, when noth-
ing remained for them but to
leap, and they would alight in
the very midst of their foes,
with the result of being cer-
tainly caught and pulled to
pieces. Many of the spiders
would escape by hanging sus-
pended by a thread of silk
from the branches, safe from
the foes that swarmed both
above and below."

In regard to another spe-
cies, *E. hamatum*, which has
large, light-colored soldiers
with very long hook-shaped
jaws (Fig. 3C), Belt says: "I
think *Ecton hamata* does not
stay more than four or five
days in one place. I have
sometimes come across the
migratory columns. They
may easily be known by all
the common workers moving in one direction, many of them carrying
the larvæ and pupæ carefully in their jaws. Here and there one of
the light-colored officers moves backwards and forwards directing the
columns. Such a column is of enormous length, and contains many
thousands, if not millions, of individuals. I have sometimes followed
them up for two or three hundred yards without getting to the end."

Belt succeeded in finding the temporary nest of an army of these
ants: "They make their temporary habitation in hollow trees, and sometimes underneath large fallen trunks that offer suitable hollows. A nest that I came across in the latter situation was open at one side. The ants were clustered together in a dense mass, like a great swarm of bees, hanging from the roof, but reaching to the ground below.

![Diagram of ant castes]

**Fig. 147. Castes of *Acamatus schmitti*; drawn under the same magnification.** (Original.) a, Worker; b, young female (dichthadiigyne); c, old female with enlarged ovaries, in the act of ovipositing; the anterior portion of the body is covered with mites (*Cilibano kirticoma*); d, male.

Their innumerable long legs looked like brown threads binding together the mass, which must have been at least a cubic yard in bulk, and contained hundreds of thousands of individuals, although many columns were outside, some bringing in the pupae of ants, others the legs and
THE DRIVER AND LEGIONARY ANTS

359
dissected bodies of insects. I was surprised to see in this living nest tubular passages leading down to the center of the mass, kept open just as if it had been formed of inorganic material. Down these holes the ants who were bringing in booty passed with their prey. I thrust a long stick down to the center of the cluster and brought out clinging to it many ants holding larvæ and pupæ which were probably kept warm by the crowding together of the ants. Besides the common dark-colored workers and light-colored officers, I saw there many still larger individuals with enormous jaws. These they go about holding wide open in a threatening manner, and I found, contrary to my expectation, that they could give a severe bite with them, and that it was difficult to withdraw the jaws from the skin.” These observations recall the clustering habit of the African *Anomma* as described by Savage, a habit which seems to be common to a number of Ecitons. I have seen it in *E. sumichrasti*, *schmitti* and *opacitorax*.

Excellent observations on the Mexican species were made by Sumichrast (1868) from whom I quote the following: “The most characteristic trait of the ants of this genus consists in the inroads or migrations which they undertake at undetermined epochs, but in relation, it appears to me, with the atmospheric changes. What traveller, passing over the tierra caliente, has not encountered the phalanxes of *tepeguas* upon the path of the primitive forests? What inhabitant of these countries has not, at least once, been unpleasantly torn from the arms of sleep by the invasion of his domicile by a black army of *soldados*?

“The purpose of these expeditions of *Eciton* is, without doubt, multiple, for the circumstances that these sorties, as one may call them, coincide more often with a change of season, hardly permits one to consider them exclusively as simple razzias undertaken at the expense of other insects. One can believe them to be sometimes expeditions of pillage, sometimes changes of domicile, veritable migrations. I believe that the following facts, which passed under my observation at the hacienda of Potrero, near Cordova, at the end of September of the past year, show proof of this. During about three months, a colony of *soldados* [*E. prædator*] had been domiciled under a little bridge formed by some rough trunks of trees bound together by a heap of vegetable mould. The continued excavation which engaged the ants on the under side of the bridge, threatened to cause the disappearance of all the earth which covered the flooring. Every day I watched these labors in the hope of discovering at last the interior of the formicary, but this hope was disappointed, for on the thirtieth of September, in the morning, I found the nest completely abandoned. Its inhabitants
did not return until about four months later, and this reappearance, which was of short duration, was followed almost immediately by a visit which these insects made to my habitation, on the twelfth of February, in the night. I have similar observations in regard to another species [E. foreli] and I think I can conclude that the Eciton, at least the two species in question, are in the habit of forming temporary nests or habitations for themselves, which they abandon from time to time, distinct from those where are found the reproducing sexes, and where is the place of the growth of the larvae and their metamorphoses.

"The nests are found in cool, shady places in great woods or

![Ant diagram](image)

**Fig. 148. Chelomyrmex nortoni** of Central America. (Original.) *a*, Soldier; *b*, head of same from above; *c*, worker media; *d*, head of same; *e*, worker minima; *f*, tarsus to show toothed claws.

among rocks and are tunneled more often at the foot of, and among the roots of, old trees. The earth or the fragments of wood, which the ants cast out, sometimes form a dome above, but at times only an irregular opening indicates the existence of a colony.

"The extraction of one such nest, beside the difficulty of penetrating to the center through the entangled roots of the tree, is not an easy thing. For at the first alarm, the *soldados* sally forth in myriads and attack the aggressor with fury.
"Besides the changes of domicile, which are so generally in relation with the atmospheric variation as to serve as a rule to the inhabitants of the country, the Eciton devotes itself every season to excursions for pillage, destined to supply the larvæ with nourishment. Nothing is more curious than these battues executed by an entire population. Over an extent of many square meters, the soil literally disappears under the agglomeration of their little black bodies. No apparent order reigns in the mass of the army, but behind this many lines or columns of laggards press on to rejoin it. The insects concealed under the dry leaves and the trunks of fallen trees fly on all sides before this phalanx of pitiless hunters, but, blinded by fright, they fall back among their persecutors and are seized and despatched in the twinkling of an eye. Grasshoppers, in spite of the advantage given them by their power of leaping, hardly escape any more easily. As soon as they are taken, the Eciton tears off the hinder feet and all resistance becomes useless.

"If some heap of dry leaves, some tree or bush presents itself upon the path of the columns, a party of hunters separates itself from the mass of the army, and, after having ransacked it in every part, retakes its place in the advance guard. I have observed, sometimes, that little flies, of the family Syrphides, follow, flying above them, the column of Eciton, but cannot give any account of the evolution of these Diptera.¹

"It is probable that the Ecitons attack the larvæ and pupæ of other ants to make them serve as food for the nourishment of their own larvæ or for sustaining themselves. I surprised, one day, in the first hours of a sombre and rainy morning, a considerable assemblage of tecpegus [E. foreli] fastened one upon another like a swarm of bees and entirely still. Having dispersed them I perceived in the place which they covered with their bodies a quantity of little white larvæ, brought away doubtless, from the nests of some Myrmicidæ. At another time I witnessed the pillage of a nursery of other ants by a quite enormous band of workers minores [E. hamatum]; alarmed by the reprisals which I made on their account, they took to flight, some of them carrying between their mandibles as many as three larvæ at once. Among the Mexican species of the genus Eciton, that to which they apply more specially the name of soldados [E. predator], may be noticed for the habit which it has of invading the habitations of the country. These visits ordinarily take place at the beginning of the

¹ These "Syrphids" probably belong to the Conopid genus Stylogaster, of which Townsend (1897) found three species hovering over troops of Eciton in the lowlands of the Rio Naubla, in the state of Vera Cruz, Mexico.
rainy season, and almost always during the night. The expeditionary army penetrates the habitation which it proposes to visit at many points at once, and for this purpose divides itself into many columns of attack. One is apprised very soon of their arrival by the household commotion among the parasitic animals. The rats (*Mus tectorum*), the spiders, the cockroaches (*Periplaneta australasiae* Fab.), abandon their retreats and seek to escape from the attacks of the ants by flight.

![Ants diagram](image)

**Fig. 149.** Castes of *Leptanilla*. *a*, *L. minuscula*, male; *b*, head; *c*, copulatory organs of same. (Santschi.) *d*, *L. revelieri*, dichthadiiform female, dorsal view; *e*, same in profile; *f*, worker. (Emery.)

Alimentary substances the *soldados* hold in no esteem, and they disdain even sugary things, to which the ants in general are so partial. Dead insects even do not seem to invite their covetousness. It has often happened to me to be obliged to abandon my abode, without having time to carry away my collection, to which they have never done the least injury. The trouble occasioned by these insects in entering houses is more than compensated by the expeditious manner in which they purge them of vermin, and in this view their visit is an actual benefit."
Bates appears to have been the first to observe the habits of the hypogæic *E. cæcum*. The armies of this ant move "wholly under covered roads, the ants constructing them gradually but rapidly as they advance. The column of foragers pushes forward step by step under the protection of these covered passages, through the thickets, and on reaching a rotting log, or other promising hunting ground, pour into the crevices in search of booty. I have traced their arcades, occasionally for a distance of one or two hundred yards; the grains of earth are taken from the soil over which the column is passing, and are fitted together without cement. It is this last mentioned feature that distinguishes them from the similar covered roads made by Termites, who use their glutinous saliva to cement the grains together. The blind Ecitons, working in numbers, build up simultaneously the sides of their convex arcades, and contrive in a surprising manner, to approximate them and fit in the keystones without letting the loose, uncemented structure fall to pieces."

To the foregoing observations of other authors I may add some of my own on the Texan species, dwelling on certain points not noticed in the above descriptions. The workers of all the Ecitons I have seen have a peculiar nauseating, fecal odor, which is also found in a few carnivorous species of *Pheidole* (*Ph. antillensis* and *ecitonodora*). The males and females, however, have a sweet and pleasant odor, which probably accounts for the strong attraction they have for the workers, for in the living colonies the latter always form a mass enveloping the sexual phases. The males are produced in great numbers. Towards nightfall on one occasion I witnessed the escape of the males of *E. schmitti* from a nest in the dry limestone soil near Austin. Throughout the spring and summer months these insects fly to the lights at night in great numbers. There is only a single mother queen to a colony, but the workers readily adopt queens from other colonies of the same species. I have never seen these females dragged along during the expeditions, but it is probable that this is the case. Owing to their smaller size they are undoubtedly more easily moved from place to place than the huge *Dorylus* queens, and this may account for the fact that none of the numerous females of *E. schmitti* and *opacithorax* which I have seen was mutilated or abraded. The eggs are very small and exceedingly numerous. The worker larvæ are slender, and the pupæ are never enclosed in cocoons.

None of the Texan Ecitons forms very large or conspicuous armies though they hunt in files like the large tropical species. Their food consists very largely of the larvæ and pupæ of other ants. On many occasions I have seen *E. schmitti, opacithorax* and *crassicorne* plunder-
ing formicaries and carrying the brood to their temporary nests. This habit is also well-known in the tropical species and is expressly mentioned by nearly all the authors above cited. The kidnapped larvæ and pupæ are stored for a time and then eaten like any other insect prey. All the species I have seen, with the exception of *E. cæcum*, are exclusively entomophagous.

*E. cæcum* is, as Bates observed, exclusively hypogæic in its habits and never appears in the open, but tunnels along just beneath the surface of the soil or under clusters of stones. I have never been able to find even its temporary nests, although it is one of the most abundant ants in central Texas. It may often be found ferreting out larvæ in or under old logs, under cow-dung, or the dead bodies of cats and dogs. Sometimes on these subterranean forays, it chances to enter the galleries of other ants and then a fierce battle ensues. On one occasion I found a number of dead *E. cæcum* workers on the refuse heap of a large nest of the Texan harvester (*Pogonomyrmex molefaciens*) and on examining the workers of this colony, which were running about on the denuded nest area, I found each of them carrying the head of an *E. cæcum* immovably attached by the closed mandibles to the antennal scape. This told the story of a fierce subterranean conflict in which the harvesters had come off victorious, though compelled to carry about the detached heads of their assailants. *E. cæcum* is also very fond of certain vegetable substance, especially of nuts. I have sometimes attracted and trapped great numbers of workers by burying a few walnut or pecan kernels in the lawns near Austin.

The *Ecitons* carry their larvæ and pupæ under their bodies like the Doryllii and the Ponerinæ. They move very rapidly and orient themselves with surprising alacrity for animals that are quite blind and have to rely entirely on their contact-odor sense. This was observed by Forel (1899c) in *E. carolinense* and I have noticed it in a number of species. Forel says: "Throw a handful of Ecitons with their larvæ on a spot with which they are absolutely unacquainted. In such circumstances other ants scatter about in disorder and require an hour or more (sometimes less) to assemble and bring their brood together and especially to become acquainted with their environment, but the Ecitons do this at once. In five minutes they have formed distinct files which no longer disintegrate. They carry their larvæ and pupæ, marching in a straight path, palpating the ground with their antennæ and exploring all the holes and crevices till they find a suitable retreat and enter it with surprising order and promptitude. The workers follow one another as if at word of command, and in a very short time all are in safety."
In captivity Ecitons are remarkably restless, at least at certain times during the day. Part of a fine colony of E. schmitti which I kept some years ago, exhibited this restlessness in a striking and ludicrous manner. The colony was at first confined in a tall glass jar on a square board surrounded by a water moat. The ants kept going up and down the inside of the jar in files for many hours. Finally I removed the lid. The file at once advanced over the rim and descended on the outer surface till it reached the circular base of the jar where it turned to the left at a right angle and proceeded completely around the base till it met the column at the turning point. To my surprise it kept right on over the same circumference which was long enough to accommodate all the individuals. They continued going round and round the circular base of the jar, following one another like so many sheep, without the slightest inkling that they were perpetually traversing the same path. They behaved exactly as they do on one of their predatory expeditions. They kept up this gyration for forty-six hours before the column broke and spread over the board to the water's edge and clustered in the manner so characteristic of this and the allied species (E. opacithorax, sumichrasti, etc.). I have never seen a more astonishing exhibition of the limitations of instinct. For nearly two whole days these blind creatures, so dependent on the contact-odor sense of their antennae, kept palpating their uniformly smooth, odoriferous trail and the advancing bodies of the ants immediately preceding them, without perceiving that they were making no progress but only wasting their energies, till the spell was finally broken by some more venturesome members of the colony.  

In conclusion attention may be called to certain problems that are suggested by our present meager knowledge of the Dorylinæ. Besides the investigation of the species with a view to obtaining all the phases and thus clearing up the taxonomy, we are in great need of a fuller insight into the domestic economy of these singular insects. As yet no one has been able to observe the methods of rearing the brood and the mating of the sexual forms, which must, of course, take place without a true marriage flight. Nor has it been possible to plot the

---

1 I have found a remarkable observation of the same kind recorded by Fabre in the sixth volume of his incomparable "Souvenirs Entomologiques." He describes an army of caterpillars of the "processionaire du pin" (Cnethocampa pityocampa) going round and round the outside of a large vase 1.35 m. in circumference for seven days! During this period the caterpillars were on the march 84 hours altogether, stopping to rest on their path only when overtaken by the cold of the night, and not actually deviating till the eighth day. Fabre estimates that the caterpillars crawled around the vase 335 times. In this case the insects were not guided by contact-odor like the Ecitons, but by the silken thread spun by each individual over the surface traversed.
territory covered by the annual migrations of any of the species, to determine the time spent in the bivouacs or in the presumably more permanent breeding nests, or the precise relations which these nomadic ants bear to their myrmecophiles. Curiously enough, these seem to be more numerous both in species and in individuals than the myrmecophiles of the non-migratory ants of other subfamilies.

Another problem of more theoretical interest is presented by the dichthadiigynes, which are so unlike typical female ants. To Emery these forms seemed to indicate that the females of ancestral ants were wingless and that the alate condition represented a secondary inheritance from the male sex within comparatively recent times. He was confirmed in this opinion by his discovery of apterous dichthadiiform females in the very primitive species of Acanthostichus and Parasycia. There is, however, another possibility, which seems not to have been considered. The occurrence in certain Ponerinæ (Leptogenys and probably also in Diacamma and Champsomyrmex) of gynæcoid workers that have supplanted the winged females, suggests that the dichthadiigynes may also be highly modified gynæcoids. It must be admitted that this view is beset with serious difficulties. First, we must suppose, on such a hypothesis, that the gynæcoids are phylogenetically fixed forms of very ancient origin, since in Ænictus and Eciton they are quite unlike the existing workers in having only a single joint in the pedicel. Hence they cannot be compared directly with the gynæcoids of Formica, which are merely workers that usurp the queen's place and function during the ontogenetic development of the colony. Second, Emery has figured in the female Doryl us hevolus minute “rudiments of wings” and a conformation of the thoracic sclerites suggestive of the typical winged form. If he has correctly interpreted these various structures we are bound to suppose that the dichthadiigyne is a highly degenerate, alate female and both his hypothesis and the one I have suggested must be abandoned. The females of Eciton and Ænictus, however, certainly have a much simpler and more worker-like thorax, and I am by no means certain that Emery has correctly interpreted the conditions in Dorylus. Too few female Dorylinæ are known at the present time to enable us to decide this question, which must be left to future students.
CHAPTER XVI

THE HARVESTING ANTS

"Verrit tetra boum gratos formica labores
Et caveis fruges turba nigella locat,
Quamlibet exiguo videatur pectore, sollers,
Quo legat hibernæ commoda grana fami.
Hanc juste famulam nigri jam dixeris Orci,
Quam color et factum composuit domino.
Namque ut Plutonis rapta est Proserpina curru,
Sic formicarum verritur ore Ceres."

—"Anthologia Latina," 104.

The two preceding chapters contain an account of the primitive and carnivorous species which represent the savage and hunting stages in the development of ant societies. In this and the following chapter I shall endeavor to sketch the habits of certain ants that have largely abandoned entomophagy and have taken to a benigner, vegetarian diet. I have called attention (p. 176) to the fact that abundance of food is necessary to the maintenance of social life and that the fullest expansion and development of such life is possible only to animals that have learned to draw on the vegetable kingdom for a large part of their sustenance. Hence we are not surprised to find that in warm, arid countries, where, during many months of the year, insect food is either very scarce, or where the competition for food among ants and other animals is very keen, a number of the former have become confirmed vegetarians as their last resource in the struggle for existence. Under such circumstances the seeds of herbaceous plants obviously furnish the most accessible and nutritious food. The harvesting habit thus developed is only one of many indications of an ever-increasing dependence of ants on the vegetation, a subject which will occupy us in several of the succeeding chapters. Even a few of the eminently terrestrial and carnivorous Ponerinæ and Dorylinæ, as we have seen, show indications of vegetarianism. The three higher subfamilies, however, have a much more varied and unstable diet, with an increasing tendency to imbibe plant-juices, either directly from the floral and extra-floral nectaries, or indirectly after they have passed through the bodies of aphids and other Homoptera, or to feed on fungi, seeds or fruit. Among these subfamilies certain tribes and genera have become so addicted to specialized diets as to be of unusual interest.

It is easy to conceive of the origin and development of the graniv-
rous habit, for a carnivorous ant, used to collecting insects and crushing their hard integuments with its powerful mandibles, is already fully equipped with the apparatus necessary for dealing with seeds. And although many harvesting ants have more convex mandibles and blunter teeth than carnivorous species, it is impossible merely from examination of the mouthparts to ascertain whether an ant is granivorous or not. It may be doubted, furthermore, whether there is such a thing as a purely granivorous ant. There is clearly no advantage in an ant's losing its taste for the succulent tissues of other insects, although there is an obvious advantage in its supplementing this diet with seeds during certain seasons of the year. Indeed, many, if not all, of the species mentioned in the following pages are quite as eager to secure insect food as seeds, especially while they are raising their brood, and unquestionably many ants that are supposed to be exclusively predaceous will, on closer study, be found to be more or less granivorous.

![Worker of the Indian harvester, Holomyrmex scabriceps. (Bingham.)](image)

If the foregoing considerations are correct, we should expect to find the harvesting ants arising sporadically and often in distantly related genera and species. This appears to be the case, for although these insects belong to a single subfamily, the Myrmicinæ, they occur in at least three of the tribes, the Solenopsidii, the Tetramorii and the Myrmicici. Among the Solenopsidii, however, only a single species of *Solenopsis* (*S. geminata*) is known to be granivorous, and only a portion of the enormous genus *Pheidole* comprises such species. The small genus *Pheidologeton* is also granivorous. Among the Tetramorii, *Tetramorium cespitum* is only rarely and sporadically granivorous, and this is perhaps true of a certain number of species of *Meranoplus*. Among the Myrmicici, *Messor* and *Ischnomyrmex* comprise harvesting species, whereas the species of the allied *Stenamma* and *Aphaenogaster* are predaceous. *Holomyrmex*, now regarded as a subgenus of *Monomorium*, *Pogonomyrmex*, *Oxyopomyrmex* (with its subgenus *Goniomma*), which are closely related to *Messor*, and probably also *Ocy- myrmex*, are highly granivorous.

The earliest of all recorded myrmecological observations undoubt-
edly relate to two harvesting ants, *Messor barbarus* and *structor*. The former occurs throughout the Mediterranean littoral of Europe, Asia
and Africa and presents in the warmer portions of its range, which is now known to extend southward to the Cape of Good Hope, a bewildering complex of subspecies and varieties. *M. structor* seems to be absent in Africa, but ranges through southern Europe and Asia as far as Java. The ancient peoples were undoubtedly familiar with the granivorous habits of these ants and probably also with those of a third species, *M. arenarius*, inhabiting the deserts of North Africa. To them refer the many allusions in the writings of Solomon and the Mishna, and of the classic writers Hesiod, Æsop, Ælian, Plutarch, Orus Apollo, Plautus, Horace, Virgil, Ovid and Pliny. Mediaeval authors, like Aldrovandus and Bacon, merely repeated the accounts of the ancients. The entomologists of the early portion of the last century, however, failing to find any harvesters among the ants of temperate Europe, began to doubt, or even to deny their existence. This skepticism is much in evidence in the works of Gould (1747), Latreille (1802), Huber (1810), Gené (1845), Kirby and Spence (1846), and Blanchard (1871). The subject was taken up, however, by Sykes (1829) and Jerdon (1851) in India, by Moggridge (1873) in southern France and by Buckley (1861a), Lincecum (1862), McCook (1877a, 1879c), Morris (1880) and Mrs. Treat (1878) in the United States. These authors succeeded in showing that the ancient accounts were correct. For a detailed history of the subject and for extracts from the various authors of antiquity, the reader is referred to Bochart's "Hierozoicon" and to the works of Moggridge and McCook. Here I shall confine myself to the recent observations, considering first, in all brevity, the Old World harvesters and concluding with a somewhat fuller account of our American species.

Sykes was the first of modern observers to describe the storing of seeds by ants. He saw *Pheidole providens* at Poona, India, bringing grass seeds, which had been moistened by the rains, out of the nests and exposing them to the sun to dry. Jerdon confirmed these observations on *Ph. providens, Ph. diffusa* and *Solenopsis rufa*, a subspecies of the tropicopolitan *S. geminata*. He saw the ants not only drying their piles of seeds but also collecting them from different plants and storing
them in the nests, although he was unable to ascertain the purpose of these activities. All doubt was removed, however, by Moggridge's excellent work, which was carried out at Mentone in 1871 and 1872 on *Messor barbarus* and *structor*, the very species that had been observed by the ancients. He opened the nests of these ants and studied their granaries, which are flat chambers connected by galleries and irregularly scattered over an area sometimes nearly 2 m. in diameter and to a depth of about 35 cm. in the soil. He saw the workers collect the seeds from the ground or even pluck them from the plants, remove

![Image](https://example.com/image)

**Fig. 152.** Nest of *Messor pergandei* in Arizona desert, in a spot where the alkali prevents the growth of nearly all plants except *Suada*. The dark material at the border of the crater is seeds and chaff rejected by the ants. In more favorable spots in the desert the seeds produce the ring of plants seen in Fig. 154. (Original.)

their envelopes and cast the chaff and empty capsules on the kitchen middens outside the nest. During the winter a nest of the average size may contain as much as a quarter of a liter of seeds. Among the stores in the granaries he was able to recognize seeds belonging to at least eighteen different families of plants. In confirmation of Pliny and Plutarch he maintains that the ants bite off the radicle to prevent the seeds from germinating, a process which is also arrested by bring-
ing them when damp with the rain to the surface, spreading them in
the sun and then carrying them back to the granaries. Some of the
seeds sprout, nevertheless, either in the nests or on the kitchen middens.
"As the ants often travel some distance from their nest in search of
food, they may certainly be said to be, in a limited sense, agents in the

dispersal of seeds, for they not unfrequently drop seeds by the way,
which they fail to find again, and also among the refuse matter which
forms the kitchen midden in front of their entrances, a few sound
seeds are often present, and these in many instances grow up and form
a little colony of strange plants. This presence of seedlings foreign
to the wild grounds in which the nest is usually placed, is quite a fea-
ture where there are old established colonies of *Attta barbara*, where
young plants of fumitory, chickweed, cranesbill, *Arabis Thaleana*, etc.,
may be seen on or near the rubbish heap. . . . One can imagine cases
in which the ants during the lapse of long periods of time might pass
the seeds of plants from colony to colony, until after a journey of many
stages, the descendants of the ant-borne seedlings might find them-

\[\text{Fig. 153. Nest of *Messor pergandei* in the Arizona desert, showing circle of chaff. (Original.)}\]
selves transported to places far removed from the original home of their immediate ancestors." Moggridge also observed that not only *Pheidole pallidula* but also *P. megacephala*, an Old World ant which now overruns the warm portions of both hemispheres, are harvesting ants.

The more recent investigations of Forel (1894a), Ern. André (1881e), Emery (1899a), Lameere (1902), Escherich (1906), and others have confirmed Moggridge's observations. Forel and Lameere have studied the habits of *M. barbarus* and *arenarius* in the deserts of North Africa. According to Forel, the latter species, which is the most powerful insect of that region, excavates enormous nests over an area 7–10 m. in diameter and to a depth of 2 m., with several openings,

![Image](image.png)

**Fig. 154.** Crater of *Messor pergandei* in the Arizona desert, showing ring of herbaceous plants that have sprung up from discarded seeds in the chaff circle. (See Figs. 152 and 153.) (Original.)

each surmounted by a crescentic crater sometimes 50 cm. broad and made of coarse sand pellets. The granaries are flat chambers about 15 cm. in diameter and 1.5 cm. high, connected by galleries with one another and with the surface. Lameere believes that the area occupied by single colonies of this ant is even greater than that given by Forel. He also describes the harvesting habits of another *Messor* (*M. caviceps*)
and of two species of *Holcomyrmex* (*H. lameerei* and *chobauti*) peculiar to the sandy and extremely barren portions of the desert. *H. chobauti* resembles *M. caviceps* in having a pronounced cavity on the under side of the head. Of the former species he says: "I saw the long files of workers carrying seeds of the 'drin' (*Aristida pungens*) to their nests. The seed of this plant has the form of a slender spindle surmounted by a long, trifid and plumose spine. The ant rides this grain as a witch rides her broom; she carries it beneath her, holding it firmly by the small end in her mandibles with the end of the grain fitting into the notch under her head. This interesting character, which this ant shares with *M. caviceps*, may be regarded as an adapta-

![Image](image-url)

**Fig. 155.** Deēlated female, male, and workers of *Ischnomyrmex cockerelli*, ×2. (Original.)

...
easier than to find others. I am surprised to learn that they have not attracted the attention of other observers. Especially remarkable is the tiny crater, which has the form of a cone [Fig. 151] hardly more than 4–5 cm. in diameter and 2.5–3 cm. high. The circumference of its funnel-shaped top is 3–4 cm. across and its margin is always perfectly circular and entire, except in nests in process of construction,

Fig. 156. Crater of *Ischnomyrmex cockerelli* in Arizona desert, showing the large rough entrance. (Original.)

when it is at first semilunar like the very small nests of *Messor arenarius*. At the bottom of the funnel the small entrance is found at a depth of 2–3 cm. It is horizontal, attaining a length of 5 cm., a breadth of 1 cm. and a height of 5 cm. In this first chamber the pupae are kept for the purpose of enjoying the warmth, and here I have found a number of workers and winged females. Thence the gallery continues to descend to a depth of 15–20 cm. and finally opens into two or three chambers of the same dimensions as the first. These contain pupae and an ample provision of very small seeds. This ant is therefore granivorous. I surprised a few of the workers entering the nest with seeds in their mandibles, but they go out foraging singly and not in files like *Messor* and other genera. They are very slow in their move-
ments and are very apt to stop motionless at the least alarm. Day or night one or two of the workers may be seen on the outer surface of the crater, scarcely moving unless molested, but when disturbed they hurriedly retreat into the nest to spread the alarm. Their habits are rather nocturnal. If a light is brought near the nest when a worker is on the point of leaving it with a grain of sand, she hurriedly backs into the entrance and there stops, closing it perfectly with her burden. If the observer remains very quiet, she eventually comes forth and deposits her load on the slope of the crater. There are scarcely more than thirty individuals in a nest. I have found this species only in a very circumscribed area, south of Kairouan, on compact, sandy soil in

Fig. 157. Male, virgin female, and worker of the Texan harvester, *Pogonomyrmex molefaciens*, nearly twice natural size. (Original.)

which the chambers are easily excavated." I quote this description at length and reproduce Santschi's figure on account of the remarkable resemblance of the *Oxyopomyrmex* nest to those of the fungus-growing *Trachymyrmex* to be described in the next chapter. The genus *Oxyopomyrmex* is represented by several species, some of which have been placed in a subgenus, *Goniomma*. One of these, *G. hispanica* of southwestern Europe, is also a harvesting ant, according to Ern. André (1881e).

To the old observations of Sykes and Jerdon on harvesting ants in India, Wroughton (1892) has added accounts of the habits of *Holcomyrmex scabriceps* (Fig. 150) and *Pheidologeton ocellifer*. Of the former he says: "In a community of this genus there are workers of all sizes. *Holcomyrmex* is, as a rule, a most industrious harvester, and
sets about her work in a most methodical way. The workers never forage individually for grain, but all take the same road and all return by the same road; the result being that every nest is the starting point of one, or often of several, well-beaten tracks, cleared of vegetation and obstacles, and extending sometimes 100 feet and more in length. How these tracks are engineered I have never discovered, but am pretty certain that they are made gradually; a commencement at hazard is made, and then, as the country immediately adjoining the road is exploited, the road itself is carried forward. Where one of these roads crosses a sheet of bare rock, it is there marked in white; I can only presume that this is the result of some chemical action, set up by the formic acid exuding from the ants; this acid, though too small in quantity in a single ant to cause any appreciable effect, might easily become sufficient when thousands of ants are continually passing, backwards and forwards, all day long. Holcomyrmex brings home the grain unthreshed, and, in this form, it is taken into the nest, from whence the chaff is brought out and deposited around the entrance, or, where the force of a prevalent wind is felt, on a heap to leeward." Wroughton does not believe that H. scabriceps, which Rothney regards as the harvester par excellence of India, compares with Pheidole as a harvester.

The following note on Pheidologeton ocellifer, an ant with highly polymorphic workers, was communicated to Wroughton by Aitken:

"The entrance (of the nest) which is strewn with chaff, is large, but the passage soon splits up, and I failed to follow it. I turned up a lot of pupae, however, close to the surface. The community is enormous and industrious, collecting large seeds of trees or plants, which it takes a dozen to carry; these are taken in and the husks are thrown out afterwards. If P. ocellifer meets a white ant or any other insect, she collects it in the same way. The smaller soldiers often laid a jaw to a burden, but the giants appear to do nothing." Wroughton confirms this observation on the carnivorous tastes of Pheidologeton. He found also that the huge soldiers neither dig nor defend the nest and that they are less pugnacious than the smaller workers. It is probable that they function as seed crushers like the soldiers of the allied genus Pheidole.

Armit (1878), Roth (1885) and Tryon (1900) have published a few observations on harvesting ants in another arid or semi-arid region, Australia. These are Pheidole longiceps, Meranoplus dimidiatus and M. diversus. Tryon calls attention to the seed-distributing habits of the Pheidole in the following passages: "That this Brisbane harvesting ant, also, is an important agent in the local dispersion of plants—especially weeds—and is connected with their sudden appearance on heaps of soil excavated from a depth, is sufficiently demonstrated in the fol-
following observations: The ants of one nest were noticed to be harvesting the seeds of *Portulacca oleracea* Linn. and of *Amaranthus viridis* Linn.—both common weeds—and growing at a comparative distance from the nest. These seeds had remained stored up in their nest for some time, when rain suddenly came on, and under its influence the seeds—especially those of the latter plant—commenced to germinate. Of those which had already thrown out a radical, this was bitten off and brought to the surface; some of these seeds were also gnawn into, and the ruptured black perisperm—containing more or less food substance—in like manner rejected. Other seeds, which had swollen in response to moisture, were carried up for the purpose of being dried and re-stored. In the midst of these operations, however, rain came on again, and the ants retired, leaving seeds on the surface. These immediately germinated, and a small patch of *Amaranthus* grew up, making the site of what was before a nest of harvesting ants, quite isolated among plants of different character. On a second occasion

![Large mound nest (modified crater) of *Pogonomyrmex molefaciens* with entrance in depression at summit. (Original.)](image)

a nest, in which much seed of *Eleusine indica* was known to have been harvested some months since, was dug up. Some of the grass seed selected from the nest was afterwards sown; also some of the earth from the nest which was known to contain both seeds of this plant and of another species of *Amaranthus*. In both cases the sowings were made in situations remote from such places in which any of these plants were already growing, and, as a result, in the course of time, numerous
plants of both *Eleusine indica* and this second *Amaranthus* sprang up in these new localities, where they continued to flourish."

The genus *Meranoplus*, to which some of the observations of the Australian naturalists mentioned above refer, is related to *Tetramorium*, the type of which is the pavement ant, *T. cespitum*, of Europe and of our Atlantic States. It is, therefore, interesting to note that this ant occasionally stores seeds in the chambers of its nests. This has been observed by Janet in Europe, and I have also seen the chambers of a colony of this ant near Mamaroneck, N. Y., filled with grass seeds. In this case we have apparently either an evanescent or an incipient habit.

Turning to America we find a goodly array of harvesting ants, nearly all members of genera we have already considered and nearly all inhabitants, like the Old World harvesters, of warm and exceptionally arid regions. Our species are the following:

1. Solenopsidii: *Solenopsis geminata*, represented by the typical form of the species and several varieties; and probably no less than twenty species of *Pheidole*.

2. Myrmicii: Five species of *Messor*, two of *Ischomyrmex* and some thirty species of *Pogonomyrmex*, which are about equally divided between North and South America. This last genus may be regarded, perhaps, as the New World representative of the African *Ocyomyrme*.

*Solenopsis geminata*, the "fire-ant," is armed, as its popular name indicates, with a formidable sting which it uses on the slightest provocation. Its colonies are populous and so numerous that it may be said to be in possession of a large portion of the soil of the American tropics. The nests are made under stones or consist of numerous untidy craters, fused and scattered about irregularly. It is difficult to say whether this ant is more granivorous than entomophagous, for it attacks and eats almost everything that comes in its way. It will even attend coccids on the roots of grasses and occasionally do some damage to soft fruits, like strawberries or germinating garden seeds. During the summer and autumn months its shallow nest-chambers contain quantities of carefully husked seeds, which usually belong to species of *Euphorbia, Croton, Plantago* and other herbaceous plants. It seems to be less fond of grass seeds. I have already called attention to the preference of this ant for nesting in loamy soil along streams and to its remarkable habit of floating about in balls when its nests are inundated (p. 146).

Of the numerous harvesting species of *Pheidole*, only one, *Ph. pilifera*, is common in the Northern States. It has been studied by Morris, McCook and Mrs. Treat. *Ph. vinelandica* and *tysoni*, which range as
far north as New Jersey and New York, have similar habits. I have found a considerable number of harvesters among the species of the dry deserts of Colorado, Texas, New Mexico, Arizona and Mexico (Ph. coloradensis, instabilis, ceras, sitarches, soritis, vaslitti, carbonaria, etc.). Though far more peaceable, these ants often resemble S. geminata in their nesting habits. Some of them at least (Ph. instabilis, sitarches) are certainly unable to prevent the germination of seeds in their granaries during the wet weather. I infer, therefore, that they do not bite off the radicle as has been claimed for the European Messor and the Australian Pheidole. The large-headed soldiers of the numer-

![Image](Fig. 159. Disk of Pogonomyrmex rugosus in the Arizona desert. (Original.)

osaic carnivorous species of Pheidole function as trenchers and carve the tough insects brought into the nest by the small, feeble workers, and thus make the soft tissues accessible to the community. Among the seed-storing species, however, the soldiers have become the official nut-crackers of the colony. I have seen the workers of some of the species (instabilis and sitarches) feeding the larvæ directly with pieces of crushed seeds.

More striking are the habits of our largest harvesters belonging to the genera Messor, Ischnomyrmex and Pogonomyrmex. With the
ANTS

single exception of the Florida harvester (*P. badius*), all of these ants are confined to the dry plains and deserts of the Western and Southwestern States, where, just as in the deserts of the Old World, insect food is scarce, at least during many months of the year.

Of the five species of Messor, *M. pergandei, carbonarius, andrei, julianus* and *stoddardi*, which are confined to the extreme southwestern portion of the United States and northwestern Mexico, I have been able to study only the first in a living condition. It is a shining, jet-black ant of moderate size, very common in the deserts of southern Arizona and the Mojave Desert of California. The workers, which form populous colonies, vary much in the size of the body and the head, like the Mediterranean *M. barbarus*. The nests (Figs. 152–154) are single or more rarely multiple craters, much flattened, with rounded slopes, 50 cm. or more in diameter, and with one to three large and very irregular central openings. Sometimes these are slit-shaped and as much as 5 or 6 cm. long. The rough galleries and granaries are excavated to a depth of at least 60 cm. in the hardest and most sunbaked portions of the desert soil. Late in the afternoon long files of workers may be seen in the full activity of harvesting. Sometimes these files may be followed for a distance of 20 or 30 m. from the nest before the ants disperse among the scant vegetation in search of seeds. They seem to have no preferences, but eagerly seize all the mature seeds they find and carry them to the nest, where they carefully remove the husks and store the edible kernels in the granaries. The chaff and seed-pods are then carried out and dumped on the kitchen midden which forms a crescentric or circular zone at the periphery of the crater. Sound seeds are often thrown out with the chaff and eventually germinate, so that old nests are often marked by a circket of growing plants, just as Moggridge has described for the European species. There can be little doubt that the other North American species of *Messor* have very similar habits. A number of alcoholic specimens of one of these, *M. andrei*, sent me by Professor H. Heath from California, still bear grass-seeds in their clenched mandibles.

One of our two species of *Ischnomyrmex, I. cockerelli* (Fig. 155) is widely distributed over the deserts of western Texas, southern New Mexico and Arizona and northern Mexico from an altitude of 2,500 feet in the northern portion of its range (at Monahans, Texas) to 7,000 feet on the Mexican plateau. The other species, *I. albisetosus*, seems to be a rarer ant of more circumscribed distribution. At Fort Davis, Texas, both species were found nesting side by side, so that I was able to compare their habits. *I. cockerelli* is a large, very slender, long-legged ant of a deep cherry-red color, with jet black gaster adorned with a
large yellow spot at its base. It stalks about very slowly and is quite unable to sting, but instead endeavors to defend itself with the milk-white, faintly odorous secretion of its anal glands. Though the colonies are rather populous, the workers forage singly. They carry one another like the species of *Leptothorax*, the deported ant being held by the mandibles while curling her body up over the head of her carrier. The nests (Fig. 156) are so large and made of such rough materials that one can hardly believe that they can be the work of such frail insects.

![Image](Image)

**Fig. 160.** Disk of *Pogonomyrmex rugosus*, showing one of the paths extending off towards the upper right-hand corner of the figure. A partial ring of chaff and rejected seeds is seen to the left of the entrance. (Original.)

They are huge craters from 60 cm. to 2 m. in diameter and from 20–50 cm. in height, built of coarse desert soil intermingled with large pebbles sometimes 2 cm. in diameter. The center of the crater is funnel-shaped, with a great entrance of irregular outline frequently as much as 5–8 cm. across. The galleries and chambers are proportionally large and excavated in such hard soil and to such a depth that I have never been able to explore them satisfactorily. Although these nests bear a certain resemblance, on a large scale, to those of *Messor pergandei*, they seem even more like the work of some desert rodent or reptile. *I. albatisosus* is a smaller and more opaque species, covered with abundant, very coarse, white, hairs. Its nests resemble those of * cockerelli,*
but are usually smaller and more often situated under large stones. Both species are omnivorous, with an evident preference for fruits and seeds. At Monahans, I found the craters of *cockerelli* covered with the disjointed pods of the mesquite (*Prosopis juliflora*) which had been carried into the nest, deprived of the sweet pulp enclosing the hard seeds and then rejected. On the kitchen middens I also recognized the legs and elytra of three species of *Eleodes* and of several other beetles. At Fort Davis, the workers of *albisetosus* were seen carrying in the dried seeds of umbelliferous plants, grasses and cottonwood (*Populus fremonti*), and occasionally stopping to collect pieces of insects (shards of *Podophylla* and *Coccinella*) and bits of cow-dung, or even bird-droppings. None of these substances, however, is stored in the nests, but merely carried in and then rejected. These ants are not, therefore, highly developed harvesters like those of the allied subgenus *Messor*, but resemble more closely the northern species of *Aphænogaster*. In Connecticut I have often seen *A. picea* collecting and temporarily storing in its nests small flowers, green seeds or the pulp-covered akenes of raspberries, and Emery long ago made a similar observation on an Italian variety of *A. testaceopilosa*. Of this ant he says: "It is not predaceous but collects soft vegetable substances, such as petals of flowers and green seeds, which it carries into the nest and then rejects, after having extracted from them any utilizable substances," and he adds in a foot-note: "In a courtyard of the University of Palermo I saw this ant daily collecting the petals of roses that were somewhat dried but still of the natural tint, and later rejecting them, soiled and crumpled, and of a yellow color, as if they had been triturated. The typical *A. testaceopilosa*, which I have observed in Sardinia, has intermediate habits and lives partly on prey, partly on vegetable substances." During the summer of 1907 I was able to confirm Emery’s observations on several colonies of *A. testaceopilosa* in the Alameda at Gibraltar. These observations are of considerable interest in connection with the habits of the fungus-growing ants to be considered in the next chapter.

The most characteristic American harvesters are the large or medium-sized, black or red ants of the genus *Pogonomyrmex*, which is closely related to *Myrmica* of the temperate and boreal portions of the Northern hemisphere. In most of the species of *Pogonomyrmex* the head of the workers and females bears on its under side a conspicuous beard of long, curved hairs (ammochaetae), a character to which the generic name ("bearded ant") refers and one which occurs also in many species of *Messor*, in *Holcomyrmex* and in other desert ants (see p. 16). The genus ranges from British America to Patagonia,
but the species are almost exclusively confined to the dry mountainous deserts and plains, where some of them ascend to an altitude of 5,000–8,000 feet. Most of them are aggregated in two groups, one of which inhabits Argentina and Chile; the other the Southwestern States and northern Mexico, and few are known to occur in the long intermediate region. The subgenus *Ephebomyrmex*, which comprises small, beardless species, with coarse, reticulate sculpture is represented by a single form (*E. schmitti*) in Hayti, another (*E. nagelii*) in Brazil, and a few in Mexico, Texas and Arizona (*E. imberbiculus, pima* and *towsendi*). Another subgenus, *Janetia*, is represented by a single species (*J. mayri*) in Colombia. Only one of the species of *Pogonomyrmex s. str.*, the Florida harvester (*P. badius*), is known to occur east of the Mississippi River. According to Forel (1901m), *P. occidentalis* has been taken in Hawaii.

Little is known of the habits of the South American *Pogonomyrmex*. Berg (1890) has published a few notes on *P. cunicularis* and five other species occurring in Argentina, Chile and Uruguay, but no mention is made of their harvesting habits. Their nests seem to be insignificant, with the exception of those of *cunicularis*, which are described as surmounted by craters 50 cm. in diameter erected in sandy soil. *Janetia*, according to Forel, does not harvest seeds, but this statement is open to doubt. All of the North American *Pogonomyrmex* (including those of the subgenus *Ephebomyrmex*) are unquestionably harvesting ants, although none of them disdains insect food whenever it can be procured. They all excavate their nests in soil fully exposed to the rays of the sun and are able to endure prolonged droughts. According to my observations our species may be divided into four groups, as follows:

1. *P. subdentatus, apache, sancti-hyacinthi* and *desertorum*, and *Ephebomyrmex imberbiculus, townsendi* and *pima*. These are small species confined to the deserts of Texas, New Mexico, Arizona, California and northern Mexico. Their colonies are always insignificant and widely scattered, comprising only a few dozen individuals. The nests are small, obscure craters, 10–20 cm. in diameter and a few centimeters high. The workers make no attempt to cut down the surrounding vegetation, which often grows on the crater immediately around the entrance.
2. *P. californicus*, *comanche* and *badius*. Larger than the preceding and living in colonies of one to a few hundred individuals. They nest exclusively or by preference in sand, and construct flat, single or multiple craters from 30–60 cm. in diameter and 3–5 cm. high with rounded slopes and oblique, central entrances. The workers make no attempt to clear away the vegetation around the nest.

3. *P. barbatus* and its numerous subspecies and varieties: *molefaciens*, *rugosus*, *fuscatus*, *marfensis*, *nigrescens*, etc. This is the largest and most powerful of our species, the celebrated "Texan harvester" or "agricultural ant." It forms extensive colonies of several hundred individuals and shows great variability in the construction of its nests. In their simplest form, *e.g.*, in *rugosus*, these present a bare, circular disk, or area 1–2 m. in diameter, produced by cutting down and removing all the vegetation around the central opening (Figs. 159 and 160). In other cases, *e.g.*, in *molefaciens*, the opening is at the summit of a conical crater of pebbles, partly or wholly covering the disk and sometimes as much as 50 cm. high (Fig. 158). This crater, as well as the underlying soil, to a considerable depth (5 m. according to one account!) is perforated with flat chambers connected by galleries.

4. *P. occidentalis*, which, like *barbatus*, forms large colonies and clears away the vegetation from great circular areas, which vary from 2–5 m. in diameter. In the center of the area it always constructs an elegant gravel cone (modified crater) 60 cm. to 1 m. in diameter and 20–30 cm. high, with an oblique, excentric opening near the base and nearly always on the eastern or southern slope. The cone and underlying soil, sometimes to a depth of 3 m., are riddled with flat chambers, which, as in *barbatus*, are denser and more numerous in the cone and more scattered and connected by longer galleries in the soil (Fig. 164).

Some years ago I published a few observations on *E. imberbiculus* and *P. subdentatus* (1902b). These and the other species of the first of the above groups, like all ants that form small colonies, are very timid and inoffensive. Workers of *imberbiculus* kept in an artificial nest were seen to feed their larvae on pieces of house-flies and crushed seeds.

Of the species of the second group, only one, the Florida harvester (*P. badius*) has come under the observation of previous authors. Mrs. Mary Treat (1878) studied this ant in Florida, and McCook (1879c) made a few observations on workers kept in confinement. It harvests the seeds of many plants (*Euphorbia, Croton, Aristida*, etc.), and stores them in the flat granaries of its nests. It not only collects seeds that
have fallen to the ground but plucks them directly from the plants, husks them and deposits the chaff on the kitchen middens at the periphery of its low, rounded craters. My own observations, made in the sandy grounds about Jacksonville, Florida, confirm those of Mrs. Treat, who failed to find any tendency on the part of this ant to cut down the vegetation or to clear areas around its nests. *P. badius* differs from all the other known species of the genus in having highly polymorphic workers. The huge-headed soldiers are not abundant in the colonies and seem to be no more aggressive or pugnacious than the intermediate and small workers. *P. comanche*, which is common in the sandy post-oak woods about Austin and Milano, Texas, and in the alluvial bottoms of the Colorado River in the same region, and *P. californicus*, which is abundant in sandy portions of the deserts of Texas, New Mexico, Arizona and California, have very similar habits. The latter is represented by several local varieties and subspecies. Both species carefully close their nest entrances at night. The incipient nests are crescentic or semi-lunar with the very oblique entrance on
one side, but as the crater grows, it becomes circular and eventually surrounds the entrance. The marriage flight of californicus and its method of establishing colonies are described in a former chapter (p. 189 et seq.).

P. molefaciens (Fig. 157), the common Texan variety of the Mexican barbatus, was first studied by Buckley (1861, 1866, 1867) and Lincecum (1862, 1866, 1874) and later by McCook (1879c) and myself (1902). The papers of Buckley and Lincecum contain some of the earliest modern observations on harvesting ants. P. molefaciens ranges from the seashore at Galveston and Corpus Christi to an altitude of 5,000 ft. in western Texas and over 8,000 ft. in Mexico, where it often inhabits the same stations as the typical barbatus. The latter is readily distinguished by its black head and thorax and red gaster, whereas molefaciens is ferruginous red throughout.

The Texan harvester has attracted no little attention on account of Lincecum's statement that it actually sows the seeds of the “ant-rice” (Aristida stricta and oligantha) around the periphery of its disks or mounds, and cultivates the crop in addition to harvesting and storing it in its granaries. This notion, which even the Texan schoolboy has come to regard as a joke, has been widely cited, largely because Darwin stood sponsor for its publication in the Journal of the Linnean Society. McCook, after spending a few weeks in Texas observing P. molefaciens and recording his observations in a book of 310 pages (1879c), failed to obtain any evidence either for or against the Lincecum myth. He merely succeeded in extending its vogue by admitting its plausibility. Four years of nearly continuous observations of molefaciens and its nests enable me to suggest the probable source of Lincecum's misconception. If the nests of this ant can be studied during the cool winter months—and this is the only time to study them leisurely, as the cold subdues the fiery stings of their inhabitants—the seeds, which the ants have garnered in many of their chambers will often be found to have sprouted. Sometimes, in fact, the chambers, are literally stuffed with dense wads of seedling grasses and other plants. On sunny days the ants may often be seen removing these seeds when they have sprouted too far to be fit for food and carrying them to the refuse heap, which is always at the periphery of the crater or cleared earthen disk. Here the seeds, thus rejected as inedible, often take root and in the spring form an arc or a complete circle of growing plants around the nest. Since the Pogonomyrinx feeds largely, though by no means exclusively, on grass seeds, and since, moreover, the seeds of Aristida are a very common and favorite article of food, it is easy to see why this grass should predominate in the circle. In reality, however, only a
small percentage of the nests, and only those situated in grassy localities, present such circles. Now to state that the _molefaciens_, like a provident farmer, sows this cereal and guards and weeds it for the sake of garnering its grain, is as absurd as to say that the family cook is planting and maintaining an orchard when some of the peach stones, which she has carelessly thrown into the backyard with the other kitchen refuse, chance to grow into peach trees.

There are several other facts that go to show that the circle of grass about the _molefaciens_ nests is an unintentional and inconstant by-product of the activities of the ant-colony. First, the _Aristida_ often grows in flourishing patches far from the nests of _molefaciens_. Second, one often finds very flourishing ant colonies that have existed for years in the midst of much travelled roads or in stone side-walks thirty meters or more from any vegetation whatsoever. In these cases the ants simply resort for their supply of seeds to the nearest field or lawn, or pilfer the oat-bin of the nearest stable. Third, it is evident that even a complete circle of grass like that described by Lincecum and McCook would be entirely inadequate to supply more than a very small fraction of the grain necessary for the support of a flourishing colony of these ants. Hence they are always obliged to make long trips into the surrounding vegetation, and thereby wear out regular

---

**Fig. 163.** Mound of _Pogonomymex occidentalis_ at Las Vegas, New Mexico, showing large cleared area around cone. (Original.)
paths which radiate from the cleared disk in different directions, often
to a distance of 10–20 m. from the nest. These paths, in the case of
the typical Mexican barbatus, remind one of human footpaths, as they
may be as much as 10–15 cm. wide. The existence of these well-
beaten paths, which are often found in connection with grass-encircled
nests, is alone sufficient to disprove Lincecum’s statements.

The reader may be referred to McCook’s work (1879c) for an
account of many interesting details in the habits of molefaciens. I
shall stop to record only a few observations on the marriage flight, the
method of establishing formicaries, the development of the nests, etc.,
matters which have been either overlooked or inadequately described
by previous authors. During three successive years (1901–1903) at
Austin, Texas, the nuptial flight of molefaciens took place on one of
the last days of June (28 and 29) or the first in July. On one of these
occasions (July 4, 1903) the flight was of exceptional magnitude and
beauty. A few days previous the country had been deluged with heavy
rains, but Independence Day was clear and sunny, the mesquite trees
were in full bloom and the air resounded with the hum of insects. For
several days I had seen a few males and winged females stealthily
creep out of the nest entrances as if for an airing, but hurry back at
the slightest alarm. From 1.30 to 3 o’clock, however, on the after-
noon of July 4, all the numerous colonies which I could visit during a
long walk through the fields and woods west of the town, gave forth
their males and females as if by a common impulse. The number
issuing from a single large nest was often sufficient to have filled a
half liter measure. Soon every mound and disk was covered with the
bright red females and darker males, intermingled with workers, many
of whom kept on bringing seeds and dead insects into the nest as
unconcernedly as if nothing unusual were happening. The males and
females, quivering with excitement, mounted the stones or pebbles of
the nest or hurriedly climbed onto the surrounding leaves and grass
and rocked to and fro in the breeze. Then, raising themselves on their
feet and spreading their opalescent wings, they mounted obliquely one
by one into the air. I could follow them only for a distance of 10 or
20 m. when their rapidly diminishing bodies melted away against the
brilliant, cloudless sky. Many pairs, hesitating to take flight, chased
one another about on the surface of the nest. The amorous males
seized many of the females before they could leave the ground.
Lizards crept forth in great numbers and gulped down quantities of
the fat females, while others were borne off into the air by large robber
flies (Asilidae). By a little after three o’clock the males and females
had left the nest and only the workers were seen pursuing the quiet
routine business of bringing in seeds. Later in the afternoon innumerable fertilized and dealated females which had descended from their flight, were running hither and thither over the ground in search of suitable places in which to establish their formicaries. At nightfall a terrific shower, amounting almost to a cloud-burst, descended on the country. When I arose the following morning the weather was clear again, but I was unable to find a single female on the rain-scoured soil. One and all had been swept into the streams that were booming through the gullies and canons on their way to the Colorado River. At 12 M. I saw about the entrance of a nest a few males and virgin females and on digging into it detected several others. An examination of
other colonies, which had celebrated their nuptial flight the day before, revealed the same conditions. It is certain, therefore, that the *molefaciens* colonies do not throw off all their males and females during the nuptial flight, and are thus able to avoid a complete destruction of the annual sexual generation. This conclusion is also borne out by the observations of Mr. W. H. Long, Miss A. Rucker and Miss M. Holliday, who witnessed several minor nuptial flights during the latter part of the summer (August 6–10). I have also seen mature males and winged females in the nests in March and April, so that there are probably small flights also during the spring months. But unlike many other ants, *molefaciens* does not deëlate and permanently detain in the nest a number of females in addition to the mother-queen that originally established the formicary. At any rate, I have never been able to find more than one deëlated queen in a colony, which, therefore, occupies only a single nest. This is also true of the other species of *Pogonomyrmex* that have come under my observation.

The formicaries of *molefaciens* are founded in the same manner as those of *P. californicus* described in a former chapter. As Linsecum was the first to observe, the recently fertilized female digs down into the soil to a depth of about 15 cm., closes the opening after her and gradually brings to maturity a brood of about a dozen very small and timid workers. During the following spring the workers open the nest to the surface, but are always careful to keep the entrance hidden under a few sticks or pebbles, which have the appearance, as Linsecum says, of having been drifted together by the wind (Fig. 161). It is not till the second year, when a number of large workers have been produced, that the ants begin to cut down the vegetation around the nest entrance, now left fully exposed, and to establish their circular disk, which is continually enlarged as the number of workers increases. On the deserts east of Alberquerque, New Mexico, I saw a number of incipient colonies of *P. rugosus* in the act of cutting down young *Astragalus* plants and clearing disks about 30 cm. in diameter (Fig. 162). The further development of the nest differs with the character of the soil. Where this is an even adobe or sandy loam, no crater is constructed, but the disk is merely enlarged. In localities where there are many pebbles scattered over the soil, these are assiduously collected and built into a crater (Fig. 158). The cleared disk is obviously an adaptation for securing the maximum amount of dryness for the granaries in the soil, and although seeds are often stored in the crater chambers, the latter seem to be of even greater utility in incubating the brood. The larvae, as in *E. imberbiculus*, are fed with pieces of
crushed or broken seeds. In my artificial nests these pieces were
coated with saliva by the workers before being administered to the
brood, a precaution which may insure the conversion of the starch into
sugar and facilitate its assimilation by the larvae.

The occident harvestor (P. occidentalis) which ranges over the
Great Plains from Montana to northern Texas, New Mexico and Ari-
izona, rarely descending below 5,000 feet and thriving best at an altitude
of 6,000 to 8,000 feet, has been studied by Leidy (1877) and McCook
(1882) and more recently by Headlee and Dean (1908) and myself.

![Diagram](image)

Fig. 165. Diagrams of three stages in the development of the modified masonry
dome of Pogonomyrmex occidentalis. (Original.) A, Small mound of earth thrown
up by queen when starting her formicary; x, entrance, s, first chamber; A’, same
nest in section; B, crater nest (second year) formed by incipient colony; B’ section
of same; C, mound, or dome of adult colony; C’ section of same showing galleries
and chambers.

It is a smaller ant than P. barbatus and much more precise and uniform
in its nesting habits. Its constructions are, in fact, the most elegant
and extensive of any of the known species of the genus. As in the
case of barbatus, the edge of the carefully cleared disk on which the
fine gravel cone rests is sometimes surrounded by a circle of grass or
other plants which grow from the refuse heap (Fig. 163). P. occi-
dentalis is not in the habit of foraging in files, so that no paths radiate
from the cleared disk. This absence of paths is attributed by McCook
to the sparse and tufted character of the vegetation of the Great
Plains, which makes beaten roads unnecessary.

During July, 1903, I witnessed the nuptial flight of this insect near
Colorado Springs. It took place on a clear afternoon and resembled in nearly all respects the nuptial flight of *molefaciens* described above. During the summer months of 1906 I saw deálated females founding their colonies in the rocky plains about Buena Vista, Colorado. The female enters the soil obliquely, throwing the earth backward with her legs or carrying it out with her mandibles till it accumulates in the form of a small fan-shaped mound as in *molefaciens* and *californicus*. I have inferred the manner of growth of the crater from examination of many nests of different sizes and ages, and represent the process in the accompanying diagram (Fig. 165). A and A' show in surface view and section respectively the nest as dug by the deálated queen, r being the opening and z the cell in which she brings up her first brood of small workers after closing the entrance. The moundlet of excavated earth is soon disintegrated by the wind or rain. When, during the following spring, the young brood break out to the surface, they construct a crater like B and B'. This corresponds to the permanent nests of such forms as *P. comanche*, *californicus* and *badius*. Gradually, however, the wall of the crater back of the slanting entrance is built up more rapidly than the wall in front, till a cone is produced with the opening near the base on one side (C and C'), and as it grows the chambers are extended up into it from the underlying soil. This is the adult form of the nest and is not represented in the sand-inhabiting species mentioned above. *P. molefaciens* also presents a stage like B and B', but the opening is perpendicular and the crater rim grows uniformly around its whole periphery and often to a much greater height. B and B' may also be taken to represent on a large scale the permanent nest-form of the small species of the genus, *P. desertorum*, *Ephebomyrmex imberbicus*, etc.

A good account of the distribution and nesting habits of *P. occidentalis* in the higher, western portion of Kansas has been published by Headlee and Dean. These authors give measurements of the nests and interesting figures of their architecture. One of these figures is here reproduced with Mr. Dean's permission (Fig. 164).

In conclusion, attention may be called to the stinging habits of *Pogonomyrmex*. In this respect the smaller and more timid species are no more formidable than other Myrmicine ants of the same size dwelling in small colonies. But this is not the case with *P. occidentalis*, *P. barbatus* and the allied varieties and subspecies. The sting of these ants is remarkably severe, and the fiery, numbing pain which it produces may last for hours. On several occasions when my hands and legs had been stung by several of these insects while I was excavating their nests, I grew faint and almost unable to stand. The pain appears
to extend along the limbs for some distance and to settle in the lymphatics of the groin and axillae. If it be true, as has been reported, that the ancient Mexicans tortured or even killed their enemies by binding them to ant-nests, *P. barbatus* was certainly the species employed in this atrocious practice. It is commonly supposed that the poison responsible for the pain inflicted by these and other ants is formic acid, but chemical analysis of *P. molefaciens* by Melander and Brues (1906) failed to reveal any traces of this substance. Hence the poison of this insect must be some unknown substance, possibly a nucleoalbumin. This confirms the opinion of other authors, who, like Fürth (1903), deny that the general physiological effects of the sting, even in the European ants, are due to formic acid.
CHAPTER XVII

THE RELATIONS OF ANTS TO VASCULAR PLANTS

"Plantas itaque norunt formicae."—Michael Gehlerus, 1610.


The hypothesis of intimate mutualistic relations between ants and the higher plants is one of those fascinating constructions in which certain gifted and imaginative botanists have rivalled the inventors of the mimicry hypothesis in the zoological field. Both of these constructions have been treated as facts of the utmost value in supporting a still more general hypothesis—that of natural selection, and both, after having been carried to extremes by their respective adherents, are now facing the reaction that is overtaking Neodarwinism. Authors like Fritz Müller, Schimper, Huth, Delpino, Beccari and Heim have marshalled a formidable array of observations in favor of the view that many plants develop elaborate structures to be used as lodgings by certain pugnacious ants or even furnish these insects with exquisite food substances, and in return for these services are protected by their tenants from the leaf-cutting ants or from other leaf-destroying animals. These observations are now being subjected to critical revision by authors like Rettig and H. von Ihering, whose attitude towards the whole subject is avowedly skeptical and reactionary. It behooves us therefore to examine both sides of the argument and, if possible, to adopt a position which will favor and not forestall further investigations.

We may divide our subject into two parts and consider, first, the plant adaptations that are said to indicate symbiosis, and second, the ants that are associated with plants. The supposed adaptations may be considered under two heads: the dwelling places and the food provided for the ants. The former consist either of preformed cavities or of structures from which the pith or loose tissue can be easily removed.
and thus converted into habitable tenements. In both cases the cavity is entered through a small orifice which either preëxists or is made by the ants. This orifice then constitutes the nest opening, or entrance. These simple requirements are fulfilled by a great many plant structures which therefore make admirable domiciles for small ants that live permanently in small colonies or for incipient colonies of larger ants that later form populous communities. The rigid vegetable tissues are an excellent protection against enemies, and the cavities are moist, dark and free from moulds, so that they make perfect nurseries for the larvae and pupae. Cavities of this description are especially utilized by ants in the tropics, probably because there these insects are more abundant and the struggle for existence is keener. The following paragraphs will show how numerous and variable are the plant organs that may be tenanted by ants:

1. Cavities in Stems.—Almost any hollow or pithy stem, with resistant walls sufficiently thin to be pierced by ants, may be entered and occupied by these insects. Some plants, however, are especially well-suited to these purposes, for example, those of the Old World genera Randia, Myristica, Clerodendron, Kibara and Bambusa, with preformed cavities, and Endospermum and Juglans with pithy stems; among the New World genera: Cecropia, Triplaris, Tachigalea, Humboldtia, Tachia, Ficus, Cordia, Duroia, Coussapoa, Pterocladon, Pterocarpus, Bombax, Cladium, etc., with preformed cavities, and Coccoloba uvifera, Sapium, Schwartzia, Platymyschium and Sambucus with pithy stems. The entrances to the cavities are actually foreshadowed as pits in the internodes in Cecropia and Clerodendron.

2. Tubers, Bulbs, Pseudobulbs, Rootstocks, etc.—Many examples could be cited under this head. The most celebrated are the Malayan Rubiaceous epiphytes of the genera Myrmecodia and Hydnophytum,
which have large pseudobulbs full of preformed cavities, nearly always tenanted by ants. Certain ferns of the genus *Lecanopteris* from the same region, and certain orchids of the genera *Grammatophyllum* and *Schomburgkia* are also cited as providing accommodations for ants in their pseudobulbs.

3. **Ascidiæ or Bursæ of Leaves and Petioles**.—The straight or convoluted leaf-petioles of certain pitcher plants (*Nepenthes bicalcarata*)
are often hollowed out and inhabited by ants (Heim), and the curious ascidia of *Dischidia rafflesiana* are similarly utilized. In North America various species of ants inhabit the old, dry pitchers of *Sarracenia*. In

![Diagram](Image)

**Fig. 168.** Stem and leaf of *Endospermum formicarium*, the former inhabited by colonies of *Camponotus quadripect*. (Dahl.) Two nest openings are seen in upper part of stem. Where the petiole joins the leaf there are two nectaries.

South America several genera of plants (*Tococa, Majeta, Microphyscia, Calophyscia, Myrmedon, Hirtella*) have bladder-like dilatations of
the petiole or base of the leaf which are regularly inhabited by colonies of small ants.

4. Spaces Between or Under Leaves.—In four species of East Indian palms belonging to the genus Korthalsia the spiny ochrea, or leaf-sheath, is enlarged and boat-shaped and applied to the stem in such a way as to enclose a cavity, which, according to Heim, is often tenanted by ants. Many plants with equitant or clasping leaves furnish similar lodgings (Calamus amplexens, the banana, etc.). In tropical America certain epiphytic Tillandsias are very generally inhabited by ants, as I have repeatedly observed in Mexico, Florida and the West Indies. Sometimes a single bud-like Tillandsia will contain colonies of three or four species in the spaces between its overlapping leaves.

5. Thorns.—Several species of Acacia, both in Africa (A. fistulosa) and tropical America (A. spadigera, sphaerocephala, hindsii), bear pairs of thorns which are enormously enlarged or inflated and filled with loose tissue. The ants gnaw round holes near the pointed tips of the thorns, remove the tissue and take possession of them as nests.

6. Seed-pods.—Dried seed-pods of plants, after the seeds have escaped or decayed, are sometimes converted into ant lodgings. Professor C. H. Eigenmann sent me from Cuba several colonies of Camponotus inequalis which he found nesting in the pods of a leguminous vine.

7. Galls.—These may also be cited in this connection, though they have been considered in a previous chapter (p. 208).

A survey of these various cases shows very clearly that ants may take possession of any vegetable cavity which suits their convenience, and that in the great majority of cases at least, the plants show no adaptations to the insects. But the plants are not limited to this letting of apartments rent-free; they are said to offer the more alluring inducement of a free supply of food, both solid and liquid.

1. Floral Nectaries.—Like other Hymenoptera and insects in general, ants are fond of visiting flowers and imbibing their nectar. The
floral nectaries are regarded as alluring organs and volumes have been written on the insects and birds that visit them. In these works, however, the ants are not seriously considered, probably because they treat the flowers very cavalierly, for, unlike the bees, they do not concentrate their attention on particular plants and make cross-fertilization one of their main avocations.

2. Extrafloral, or Extranuptial Nectaries.—These organs which, like the floral nectaries, secrete a saccharine liquid, are situated on the most diverse portions of the plant body, and occur in hundreds of species, both among ferns and flowering plants. While there can be no doubt that in many of these plants the extrafloral nectaries are assiduously visited by ants, it by no means follows that these organs have been developed for the purpose of attracting these insects. Indeed, it must be admitted that the significance of the nectaries of this type is far from clear. Some botanists, like Bonnier, Johow, and Lloyd, believe that they may be excretory organs and that the excretion is carried off in small quantities dissolved in the liquid nectar. It has been noticed that the organs in question are sometimes developed only on young leaves, as in the poplar and brake fern, and that the formation of sugar is in all probability the result of more active metabolism in the surrounding tissues or due to other unusual physiological conditions of rapid growth. The excretion thus formed is then utilized by ants and many other insects (wasps, flies, beetles, etc.). This sober physiological explanation is rejected by Schimper (1888) and others on the ground that the excretory function of these nectaries has never been proved. They are therefore interpreted as alluring organs devised especially for ants and scattered over the surface of the plant for the purpose of extending the surveillance of these insects. Their development on the young leaves is said to be only what we should expect, for such parts would be in greatest need of protection from injury or defoliation. Even Schimper, however, is compelled to admit that this view of the extrafloral nectaries can be accepted only if it can be proved, “first, that the visitations of the ants confer protection on the plants with extranuptial nectaries and that in the absence of the insects a much greater number would perish or fail to produce flowers or set seeds, than when the insects are present, and second, that

1 The following is a list of some of the genera that comprise species with extrafloral nectaries: Pteris, Polypodium, Acrostichum, Populus, Quercus, Paeonia, Rhipsalis, Sarracenia, Darlingtonia, Gossypium, Psidium, Balsamina, Vicia, Phascolus, Dolichos, Lablab, Cassia, Acacia, Erythrina, Canavalia, Ailanthus, Rosa, Crataegus, Prunus, Syringa, Passiflora, Sambucus, Viburnum, Luffa, Impatiens, Melampyrum, Turnera, Crozophora, Marcgravia, Stillingia, Alchornea, Ricinus, Centaurea, Helianthus.
the nectaries have no other function in the life of the plant and cannot be regarded as having arisen for some other function.” Neither of these propositions has been established, although there is a little evidence to show that the ants actually protect certain plants whose nectaries they are in the habit of visiting. But Schimper, who studied this subject in Brazil, admits that plants with extrafloral nectaries differ greatly in the extent to which they are visited by ants, and I have reached a similar conclusion from observing species of Cassia, Stillingia, Ricinus, Ailanthus and Populus. Schimper endeavored to ascertain whether the extrafloral nectaries had any such function as that attributed to them by Johow and Bonnier. He extirpated all the nectaries of Cassia, and finding no visible changes in the well-being of the plant, concluded that the organs have little importance in metabolism and that their main function is to attract ants. This does not follow from the experiment, however, for it is quite possible that with extirpation of the organs under discussion their function might be transferred to other parts of the plant.

3. Food-bodies.—These structures are known to occur in only a few plants peculiar to the American tropics. In Cecropia and Porowma they are called “Müllerian bodies,” and are yellow or red, elliptical corpuscles about the size of a millet seed. They are found embedded in a dense mat of hairs forming a large cushion, or “trichilium” at the base of the leaf-petiole. In Cecropia these bodies, which Schimper found to contain oily and albuminous substances, are easily detached and are carried away and eaten by the ants. Whether this is also the case in Porowma has not been ascertained. Acacia sphaerocephala possesses similar corpuscles, known as “Beltian bodies,” but these are borne singly on the tips of the leaflets (Fig. 178, C).

4. Bead-glands (“Perlrüsen”).—These are modified trichomes or elevations, which sometimes appear as transparent bead-like bodies, scattered in great numbers over the surfaces of green plants. According to Rettig (1904), they are characteristic of certain Vitaceae, Piperaceae, Melastomaceae and Urticaceae, rarer in Moraceae, Bigoniaceae
and Sterculiaceae. This author has detected them on the leaves of Cecropia, where they had been overlooked by previous observers. Like the Müllerian and Beltian corpuscles, the bead-glands are rich in fatty oils, proteins and sugar. In Bunchosia gaudichaudiana they are visited by ants (Cremastogaster and Cryptocerus), according to Fritz Müller. Other species, however, belonging to the genera Gnetum,

Fig. 171. Toecca formicaria, from a specimen in the herbarium of the New York Botanical Garden. (Original.)

Lecc and Pterospermum, which possess these glands, are described as “free from ants.” Both the food bodies and the “Perdrüsen” are obviously modified glands, and differ from the nectaries much as certain animal structures, like the milk glands, in which the cells them-
selves break down to form the secretion, differ from the salivary glands which secrete a liquid without undergoing disintegration.

5. Pith and Other Vegetable Tissues.—Dahl (1901) describes certain ants of the Bismarck archipelago and their larvae as feeding on the pith in the twigs of Clerodendron, and von Hering (1907) finds that Asteca muelleri eats the tissue that grows over the perforation through which it enters the hollow twigs of the Cecropia. There is, of course, no myrmecophilous adaptation on the part of the plants in these cases.

Turning now to the ants which are supposed to take advantage of the inducements offered by the plants, we find in both hemispheres many species that are very fond of wandering over the vegetation and visiting the nectaries, food-bodies, etc. In the tropics whole genera have become largely or exclusively arboreal, but this does not mean
that the food of the insects is obtained exclusively or even in great part directly from the plants, for, as will be shown in a future chapter, many ants visit plants mainly for the purpose of feeding on the excrement of the aphids, coccids, etc. In the Old World the exclusively, or at any rate, very largely arboreal genera are *Ecophylla*, *Cataulacus*, *Simia* and *Polyrhachis*, in the New World *Asteca*, *Pseudomyrmex*, *Cryptocerus*, *Myrmelachista* and *Allomerus*, and in both hemispheres *Dolichoderus*, *Camponotus*, *Cremastogaster* and *Iridomyrmex*. The only forms, however, which are so exclusively arboreal as to show unquestionable structural adaptations to this habit, belong to the genera *Asteca*, *Pseudomyrmex*, *Simia* and to *Colobopsis*, a subgenus of *Camponotus*. Concerning the habits of *Asteca* and *Pseudomyrmex* Forel (1904) says: “The species of *Asteca* show very disparate conditions in the castes of the same species. Sometimes the head of the female is elongated, sometimes greatly broadened; and in like manner vary the proportions of the large and small workers. Emery was the first to call attention to this fact in his excellent monograph of the genus *Asteca* [1894]. I believe that these differences are correlated with differences in habit. Just as the species of *Eciton* are the robbers of the soil in the primeval forest and the *Atta* species are the destroyers of the foliage of the neotropical woods, so the species of *Asteca* and *Pseudomyrmex* are the true monarchs of the trees. To my knowledge, none of the species of *Asteca* and only one *Pseudomyrmex* (*P. elegans*) nest in the ground. But what a varied arboreal existence is led by these little monkeys among the ants as they climb and scurry about everywhere on the trees! Some of them build carton nests on the trunks and branches, others nest in great cavities in the trunks; others (*A. hypophylla*) nest under the leaves of certain vines with these organs closely applied to the trunks, and close up any openings at the edges of the leaves with carton. Others, again, make use of the cavities of dead branches, while still others nest in the natural medullary cavities of living *Cecropia* trees or any hollow swellings or spaces in all kinds of plants. Finally Mr. Ule has discovered and described ant-gardens in which grow certain epiphytes that are sown by species of *Asteca*. Now I believe that the long, narrow head of the female and of the large workers of many members of this genus, as well as that
of many species of *Pseudomyrma* point to a life in very narrow, tubular branches and twigs. The small *Asteca* worker is small enough to enter and leave such openings without the great elongation of the head, which in the much larger queen is necessary for the accommodation of the powerful mandibular muscles. The nearly brainless and jawless male does not require this adaptation. A broad, depressed head points to a life in much flattened cavities (*A. hypophysylla*), etc. There are, to be sure, other differences in the form of the head (*trigona* and *aurita*, both carton-builders) that cannot be accounted for in this way." At least one species of *Asteca* (*A. viridis*) is green, a very unusual color in ants and evidently an adaptation to life among living leaves. In *Pseudomyrma* species the whole body is greatly elongated. These are, in fact, the most slender of ants and anyone who has seen colonies of them filling narrow twigs and stems like so many sardines packed in a box, will be sure to regard the lengthening of the body as an adaptation to life in small tubular cavities. The species of the Old World genus *Sima* resemble the species of *Pseudomyrma* very closely in structure and habits. The soldiers of *Colobopsis*, as I have shown in a former chapter (p. 211) have singularly truncated heads, adapted to fitting into and closing the perfectly circular entrances to the galleries of the nests which are always in wood or in the hollow culms of sedges. Perhaps the soldiers of many species of *Cryptocerus* and *Cataulacus* use their wonderful heads for the same or similar purposes.
The foregoing facts, it must be confessed, do not furnish a very solid foundation for the myrmecophily hypothesis that has been built upon them. At most they disclose considerable adaptability on the part of the ants, and a rather dubious or clumsy counter adaptation on the part of the plants. But the authors who would convince us that there is a definite symbiosis between such very different organisms, advance as their chevaux de bataille a few cases in which certain exquisitely arboreal ants live in a definite association with certain plants that present unusual structural characters. Such are the association of the Brazilian *Asteca muelleri* with *Cecropia adenopus*, that of the Malayan *Iridomyrmex myrmecodia* with *Myrmecodia* and *Hydnophytum* and that of *Pseudomyrma* with *Acacia* in Central and with *Triplaris* in South America. We must therefore consider these cases in somewhat greater detail.

The relations of *Asteca muelleri* to *Cecropia adenopus* have been studied by Fritz Müller (1876, 1880), Schimper (1888), and von Ihering (1891, 1907). The tree known as the “imbauba” or “imbaava” belongs to the Urticaceae and is very slender and candelabra-shaped, growing to a height of 12–15 m. It is most abundant along the Brazilian littoral. The trunk and branches are hollow except at the nodes, where there are thin transverse septa (Fig. 172). The sap is colorless, not milky nor rubber-containing, as stated by some authors. The crown of foliage is meagre and consists of large, palmately lobed leaves. At some time of its life each node bears a leaf, the long petiole of which has at its base a hairy cushion, known as the trichilium (Figs. 172, 173), in which the yellow Müllerian bodies (*m*) are imbedded. The cavities of older and larger trees are almost without exception tenanted by *Asteca muelleri*, which perforates the septa and thus causes all the internodal cavities to communicate with one another, both in the trunk and branches. The ants do not, however, live in the smallest, still actively growing twigs. The just-fecundated queen enters the branches while the tree
Fig. 176. Myrmecodia pentasperma of Bismarck Archipelago, with pseudobulb opened to show ants (Iridomyrmex cordatus) inhabiting the cavities. (Dahl.)
is still young (50 cm. to 2 m. high) at a particular point, a small depression at the upper end of a furrow at the top of the internode, where, as Schimper has shown, the wall lacks the fibro-vascular bundles and is most easily perforated. Von Ihering calls the depression the "prostoma," the perforation which is formed in it the "stoma." The queen thus enters an internode by making a stoma and feeds on the tissue ("stomatome") which, according to von Ihering, soon proliferates over and closes the opening from the inside. In the small internodal cavity the first workers, six to eight in number, are reared, and these restore communication with the outside world by again opening the stoma. Von Ihering says that as many as five to ten queens may each start a colony in one of the internodes of the same tree, that these colonies forsake the internodes in which they were reared and migrate to more distal internodes and that they eventually engage with one another in conflicts that terminate in the death of all except one of the queens and a fusion of the worker personnel of the different colonies to form one larger community. Such a fusion of hostile colonies is so contrary to what is known to occur in other ants that it may well be doubted. It is more probable that only one of the original colonies together with its queen survives and that all the others are either massacred, or driven away from the tree.

After this single colony has grown and perforated the septa it starts a spindle-shaped carton nest in the bole, a little distance above the ground. This so-called "metropolitan" nest (Fig. 174), which was discovered by von Ihering, resembles the carton nests built by other species of the genus on the branches of Cecropia and other trees. Where the nest occurs the bole of the Cecropia presents a spindle-shaped enlargement, which von Ihering regards as a gall—"the largest known gall," but his figures and several of these nests recently acquired
by the American Museum of Natural History prove conclusively that such an interpretation is erroneous. The wall of the hollow trunk, where it encloses the nest, shows no structural modification except a bending outward of the woody fibers. About half the thickness of this wall is gnawed away by the ants from the inside, leaving a thin zone encircling the trunk, which naturally bulges out under the weight of the superposed trunk and crown of foliage. As there is no hypertrophy of the tissues in the spindle-shaped deformation, the term gall, as applied to a structure of such simple mechanical origin, is a misnomer. When the metropolitan nest is established the ants make a large entrance in the adjacent wall of the trunk and through this and the other openings in the branches pass to and from the foliage. They collect the Müllerian bodies and store them in the nest where they can be eaten at leisure. So dependent is the Asteca colony on the Cecropia for this food that it perishes when the tree dies or is cut down.

Those who have seen the living imbauba and its occupants are unanimous in describing the insects as rushing out and fiercely attacking any one who ventures to touch the foliage. Alien ants, especially, are vigorously assailed and either killed or driven from the tree. Von Ihering, however, calls attention to the fact that various Chrysomelid larvae, caterpillars and the sloth (Bradypus tridactylus) are permitted to feed on the leaves unmolested. Fritz Müller and Schimper believed that the Asteca protects the tree from defoliation by the large leaf-cutting ants of the genus Atta, but von Ihering has shown that the plant, even when entirely free from its so-called protectors, is rarely or never visited by Atta. It thus appears that the Cecropia is not known to have any enemies against which the Asteca could avail. The animosity of these ants is probably greatest against alien colonies of their own species, and is directed to retaining possession of the feeding grounds and neighborhood of their nest. This is, of course, a well-known trait of ant-colonies in general. Although von Ihering says that "in order to thrive the imbauba no more requires the Asteca than a dog does fleas," he nevertheless believes that the Müllerian bodies and the prostome are myrmecophilous adaptations. In this, he seems to me, to concede too much, for if the ants are of no use to the Cecropia, why should the latter develop structures for the purpose of attracting and retaining this superfluous bodyguard? And of the three Cecropian structures, which might be regarded as indicating myrmecophily, namely, the cavities of the trunk and branches, the prostomes and the Müllerian bodies, the first can hardly be an adaptation to harboring ants, the second are produced, or at any rate, started, as Schimper admits, by the pressure of the axillary buds against the surface of the
internodes, while the Müllerian bodies, though continually formed anew as they drop off or are carried away by the ants, may have an excretory or some other nonmyrmecophilous function, for aught that is known to the contrary. The adaptation, therefore, has every appearance of being on the side of the ant rather than on that of the tree. This is also indicated by two other considerations: first, by the habits of the *Azteca*, which seems to have taken up its abode in the *Cecropia* within comparatively recent times, since it has not abandoned the construction of large fusiform carton nests like those produced on the branches of trees by many other species, although the cavities of the *Cecropia* seem to be better adapted to long cylindrical nests or would
seem to render the construction of carton nests altogether superfluous. In the second place, certain species of *Cecropia*, having essentially the same structure as *C. adenopus*, are nevertheless free from ants. This is true, for example, of *C. peltata*, as I have observed in Porto Rico (1907d). Here no species of *Astea* occurs and the tree is almost never tenanted by ants of any description, although it has well-developed prostomes and distinct Müllerian bodies. It thrives on the mountains of the island, even when its foliage is much eroded and perforated by insects. Of the Brazilian species, *C. lyratiloba*, according to von Ihering, resembles *adenopus* in having Müllerian bodies and in being regularly inhabited by *Astea*. The same is true of *C. sciodephylla*, which is peopled with *A. emeryi* according to Forel. Both Schimper and von Ihering, however, found *C. hololeuca* without trichilia and without ants. The former author also describes and figures this tree as lacking the prostomes. The allied genus *Porouma* is imperfectly known. Rettig says that it has Müllerian bodies like *Cecropia*, and Forel (1904d) mentions *Astea duroia* as occurring in its twigs.\(^1\)

The “myrmecophilous” Rubiaceae, embracing the genera *Myrmecodia* (Fig. 176), *Hydnophytum* (Fig. 175) and *Myrmephytum*, with about sixty species, confined to the Austromalayan region, have been studied by Rumphius (1750), Gaudichaud (1826), Caruel (1872), H. O. Forbes (1880, 1886), Beccari (1884, 1885), Treub (1883, 1888), Burck (1892), Haberlandt (1893), Karsten (1895), Dahl (1901) and Rettig (1904). These plants are epiphytes on trees or rocks in hot, sunny places and grow from large, bulbous stems full of cavities that communicate with the outside by means of small holes. These bulb-like structures are nearly always occupied by ants. Treub found that the cavities arise in the very young plant and are not started, though they may be subsequently enlarged, by the insects. *Iridomyrmex myrmecodia*, a subspecies of *I. cordatus*, is the ant most frequently found nesting in these plants, but species of the same or other genera have also been recorded (*Camponotus maculatus*, *Cremastogaster disformis* and *Pheidole javana*). In some species of *Myrmecodia* the bulb bristles with spines, as if for protection, but notwithstanding the presence of these structures and the ants, no one has been able to detect the existence of any enemy that might injure or devour the plants. Treub observed that specimens grown in localities inac-

\(^1\)In a very recent study (“Cecropia peltata und ihr Verhältnis zu Azteca Alfari, zu Atta sexdens und anderen Insekten,” etc., *Biol. Centrabl.*, 20, 1909, pp. 1-16, 33-55, 65-77, pls. 1-5), Fiebrig is even less inclined than von Ihering to accept the theory of myrmecophily among plants. He shows that *Cecropia peltata* of Paraguay (apparently not the *C. peltata* of the Antilles!) is not protected from its great number of insect and other enemies by the *Astea alfari*, though this ant constantly occupies its cavities and feeds on its Müllerian bodies.
cessible to the ants throve as well as those filled with the insects. And he, Karsten, Rettig and others, after a careful study, found that the walls of the cavities are provided with lenticelli and that the cavities themselves probably have a twofold function: to contain air and thus prevent the tissues of the plant from becoming overheated during hot, dry spells, and to take up and to store water for purposes of growth at other seasons of the year. It would seem, therefore, that the ants merely take advantage of the cavities without either benefiting or injuring the plant.

This case of *Myrmecodia* and the allied Rubiaceae is very interesting as epitomizing the change of opinion which will eventually extend to other instances of so-called symbiosis between ants and plants. Rumphius in 1750 declared *Myrmecodia* to be a zoo-phyte, believing that the ants brought together twigs and built a nest out of which the *Myrmecodia* germinated. He therefore called the plant "*nidus germinans formicarum rubrarum et nigrarum*." Now we have a physiological explanation, which some may regard as a sordid anticlimax to this and other fanciful views concerning the relations of the *Myrmecodia* to its tenants. But to the thinking naturalist Rumphius's explanation is merely a childish absurdity, while that of the recent botanists is infinitely more stimulating to the scientific imagination, disclosing as it does, on the one hand, the age-long struggles of a plant to live on the atmosphere and its moisture while exposed on hot cliffs and treetrunks, and, on the other hand, the no less persistent endeavors of the plastic ant to find new domiciles for its pullulating commonwealths.

The classical account of the relations of *Acacia sphaerocephala* (Fig.
177 and 178) and a species allied to *Pseudomyrma bicolor* is given by Belt in "The Naturalist in Nicaragua" (1874). He describes the large paired thorns tenanted by the ants, the extranuptial nectaries on the leaf-petioles and the yellow food-bodies at the tips of the leaflets, and puts these various structures down as so many symbiotic adaptations. He says that "hundreds of ants are to be seen running about, especially over the young leaves. If one of these be touched, or a branch shaken, the little ants (*Pseudomyrma bicolor* Guér.) swarm out from the hollow thorns and attack the aggressor with jaws and sting. . . . These ants form a most efficient standing army for the plant, which prevents not only the mammalia from browsing on the leaves, but delivers it from the attacks of a much more dangerous enemy, the leaf-cutting ants." Belt sowed the seeds of *Acacia* in his garden and reared some of the young plants. "Ants of many kinds were numerous; but none of them took to the thorns for shelter, nor the glands and fruit-like bodies for food. . . . The leaf-cutting ants attacked the young plants and defoliated them, but I have never seen any of the trees out on the savannahs that are guarded by the *Pseudomyrma* touched by them, and have no doubt the *Acacia* is protected from them by its little warriors." There are several other thorn-inhabiting *Pseudomyrma* (belti, fulvescens, spinicola) that nest in this and other species of *Acacia* in Central America and Mexico, and a *Cremastogaster* is also mentioned by Belt in this connection. Concerning the development of the thorns he says: "The thorns, when they are first developed, are soft, and filled with a sweetish pulpy substance; so that the ant, when it makes an entrance into them, finds its new house full of food. It hollows this out, leaving only the hardened shell of the thorn. Strange to say this treatment seems to favor the development of the thorn, as it increases its size, bulging out towards the base; whilst in my plants that were not touched by the ants, the thorns turned yellow and dried up into dead but persistent prickles. I am not sure, however, that this may not have been due to the habitat of the plant not suiting it." According to Rettig (1904) this latter statement is based on insufficient observation, for the enlargement of the thorns is not produced by the ants, although it does not make its appearance till the plant has grown considerably.

It has been known for some time that the Old World also has its acacias with enlarged thorns tenanted by ants. Gerstaecker (1871), Schweinfurth (1867–'68) and more recently Keller (1892) have called attention to the East African "uwadi" acacia (*A. fistulosa*), the greatly inflated thorns of which are white at first but when old become brown or black. According to Keller these thorns are nearly always inhabited by species of *Cremastogaster* (chiarinii, ruspolii or acaciae). He main-
tains that *A. fistulosa*, which furnishes a gum of commercial value, is never eaten by cattle and he attributes this immunity to the protecting ants. Concerning the growth of the thorns he says: "Of the manner in which the young inflations arise I am unable to form any satisfactory conception. They are produced in great numbers at the beginning of the rainy season, when the vegetation awakens, and are then green and soft. I never saw a hole in one of them. They are completely closed on all sides, and it is not till later that they are opened by the ants. I have seen no injuries, wounds, nor anything that could indicate that the deformation is due to insects, and I cannot therefore regard the inflations of the thorns as gall-formation. With this conclusion also harmonizes the fact communicated to me by Schweinfurth, that acacias grown from seed in Cairo also developed the inflations. The only explanation I can suggest is that in this plant an originally abnormal growth has become perfectly normal, under the influence of natural selection, through adaptation to symbiosis with ants." Keller calls attention to the singular fact that only a small number of the thorns on a plant become inflated. This suggests that bacteria or other pathogenic organisms may be responsible for the deformation, which is then put to good use by the ants.

A few words may be added on certain South American plants of the genera *Cordia*, *Humboldtia*, *Ficus* (*e. g.*, *inaequalis*), *Tococa* (Figs. 170 and 171) and *Triplaris* (Figs. 166, B and 167) and the East Indian *Clerodendron fistulosum*. All of these have preformed cavities either in the stems or in bursæ on the leaves and petioles. *Clerodendron* is said to have in the internodes preformed thin spots, or prostomata, which are selected as entrances by the ants (*Colobopsis clerodendri*). The leaves of this plant are furnished with innumerable nectaries along the midrib on the lower surface. In *Cordia nodosa* the flower-bearing stem is dilated above and contains a short, conical cavity which, according to Schimper, is not homologous with the medullary cavity of other plants, as its walls are formed by a fusion of a number of stems. The chamber, which is furnished with a small preformed opening above, is commonly tenanted by ants. Schumann (1888) and Metz (1890) have noted the remarkable fact that
this plant, when growing in the Antilles, fails to develop the hollow swellings in the stems. The hollow twigs of the Polygonaceous *Triplaris*, or "palo santo," of which some twenty species are known, are said to be invariably occupied by *Pseudomyrma*. Of these ants Forel (1904) says: "Through the investigations of Mr. Ule the fact becomes more and more firmly established that a definite group of *Pseudomyrma* species (*arboreis-sancta*, *dendroica* and *triplaridis*) lives symbiotically in the natural medullary cavities of *Triplaris*. In 1896 I myself

![Image](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

**Fig. 181.** Mound of *Formica exsectoides*, 0.2 meters high and 2.46 meters in diameter, almost completely covered with a moss (*Polytrichum commune*) which eventually envelops the summit of the nest and extinguishes the colony. (Original.)

observed in Colombia how *P. arboreis-sancta* var. *symbiotica* fiercely attacked anyone who touched the tree. Their brood filled the whole living tree from the trunk to the smallest green branches. They seemed to have entered this secure and ramifying domicile through a small dead and broken branch on the lower part of the trunk.”

No doubt the various cases cited in the preceding pages are of great interest, both to the botanist and myrmecologist, but it is equally certain that none of them has been studied with sufficient care to warrant the conclusions advocated by Belt, Schimper and others. The relationships under discussion are all compatible with the view that the ants have adapted themselves to the plants—*plantas itaque norunt formica*—but the converse of this proposition is in most, if not in all instances, open to doubt. Travelers and naturalists who observe for a short
time in the tropics, where all of these wonderful cases occur, are very apt to jump to conclusions, and carefully devised experiments, which alone can throw the necessary light on the subject, are still wanting.

The opinion here maintained is indirectly supported by what is known concerning some of the other relations that may obtain between plants and ants. These relations may be considered under the following heads:

1. Ants as Seed Distributors.—In the preceding chapter Mogridge's observations on the distribution of seeds by _Messor barbarus_ were mentioned, together with other facts which indicate that ants are important agents in scattering seeds. This habit is not confined to granivorous species. Lubbock (1894) saw _Lasius niger_ carrying violet seeds into its nest. More recently Sernander (1903) and some other botanists have come to believe that the ants eat the caruncles and that these structures are developed as lures, like the extrafloral nectaries and food-bodies, to induce the ants to carry the seeds to a distance and thus increase the chances of their survival. Dr. E. B. Southwick tells me that he has seen the ants in Central Park, N. Y., carry away the seeds of the blood-root (_Sanguinaria canadensis_) and feed on their caruncles.

2. Ant-gardens.—This name is given by Ule (1902) to certain sponge-like ant-nests (Fig. 179) which he found built on the branches of trees in the forests of the Amazon. These nests consist of soil carried up by the ants (_Asteca olithrix, ulei_ and _trausi_ and _Camponotus femoratus_) and held together by the roots of numerous epiphytes, which grow out of it on all sides, making it resemble the head of a Medusa. The ants not only perforate the soil with their galleries but, according to Ule, actually plant the epiphytes. This he infers from seeing the insects in the act of carrying the seeds. Perhaps these are brought into the nest for the sake of their caruncles and then germinate in the rich soil, but it is quite as probable that they are sown by the wind.

3. Plants Injurious to Ants.—If it be true that some plants deserve to be called "myrmecophilous," because they are helpful to ants in the struggle for existence, it is equally true that there are other plants that might with even greater justice be called "myrmecophobic," or "myrmecochthric," because they are injurious or even deadly to these insects. Such are, for example, certain moulds and bacteria. Queen ants while founding their colonies in damp cavities in soil or decaying wood often succumb to the incursions of these organisms, which under certain conditions may even exterminate the brood of larger colonies. Miss Fielde (1901b) says: "*Penicillium crustaceum* grows to ripeness, in
either darkness or light, upon eggs, larvae or pupae, if left for a few days unattended in the humid atmosphere required by the ants, and its sprouting spores may be seen on their surfaces under a magnification of about five hundred diameters. If the spores are left undisturbed they cover the young with a delicate dense white coat that becomes sage-green with the ripening of the new spores. . . . This delicate mould does not grow upon the bodies of dead ants, but is there replaced by *Rhizopus nigricans*, with long and spreading hyphae, and in this

![Image](image.png)

**Fig. 182.** Old mound of *Formica exsectoides* covered with vegetation and with only a few lingering remnants of the colony in its summit. (Original.)

may lie the cause for the carrying off and casting away of all ants that die or are killed in the nest."

Botanists have described several peculiar arrangements in higher plants, such as excessive hairiness, slipperiness or stickiness of the stems, or special palisades of hairs about the floral nectaries (nectarostegia) as means of preventing ants and other desultory arthropods from plundering the secretions intended for bees and other cross-fertilizing agents. But these arrangements, if really developed for this purpose, are often inefficacious. Vosseler (1906) has recently described an African ant which manages to get around the woolly hairs protecting the nectaries
in *Cobaea scandens* and gains access to these organs by biting a hole through the base of the petal, a habit which has also been observed in bees that are confronted with flowers whose nectaries they are unable to reach in any other way. But there are graver maladjustments between plants and ants, maladjustments that may lead to the death of the insects in great numbers or even to the extinction of their colonies. I have described a number of such cases in a recent paper (1906). The abundant and sticky juices of *Silene, Lactuca* and *Helianthus* exuding onto the stems or petioles often entrap and kill numbers of ants (Fig. 180). We owe to a similar property of the resiniferous conifers of the Tertiary the preservation of the ants in the Baltic and Sicilian ambers. Our North American pitcher plants (*Sarracenia*) also entrap, kill and digest enormous numbers of ants in the liquid at the bottoms of their ascidia. The ants most frequently found in these modified leaves are *Cremastoaster pilosa*, a species which will sometimes even nest in the dead pitchers of a plant whose active green leaves are busy killing them off in great numbers—a singular commentary on the "intelligence" of these insects, especially when we stop to consider that *C. pilosa* is one of the ants that constructs such beautiful sheds over aphids and coccids.

Another hostile relationship between plants and ants has been described in detail by Holmgren (1904). He observed that the mound nests of *Fornica exsecta* in the bogs of Lapland are gradually invaded and eventually so completely covered with a dense carpet of moss (*Polytrichum strictum*) that the ants are either driven away or destroyed. This moss is in turn replaced by a carpet of *Sphagnum*, in which many plants eventually take root, so that the ants are instrumental in forming the hummocks of moss and hence facilitate the growth of peat-forming vegetation. In the bogs of Prussia, according to Kuhlzt (1902), the *Myrmina* nests are invaded in a similar manner by *P. strictum*, and I have been able to observe various stages in the extinction of colonies of our North American *F. exsectoides* by an allied moss, *P. commune* (1906). This moss starts in the form of a narrow zone around the base of the huge mound nests (Fig. 181) and gradually grows upward till it completely envelopes their summits with a dense mat and either smothers the colony outright or compels it to emigrate (Fig. 182).
CHAPTER XVIII

THE FUNGUS-GROWING ANTS

"Quoique dans l'immense série des êtres, la fourmi ne soit qu'un point qui sans sa mobilité échapperait presque à nos regards, il n'en est pas moins vrai que cet atome animé est digne d'être l'objet de nos méditations. C'est ici qu'il convient de dire que l'Auteur de la nature n'est jamais plus lui-même que dans ce qu'il y a de plus petit."—Latreille, "Histoire Naturelle des Fourmis," 1802.

Although our examination, in the last chapter, of the relations between ants and vascular plants has led us to doubt the existence of a true symbiosis between these organisms and to interpret their relations as the result of a direct adaptation on the part of the ants, we are compelled to admit that there is what may be called a true symbiosis between ants and some of the lower plants. These ants all belong to the Myrmicine tribe Attii, which is peculiar to tropical and subtropical America, and the plants with which they are so intimately associated are fungi. The association is symbiotic, because the fungi are provided
with their substratum, or nutriment by the ants, and in turn supply these insects with their only food.

The Attii, of which about one hundred species, subspecies and varieties have been described, are all fungus-growers and -eaters. The tribe ranges from about 40° S. to 40° N. of the equator, but is best represented in the tropics. The species have been assigned to five genera, which, beginning with the most primitive, are *Myrmicocrypta*, *Cyphomyrmex*, *Apterostigma*, *Sericomyrmex* and *Atta*. The last of these is divided into six subgenera: *Mycocepurus*, *Mycetosoritis*, *Trachymyrmes*, *Mallerius*, *Acromyrmex* and *Atta s. str*. The subgenus *Atta*

![Image of ants](image)

**Fig. 185.** Worker of *Apterostigma pilosum* of Brazil. (Original.)

**Fig. 186.** Two species of *Cyphomyrmex* occurring in the United States. (Original) *a*, *C. rimosus*; *b*, *C. wheeleri*.

comprises the leaf-cutting, or parasol ants, the largest and most powerful species of the tribe, living in great colonies and inhabiting the territory between 30° north and 30° south of the equator. The workers are highly polymorphic and much smaller than the males and females. The colonies of the species of *Mallerius* and *Acromyrmex* are much less populous, and the workers, though variable in size, do not exhibit such marked polymorphism as those of *Atta s. str*. In *Trachymyrmes* and the remaining subgenera the workers are monomorphic and but little smaller than the males and females, and the colonies are even feebleer than those of *Acromyrmex*. *Mycetosoritis* and *Mycocepurus*
are in certain respects transitional to the genera *Cyphomyrmex* and *Myrmicocrypta* (Fig. 183), and species of the last show affinities with *Sericomyrmex* (Fig. 184). *Apterostigma* (Fig. 185) is very aberrant, resembling in form certain Myrmicines of the subgenera *Aphano-gaster* and *Ischnomyrmex*. The workers of *Atta* are covered with stiff, erect or suberect, hooked or curved hairs, and the surface of the body is tuberculate or spinose. In *Cyphomyrmex* the body is smoother and covered with short, appressed, scale-like hairs. In *Sericomyrmex* and *Apterostigma* the hairs are soft, flexuous and very abundant. With few exceptions all the Attii have the surface of the body opaque and of a ferruginous, brown or blackish color. All the species, moreover, though very powerful and able to make surprisingly extensive excavations in the soil, are very slow and sedate in their movements. The sting of the workers is vestigial, but

![Fig. 187. Fungus (Tyridiomyces formicarum) cultivated by Cyphomyrmex rimosus on insect excrement. (Original.) a, Bromatia, or food bodies; b, yeast-like cells of which these consist.](image)

![Fig. 188. Worker of Mycecephalus smithi of the American tropics. (Original.)](image)

in the larger species the sharp jaws may be used as most efficient organs of defence. The smaller species are extremely timid and when roughly handled "feign death" like many beetles. In all the species the hard, rough or spinose integument must afford efficient protection from alien ants and other enemies.

The Attii are such conspicuous, abundant and destructive insects in tropical America that we are not surprised to find an extensive literature on their taxonomy and habits. The latter have been described by Buckley (1860), Bates (1863), Lincecum (1867), Norton (1868), B. R. Townsend (1870), Belt (1874), McCook (1879a, 1879b), Morris
(1880), Brent (1886), Tanner (1892), Moeller (1893), von Ihering (1894, 1898), Urich (1895a, 1895b), Swingle (1896), Forel (1896a–c, 1897, 1899–1900, 1901), Sampaio (1894), Goeldi (1905a and b, Forel 1905) and J. Huber (1905). I have recently reviewed these authors in a paper on the North American Attii (1907c), to which the reader is referred for many details that cannot be given in this chapter.

The first important observations on these insects were published by Belt in his interesting volume, "The Naturalist in Nicaragua." He was the first to surmise the use to which the leaves, etc., are put by *Atta cephalotes*, concerning which he writes: "Notwithstanding that these ants are so common throughout tropical America, and have excited the attention of nearly every traveller, there still remains much doubt as to the use to which the leaves are put. Some naturalists have supposed that they used them directly as food; others, that they roof their underground nests with them. I believe the real use they make of them is as a manure, on which grows a minute species of fungus, on which they feed;—that they are, in reality, mushroom growers and eaters. This explanation is so extraordinary and unexpected, that I may be permitted to enter somewhat at length on the facts that led me to adopt it. When I first began my warfare against the ants that attacked my garden, I dug down deeply into some of their nests. In our mining operations we also, on two occasions, carried our excava-

**Fig. 189.** *Mycetosoritis hartmani* of Texas. (Original.) *a*, Worker, dorsal view; *b*, same in profile; *c*, male.
tions from below up through very large formicariums so that all their underground workings were exposed to observation. I found their nests below to consist of numerous rounded chambers, about as large as a man's head, connected together by tunnelled passages leading from one chamber to another. Notwithstanding that many columns of the

![Picture of a nest]

*Fig. 190. Section of Mycetosoritis hartmani nest in pure sand; about \( \frac{1}{8} \) natural size. Two of the chambers contain pendent fungus gardens. (Photograph by C. G. Hartman.)*

ants were continually carrying in the cut leaves, I could never find any quantity of these in the burrows, and it was evident that they were used up in some way immediately they were brought in. The chambers were always about three parts filled with a speckled, brown, flocculent, spongy-looking mass of a light and loosely connected substance.
Throughout these masses were numerous ants belonging to the smallest division of the workers, which do not engage in leaf-cutting. Along with them were pupæ and larvæ, not gathered together, but dispersed, apparently irregularly, throughout the flocculent mass. This mass, which I have called the ant-food, proved, on examination to be composed of minutely subdivided pieces of leaves, withered to a brown color, and overgrown and lightly connected together by a minute white fungus that ramified in every direction throughout it. I not only found this fungus in every chamber I opened, but also in the chambers

![Fig. 191. Fungus garden of the Mycetosoritis nest shown in Fig. 190 enlarged about ¼. (Photograph by C. G. Hartman.)](image)

of the nest of a distinct species that generally comes out only in the night-time, often entering houses and carrying off various farinaceous substances, and does not make mounds above its nests, but long winding passages, terminating in chambers similar to the common species and always, like them, three parts filled with flocculent masses of fungus-covered vegetable matter, amongst which are the ant-nurses and immature ants. When a nest is disturbed, and the masses of ant-food spread about, the ants are in great concern to carry away every morsel of it under shelter again; and sometimes, when I dug into the nest, I found the next day all the earth thrown out filled with little
pits that the ants had dug into it to get out the covered up food. When they migrate from one part to another, they also carry with them all the ant-food from their old habitations. That they do not eat the leaves themselves I convinced myself, for I found near the tenanted chambers, deserted ones filled with the refuse particles of leaves that had been exhausted as manure for the fungus, and were now left, and served as food for larvae of Staphylinidae and other beetles.

"These ants do not confine themselves to leaves, but also carry off any vegetable substance that they find suitable for growing fungus on. They are very partial to the inside white rind of oranges, and I have also seen them cutting up and carrying off the flowers of certain shrubs, the leaves of which they have neglected. They are very particular about the ventilation of their underground chambers, and have numerous holes leading up to the surface from them. These they open out or close up, apparently to keep up a regular degree of temperature below."

Observations on *A. cephalotes* were resumed in 1892 in Trinidad by Tanner, who was the first to study these insects in artificial nests and to prove that not only the adult *Atta* but also the larvae feed on the fungus described by Belt. A year later, Alfred Moeller published the most important of existing works on these ants and their relations to the fungi which they cultivate. He studied several Brazilian species of *Atta* belonging to the subgenus *Acromyrmex* (*discigera, coronata, octospinosa, malleri*) and to the genera *Apterostigma* (*pilosum, malleri, wasmanni, and an undetermined species*) and *Cyphomyrmex* (*auritus, strigatus*). *A. octospinosa* and *discigera*, which nest in the woods,
form truncated cones of dead leaves and twigs, beneath which they excavate a single chamber containing a large fungus garden sometimes 1.5 meters long. *A. malleri* has similar habits, but *coronata* resembles the species of the subgenus *Atta s. str.* in forming several chambers, each with its own fungus garden. In all of these species the garden is built up on the floor of the chamber in the form of a loose sponge-work of triturated leaf-fragments, permeated with fungus hyphae which he describes as follows: “Over all portions of the surface of the garden are seen round, white corpuscles about .25 mm. in diameter on an average, although some of them are fully .5 mm., and sometimes adjacent corpuscles fuse to form masses 1 mm. across and of irregular form. After a little experience one learns to detect these corpuscles with the naked eye as pale, white points which are everywhere abundant in all nests. Under the lens they sometimes have a glistening appearance like drops of water. They are absent from the youngest, most recently established portions of the garden, but elsewhere uniformly distributed, so that it is impossible to remove with the fingers a particle too small to contain some of the white bodies. I call these the ‘kohlrabi clusters’ of the ants’ nests. They constitute the principal, if not

---

**Fig. 193.** Tower-shaped nest crater of *Trachymyrmex luridus* in Texan *cedar brake; natural size.* (Photograph by A. L. Melander.)
the only food of the species of *Atta.*” These clusters are made up of the “heads of kohlrabi which are small terminal dilatations of the hyphae of a spherical or oval form.” Moeller confirmed Belt’s observations on the solicitude of the ants for their gardens, and showed that these insects in artificial nests will completely rebuild these structures within twelve hours after they have been disintegrated or scattered. He saw the ants eating the fungus and was able to satisfy himself that the different species of *Atta* will eat the kohlrabi from one another’s colonies, but not that of *Apterostigma* or *Cyphomyrmex.* Belt supposed that the smallest workers, or minims comminute the leaves and build up the fungus gardens. According to Moeller, however, this is the office of the mediae, as the leaves are too thick to be manipulated by the smallest workers. The latter have another function, namely, that of weeding the garden and keeping down the growth of spores belonging to alien fungi. Moeller emphasizes the remarkable fact that the gardens are pure cultures although the hairy, rough-bodied workers must be continually bringing into the nests all sorts of spores and bacteria. It is probable, also, that the minims are instrumental in producing the “kohlrabi heads,” as these are not developed when the mycelium is grown in artificial culture media apart from the influence of the ants. He summarizes the results of this portion of his studies in the following words: “All the fungus-gardens of the *Atta* species I have investigated, are pervaded with the same kind of mycelium, which produces the ‘kohlrabi clusters’ as long as the ants are cultivating the gardens. Under the influence of the ants neither free aerial hyphae nor any form of fruit are ever developed. The mycelium proliferates through the garden to the complete exclusion of any alien fungus, and the fungus garden of a nest represents in its entirety a pure culture of a single fungus. The fungus has two different forms of conidia which arise in the garden when it is removed from the influence of the ants. The hyphae have a very pronounced tendency to produce swellings or diverticula, which show several more or less peculiar and clearly differentiated variations. One of these, which has presumably reached its present form through the influence of cultivation and selection on the part of the ants, is represented by the ‘kohlrabi heads.’”
Moeller undertook to determine the systematic position of the fungus. He naturally supposed that the discovery of the fruiting form would show it to be an Asco- or Basidiomycete. Although he failed to raise either of these forms from his mycelial cultures, he succeeded on four occasions in finding an undescribed Agaricine mushroom with wine-red stem and pileus growing in extinct or abandoned *Acromyrmex* nests. From the basidiospores of this plant, which he called *Rhosites gongylophora*, he succeeded in raising a mycelium resembling in all respects that of the ant gardens. Three of the species of *Acromyrmex* did not hesitate to eat portions of this mycelium and of the pileus and

![Figure 195. Vestigial nest crater of *Trachymyrmex septentrionalis*. (Original.) The nest entrance is at x, the pile of sand pellets shown in the lower right-hand corner represents the crater of *Atta texana* and *Maquerius versicolor.*](image)

stem of the *Rhosites*. He believed, therefore, that he had definitively established the specific identity of the fungus cultivated by the ants. A careful perusal of Moeller's observations shows an important lacuna at this point. That his *Atta* ate portions of the pileus and stem of the *Rhosites* does not prove that it is the fruiting form belonging to the fungus they habitually cultivate and eat. Nor is Moeller on much surer ground when he assumes that the mycelia cultivated by different
genera of Attii belong to different species of fungi, for it is very probable that the ants of one species would avoid fungus taken from the nest of another on account of the alien nest-aura. Certainly, to the human olfactories, the fungus gardens of *Atta texana* have a very striking odor which is altogether lacking in the gardens of *Trachymyrmex*, and it would be strange if these differences did not affect the appetites of such sensitive insects as the ants. In my opinion, it is not improbable that the fungi cultivated by the ants may be more closely related to the moulds (Ascomycetes) than to the mushrooms (Basidiomycetes). Moeller does, in fact, call attention to certain Ascomycte peculiarities in the mycelium cultivated by *Acromyrmex disciger.* This is a matter, however, to be settled by the mycologist, and I merely call attention to it in this connection, because Moeller's somewhat guarded statements have assumed an unduly positive form in subsequent reviews of his work.

The species of *Apterostigma* investigated by Moeller usually nest in cavities in rotten wood which is often also inhabited by other insects. The fine wood castings and excrement of these insects are used by the ants as material with which to construct their fungus-gardens. *A. wasmanni* constructs the largest nests, and it is only in the gardens of this species that the mycelium produces structures analogous to the "kohlrabi heads" and "clusters" of *Acromyrmex*. The "heads," however, are club-shaped instead of spherical dilations of the hyphae.

The gardens of *pilosum, maelei* and of another undetermined *Apterostigma*, which live in feeble colonies of only twelve to twenty individuals, are suspended from the roofs of the small cavities, 3 to 4
cm. in diameter, in the rotten wood and exhibit a peculiar structure not seen in other Attii. "The garden is often completely, or at least nearly always in great part, enclosed in a white cobweb-like membrane. It was often possible to obtain a view of uninjured nests of *A. pilosum* that had been excavated in clefts of the rotten wood. In such cases the envelope enclosed the whole fungus garden like a bag, with only a single orifice or entrance. The envelope is attached in a pendent position to the surrounding wood, roots or particles of earth by means of radiating fibers, and this explains why the gardens are so easily torn asunder while the nest is being uncovered."

Even in captivity these ants persisted in hanging their gardens to the sides of the glass dishes in which they were kept.

The two species of *Cyphomyrmex* observed by Moeller were found nesting under bark or in rotten wood like *Apterostigma*. The largest gardens of *C. strigatus* are only 8 cm. long, whereas those of *C. auritus* may attain a length of 15 cm. and a breadth and height of 5 cm. These gardens are never pendent and never enclosed in a mycelial envelope. In other respects they resemble those of *Apterostigma* and are grown on the same substrata.

Moeller's studies were confined to the adult colonies of the Attii. The question as to how these ants came by their fungi in the first place, was subsequently answered by the researches of Sampaio (1894), von Ihering (1898), Goeldi (1905a and b) and Huber (1905, 1907, 1908). Sampaio found fungus gardens in very young formicaries of the Brazilian *Atta sexdens*, and von Ihering showed that the virgin female of this species, on leaving the nest for her marriage flight, carries in her infrabuccal pocket a pellet of hyphae taken from the fungus garden of the maternal formicary. This pellet is the unex- pelled refuse of her last meal. After fecundation she digs a cavity in the soil, closes its opening to the outside world and sets to work to found a colony. She spits out the pellet of hyphae and cultivates it, while she is at the same time laying eggs and rearing the larvae. Von Ihering and Goeldi maintain that she crushes some of her eggs and uses them as a substratum for the incipient fungus garden. J. Huber
describes the behavior of the young queen in greater detail and is able to trace the development of the colony up to the hatching of the first brood of workers. He finds that the female expels the pellet from her buccal pocket the day following the nuptial flight. It is a little mass .5 mm. in diameter, white, yellowish or even black in color, and consists of fungus hyphae imbedded in the substances collected from the ant's body by means of the strigils on her fore feet and thence deposited in her mouth. By the third day six to ten eggs are laid. At this time also the pellet begins to send out hyphae in all directions. The female separates the pellet into two masses on this or the following day. For the next ten to twelve days she lays about ten eggs daily, while the fungus flocculi grow larger and more numerous. At first

![Image: Nest craters of *Mallerius versicolor* in a sandy "draw" in the deserts of Arizona. (Original.)](image)

the eggs and flocculi are kept separate, but they are soon brought together and at least a part of the eggs are placed on or among the flocculi. Eight or ten days later the flocculi have become so numerous that they form when brought together a round or elliptical disk about 1 cm. in diameter. This disk is converted into a dish-shaped mass with central depression in which the eggs and larvae are thenceforth kept. The first larvae appear about fourteen to sixteen days after the *Atta*
female has completed her burrow, and the first pupæ appear about a month after the inception of the colony. At this time the fungus garden has a diameter of only 2 cm. There are no "kohlrabi" corpuscles in the earlier stages, and when first seen they are at the periphery of the disk. A week later the pupæ begin to turn brown and in a few days the first workers hatch. Hence the time required for the establishment of a colony under the most favorable conditions is about forty days. After this rapid survey of the matter, Huber asks the important question: How does the Atta female manage to keep the fungus alive and growing? Obviously the small amount of substance in the original pellet must soon be exhausted and the growing hyphae must

![Image of ants](image-url)

**Fig. 199.** Male, deëlated female, soldier and series of workers of *Atta texana*; natural size. (Photograph by A. L. Melander and C. T. Brues.)

be supplied with nutriment from some other source. His interesting answer to this question may be given in his own words: "After carefully watching the ant for hours she will be seen suddenly to tear a little piece of the fungus from the garden with her mandibles and hold it against the tip of her gaster, which is bent forward for this purpose. At the same time she emits from her vent a clear yellowish or brownish droplet which is at once absorbed by the tuft of hyphae. Hereupon the tuft is again inserted, amid much feeling about with the antennæ, in the garden, but usually not in the same spot from which it was taken, and is then patted in place by means of the fore feet. The fungus then sucks up the droplet more or less quickly. Often several of these
drops may be clearly seen scattered over the young fungus garden. According to my observations, this performance is repeated usually once or twice an hour, and sometimes, to be sure, even more frequently. It can almost always be observed a number of times in succession when a mother ant that has no fungus, as sometimes happens in the cultures, is given a piece of fungus belonging to another Atta female or from an older colony. The mother ant is visibly excited while she explores the gift with her antennæ, and usually in a few minutes begins to divide it up and rebuild it. At such times she first applies each piece to her vent in the manner above described and drenches it with a fecal droplet.” From these observations Huber concludes that the droplet must be liquid excrement and that the fungus owes its growth to this method of manuring. A direct use of malaxed eggs for this purpose was never observed and could not be detected by microscopic examination, although a number of observations showed that the same result may be accomplished indirectly, namely, by the female eating her own eggs. This habit is so common and apparently so normal that Huber estimates that nine out of every ten eggs are devoured by the mother, often as soon as they are laid. The life of the Atta female in her little cell during all this time is very rhythmical. At regular intervals she conscientiously examines the walls of the cavity, flattens out the earth, etc. She devotes more time to licking and manuring the fungus garden and, of course, lavishes most care on the brood. As soon as the larvae appear they are fed directly with eggs thrust into their mouths by their mother. Huber concludes that this is their normal diet till the first workers hatch. He never saw the female either eating the fungus mycelium herself or feeding it to the young. As proof of this contention he cites the case of one of his Atta queens who brought up a brood without a fungus garden. With the appearance of the firstling workers, which are minims, that is, workers of the smallest worker caste, a change comes over the colony. They begin to usurp the functions of the mother ant. They manure the garden, which at the time of their appearance measures hardly more than 2.5 cm. in diameter, and feed the larvae with their mother’s eggs. The workers themselves, however, feed on the “kohlrabi” which has been developing on the hyphæ in the meantime. After about a week some of the workers begin to dig in the earth, and ten days after the appearance of the first worker and seven weeks after the inception of the colony, they break through to the surface of the soil and surround the entrance of the nest with a tiny crater of earthen pellets. They now begin to bring pieces of leaves, cut and knead them up into minute wads, and insert them in the fungus garden. The method of manuring the garden with
fecal droplets seems now to be abandoned. The mother *Atta* henceforth pays no attention to the development of the garden or to the brood, but degenerates into a sluggish egg-laying machine, while the multifarious labors of the colony devolve on the workers. In the meantime the “kohlrabi” has become so abundant that it can be fed to the larvæ. In concluding his paper Huber makes the important observation that fertile females of *Atta sexdens* are readily adopted by strange workers of their own species. Such adoptions may be frequently resorted to in a state of nature and would perhaps account for the enormous size and great age of some of the formicaries of the larger species of *Atta*, which in this respect resemble the colonies of *Formica rufa* and *F. exsectoides* in the north temperate zone.

Only a few of the Attiine ants have spread from their original tropical home into the southern, subtropical portions of the United States. These are *Cyphomyrmex rimosus* var. *comalensis* and subsp. *minutus*, *C. wheeleri*, *Mycetosoritis hartmani*, *Trachymyrmex septentrionalis* with the var. *obscurior*, *T. turriflex* and *arizonensis*, *Mallaurias versicolor* and its subsp. *chisosensis* and *Atta texana*. I have been able to observe all of these except *T. arizonensis* in a living condition, and as they exhibit nearly the whole range of Attiine habits they may be very briefly described. For many additional details the reader is referred to my paper mentioned above.

1. *Cyphomyrmex.*—Our two species of this genus, the most primitive in the series, have very different habits. *C. rimosus* (Fig. 186, a), which is widely distributed through the tropics, enters the tip of Florida and southwestern Texas. It makes small, concealed nests under stones or logs in rather damp, shady places and collects caterpillar excrement as a substratum on which to grow its fungi (Fig. 187). These are very unlike the fungi raised by any other Attiine ants except *Myco-
cephurus (Fig. 188), being yellowish, compact, irregularly polygonal or pyriform bodies, .25-.55 mm. in diameter, and consisting of elliptical cells much like those of the yeast plant (Saccharomyces). To this fungus I have given the name Tyridiomyces formicarum. C. wheeleri (Fig. 186, b) is a nocturnal species which nests under stones on the dry hills of western Texas. It collects small plant slivers and cultivates on them a flocculent, snow-white mycelium with well-developed “kohlrabi clusters” and “heads,” or bromatia and gongylidia, as I prefer to call these hyphal modifications in this and the other fungi cultivated by the Attii. In both of our species of Cyphomyrmex the gardens are small (only a few cm. in diameter) and of irregular shape. They are never suspended but lie on the floors of small dilations in the rough earthen galleries of the nest.

2. Mycetosoritis.—Our single species, M. hartmani (Fig. 189), is a small brown ant, which lives in the sand of the Texan post-oak woods. Here it builds small craters, the openings of which run down vertically into the sand to a depth of 24-79 cm., suddenly dilating at long intervals into two to four subspherical chambers, which vary from 1.3-3.4 cm. in diameter (Figs. 190 and 191). As a rule, these chambers, which are thus strung along the gallery like beads on a thread, increase in size with the depth. While excavating their chambers the ants leave the rootlets of plants dangling into them as suspensoria for their fungus gardens. These consist of flower anthers
collected from the surface of the sand, built up into a flocculent mass and held together and to the pendent rootlets by means of a snow-white mycelium studded with the usual bromatia.

3. Trachymyrmex.—T. turrisex (Fig. 192, a) and arisonensis are confined to the dry regions of the southwest. The nest of the former resembles that of Mycetosoritis, but is larger and, as a rule, in more compact soil. The vertical gallery, which opens on a turret-shaped crater made of bits of sticks and leaves (Fig. 193), descends to a depth of 38–110 cm. and has at intervals four to five subspherical chambers 2–5 cm. in diameter and increasing in size with the depth
(Fig. 194). The gardens are suspended like those of *Mycetosoritis* and consist of triturated vegetable substances (leaves, oak-catkins, etc.) covered with a white mycelium. *T. septentrionalis* (Fig. 192, b), our most widely distributed Attiine ant, ranges from Texas through the Southern and Atlantic States as far north as the Raritan River in New Jersey. Its nests, which are always excavated in sand, consist of two to seven subspherical chambers (Fig. 196). When there are only

![Fig. 203. Entire fungus garden of *Atta texana;* about 1/4 natural size. (Photograph by A. L. Melander and C. T. Brues.]

two of these, the nest usually resembles that of *Mycetosoritis* and *T. turrisex,* although the entrance is oblique and the excavated sand is thrown out to one side of the opening and not built up in the form of a regular crater (Fig. 195). When several chambers are present, there are two or three galleries each with one or two chambers, branching off from the main or entrance gallery below the first chamber. The total depth of the nest is usually much less than in *turrisex* (about 35 cm.). The gardens resemble those of *turrisex,* but the fungus has
a more bluish tint and the substratum is coarser and less flocculent and
often consists of caterpillar droppings.

4. *Müllerius*.—Our only species is *M. versicolor* (Fig. 197), a
Mexican ant which enters the extreme southern portion of Texas and
Arizona. It constructs elegant craters 10–30 cm. in diameter in sandy
depressions in the deserts (Fig. 198). The subterranean portion of
the nest has not been satisfactorily explored, but probably consists of
a single large chamber with a single fungus garden on its floor, as
in the South American species of *Müllerius* and the closely allied
*Acromyrmex*. *M. versicolor*, unlike the ants of the preceding groups,
is a true leaf-cutter, i.e., it defoliates shrubs and trees like the species
of *Atta s. str.* and does not collect the substances for the substratum
of its gardens from the surface of the ground about the nest.

5. *Atta s. str.*—*A. texana* (Figs. 199 and 200), the leaf-cutting
ant, our only species of this subgenus, occurs in loamy or sandy soil
in central Texas. It is the largest and most formidable of our species
and often does considerable injury to cultivated plants along the Brazos
and Guadeloupe Rivers. Its habits are similar to those of the South
and Central American *A. cephalotes* and *sexdens*. Externally the nest
appears as a large, flat mound, often covering an area of more than
100 sq. m., and made up of a number of more or less fused craters,
10–100 cm. in diameter, with large openings (3–6 cm.) leading into
galleries of the same diameter. These galleries often extend to a
depth of 2–5 m., where they enter chambers sometimes 50–100 cm. long
and 30 cm. broad and high, with flattened floors and arched ceilings
(Fig. 202). On the floor of each chamber lies a large garden, made of
triturated leaves, built up in the form of an irregular comb or flattened
spunge, covered with a white mycelium and studded with the usual
bromatia, or food-bodies (Fig. 203). *A. texana* is the only one of
our species which has highly polymorphic workers. The minimæ
always remain in the gardens where they carefully weed the hyphæ
and prevent the growth of any alien fungi that may be introduced by
the foraging workers; the mediae, cut, carry in and triturate the leaves
and build up the garden; while the maximæ, or soldiers, guard the
nest.

The foregoing series of forms together with others occurring only
in tropical America, show a perceptible advance in the fungus-growing
habit within the Attine tribe. The lower genera *Cyphamyrmes*, and
probably also *Myrmicocrypta*, make small, crude nests, with irregular,
se ssile gardens of insect excrement. *Apterostigma*, *Sericomyrmes*,
*Mycetosoritis* and *Trachymyrmes* all excavate more regular nests and
construct pendent gardens of insect excrement and vegetable débris.
The gardens of *Apterostigma* are provided with a special mycelial envelope, but they are naked in all the other Attine genera and subgenera. *Mallierius* and *Acromyrmex* make a single large garden on the floor of the single nest-chamber. Finally, in *Atta s. str.*, the nest attains huge dimensions and comprises a number of large chambers, each with its sessile fungus-garden resembling the single garden of *Acromyrmex* and *Mallierius*.

While this series of forms shows an interesting and significant advance in the methods of raising fungi, it throws little light on the origin of this complicated and extraordinary habit. Forel is inclined to believe that the ancestral Attii lived, like the existing *Apterostigma*, in rotten wood and gradually acquired the habit of cultivating on insect excrement the fungi which they chanced to find in the moist galleries of their nests. Von Ihering surmises that the Attii are descended from harvesting ants which transferred their appetite from the hard seeds in their chambers to the delicate fungi that accidentally grew on these stores. In this connection Santschi's observations on the seed-storing *Oxyopomyrmex*, cited on p. 273, are very suggestive. Besides the Attii there are also two other groups of fungus-growing insects, the ambrosia beetles (Scolytidae), which cultivate fungus on their excrement or on the walls of their burrows in the trunks of trees, and a long series of paleotropical termites which raise fungi on sponge-like masses of their excrement in large chambers like those of *Atta s. str*. A study of these cases and of the female *Atta* while she is establishing her colony, would seem to indicate that all fungus-growing insects originally used their own excrement as a substratum for their gardens and only later took to adding other substances (excrement of other insects and pieces of leaves in the Attii, wood-shavings in the ambrosia beetles). But how these various insects first came into possession of the fungi which they now so assiduously cultivate and transmit from generation to generation, we are unable to state, especially as our knowledge of these plants is still so rudimentary that we cannot even say whether they are Ascomycetes or Basidiomycetes, independent species or merely permanently or temporarily modified phases of certain well-known moulds or mushrooms. The study of the Attii and other fungus-growing insects has only just begun, and further advance in this fascinating subject will be more difficult for the mycologist than for the entomologist. The latter, however, will have to build on the investigations of the former.
CHAPTER XIX

THE RELATIONS OF ANTS TO PLANT-lice, SCALE-INSECTS, TREE-HOPPERS AND CATERPILLARS


"Viennent enfin ces peuplades qui couvrent la surface de la terre, et dont les républiques sont si nombreuses que le globe ne leur suffiroit pas si la nature n'eût mis de justes bornes à leur multiplication. Une foule d'insectes deviennent leur proie; la petitesse des individus est compensée chez elles par le nombre, mais la force n'est pas leur principale ressource. Ce ne sont pas non plus les fleurs et les fruits qui leur fournissent leur pâture ordinaire; elle est l'objet d'une industrie plus recherchée. Les peuplades dont nous parlons, vont la recueillir auprès de certains êtres pacifiques qui vivent en troupes, et leur prodiguent sans contrainte les sucs qu'ils savent extraire des plantes. Elles ont l'art de s'en faire entendre, de les réunir dans leur habitation, et de les défendre contre leurs ennemis."—P. Huber, "Recherches sur les Mœurs des Fourmis Indigènes," 1810.

In gaining their wide and intimate acquaintance with the vegetable world the ants have also become acquainted with a large number of insects that obtain their nutriment directly from plants, either by sucking up their juices or by feeding on their foliage. To the former group belong the phytophthoraceous Homoptera, the plant-lice (Aphididae), scale insects or mealy bugs (Coccidae), tree-hoppers (Membracidæ), lantern-flies (I'ulgoridæ) and jumping plant-lice (Psyllidæ); to the latter belong the caterpillars of the Lycaenid butterflies, the "blues," or "azures" as they are popularly called. All of these creatures excrete liquids which are eagerly sought by the ants and constitute the whole, or at any rate, an important part of the food of certain species. In return the Homoptera and caterpillars receive certain services from the ants, so that the relations thus established between these widely different insects may be regarded as a kind of symbiosis. These relations are most apparent in the case of the aphids, and as these insects have been more often and more closely studied in Europe and America, they may be considered first and at somewhat greater length.

The consociation of the ants with the aphids is greatly facilitated by the gregarious and rather sedentary habits of the latter, especially in their younger, wingless stages, for the ants are thus enabled to obtain a large amount of food without losing time and energy in ranging far afield from their nests. Then, too, the ants may establish their
nests in the immediate vicinity of the aphid droves or actually keep them in their nests or in "sheds" carefully constructed for the purpose.

Nearly all plants, except the cryptogams, may be infested by aphids, and no part of the plant is free from their attacks. Certain species prefer the leaves, others the twigs, and still others the roots and subterranean stems. Most species live on the surfaces of the plants but a number also make and inhabit galls. Only the former, of course, are accessible to the ants. The sedentary and gregarious habits of the aphids also expose them to a host of enemies, among which the Coccinellid beetles and their larvae, the larvae of certain Diptera (Syrphidae) and Neuroptera (Chrysopa, Hemerobius) and a host of small parasitic Hymenoptera (Pteromalidae, Braconidae, Crabronidae) are the most formidable.

The aphids pierce the integument of the plant with their slender, pointed mouth-parts and imbibe the juices which consist of water con-

![Fig. 204. Portion of tap-root of wormwood (Artemisia vulgaris) with Lasius umbratus workers attending young and adult plant-lice (Trama radicis). (Mordwilko.) a, Sucking adult Trama with hind legs raised; b, ant palpating Trama with her feelers; c, ant receiving droplet of honey-dew from anus of Trama; d and e, ants carrying away plant-lice in their jaws; f, Trama with droplet of honey-dew suspended from perianal hairs.](image-url)

taining in solution cane sugar, invert sugar, dextrin and a small amount of albuminoid substance. In the alimentary tract of the insects much of the cane sugar is split up to form invert sugar, and a relatively small amount of all the substances is assimilated, so that the excrement is not only abundant but contains more invert and less cane sugar than the juices of the plant. This excrement is voided in colorless drops, and when it falls on the leaves of the plants and dries in the air is known as "honey-dew," the ros melleus, mel aërium, roscida mella, melligo, διόν μέλι of the ancient writers. Réaumur (1737) and Leche (1765) seem to have been the first to ascertain that the honey-dew, which the ancients supposed to come from the plants, from the sky or
from some other mysterious source, is voided by the droves of plant-llice. Within more recent years this subject has been exhaustively studied by Büsgen (1891). The quantity of honey-dew excreted by the aphids, when we consider the small size of these insects, is most surprising. Büsgen found that a single linden aphid excretes nineteen drops in twenty-four hours, while the maple aphid excretes as many as forty-eight drops during the same period. A source of nutriment at once so rich and so inexhaustible, could hardly remain unnoticed and unexploited by the ants in their interminable search for liquid food.

Some ants (Leptothorax sp.) obtain the honey-dew merely by licking the surface of the leaves and stems on which it has fallen, but many species have learned to stroke the aphids and induce them to void the liquid gradually so that it can be imbibed directly. A drove of plant-llice, especially when it is stationed on young and succulent leaves or twigs, may produce enough honey-dew to feed a whole colony of ants for a considerable period. But the aphidicolous habit has not been acquired by all ants. The highly carnivorous Dorylinæ and Ponerinæ never attend these insects and care nothing for their excretions, and the same is true of the exquisitely carnivorous, granivorous and fungus-eating genera of Myrmicinæ (Pseudomyrma, Pogonomyrmex, Atta, etc.). Other Myrmicinæ genera, such as Myrmica, Cremastogaster, Tetramorium and Monomorium contain many aphidicolous species. The two highest subfamilies, however, the Dolichoderinæ and Camponotinæ, represent the most perfect development of the habit, especially the genera Iridomyrmex, Dolichoderus, Azteca and Liometopum of the former, and Lasius, Brachymyrmex, Prenolepis, Plagioteles, Ecophylla, Formica, Myrmecocystus and Lasius of the latter subfamily. In our north temperate region the species of Lasius

![Carton aphid-tent built by Cremastogaster lineolata on twig of swamp huckleberry. (Original.)](image)
excell those of all other genera in this respect; in fact, the yellow, subterranean ants of the subgenus Acanthomyops, which is peculiar to North America, live exclusively on the excrement of root-aphids and coccids.

The behavior of ants in the presence of aphids has been observed by P. Huber (1810), Forel (1874), Witlaczil (1882), Lubbock (1888a), Büsgen (1891), Lichtenstein (1877-'80), Forbes (1894, 1905, 1906), Del Guercio, Kolbe (1888), Shouteden (1902), Mordwilko (1896, 1901, 1907), and others too numerous to cite. One of the best of the early accounts of this behavior is that of Huber (p. 181 et seq.): "A thistle branch was covered with brown ants [Lasius niger] and aphids. I observed the latter for some time, in order, if possible, to ascertain the precise moment when they emitted this secretion from their bodies; but I remarked that it exuded very rarely of itself, and that the aphids, when separated from the ants, discharged it to a distance, by making a movement like a sudden jerk.

"Why did nearly all the ants that were climbing about on the stems, have their abdomens distended as if with some liquid? This question I was able to answer by watching a single ant, whose exact method of procedure I will endeavor to describe. I saw her first crawl over some aphids without pausing and without disturbing them; but she soon halted near one of the smallest and seemed to caress its abdomen, stroking it alternately first with one and then with the other antenna. I was surprised to see the liquid escape from the aphid's body, and the ant seize and imbibe the droplet at once. Her antennae were thereupon applied to another much larger aphid, which, on being caressed in the same manner, voided a larger drop of the nutrient liquid. The ant advanced to seize it, and then moved on to a third which she caressed in the same manner. The liquid was voided immediately and received by the ant. She moved on; a fourth, probably already exhausted, refused to respond to her solicitations and the ant, probably divining that she had nothing to expect, quitted this aphid for a fifth from which I saw her obtain a further supply of food.

"A few such repasts are quite sufficient, and the satiated ant returns to the nest. Thereupon I watched the other ants that had remained behind on the thistle, and they were seen to present the same scene. I always noticed that the arrival of the ants and the stroking of their antennae preceded the evacuation of the liquid, and that the attitude of the plant-lace, with their heads directed downward, seemed to be assumed for this very purpose. I witnessed this remarkable procedure thousands and thousands of times; it was always employed by the ants with the same success whenever they wished to obtain food from the
aphids. If the latter are too long neglected, they discharge the honey-dew on the leaves, where the returning ants find and collect it, before they approach the insects by which it was voided. But if the ants visit the aphids assiduously, the latter seem to comply with their desires by hastening the moment of evacuation. This is indicated by the diameter of the exuded droplet; and at such times they do not eject the ant-manna to a distance, but, so to speak, retain and hand it over to their attendants.

“It sometimes happens that the ants are so numerous on a particular plant that they exhaust the aphids with which it is covered. Under such circumstances they stroke the bodies of their nurses in vain and are compelled to wait till these have pumped up a fresh supply of sap from the stems. The aphids are by no means parsimonious, and if they have anything to give, never fail to respond to the ants’ solicitations. I have repeatedly seen the same aphid yield several drops in succession to different ants that seemed very eager for the syrup.”

Many aphids bear on the sides of the sixth abdominal segment a pair of tubules with terminal orifices, known as cornicles, siphons or nectaries. Réaumur and other earlier authors saw drops of liquid exuding from these as well as from the anal opening, and from such observations has come the erroneous statement that the honey-dew is a secretion of the siphons instead of being merely the excrement of the plant-lice. Linné, for example, says of these insects: “Pleræque duo cornua, postica abdominis gerunt, quibus excersent rorem melleum hæ formicarum vacæ!” And although this error, which was also promulgated by Buckton in his well-known “Monograph of the British Aphids” (1881–1883), has been disproved by Witlaczil, Büsgen, Kolbe, Forel, Mordwilko and others, we still find it tenaciously retained in many popular works on ants, not to mention text-books of entomology. So careful an author as Comstock, in a book intended for students (“The Study of Insects,” p. 157), says: “On the back of the sixth abdominal segment there is, in many species, a pair of tubes, through which a sweet, transparent fluid is excreted. . . . The fluid which is excreted through the abdominal tubercles is the substance known as honey-dew.” McCook also perpetuates this old error by publishing
figures representing ants taking drops from the siphons of aphids. The discharge of the drops of honey-dew from the anus and not from the siphons, is so easily observed with a pocket lens or even with the naked eye wherever aphids abound, that there is little excuse for

**Fig. 207.** Carton coecid-tent built by *Cremastogaster pilosa* around a twig of pitch pine. (Original.)
repeating the blunders of Linné and his successors. The actual conditions are shown in the figure (Fig. 204) which, for lack of a better one, I reproduce from the recent papers of Mordwilko (1896, 1907).

What, then, is the function of the siphons? The early writers replied to this question with a variety of more or less fantastic suppositions, although in general they believed these organs to have a secretory function. Réaumur was the first to remark that the siphons secrete a liquid of a more yellowish color than that expelled from the anus, and subsequent authors have shown that the siphonal secretion has a sticky and wax-like consistency. Büsgen finally pointed out the usefulness of this liquid. "I was able," he says, "to ascertain the function of the tubules by observing the operations of a lace-wing larva [Chrysopa], the so-called aphid-lion, among a drove of plant-lice. This pale yellow animal, with a dark dorsal stripe and a length of only a few millimeters, hatches from a small egg, which is found during the summer attached by means of a long stalk to the most various plants. The larvae are usually found on the lower surface of the leaves, and are easily captured, notwithstanding their agility. Their food consists in great part of plant-lice which they seize with their sucking mandibles and hold fast till reduced to mere shrivelled bits of chitin. When these larvae are to be used for experiment, they are best left to starve for a night and then placed among a drove of aphids suitable for observation. When attacking they strike their jaws from below into the body of the plant-louse with a sudden blow and at once begin to suck out its juices. When the attack happens to be rather awkward, the aphid has time to smear the secretion, which is at once discharged from the tubules, over the face and forceps of the larva, which is thus, at least temporarily, disconcerted and frightened. To be sure, I never saw a larva free an aphid which it had once succeeded in seizing. The secretion hardens on the larva immediately and thus forms a most uncomfortable coating, causing the creature to desist from the chase, while it cleanses its forceps and forehead. This consumes time and can only be accomplished by the aphid-lion's seizing some slender object, like the tooth of a leaf, for the purpose of rubbing off the secretion. While in such a helpless condition, it may itself fall a prey to enemies which it need not fear at other times. Its agility and sucking jaws, capable of being opened to an extraordinary width, make it a formidable enemy even to the ants, which it may actually overcome in the dark. On two occasions after confining a brown garden ant [Lasius niger], the most frequent guest of our aphid droves, in a small box with an aphid-lion, I found the ant sucked dry in the course of a few hours. In the day-time, however, I have seen the ants drive the larvae.
off their preserves. Still the above observations show that notwithstanding the protecting guard of ants, the aphids require a special weapon, which may annoy, though it cannot kill, their enemy.

"Even more striking is the use of the tubercles in the case of the lady-bird beetles (Coccinellidae), those well-known enemies of the aphids. On the approach of one of these beetles, the rose-aphis at first seeks safety in her long legs, which, when touched, apprise her of danger before the enemy can reach her body. Sometimes she merely turns to one side without drawing her proboscis out of the plant tissues, at other times she lets herself drop bodily to the ground. If change of place does not put her out of reach of danger she begins operations with her tubules and smears the whole forepart of the beetle with their secretion. Usually the volley does not fall so much on the beetle's face as on its prothorax under which the head may be so far withdrawn as to suggest that this retractility may be merely a means of protection in just such emergencies."

Mordwilko has shown that the siphons are best developed in certain species of Aphididae that live singly and not in droves or colonies and are not attended by ants, whereas these repugnatorial glands may be vestigial or completely lacking in the species habitually thus attended. This is certainly suggestive of their great importance as organs of defense. Many aphids, too, secrete a thick covering of white wax, which may protect their thin-skinned bodies from the attacks of some of their enemies. In this connection, Mordwilko has called attention to the long, projecting anal spine of certain aphids. This he interprets as a mean of defense against the ants themselves, since it must hinder them in directly imbibing the drops of honey-dew. In the same
way the Russian author interprets also the waxy secretion which may fall on and pollute the limpid drops of excrement, but this is certainly not true of all wax secreting aphids. The common alder blight (Pemphigus tessellatus) secretes wax in abundance, but is, nevertheless, eagerly attended by several species of ants. It is difficult to understand why some aphids should repel the advances of the ants when other species apparently derive so much advantage from their companionship, for, although no complete list has as yet been published of the species of aphids and the ants with which they are always or only temporarily associated, we know, nevertheless, that a few species of the former are definitely symbiotic with ants, and that there are others with more or less pronounced proclivities of the same kind. Wasmann (1894) cites Forda formicaria as regularly myrmecophilous and Shouteden (1902) mentions Paracletus cimiciformis as living only in the nests of ants. Both of these species are radicicolous, that is, they occur on the roots and not on the aérial portions of the plants. But there is also, at least in North America and Europe, a long series of radicicolous aphids that occur with more or less frequency in ant nests. Shouteden records no less than seventeen species, representing nine genera (Geoica, Forda, Tetranera, Schizoneura, Pemphigus, Trama, Chaitophorus, Aphis and Microsiphum) as occurring in the nests of Lasius niger alone. In North America varieties of this ant, and especially L. nearcticus, brevicornis and the various members of the subgenus Acanthomyops, harbor in their subterranean galleries a great many aphids. Mrs. W. P. Cockerell (1903) has shown that these include species of Tychea and Forda (F. kingi, interjecti, lasii and pallidula). Mordwilko cites Lasius brunneus as living exclusively at the expense of species of Stomachis, which are found on the stems and leaves of plants. Further studies of ants and aphids by investigators familiar with the species of both of these groups will unquestionably bring to light many additional instances of such intimate symbiosis.

Much of what has above been said of the aphids will apply also to the scale-insects and mealy-bugs (Coccidæ). These are even more sedentary than the aphids, and may also occur on both the roots and aérial surfaces of the plants. They are, however, more largely confined to warm countries, whereas aphids are more abundant in temperate regions. Abdominal tubules are absent in coccids, but they protect their bodies by secreting a covering of powdery white wax or a hard or tough scale. Like the aphids, they excrete honey-dew, often in considerable quantities, from the anal orifice. The manna of Biblical tradition is now known to be the honey-dew of one of these insects (Gossyparia mannifera) which lives on the tamarisk. This excretion
is still called "man" by the Arabs who use it as food. But long ages before the Israelites and Arabs had learned to eat the sweet ejecta of this single species, the ants had learned to value the honey-dew of a great many different scale-insects. Imbedded in the Prussian and

![Image](image_url)

**Fig. 200.** Carton tent built by *Cremastogaster pilosa* over the alder-blight (*Pemphigus tessellatus*). The structure probably originally enclosed the whole colony of aphids, but the latter in growing and spreading further up the alder branch, broke through the walls of the tent. Natural size. (Original.)

Sicilian amber are many ants, in most part so closely related to existing aphidicolous and coccidicolous species that we must ascribe to them a like similarity in habits. In fact, a few large blocks of amber sent me by Prof. Tornquist, and containing numerous workers of *Bothrio-
myrmex gapperti mingled with aphids, show that these ancient Dolichoderines must have had essentially the same habits as their modern cousins.

One of the earliest accounts of the relations of ants to coccids is that of Forel (1875) who found Brachymyrmex heeri, that had been imported from tropical America into the hot-houses of Europe, attending Lecanium hemisphaericum and Dactylopius adonidum. Our North American B. heeri subsp. depilis attends root coccids and aphids like the species of Lasius. From the nests of our ants of this genus, Cockerell (1891, 1903, 1905) and King (1897a, 1898–99, 1902b) have described a number of species of Ripersia, Dactylopius, Lecanopsis, Phenacoccus and Orthezia, and whoever, early in the spring, examines the formicaries of our yellow species of Lasius in the open woods of the Eastern States will be sure to find their galleries white with these small, elliptical, snow-white insects. Many of our other ants also exhibit a great fondness for coccids of the above mentioned and other genera. In Texas I frequently found Cremastogaster punctulata attending dense herds of Eriococcus texanus on roots, and even so large an ant as Camponotus sansabeanus nearly always keeps a number of individuals of Dactylopius wheeleri in its nests. On the exposed twigs of oaks the curious pea-like coccids of the genus Kermes, which often drip with honey-dew, are great favorites with our species of Cremastogaster, Prenoepis, Lasius and Dolichoderus, and in Arizona the honey ant, Myrmecocystus testaceus, exhibits a similar fondness for the singular, wax-covered species of Orthezia on the dry shrubs of the desert. Guilding (1829–33) and Trimen (1886) have found ants associated with the curious subterranean coccids known as “earth pearls” (Margarodes) in St. Vincent and South Africa, and the association of the arboreal ants of the genus Asteca with various coccids (Paleococcus rosea, Coccus nanus, Akerne colima, Pseudococcus cuatalensis and Lachnodiella cecropia) in Trinidad, Mexico, Nicauragua and Brazil, has been mentioned by Fritz Müller (1880–81), Emery, Cockerell (1903) and von Ihering (1907). Even in remote New Zealand, according to W. W. Smith (1892a, 1892b), Ripersia and other coccids abound in the nests of the species of Monomorium and Huberia so characteristic of that region.

The Psylidae, or jumping plant-lice, appear to be related to the aphids, but void solid excrement in addition to the liquid honey-dew. The latter is very abundant, however, and in some of the numerous Australian species hardens to form scales of manna, or “sugar-lerp.” These scales are so abundant that they are collected and eaten by the aborigines and the children of the white settlers. According to Frog-
gatt (1900), who has given us an excellent account of these insects, a single person may collect as much as two to three pounds of this manna in a day. Two closely related species, *Spondylaspis eucalypti* and *S. mannifera*, which, like many of the Australian Psyllids, feed on various *Eucalypti*, are the most active producers of lerp. Of course, such a substance could hardly fail to attract ants. Nevertheless, the recorded observations on the relations of these insects to Psyllids appear to be rather meager. Froggatt describes the larvae of *Cometopsylla rufa*, which excretes a very crystalline and brittle lerp, as smothered with numbers of *Iridomyrmex purpureus*, which feed upon the excretions and protect the Psyllids "to some extent." Concerning *Thea formicosa* he says: "The larvae form no lerp but hide under loose bits of bark on the trunks of several white-stemmed gums [*Eucalypti*], thickly enveloped in white flocculent matter, thickest round the abdomen, which exudes from beneath their shelter and reveals their hiding place, and when abundant dots the trunks all over with white blotches. Other colonies are found congregated on the stems of small trees, where they are frequently covered by ants with a thick felted sheath of woody débris, sometimes extending for four or five feet from the ground and completely sheltering them. The ants, *Iridomyrmex nitidus* Mayr, swarm over them in this covered gallery, and evidently protect them for the sake of the honey-dew that is secreted." The "sheath of woody débris" here described is, of course, a "tent" or "cow-shed," like those built by our northern ants over aphids and coccids. *Thea opaca*, though less abundant than *Th. formicosa*, is found in similar localities, and is always "covered with ants." Our northern Psyllidae, especially the pear-tree *Psylla* (*Ps. pyricola*), which excretes great quantities of honey-dew, are in all probability occasionally attended by ants.

The relations of the ants to the tree-hoppers (*Membracidae*, *Cercopidae*) are but little known, as these insects are abundant only in warm countries. Lund long ago found that the Cercopidae and Membracidae take the place of aphids in the lives of many Brazilian ants, and Belt (1874) described the relations of the Membracids of Nicaragua to species of *Pheidole* and *Dolichoderus*. More recently
additional observations have been made by Baer (1903) in Argentina and Green (1900) in Ceylon. Baer saw Camponotus punctulatus attending Enchenopa ferruginea. Green's observations relate to species of Centrotus, some of which have a long, brightly colored anal tube. He says that he has "watched the larvæ of various species of Centrotus being assiduously attended by ants. The larvæ are gregarious, frequenting the succulent shoots of plants, and have an extensile organ at the extremity of the body, from which the coveted fluid is emitted. This organ is distinctly 3-segmented. In the species from which the accompanying drawings were made [Fig. 212], the small terminal segment was of a crimson color; the penultimate segment black, with a broad white median band; and the basal segment (of the extensile part) white. When the insect is undisturbed, the organ is withdrawn into the long conical segment which apparently terminates the body, but is extended immediately upon application by the attendant ants." I have repeatedly seen whole colonies of Formica obscuripes, ciliata and oreses attending droves of young Membracids in Colorado. The Homoptera responded to the antennal caresses of the ants in precisely the same manner as plant-lice and scale-insects. In Maine and Massachusetts F. glacialis and subsericea are often found attending Publilia concava on the stems and petioles of golden rod. I have described and figured (1906b) the sheds constructed by our eastern Formica integra over small colonies of Vandusea arcuta about the trunks of young birch trees.

As the relations between ants and the various Homoptera above mentioned have been regarded as mutualistic, it may be well, before proceeding further, to marshall the facts which seem to warrant this interpretation. The term "mutualism" as applied to these cases, means, of course, that the aphids, coccids and membracids are of service to the ants and in turn profit by the companionship of these more active and aggressive insects. Among the modifications in structure and behavior which may be regarded as indicating on the part of aphids unmistakable evidence of adaptation to living with ants, the following may be cited:

1. The aphids do not attempt to escape from the ants or to defend themselves with their siphons, but accept the presence of these attendants as a matter of course. The same patient attitude is exhibited by coccids and membracids.

2. The aphids respond to the solicitations of the ants by extruding the droplets of honey-dew gradually and not by throwing them off to a distance with a sudden jerk as they do in the absence of ants. Even at such times, or when artificially stroked with some delicate object in
imitation of an ant's caressing antennæ, according to Mordwilko, some species of Trama, Stomachis, Pemphigus, Pentaphis and Aphid extrude the drops very gradually, indicating that the habit has become fixed through association with ants.

3. Many species of Aphididæ that live habitually with ants have developed a perianal cirset of stiff hairs which support the drop of honey-dew till it can be imbibed by the ants. This cirset is lacking in aphids that are rarely or never visited by ants (Mordwilko).

4. Certain observations go to show that aphids, when visited by ants, extract more of the plant juices than when unattended. According to Bos (1888) this is the case with Aphid papaveris when feeding on bean plants. These are more seriously injured when Lasius niger is soliciting food from the aphids.

5. Although the siphons are lacking in some aphids which are not visited by ants, and either live solitary lives or are concealed in galls, the absence or reduction of these repugnatorial glands is usually most

![Diagram](https://example.com/diagram.png)

**Fig. 211.** Caterpillars of *Lycæa pseudargiolus.* (Edwards.) a. Posterior segments seen from above; x, opening of honey gland; b, extensile organ; b', same fully exserted; c, one of the plumose hairs with which its tip is furnished; d, organ with hairs withdrawn.

marked in species that live with ants, which presumably protect them from many of their enemies. On the other hand, the siphons reach their greatest development in some of the solitary and rather agile species that are not attended by ants (*Siphonophora* and *Rhopalosiphum*).

The adaptations on the part of the ants are, with a single doubtful exception, all modifications in behavior and not in structure.

1. Ants do not seize and kill aphids as they do when they encounter other sedentary and defenceless insects. This was noticed by Linné in the case of *Formica rufa*, of which he says: "Adscendit arborem, ut aphides illius vaccas mulgeat nec occidit."

2. The ants stroke the aphids in a particular manner in order to
make them excrete the honey-dew and know exactly where to expect the evacuated liquid.

3. The ants protect the aphids. Several observers have seen the ants driving away predatory insects. Büsgen's observations on *Chrysopa* larvae are cited above (p. 345). Ferton (1890), speaking of *Tapinoma erraticum* and its aphids, says: "While observing the aphid-hunting Hymenoptera in their attacks on their prey, I was impressed with the jealous surveillance of the ants, and the protracted manœuvres of the hunters in deceiving these guardians. *Cemonus unicolor* Fabr. and *Pemphredon insigne* V. d. L., which I was especially able to follow, showed by their detours and subterfuges that their real enemy is not the aphid, but the ant which protects it." Indeed, the fierce watchfulness of *Formica sanguinea* or *F. rufa* must be apparent to any observer who disturbs these ants while they are attending their aphids. The former at once open their mandibles and rush at the intruder and the latter throw back their heads, sit up with the tips of their gasters directed forward and discharge volleys of formic acid in the direction whence they are threatened. Belt has observed the workers of *Pheidole* protecting their membracids in a similar manner.

4. Many aphidicolous ants, when disturbed, at once seize and carry their charges in their mandibles to a place of safety, showing very plainly their sense of ownership and interest in these helpless creatures.

5. This is also exhibited by all ants that harbor root-aphids and root-coccids in their nests. Not only are these insects kept in confinement by the ants, but they are placed by them on the roots. In order to do this the ants remove the earth from the surfaces of the roots and construct galleries and chambers around them so that the Homoptera may have easy access to their food and even move about at will.

6. Many aphidicolous and coccidicolous ants, as was shown in a former chapter (pp. 223, 224) construct, often at some distance from their nests, little closed pavilions or sheds of earth, carton or silk, as a protection for their cattle and for themselves (Figs. 205–209). This singular habit may be merely a more recent development from the older and more general habit of excavating tunnels and chambers about roots and subterranean stems.

7. The solicitude of the ants not only envelops the adult aphids and coccids, but extends also to their eggs and young. Numerous observers (Huber (1810), Lubbock (1890), Lichtenstein (1870, 1877–80), Del Guercio, Forbes (1894), Weed (1891), Shouteden (1902), Mordwilko (1907), Webster (1907), and others) have observed ants (species of *Lasius*) in the autumn collecting and storing aphid eggs in the chambers of their nests, caring for them through the winter and in the spring
placing the recently hatched plant-lice on the stems and roots of the
plants. Forbes, Weed and Webster have shown that our common L.
americanus is thus instrumental in rearing and disseminating through-
out the fields a root aphid (Aphis maidiradicis) which is very injurious
to Indian corn. Webster gives the following account of his extended
observations on the relations of these insects to each other: "Now,
taking up the life history of the root-aphis, we find eggs in the fall, it
is true, but only in the burrow of and attended by these ants. If there
are eggs, egg-laying females, or males elsewhere they have yet to be
discovered. The ants care for these eggs throughout the winter, shift-
ing them about, according to Forbes, as they do their own young, to
accommodate them to changes of weather and moisture. In spring,
the young, as soon as they hatch from these eggs, are transferred by
the ants to the roots of young fox-tail grass, smart-weed, and even rag-
weed. The young are carried out to pasture, as it were, during fair
weather, but in bad weather, or on cold nights, they are taken back
to the burrows of the ants. The plants just mentioned are the ones
that push up early in spring in last year's corn lands, and especially in
fields that have been plowed and allowed to stand untouched for a
week or so. Usually the farmer plows his ground in spring and pays
little attention to this early growth of weeds and grass, as he can gen-
erally dispose of it as soon as he begins to cultivate the corn, although
this is not until the rows of young plants can be followed by the eye
across an ordinary field. As soon, however, as the corn plants begin
to show above ground the ants not only transfer the young root-aphids
from the burrows to the roots of corn, but they will also remove them
from the roots of grass and weeds and reconoleize them on the roots
of young corn. Now these young aphids are all females and within
a few days they begin to give birth to young, also all females; these,
too, are cared for by the ants, which place them on the freshest and
most tender rootlets. This procedure goes on about the roots of corn
throughout the spring and summer. Forbes has found that under the
most favorable artificial conditions there may be as many as sixteen
generations between April and October, ten of which may coexist
at the same time. It is hardly probable, however, that so many genera-
tions can exist under ordinary field conditions; nevertheless, it may be
rightly inferred from this that the multiplication of the species is enor-
mous. These ants not only transfer the root-aphids from one root to
another of the same plant, but will carry them from one plant to another
a considerable distance away. In the spring of 1887 the writer placed
a number of flower pots containing young growing uninfested corn
plants between rows of infested hills of corn in the field. The corn
in the infested hills was then pulled up, exposing the roots on which the aphids were clustered. The little brown ants at once began to carry the aphids to new quarters, and the next day the latter, some of them full grown, were abundant on the roots of the corn in the pots, although there were none on them when the pots were put in place. Ants were observed over a yard away from the plants that had been uprooted, with root-aphids in their mouths, to all appearances searching for a suitable place in which to establish their charges on the roots of corn. Thus it is that from the laying of the eggs in fall to the last or egg-laying generation of the following year this aphid is wholly dependent on the little brown ant for its existence in the cultivated fields, and the farmer can justly charge up his losses through the attacks of the root-aphid to the influences of this ant. But the matter does not terminate here, as will be seen by what follows.

"So long as the roots upon which the root-aphids are colonized afford an abundance of nourishment for them, all will be wingless, but as soon as the roots become tough and woody or dry out there will be a generation of both winged and wingless individuals, the former escaping from the burrows about the roots to fly to other plants, and in all probability to other fields, where they may be found on the leaves. The ants usually transfer the wingless females to more succulent roots, but seem to pay little or no attention to the winged individuals, letting these make their way out and away. But in May, 1887, the writer was able to watch some of these winged nomadic individuals in a corn field to which they had migrated and to note the results of their wanderings. A field of corn had been planted on May 18. Five days later there came a heavy rain storm that flattened the surface of the ground, which was soon encrusted by the action of the wind and sun. Four days afterwards there were freshly thrown up mounds of earth about some of the corn plants, and ants were busily engaged in and about these and running up and down over the young corn. On examining these mounds and burrows the writer was surprised to find winged root-aphids giving birth to young on the roots attended by ants. All of these young were very small, at most but a few days old. Other winged individuals were found on the leaves and even on the stems of
corn, and when any one of these was placed where the ants could find it, it was promptly captured by an ant and transported to the roots of the corn. Observation showed that as soon as the ants running about over the young corn plants found a winged aphis they made a burrow about the base of a plant, and soon domiciled the wanderer on the root under their guardianship. Then when the aphis began to give birth to young these were promptly removed to another part of the same root, or to another root close by, and there watched over by the patient and industrious ants. The same thing was observed going on about a young plant of fox-tail grass in this same corn-field."

8. Some writers have described the ants as facilitating the exit of the winged sexual generation of aphids from their nests by opening up galleries for this very purpose to the surface of the soil.

9. Others (Lichtenstein, Mordwilko) have seen ants (*Lasius niger, flavus* and *umbatus*) in the act of clipping off the wings of female aphids. Whether this is done because these organs hinder the ants from imbibing the honey-dew, or in order to prevent the escape of the aphids from the nest, or for some other reason, has not been determined.

10. The single structural adaptation which may, perhaps, have been developed through association with aphids, coccids and membracids is the greatly distensible crop of the Camponotinae. It is quite as probable, however, that the peculiar properties of this organ may be due to the habit of collecting and retaining large quantities of nectar or other plant-secretions.

Certain Fulgoridae, at least in Europe and North Africa, have intimate relations with ants, according to the observations on species of *Issus*, and especially of *Tettigometra*, contributed by Rouget (1866), Puton (1869), Lichtenstein (1870, 1880), Delpino (1872, 1875), Forel (1890, 1894), Schneider (1893), Silvestri (1903), Lesne (1905) and Torka (1905). Silvestri has studied *T. impressifrons* and *T. costatus*, which live in the nests of *Tapinoma nigerrimum*. The young fulgorids which, like the radicicolous aphids and coccids, obtain their food from roots and underground stems, furnish the ants with a sweet liquid. This is not excrement, however, as in the case of the other Homoptera above described, but, according to Silvestri, "a secretion from cellular glands, distributed in areas on the following segments of the body: dorsally two (*i.e.*, one on each side of the median sagittal plane) on the submedian portion of the prothorax, two on the submedian region of the second abdominal segment and two on the sublateral portions of each abdominal segment from the third to the seventh inclusive; and ventrally, two on the lateral portions of the prothorax, two on the median portion of the third abdominal segment and two
sublaterally on each abdominal segment from the fourth to the seventh inclusive.” This author believes that the larvae of a Coccinellid beetle, Hyperaspis reppensis, which live in the Tapinoma nests and are treated by the ants as true myrmecophiles, feed on the Tettigometra. The adult beetles, however, seem to be less indulgently regarded by the ants. Torka finds that the larvae of T. obliqua, found in great numbers about the roots of oats and rye, are assiduously attended by Formica cinerea and Lasius niger.

Perhaps further investigations will bring to light a number of cases in which Heteropterous Hemiptera are attended by ants. One such case, in fact, has been recorded, namely, a Ceylonese species of Copertosoma which according to Green (1900) is attended by Cremastogaster in the same manner as the above described Homoptera. Wasmann (1901) mentions the larvae of Neobius parasitaster as living in the nests of Solenopsis geminata in Brazil, but this may be a case of true myrmecophily.

The relations of ants to the caterpillars of the Lycaenid butterflies have been repeatedly described by a number of observers: Freyer (1836), Ploetz (1865), McCook (1877), W. H. Edwards (1878a, 1878b, 1884), Saunders (1878), Thwaits (1881), Miskin (1883), Aurivillius (1884, 1887), Doherty (1886), Scudder (1888), de Nicéville (1888, 1889, 1890, 1900), von Aigner-Abafi (1898, 1899), Wroughton (1892), Thomann (1901), Dodd (1902a, 1902b), Green (1902), Frohawk (1904, 1906) and Viehmeyer (1907). The most comprehensive accounts have been furnished by Edwards, de Nicéville, Thomann and Viehmeyer. No less than sixty-five species, representing twenty-nine genera of Lycaenidae, are mentioned as having caterpillars that are attended by ants. According to Viehmeyer the list embraces twenty-three species of Lycaena alone. The larvae of this and the allied genera are somewhat depressed with rounded anterior and posterior ends and with the tense and highly sensitive skin covered with short, sparse hairs (Figs. 210 and 211). As Guenée long ago (1867) showed for Lycaena batica, these caterpillars possess three peculiar organs, one an unpaired gland (a, x) in the middorsal line of the antepenultimate, or eleventh segment, and a pair of short protrusive tentacles on the dorsolateral portions of the penultimate, or twelfth segment (b). The median gland has the form of a sac or papilla which can be protruded through a transverse, mouth-shaped slit, and each of the tentacles is fringed at its tip with a dense circlet of stiff, finely plumose hairs (Fig. 211, d, b’). The ants caress the posterior, somewhat flattened extremity of the caterpillar with their antennæ as they do that of the plant-louse, and the caterpillar responds by emitting from the
median gland a glistening droplet of a colorless and presumably saccharine liquid which is eagerly imbibed by the attendants. The function of the tentacles is unknown. De Nicéville believes that they may represent vestiges of a pair of organs which are very long and tufted in an Indian Lycænid (Curetis thetyts) and are very rapidly whirled around when the caterpillar is touched, as if for the purpose of frightening away its enemies. From the fact, however, that the tentacles of the European and North American species are most frequently protruded when the caterpillars are being caressed by the ants, Thomann concludes that these peculiar organs act as signals and diffuse some odor which serves to attract and fascinate the ants.

Not only are many of the Lycænid larvae attended while feeding on the leaves or flowers of plants, but they are often found in the ants’ nests. Some of the species pupate and even hatch as butterflies in the galleries of the nests. Only in a few instances have the names of the attendant ants of our northern Lycænids been recorded. As would be expected, these are members of the genera Lasius, Formica, Camponotus, Prenolepis and Myrmica. In India, according to Dodd (1902a), Thwaites (1881) and de Nicéville (1900), species of Pheidole and Cremastogaster, and especially Ecophylla smaragdina, are the principal attendants. Ec. smaragdina, in that country and in Australia, is, in fact, constantly found with many species of the caterpillars and often keeps them in the silken nests and “cow-sheds” described in a previous chapter (pp. 223, 224). De Nicéville says that the butterflies will often oviposit only on trees inhabited by ants: “If the right plant has no ants, or the ants on that plant are not the right species, the butterfly will lay no eggs on that plant. Some larvæ will certainly not live without the ants, and many larvæ are extremely uncomfortable when brought up away from their hosts or masters. In many cases it is just as important for breeding purposes to know the right species of ants as to know the right food-plant. In Kanara this is particularly noticeable in the cases of Castalius ananda, de Nicéville, Zesius chrysomallus, Hübner, Aphæus lohita, Horsfield, and Catapæcîma elegans, Druce. On one occasion Mr. Bell was collecting larvæ at Katgal, and the ants were principally on Zisyphus rugosa, Lamk. (Natural Order Rhamnææ), but were also swarming all over six or seven species of different trees all round, and on all of these trees there were larvæ of C. ananda covered with ants and eating the leaves of the trees in all cases. Since then Mr. Bell has noticed the larva of C. ananda eating the leaves of many different plants and always in company with the same species of ants. With regard to the Zesius, Aphæus and Catapæcîma mentioned above, the female butterflies first look for the right species of
ants, and the species of food-plant seems to be quite a secondary consideration, at any rate, to a considerable extent. The larvae of *Zesius* may be found on very nearly any plant that harbors the large red ant, *Ecophylla smaragdina* Fabricius, so much so that Mr. Bell has often had a strong suspicion that the butterfly larvae will occasionally eat the ant larvae, although he has not actually seen them do so. The larva of this butterfly feeds on many species of plants not recorded on the lists, as Mr. Bell made no particular note of them, all these plants being affected by the large red ants. The larvae of *Aphnæus* and *Catapa-cilma* are only found on plants affected by ants of the genus *Cremastogaster*. As regards the four species of butterflies named above, the larvae are often found in the ants' nests, and their pupæ also, but not invariably."

These observations show that the relations between ants and Lycænid larvae may be very intimate, and certainly suggest a kind of mutualism, or symbiosis like that obtaining between the ants and the phytophthorous Homoptera. As in this latter case, it is maintained that the ants protect the caterpillars from their enemies in return for their sweet secretion, but our knowledge of this matter is not sufficient to permit of far-reaching inferences. It is very probable, nevertheless, that further study of the Lycæidæ, especially in the tropics where this family is enormously developed, has many surprises in store for us. This may be inferred from what is known of the habits of some of the aberrant species that are not amicably attended by ants. Thus the caterpillar of our curious North American *Feniseca tarquiniius* has become carnivorous and feeds on wax-secreting aphids, the so-called alder blight (*Pemphigus tessellatus*), and an Indian species (*Spalgis epius*) is known to feed on Coccidæ. The singular *Liphyra brassolis* of India and Australia is said by Dodd (1902) to live in the nests and to feed on the larvae of *Ecophylla smaragdina*. The caterpillar is covered with a tough shell, as if to protect it from the mandibles of its host, and it actually pupates within its larval skin like a cyclorrhaph Dipteran (Chapman, 1902)! The butterfly on hatching in the ants' nest is enveloped with a peculiar coating of white, gray and brown, fugitive scales, which protect it from its hosts, for, as Dodd says, "it is highly probable that the ants have no friendly feeling for the perfect insect and would most likely attack and kill it during its long rest after emergence, if it were not especially and wonderfully protected. So it will be seen that the loose scales act as a perfect protection, for directly the ants encounter these they are in trouble, they fasten on to their feet and impede their movements, or, if their antennæ or mandibles come in contact with any part of the butterfly, the scales adhere thereto, so
that the ant is soon in a bad way and has quite enough to do in attempting to free himself of his encumbrances without taking any further interest in the butterfly, from which he retreats as well as possible. It is exceedingly ludicrous to observe the ants endeavoring to free themselves, their legs move awkwardly and their mandibles are opened and closed in evident annoyance and perplexity, and they are also much concerned about the state of their antennæ for the obnoxious scales will not be shaken off, and they seem to become very low-spirited.”

Another Indian Lycænid (*Allotinus horsfeldi*) attends aphids in the butterfly stage, stroking them with its long fore-legs and sucking up the excreted honey-dew with its proboscis (Bingham, 1907)! These observations suggest the existence of complicated “three-cornered” relations between ants, Lycænids and aphids. It would be interesting to know whether the *Allotinus* larva is attended by ants in the same manner as the aphid is attended by the butterfly. In the case of *Feniseca tarquinia* I find a triple relationship of a different kind, for I have observed the alder blight, on which the larvae of this Lycænid feeds, being attended by at least six different species of ants of the genera *Prenolepis, Camponotus, Formica, Cremastogaster* and *Dolichoderus*, so that here we have a condition very similar to that described by Silvestri (*vide supra*, p. 357) for *Tapinoma, Tettigometra* and *Hyperaspis*.

It will be seen that the intimate relations described in this chapter as existing between ants on the one hand and the various Homoptera and Lycænid caterpillars on the other, excepting, of course, such forms as *Spalgis* and *Feniseca*, have a common peculiarity. In all of these cases the ants are supplied with food in the form of an excretion or secretion elaborated from the juices of plants. Wasmann has therefore designated these relationships as *trophobiosis* to distinguish them from the cases of myrmecophily proper, which will be the subject of Chapters XXI and XXII.
CHAPTER XX

HONEY ANTS

"In general all these animals live from hand to mouth, and if there are some which know how to economize, there are likewise those which do not ignore the advantages of a savings bank."—J. P. Van Beneden, *Amer. Natur.*, 1874.

A singular adaptation which has grown out of the relations of ants to plants and to the plant-destroying Homoptera, is that of the honey-ants. It has been shown that many ants are in the habit of collecting nectar and honey-dew, storing it in their distensible crops till they reach their nests and then distributing it by regurgitation to their larvae and sister ants. This habit, as a rule, is most highly developed in the Camponotinae and Dolichoderinae, which have a thin and pliable integument that permits a considerable expansion of the gastric walls. In these ants the crop is often so distended with the saccharine liquids above mentioned that the sclerites are forced apart and appear as dark spots or islands on the tense intersegmental membranes. Through these the limpid ingluvial contents may be distinctly seen while the other organs of the gaster are forced up against its walls. This condition is often noticed in foraging workers of our common species of Camponotus, Lasius, Brachymyrmex, Prenolepis and Ny-anderia. In *P. imparis*, for example, a small black or brown ant, which is very widely distributed over temperate North America, the crop may be so greatly distended with nectar or honey-dew (Fig. 213) that the insect, which ordinarily has a quick and graceful gait, can only waddle along with some difficulty. All of the workers of the *Prenolepis* colony seem to be able to assume this replete condition, but they retain it only
temporarily, that is, till the contents of the crop, or ingluvies, have been distributed.

The conditions seen in *Prenolepis* may be said to represent one of the incipient stages in the development of the true honey ants. This development is characterized first, by an exaggeration of the tendency to repletion, second, by a restriction of this tendency to certain workers, and third, by repletion becoming a permanent morphological modification. But as repletion does not set in until after the worker hatches, we must regard it as an acquired physiological state depending on the environment, that is, on the amount of nectar or honey-dew obtainable in a given locality. Although all workers are able to distend their crops considerably while foraging, true, or perfect repletes are devel-

![Ant](image)

**Fig. 214.** Replete worker of *Melophorus bagoti* of Australia. (Original.)

oped only within the nest, where they remain and store the sweets brought in by the foragers, and thus function as living bottles or casks to which the hungry workers can resort during seasons of scarcity or famine.

Honey ants have been described from North America, South Africa and Australia. The various species show considerable differences in the degree of gastric distension which they are able to attain. In some cases this is no greater than that of *Prenolepis*, in others the gaster may be swollen out till it forms a perfect sphere, so large and with walls so tense and easily ruptured that the insect cannot walk about and is compelled to lead a quiescent life, hanging by its claws from the roofs of the nest chambers. This extreme degree of distension is reached in certain subspecies and varieties of our American species of *Myrmecocystus*. The various known honey ants may be described in the order of increasing development, although this will make it necessary to begin with forms that are but little known and reserve till the last
the *Myrmecocysti*, whose habits have been more thoroughly studied. In conclusion, I will describe a few aberrant Myrmicine ants that have been regarded as honey ants, and close with a few general remarks on the significance of the replete habit among the Camponotinæ and Dolichoderinæ.

1. *Melophorus bagoti* and *cowlei*.—The genus *Melophorus* was based by Lubbock in 1884 on worker specimens of *M. bagoti* from cen-

![Fig. 215. Garden of the Gods near Manitou, Colorado; looking north; showing in the foreground the rocky ridges on which *Myrmecocystus horti-deorum* nests. (Original.)](image)

tral or western Australia ("21° S. Lat."). He transposed the generic and specific diagnoses that had been written out for him by Forel, but the latter rectified the blunder a few years later (1886d). *M. bagoti* is of a rich ferruginous red color and has polymorphic workers. The length of the smaller ones has not been recorded, but the larger measure 13–16 mm. In the latter the gaster is distended somewhat as in the *Prenolepis* repletes, and is, as Forel has stated, far from attaining the amplitude of *Myrmecocystus*. The insect is undoubtedly able to walk about and in all probability does not hang from the roof of its galleries. During the summer of 1907 Professor Forel kindly gave me a replete
of *M. bagoti*, from which the accompanying figure is drawn (Fig. 214). In this specimen the gastric sclerites are greatly enlarged. Apparently they were originally much smaller, but along their borders the intersegmental membranes seem to have hardened and turned brown secondarily. The lines representing the original lateral borders of the sclerites are shown in the figure.

Froggatt (1896) described *M. cowlei* as a *Camponotus*, but his figures and description show very clearly that it is a typical *Melophorus*, closely related to *bagoti*. The replete, which measures 17 mm., has the gaster distended to much the same extent as that of *bagoti*, but the sclerites seem to be shorter and the intersegmental membranes larger. Froggatt described all three phases of *M. cowlei* from specimens taken at Illamurta in the James Range and Spencer Gorge in the McDonnell Range, in the very heart of Australia. He says that this ant is known to the natives as the “Ittootoonee” and gives the following notes sent him by Baldwin Spencer: “I came across a single nest of the golden yellow species, which was a small one, consisting of branching passages close to the surface, under a little block of quartzite in one of the gorges amongst the McDonnell Ranges. In this nest the honey ants, though considerably swollen out, seemed to be able to move about slowly. Perhaps it was a young colony and they were not fully developed.”

2. *Leptomyrmex rufipes*.—This is the only honey ant known to occur among the Dolichoderinae. The genus *Leptomyrmex*, which is confined to Australia and New Guinea, is characterized by its very slender and emaciated body, extremely long legs and singular head (Fig. 3, F). In 1886 Forel published the following note on *L. rufipes*: “In the excavated nests of this variety Mr. Turner found workers with the gaster considerably dilated by the crop full of transparent honey. The gaster resembled that of *Myrmecocystus*, without, however, attaining such dimensions.” In an alcoholic specimen of this ant, which I saw in Professor Forel’s collection, the gaster appeared to be much more distended than in the repletes of *Prenolepis* and *Melophorus*.

3. *Plagiolepis trimeni*.—This species was discovered by Mutschinson at Natal and described by Forel in 1895(c). The types were all repletes, 6.5 mm. in length, of which the head and thorax together measured only 2 mm. They are described as being of a “sordid brownish yellow color, more reddish on the head and thorax; the sides of the gastric segments brownish; feet and antennæ yellowish.” The gaster “is distended with honey, like a round cyst, transparent, as large as a hemp seed, on which the chitinous laminae of the segments appear as islands. The anterior portion of the first segment has a
hollow depression in which fits the petiolar scale. With the aid of a lens it is possible to distinguish below and behind the stomach and gizzard with its reflected calyx, both of them displaced and flattened against the gastric wall.” Forel further states that the gaster is “nearly as fully distended as that of Myrmecocystus melliger. . . . Locomotion must be almost impossible in this insect. Its appearance

![Image](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

**Fig. 216. Nest crater of Myrmecocystus horti-deorum. About \(\frac{1}{6}\) natural size. (Original.)**

is that of a *Myrmecocystus* nurse en miniature.” *P. trimeni* must therefore represent a stage of repletion intermediate between *Prenolepis* and *Melophorus* on the one hand and *Myrmecocystus* on the other.¹

4. *Camponotus inflatus.*—Lubbock described the worker of this ant in 1880 from specimens taken at Adelaide, Australia. His diagnosis was, however, so imperfect that the insect had to be redescribed by Forel (1886d). McCook (1882b) has also studied and figured this species (1882, Figs. 71 and 74). According to Forel, it “has nothing

¹ During the summer of 1909, Professor Forel showed me in his collection two other African honey ants, which he had recently acquired, namely, *Plagiolepis jouberti*, in which the replete has a gynæcid thorax, and *Acantholepis abdominalis.*
to distinguish it particularly from other Camponoti, except the purely physiological gastric distension which is evidently due to the enormous plenitude of the crop, as in Myrmecocystus melliger. This distension, however, is smaller than that of melliger."

More recently (1896) Froggatt has described the male and female of C. inflatus from specimens collected at Ayers Rock, Illamurta, in the James Range of central Australia. All three phases of this ant are black with paler legs and antennæ. The repletes measure 17 mm. Froggatt records the following notes sent him by Baldwin Spencer: "The black honey ant (Camponotus inflatus Lub.) is called 'Yarumpa' by the natives, by whom it is esteemed a great luxury; it is, par excellence, the honey ant of the central country, and ranges across to the Murchison in western Australia. We found them plentiful in certain districts on the hard, sandy plains, and also often very abundant in patches among the Mulga scrub. The ground all round Ayers Rock, to the south of Lake Amadeus, was strewn with heaps of sand where the natives had been digging them out. They construct no mounds over their nests; the entrance, which is an inch in length by a quarter of an inch in width, leads down into a vertical shaft or burrow from five to six feet in depth. About a foot below the surface horizontal passages about a foot in length lead off from the main shaft, at the end of which were three or four of the honey ants, while the bottom of the main shaft, which is excavated into a larger cavity, contained a considerable number. The 'honey ants' are quite incapable of movement and must be fed by the workers. Unlike all the other ants noticed in this country, they did not appear to collect twigs, leaves or grass to carry into their burrows."

5. Myrmecocystus melliger, mexicanus and horti-deorum.—The genus Myrmecocystus s. str. is confined to North America, ranging over the deserts and dry plains from the City of Mexico to Denver, Colo. Two species have been recognized, melliger and mexicanus, with some eight subspecies and varieties (Wheeler, 1908d). Most of these are highly insectivorous and show no tendency to form repletes, but the var. horti-deorum (Figs. 217–219), of New Mexico and Colorado, is known to have repletes like those of the species mexicanus to which it belongs.

The repletes of Myrmecocystus, which have long been esteemed as an article of food by the Indians of Mexico and the Southwestern States, were first described by Llave (1832) in an obscure Mexican periodical from Mexican specimens, but it is impossible to determine the species to which he referred. Wesmael (1838) also based M. mexicanus on Mexican specimens. Both of these authors described
the nests of the ants merely from hearsay. Later various, more or less erroneous, observations on the var. *horti-deorum* were made at Santa Fe, N. M., by Captain W. B. Fleeson (Edwards, 1873), Saunders (1875) and Loew (1874). The first to publish a trustworthy account of this, or in fact of any of our *Myrmecocystis*, was McCook (1882b). He discovered *horti-deorum* in the Garden of the Gods, near Manitou, Colo. (Fig. 215). The nests, which were found on the tops of stony ridges, are described in great detail. The large circular entrance, 2–2.5 cm. in diameter, is in the center of a cone-shaped crater of small pebbles 8–25 cm. in diameter at the base and 5–8 cm. high (Fig. 216). The entrance opens into a vertical or oblique gallery which at a depth of 9–15 cm. breaks up into several smaller galleries. These usually

![Fig. 217. Male, female, minima and maxima workers of *Myrmecocystus horti-deorum*, slightly enlarged. (Original.)](image)

run to one side of the entrance gallery. At a depth of 20–35 cm. the smaller galleries lead into chambers with smooth, flattened floors and rough, vaulted ceilings. These chambers vary from 12–15 cm. in length and 7–10 cm. in width, and may be 4 cm. high in the middle. McCook has described some very large formicaries, the galleries of one of which extended over an area of more than 2 m. and reached a depth in the soil of more than a meter. From the ceilings of the chambers the repletes hang, side by side, by means of their claws, and the vaulting is evidently left rough as an adaptation to this peculiar habit (Fig. 220). The repletes are capable of more movement than has usually been supposed, but if they fall from the ceiling they are unable to regain their pendent position without assistance. Large nests may contain as many as three hundred repletes distributed over several chambers.
McCook effectively dispelled the notion that the repletes manufacture the honey which they contain, a notion started by Wesmael and held by several writers, by showing how they obtain and store the liquid. *M. horti-deorum* is decidedly nocturnal, unlike the different subspecies and varieties of *melliger*, which are diurnal. Indeed, the etiolated appearance and pale yellow color of the northern forms of *mexicanus* at once suggest a fondness for darkness, just as the deeper tints of the typical form of the species suggest diurnal or crepuscular habits. During the day, therefore, the workers of *M. horti-deorum* are never seen outside of the nest, but frequently a guard of workers is stationed just within the large opening, apparently for the purpose of preventing other ants, spiders, etc., from entering. McCook found that during July the workers leave the nest in a file at about 7.30 P. M. and visit the shin oaks (*Quercus undulata*) which grow abundantly along the rocky ridges in the Garden of the Gods and the surrounding country. The twigs of these oaks are often covered with small woody galls about the size of a pea and of a more or less conical or spheroidal shape, the work of the Cynipid *Holcaspis perniciosus*. At night these galls exude minute droplets of a sweet, watery secretion which is eagerly imbibed by the ordinary workers, carried to the nest in their crops and fed to the repletes (Fig. 222).

Forel, in 1880, showed that the gaster of the replete *horti-deorum* owes its size and rotundity exclusively to an enormous distension of the crop, or ingluvies and not of the stomach as Leidy (1852) and Blake (1873) had supposed, and that all the other structures found in the gaster of the ordinary worker are present in the replete, though they are necessarily flattened against the gastric wall. These observations were confirmed by McCook’s careful dissections and figures of the gaster of ordinary workers, semirepletes (“semirotundus”) and repletes. He inferred that “the process by which the rotundity of the honey-bearers has probably been produced, has its exact counterpart in the ordinary distension of the crop in overfed ants; that, at least the condition of the alimentary canal, in all the castes, is the same, differing only in degree, and therefore, the probability is very great that the honey-bearer is simply a worker with an overgrown abdomen.” He found, moreover, that “a comparison of the workers with the honey-bearer shows that there is absolutely no difference between them except in the distended condition of the abdomen” and he therefore inferred “that the worker majors, for the most part, and sometimes the minors, are transformed by the gradual distension of the crop, and expansion of the abdomen, in the honey-bearers, and that the latter do not compose a distinct caste. It is probable, however,
that some of the majors have a special tendency to this change by reason of some peculiar structure or form of the intestine and abdominal walls." Although McCook gave these excellent reasons for believing that the replete must develop from a worker of the ordinary type, he did not actually witness the transformation. His account covers a great many other details in the behavior of *M. horti-deorum*, but as many of these are common to most other Camponotine ants, they need not be discussed in this connection.

My own observations on *M. horti-deorum* were made during July and August, 1903, and 1906. At first I worked in the Garden of the Gods and located several nests on the ridges where McCook made his classical observations many years ago. But the region is now so overrun by tourists that it is no longer a favorable spot for the quiet study of ant colonies. I therefore sought new localities and was soon able to locate several fine nests south of the Fontaine-qui-Bouille along Bear Creek and Red Rock Caños. A few nests were also found west of Manitou and south of the Ute Pass at a much greater distance from the Garden of the Gods. In all of these localities there are thickets of shin oaks (*Quercus undulata* and *gambeli*), and the nests are situated only on the summits of dry, stony ridges, just as they are in McCook's locality.

During the two summers I excavated fully a dozen fine colonies of *horti-deorum* and was able to confirm in nearly every detail McCook's interesting account of the nest architecture and the habits of the ordinary and replete workers. I was unable to make observations at night, but have no doubt that McCook's account of the foraging habits is perfectly trustworthy. I am inclined to believe, however, that the exudations of the *Holcaspis* galls may furnish only a portion of the food of the ants and that these insects obtain much, if not most, of their honey from the coccids and aphids on the oaks and other plants in the neighborhood. It would be strange, indeed, if these ants did not take advantage of a food supply so much more copious than that furnished by the galls.

I have been able to prove, what has been surmised by McCook and his predecessors, namely, that workers of the ordinary size and form
develop into repletes. In the nests which I excavated during July there were many callow workers, males and females. While keeping several colonies in artificial nests it occurred to me that the change from the ordinary to the replete worker must begin during the callow stage, while the integument of the gaster is still very soft and distensible. I accordingly isolated a number of young callows in two of my nests and fed them with maple syrup and cane sugar water. They partook of these substances greedily, and a few of the workers in each nest gradually began to assume the replete condition. During the course of four to six weeks several of them became what I have called semirepletes (McCook's semirotunds), and four, three in one nest and one in the other, actually attained the dimensions of the perfect replete. Most of the workers, however, showed no inclination to assume this form. In most cases, as McCook has shown, it is the major workers which most readily become repletes, but this is not an invariable rule. In the honey chambers of opulent colonies I have usually found also a few replete medæ and minimæ hanging among their larger but no more turgid sisters. Thoroughly hardened workers of the ordinary form, according to my observations, are no longer able to become repletes. It is probable that McCook's failure to secure these from isolated major workers was due to his using old individuals in his experiment.

Why certain callows should aspire to become animated pots or tuns, while others prefer to be active foragers and providers, is an enigma. I do not believe, however, that this is due to differences in the "structure or form of the intestine and abdominal walls," as McCook suggests. It is more probably an unusual example of the division of labor, which is shown by careful study to exist in various forms and degrees among all ants with monomorphic workers. The individual worker performs different duties at different stages in its life, beginning in its callow stage as a mere nurse, then becoming a forager, warrior or guard, and in its old age sometimes encroaching on the function of the queen and becoming a parthenogenetic mother, or gynæcid. It is not improbable that many worker ants acquire habits—using this word, for the moment, in its restricted and technical sense as employed in human psychology—and tend to perform throughout life the particular function which they happen to assume while in the callow stage. This may account for the development of the passive replete, not only in M. hortideorum, but also in all other honey ants. Those who, in anthropomorphic mood, are wont to extoll the fervid industry and extraordinary feats of muscular endurance in ants, should not overlook the beatific patience and self-sacrifice displayed by the replete Myrmecocystus as
it hangs from the rafters of its nest, month in, month out—for years, perhaps—a reservoir of temperamental as well as liquid sweetness.

6. *Cremastogaster inflata* and *diffiformis*.—Frederick Smith (1857, 1858c) published an account of two Myrmicine ants, which has led to

their being regarded as honey ants. Both species range from Tenasserim to Borneo through Burma, Java and Sumatra. *C. inflata* occurs also in the Philippines and *diffiformis* in Celebes. Of the latter species
Emery has described a subspecies, *physothorax*, and a variety, *micro-nata*. In these ants the gaster remains unmodified but the epinotum, or posterior portion of the thorax, is greatly enlarged in *difformis* and even inflated in *inflata* (Fig. 223). In this species it is also of a honey-yellow color, unlike the remainder of the body, which is dark brown or black. Emery (1900b) has also described another species, *C. tumidula* from Sumatra which shows an incipient stage in the enlargement of the epinotum.

Smith described *C. inflata* as "one of those singular and anomalous species which, without any particle of information, derived from observation, puzzle and perplex the naturalist; what can possibly be the use of the bladder-like excrescence on the thorax of this insect, it is difficult to imagine; to the touch it is elastic, and apparently forms a receptacle for saccharine fluids. With the aid of a microscope, a small, circular orifice can be seen at each of the posterior lateral angles of the swollen part, and small, crystallized particles are apparent, not only within the orifice, but scattered over the surface of the inflation; we may, therefore, reasonably suppose that this singular apparatus is for the purpose of elaborating a suitable and necessary aliment for the larvae of this singular insect." Of *C. difformis* he says: "This species resembles the *C. inflata* in form; but the swollen portion of the thorax is of a solid consistency; it forms, however, a similar laboratory of saccharine matter; the orifice from which it exudes is not exactly at the posterior angles, but a little way beneath; in some specimens masses of crystallized particles can be seen beneath the orifice; of this species, both large and small workers have been examined, and the same apparatus is found on them both."

More recently Bingham (1903) has made a few observations on these ants, which he describes as follows: "*C. difformis, physothorax* and *inflata* have the metathorax remarkably large and swollen, with a hollow in each side interiorly, communicating exteriorly by a tiny aperture. In live specimens there seems to be a continual flow from this aperture of a sweet fluid, and I have watched the workers of *C. physothorax* licking one another's thoraces vigorously."

These brief but interesting notes leave the reader in some perplexity. Janet (1898c) surmised that the epinotal enlargement in *C. inflata* might be due to hypertrophy of the peculiar glands which he, Meinert and Lubbock had found in this portion of the thorax of our northern ants (see p. 38). In a number of specimens of *C. inflata* in my collection, from Zamboangan, Philippines, two broadly elliptical or nearly circular openings are seen on each side of the epinotum (Fig. 223). The upper, which is somewhat smaller, is the tracheal orifice, or stigma, the
lower is undoubtedly the opening of the epinotal chamber and leads directly into one of the large inflated cavities. As all of my specimens are dry and carded, I am unable to ascertain the histological structure of these organs. I am convinced, however, that they represent, as Janet supposed, an enormous development of the organs found in the corresponding portion of the epinotum of our common ants. This is also indicated by an examination of specimens of *C. difformis* from Perak and of *mucronata* from Sumatra. In these the openings of the epinotal chambers are more ventral and more slit-shaped than in *inflata*, and may therefore be described as intermediate between those of *inflata* and our northern species of *Cremastogaster*.

As the function of the epinotal glands, even in our common ants, is still unknown, we can hardly expect to form a satisfactory conception of the hypertrophied homologues of these organs in a few Indomalayan ants that have hardly been studied in a living condition. That these organs should secrete a sweet liquid to be fed to the ants or their young is surprising at first thought and suggests the nursing habits of the Mammalia, but when we stop to consider that ants are in the habit of feeding their young and one another with a secretion of the labial, or salivary glands, we can see no reason why, in certain species, the thoracic glands might not be developed for a similar purpose. It will be very interesting, nevertheless, if future investigation proves that certain species of *Cremastogaster*, a genus whose members are so con-
spicuously fond of feeding on the saccharine excrement of aphids and coccids, have themselves developed a capacity for distilling a substance resembling honey-dew.

In the foregoing pages the habit of developing repletes has been shown to recur sporadically in at least six different genera of ants, namely, *Prenolepis, Melophorus, Plagiolepis, Leptomyrmex, Campopnotus* and *Myrmecocystus*. We are therefore dealing with a case of convergent development and as in other cases of this kind, we are led to determine the external conditions that act as the common

![Fig. 221. Replete Myrmecocystus horti-deorum in the act of regurgitating food to workers of the ordinary form. (McCook.)](image)

stimulus in calling forth this peculiar adaptation. The geographical distribution of the various honey ants seems to point to drought as one of the most important of these conditions, for nearly all of these insects are confined to the dry plains and deserts of North America, South Africa and Australia. Forel seems to be the only author who has noticed this peculiarity in the distribution of the honey ants. He says (1902c): “The extraordinary distension of the crop seems to be frequent in the Australian species of the genera *Melophorus, Camponotus* and *Leptomyrmex*. I suppose that this is due to the extremely dry climate of the country, which must compel the ants to remain, often for long periods, in their subterranean abodes. At such times a store of provisions in living bags must be very useful to them.”

There can be little doubt of the truth of this statement, but I believe that it should be expressed in a different manner. The impulse to develop repletes is probably due to the brief and temporary abundance of liquid food (honey-dew, gall secretions, etc.) in arid regions and the
long periods during which not only these substances, but also insect food are unobtainable. The honey is stored in the living reservoirs for the purpose of tiding over such periods of scarcity, and the ants remain in their nests because they do not need to forage. Hence the confinement mentioned by Forel is not the immediate but one of the ulterior effects of drought. I am convinced from my observations on desert ants that no amount of drought will keep these insects in their nest when they are in need of food.

While excavating the nests of *M. horti-deorum* I was impressed with certain peculiarities in their structure and situation, which seem to be explainable only as adaptations to the development of repletes. One of these peculiarities is the great hardness of the soil that is preferred by the ants. This is the more astonishing because the workers are very slender and delicate organisms. It is evident that such soil is well adapted to the construction of vaulted chambers like those in which the repletes hang, whereas soft or friable soil would be most unsuitable. The development of repletes also makes it necessary for the ants to seek very dry situations for their nests. Hence we always find them, in the environs of Manitou at least, on the summits of ridges which shed the rain very rapidly. The honey chambers must be kept very dry, both to prevent the disastrous results of crumbling and slipping walls and to obviate the growth of moulds on the repletes, which are, of course, imprisoned for life in dark cavities and filled with substances that are favorable to the development of fungi. I believe also that the size of the nest openings and galleries, which are so much larger than would seem to be required by such small, slender ants, may be an adaptation to securing plenty of fresh air in the honey chambers. If these suppositions are correct, there is obviously a reciprocal relation between the replete habit and an arid environment: the ants store honey because they are living in
an arid region where moisture and food are precious, and the storing of honey in replete workers, in turn, is possible only in very dry soil.

_Prenolepis imparis_ would seem to be an exception to the general rule of distribution in the honey ants, since the typical form of this species occurs in rather shady places and in clayey soil which holds moisture rather tenaciously. It is not improbable, however, that what is known as var. _testacea_ Emery is really the primitive form of this species. This ant nests in sandy soil and is one of the most abundant insects in the pine barrens of New Jersey and in similar localities in the Eastern States. These are xerophytic regions, as shown by the pines, scrub oaks and many other plants. The sand in which this vegetation grows does not retain water readily and therefore presents conditions not unlike those of the deserts and Great Plains. The dark colored typical _imparis_ is much less abundant and probably represents a secondary adaptation to moist woods and firmer soil. This would explain the existence of repletes in an ant inhabiting rather humid, shady localities.

Most ants of temperate, mesophytic regions have a mixed diet, consisting of insects, honey-dew and plant secretions. When such species come to live in deserts, or rather arid regions, where the long droughts of summer and the cold of winter restrict plant and insect life to a brief season, they usually take on one of the four following adaptations:

1. They may exaggerate the insectivorous habits which they already possess and become ravenous and highly predatory hunters. They thus manage to secure a sufficient amount of food even under unfavorable conditions. This adaptation is beautifully shown in the Old World _Myrmecocysti_ (Cataglyphis), which are represented by the greatest number of species, subspecies and varieties in the deserts of North Africa. The same tendency, however, is apparent in certain races of the American _M. melliger_ (orbiceps and mendax).
2. Many species have taken to eating and harvesting seeds—a very obvious adaptation to arid regions covered with a short-lived herbaceous flora, as is shown by the species of *Pogonomyrmex* in the New World, *Messor*, *Solenopsis* and *Pheidole* in both hemispheres, and *Holcomyrmex*, *Oxyopomyrmex*, *Goniomma*, *Meranoplus* and *Pheidologeton* in the Old World (Chapter XVI). These ants still feed upon insects when these are obtainable, but seeds furnish such an inexhaustible and nutritious food supply that the habit of collecting and storing them in the nests has become highly developed.

3. A number of species, which have been described in detail in the foregoing pages, have taken to storing nectar and honey-dew in the crops of a physiological caste, the repletes.

4. Some ants (Attii) manage to live and thrive in very arid regions because they cultivate and eat fungi. Although this habit, which has been described in Chapter XVIII, probably originated in the luxuriant rain-forests of the tropics, several fungus growing species have emigrated into the deserts of northern Mexico, western Texas and southern Arizona. In these regions they can always obtain the vegetable débris for the substratum on which to grow their fungi, and these delicate plants can, of course, be successfully cultivated some distance below the surface of the soil. These Attine ants thus no longer depend on the precarious food-supply of the desert, for in raising their crops they are at a greater advantage than the farmer who makes his home in the arid lands of the Southwest.
CHAPTER XXI

PERSECUTED AND TOLERATED GUESTS

"Les Sociétés de Fourmis sont rendues puissantes par le nombre des individus qui les composent, par la ténacité, le courage et les instincts compliqués, par les organes très perfectionnés, les moyens d'attaque et de défense que possèdent ces individus; par le milieu favorable et la protection que leur fournissent leurs retraites bien abritées; par une division du travail qui peut être poussée très loin. De toutes ces conditions particulièrement advantageuses, il résulte que les Sociétés de Fourmis ont, en général, une existence extrêmement longue et vivent dans une véritable opulence. Il n'en faut pas plus pour expliquer qu'un nombre aussi extraordinairement considérable d'espèces animales aient été attirées près d'elles, aient cherché à profiter des avantages dont elles jouissent, aient tenté de vivre dans leurs nids, aient pu s'y installer à la suite d'une accoutumance des Fourmis à leur présence et, dans certains cas où ces dernières ont trouvé un avantage à cette présence, aient fini par être soignées et protégées par leur hôtes."—Janet, "Rapports des Animaux Myrmécophiles avec les Fourmis," 1897.

The relations of the ants to the aphids and caterpillars described in Chapter XIX represent only one of the many phases of symbiosis. These relations, like those of the ants to the vascular plants, are of the ants' own seeking and outside of their nests; that is, they are extranidal. The ants may even be said to be mildly parasitic on the aphids and caterpillars. The symbiotic relations to be described in this and the following chapter, on the contrary, obtain within the confines of the nest and are therefore intranidal. In these relations, which are extremely diversified, the ants are, as a rule, passive or indifferent, and the other insects foist themselves upon the ants and assume the rôle of satellites, parasites or commensals. Such insects, when they regularly inhabit ant-nests, either throughout life or during one or more of their developmental stages, are known as myrmecophiles, or ant-guests, in a broad sense. The ants have such a plastic organization that they are not only able to assume an active rôle towards the aphids and a passive rôle towards the myrmecophiles, but, as will be shown in Chapters XXIII to XXVII, they may even enter into manifold active and passive symbiotic relations to other species of ants (social symbiosis).

Our knowledge of the myrmecophiles is less than a century old. It grew slowly at first through the occasional contributions of J. P. W. Müller (1818), Savi (1819), Maerker (1841, 1844), von Hagens (1863, 1865), Lespès (1868a, 1868b), Forel (1874) and Lubbock (1894), but recently the interest and importance of the subject have been more
fully appreciated, owing to the investigations of Wasmann, Janet, Escherich, Reitter, Hamilton, Schwarz, Viehmeyer and others. Wasmann alone, in a series of more than a hundred and fifty papers, may be said to have contributed as much as all other authors to our knowledge of these remarkable insects.

The number and diversity of myrmecophilous arthropods are almost incredible. In 1894 Wasmann enumerated 1,246 species. This list comprises 1,177 insects, 60 Arachnida and 9 Crustacea. Of the insects 993 are Coleoptera (283 Staphylinidae, 117 Pselaphidae, 90 Clavigeridae, 169 Paussidae, 43 Thoricitidae, 128 Histeridae, etc.). Since 1894 many additional species have been brought to light, so that the total number now known is at least 1,500, including fully 1,000 beetles. These, however, represent only a portion of the existing myrmecophilous fauna of the world. Wasmann's and Escherich's estimate of 3,000 species is probably below rather than above the total number that will be recorded when the ant-nests of the tropics and many other regions have been as carefully searched for these insects as those of Europe.

The existence of this great number of myrmecophiles can be accounted for only on the supposition that ant-nests have a strong attraction for terrestrial arthropods. It is not difficult to understand how this can be the case since, in the first place, the nests are usually permanent abodes inhabited for months or years by successive broods of ants. Second, these nests have at all seasons a slightly higher temperature than the surrounding soil. Third, there is usually more or less refuse food or offal, pupal exuviae and dead ants, at least in the superficial
chambers. Fourth, the living larvae and pupae represent an abundant and highly nutritious food supply for any insects that can elude the watchfulness of the ants. Fifth, the ants, in protecting themselves from larger animals, necessarily protect any small organisms living in their nests. Sixth, the philoprogenitive instincts of the ants are capable of being deceived and exploited, for these insects are so fond of nursing that they are always ready to lavish their affections on any organisms that resemble ant larvae. Since the dwellings of termites, social wasps and bees offer many of the attractions here enumerated, it is not surprising to find that these insects, too, have their nest-mates and parasites. These, however, are far less numerous than the myrmecophiles.

More extraordinary than the number of myrmecophiles is the diversity of their relations to the ants. It is by no means easy to frame an

![Fig. 225. Dinarda dentata eating mites from the surface of Lomechusa sirumosa. (Wasmann.)](image)

ethological classification of this perplexing assemblage of assassins, scavengers, satellites, guests, commensals and parasites, for the same species may assume different relations towards the ants in its different developmental stages, or it may be sufficiently versatile to combine the habits of different groups. Nevertheless, Wasmann has succeeded in working out a very good classification, which is sufficiently elastic for most purposes. He divides all myrmecophiles into the following four groups:

1. **Inimically Persecuted Intruders, or Synechthrans.**—These insects live in the nests as scavengers or cowardly assassins of isolated ants, and are treated with marked hostility. They have to elude the ants in order to get at their food, which usually consists of dead or diseased ants, the brood or the refuse of the nest.
2. Indifferently Tolerated Guests, or Syncæketes.—These live in the nests without being noticed by the ants or without arousing any great animosity, because they are either too small or too slow of movement to be perceived, or have no specific odor that differentiates them from their environment, or because the ants are unable to seize and hold them and therefore soon learn to let them alone.

3. True Guests, Symphiles, or Myrmecoxenes.—Species which are amicably treated, i. e., licked, fondled, fed and even reared by the ants. These guests represent the most extreme and remarkable development of myrmecophily.

4. Ecto- and Entoparasites.—Species that live either on or in the ants and present adaptive peculiarities similar to those of the ecto- and entoparasites of other animals.

The symphiles represent the élite, as Wasmann calls them, of the myrmecophiles, and number hardly more than 300 to 400 species, whereas the syncæketes are much more numerous. With the increasing intimacy of the symbiotic relation as we pass from the first to the fourth of the groups above mentioned, there goes a concomitant increase in the number and magnitude of adaptive characters. The object of the myrmecophiles is to live their own sweet lives unmolested in the midst of the warmth and plenty of the nest. We see, therefore, a general tendency in many of these creatures to mimic the ants in color, form or pilosity (mimetic type), in others to assume a limuloid shape, with broad shoulders and rapidly tapering abdomen, combined with a hard or very slippery surface, which prevents their being held fast by the ants (loricate type), and in others to develop tufts of yellow, scent-diffusing hairs, which appeal to the gustatory and olfactory senses of the ants (symphiloid type). The mimetic and loricate types are most perfectly realized among certain synechtrians and syncæketes, whereas the symphiloid characters, though foreshadowed in some of these insects, reach their full development only in the true guests. The parasites of ants, finally, like those of other animals, have acquired the most exquisite and specialized apparatus for exploiting the individual host. I shall here consider a number of typical synech-
thrans and synœketes and continue with an account of the symphiles and parasites in the next chapter.

The Synechthrans.—This group, which is not a very large one, comprises a number of agile, carnivorous Staphylinid beetles belonging to the genera Myrmedonia, Myrmacia, Lamprinus, Quedius, Xantholinus, Megastilicus, etc., which lurk in the less frequented galleries of the nests and avoid encounters with the ants. One of the most interesting of these genera is Myrmedonia, which is represented by numerous species on all the continents and is of generalized and primitive structure, so that it is regarded by Wasmann as related to the ancestral form from which some of the more specialized Staphylinid synœketes and symphiles have sprung. The European species have been carefully studied by Wasmann (1886). The sooty M. funesta (Fig. 224, A) resembles its host, Lasius fuliginosus, in color, and the same is true of the black and red M. humeralis which lives with Formica rufa. The beetles lurk about the burrows and feed on dead or disabled ants, but they also lie in wait near the entrance and destroy solitary ants that are returning to the nest. Wasmann has seen five or six Myrmedonia fall upon a single ant, tear her limb from limb and then quarrel with one another over the fragments like a pack of hungry hounds. The ants detest these jackals and rush at them with open jaws, but the latter merely turn up their flexible tails and emit a disagreeable secretion. This causes the ants to start back, and the beetles escape. Our American species of Myrmedonia, M. cremastogastris, planifer and schwarzi, which have been taken in the nests of Cremastogaster lineolata, probably have very similar habits. The South American forms have been found in the nests of Eciton and Pogonomyrmex, the African forms with Dorylus. According to Wasmann (1892) Myrmacia fussii, which lives with Tapinoma erraticum, resembles Myrmedonia in its behavior. In this case, too, the synechthran resembles its host, being shining black in color and intermediate in stature between the worker and queen Tapinoma. It lurks in the unfrequented galleries of the nest and kills the ants at night when they lie huddled together and overcome with the cold. The Tapinoma worker, on meeting the Myrmacia, turns the tip of her gaster forward and emits her strong-smelling venom. In the United States Megastilicus formicarius (Fig. 226), which is not uncommon in the large mound nests of Formica exsectoides, is, according to my observations, a typical synechthran. It resembles its host in its black and red coloration and ant-like appearance. When confined with the ants in a small artificial nest, it is invariably killed in the course of a few hours, but in the natural nests it adroitly eludes its host.
in the same manner as *Myrmedonia*, for, when an ant tries to seize it, it raises the tip of its flexible abdomen and seems to emit a whitish fluid which causes the ant to start back, as if a flask of ammonia had been suddenly uncorked in its face, thus giving the beetle time to run away. *Megastilicus* is certainly too feeble to kill living *F. exsectoides* workers. It probably feeds on the remains of insects brought into the nest or on the larvae of the ants.

**The Synæketes.**—For convenience in handling this large and heterogeneous group I shall divide it into four sections: the neutral synæketes; the mimetic, loricate and symphloid forms; the myrmecoclepts, and the strigilators.

(a) **Neutral Synæketes.**—To this section may be assigned a number of insects which pay no attention to the ants or their brood, but live on the refuse or nest materials and spend their time seeking these on the walls of the galleries and chambers. They do not mimic the ants, although they are sometimes protected either by small size, tough integument or by specially constructed cases. They seem to pass unnoticed by the ants, or, if perceived, probably appear as a part of the lifeless environment. Typical examples of these neutral synæketes are the tiny white Podurans of the genus *Cyphodeira* [Beckia], so abundant in the nests of many different ants, both in Europe and America. They flit about the dark galleries like diminutive ghosts and are probably invisible to the ants. The slow-moving, snow-white slater, *Platyarthrus hoffmannsegreg* of Europe, is similarly panmyrmecophilous and elicits no more attention than the much smaller *Cyphodeira*. A whole fauna of Trichopterygid beetles (*Ptenidium*, *Ptilium*, etc.), mites (*Lalaps*), *Ceratopogon* larvae, microlepidopteran caterpillars (*Myrmecocyla ochrocella* in Europe and *Epizeuxis americanus* in the United States) and Phoridæ may often be found in the superficial chambers of ant-nests and undoubtedly obtain most of their food as scavengers on the kitchen middens. Some of these creatures, like the Phoridæ with subapterous females (*Commoptera solenopsis*, *Xanionotum hystrix*, *Ecitomyia wheeleri*) described by Brues (1901, 1902b) from the nests of various Texan ants, are of unusual interest on account of their aberrant structure and relationship to the remarkable *Termitoxenia* and *Termitomyia* of termite nests.

Besides these insects, nearly all of which are of small size, one occasionally finds certain larger larval and pupal forms which, one would
suppose, could hardly be overlooked by the ants. Such are, *e. g.*, the 
larvae of the Clytrinae, a group of Chrysomelid beetles, represented 
in Europe by the genus *Clythra*, in the United States by *Coscinoptera*.
The adult beetles are found on plants, but the larvae are sometimes com-
mon in the superficial chambers of ant-nests. They inhabit cylindrical 
or pear-shaped earthen cases of their own construction. These are 
open only at one end which can be closed by the hard head of the larva. 
Occasionally the ants gnaw holes in the earthen case and devour the 
enclosed larva or pupa, but as a rule these synœketes are completely 
ignored. Escherich (1897, 1906) claims to have detected a tendency 
towards brood parasitism in a *Clythra* which inhabits the nests of 
*Tetramorium cespitum* in Asia Minor. The larva often withdraws 
into its case so as to leave an empty cavity in front of its head. The 
ants, seeking for cozy little depressions in which to hide their egg-
packets, often place them in this cavity. The *Clythra* larva then moves 
its head forward and devours the eggs. But these insects are never 
sufficiently abundant in the nests to destroy many of the eggs, and 
they probably feed very largely on the refuse of the kitchen middens 
among which they are most frequently found.

Another insect that belongs among the neutral synœketes and bears 
a slight resemblance to *Clythra*, is the singular wine-red Microlepider-
teron, *Pachypodistes goeldii*, recently observed by Hagmann (1907). 
The larva of this moth lives in the paper nests of the arboreal *Dolicho-
derus gibbosos-analis* of Brazil. It feeds on the carton of the nest and 
with this substance builds a mussel-shaped case from which it can pro-
trude its head and in which it pupates after completing its growth. 
When the moth emerges it is covered throughout with a dense coating 
of erect, golden-yellow, fugitive hairs, 3 mm. long, which protect it 
from the ants till its wings have expanded and it is able to escape from 
the nest. This recalls the singular Lycænid *Liphyra* described by Dodd 
and Chapman (see p. 359). This insect is also a synœkete like *Pachy-
podistes*, though I referred to it in connection with the trophobiotic 
Lycænidae. Both *Liphyra* and *Pachypodistes* are protected by a hard 
case in their larval and pupal stages, the former by an induration of its 
own integument, the latter by a case constructed from the materials of 
the nest, and the hatching imagines of both insects battle the ants with 
an envelope of fugitive scales.

Several Scarabæid beetles are also to be included among the synœ-
eketes. The European *Cetonia florica*, *e. g.*, passes its larval and pupal 
stages in the depths of *Formica rufa* nests, and in the United States 
the allied *Euphoria inda* and *hirtipes* bear a similar relation to *F.* 
*integra*, *obscuripes* and *exsectoides*. I have seen *E. inda* fly from a
distance straight to a *F. exsectoides* mound and at once bury itself in the earth and débris. According to Wasmann the larvæ of the Cetonine beetles are tolerated by the ants “partly with indifference and partly with hostility.”

Among the most singular syncéketes are the larvæ of the Syrphid flies belonging to the genus *Microdon*. These larvæ (Fig. 227), which have been repeatedly described as mollusks (under the generic names *Scutelligeria*, *Parmula* and *Ceratoconcha*) or as Coccidae, are tough-skinned, elliptical creatures, with a flat creeping-sole and a convex, often prettily reticulated dorsal surface. They move about very slowly in the superficial chambers of the nest. When ready to pupate, they simply remain stationary and attached to the walls of the galleries by means of their creeping-soles, assume a deep brown color, while the integument becomes indurated and more brittle and forms the puparium enclosing the pupa proper. The fly emerges by breaking off the anterior dorsal third of the puparium. Verhoeff (1892) has observed the fly in the act of ovipositing in the nest. It was repeatedly driven away by the ants (*Formica sanguinea*), but kept returning until the eggs were deposited. Three species of *Microdon* flies have been bred from ant-nests in Europe (*M. mutabilis*, *devius* and *apiformis*). Though the larvæ of our American forms are not infrequent, none had been bred until very recently, when Mr. William T. Davis and myself (1908d) succeeded in raising specimens of *M. tristis* from a number of larvæ found in *Formica schaufussi* nests in New Jersey and New York. Another species is represented in my collection by some larvæ and pupæ which I found in nests of *F. obscuripes*, *ciliata*, etc., in Colo-

---

*Fig. 228. Mimetic Staphylinidae that live with Doryline ants. (Wasmann.) A, Mimecition pulex; B, Ectomorpha simulans; C, Dorylostethus wasmanni.*
rado. Brues (1903b) has described an extraordinary, lemon-yellow and very convex *Microdon* larva taken by Professor H. Heath from a nest of *Monomorium minimum* in California, and I have described a very flat larva from the nest of *Pseudomyrmex mexicana* (1901b), so that the larvae of at least four North American species are known. As Lea (1893) has described a species (*M. variegatus*) from Australia, the genus is probably cosmopolitan. The ants, as a rule, do not seem to notice the *Microdon* larva and pupae and these are left behind when the ants move to a new nest. The young larvae seem to shrivel and die when removed from the ants, but I have been unable to ascertain what they find to eat in the nests. In one of my artificial formicaries the ants killed a young larva that had failed to get hold of a surface with its vulnerable creeping-sole. They turned the helpless creature over on its back and for two days kept licking and biting it till it was reduced to a mere granule. According to Wasmann the fly, which is more or less tomentose, is sometimes licked by the ants, but it seems to spend little time in the nest. In my artificial nests the imaginal *M. tristis* on emerging from their puparia were attacked and killed by their host, *F. schaufussi* (Wheeler, 1908d).

(b) Mimetic, Loricate and Symphiloid Synæketes.—These are the most numerous and typical of the tolerated guests and appear to attain their highest development among the Doryline ants. This is surprising because these ants have no fixed abode and their synæketes have to lead the life of camp-followers, moving from place to place in the caravans of their restless hosts. This life has its compensations, however, for the Dorylines are powerful marauders and there is always an abundance of fresh food to be had in their temporary quarters. For nearly all that is known of these Doryline guests we are indebted to Wasmann, who has shown in a long series of papers (1890–1904) that they are mostly Staphylinid beetles and that among these the mimetic, loricate and symphiloid types have been remarkably developed and independently of one another in each hemisphere. Thus among the guests of *Dorylus* and *Ænictus* of the Ethiopian region we have the mimetic genera *Dorylostethus* (Fig. 228, C), *Dorylobius*, *Dorylophila*, *Dorylopora*, *Dorylocerus*, *Doryliminus*, *Dorylogaster* and *Stilicus*; the loricate genera *Pygostenus*, *Doryloxenus*, *Anommatothrix*, *Anommatoxenus*, *Diocerex*, *Mimocete* and *Trilobitidius* (the last a Silphid); and the symphiloid genus *Sympleomon*. Roughly corresponding to these we have as guests among the Ecitons of tropical America the mimetic genera *Mimeciton* (Fig. 228, A), *Ecitophya*, *Ecitophila*, *Ecitomorpha* (Fig. 228, B), *Ecitonilla*, *Ecitoxenia*, *Ecitochara*, *Ecitopora*, *Ecitotonia*, *Ecitonusa*; the loricate genera *Xenocephalus*, *Cephalo-
plectus and Ecitoxenus, and the symphiloid genera Ecitogaster and Ecitodulus. These correspondences between the guests of the Old World driver ants and those of the New World legionary ants represent a very interesting case of convergent development, for none of the genera is common to both hemispheres and all of them have the appearance of having developed independently in adaptation to their respective hosts. The most remarkable mimetic form is Mimeciton pulex, which lives with the Brazilian Eciton pradator. But the smaller Ecitons of the Southern States also have their mimetic guests (Ecitonidia wheeleri and Ecitoxenia brevipes with Eciton schmitti, and Ecitonusa schmitti and foreli with E. carolinense). As the Doryline ants are blind, but endowed with a very keen contact-odor sense, Wasmann assumes that the guest's mimicry in form and pilosity is for the purpose of deceiving its hosts, whereas its color mimicry may enable it to remain unseen by birds and other enemies while it is moving along in the procession of the ants. While Wasmann is probably right in regarding the peculiar resemblance between guest and host as due to a tactile mimicry, further speculation had best be postponed till the insects can be carefully observed in their natural environment.

The tendency to develop mimetic, loricate and symphiloid characters is not confined to the guests of the driver and legionary ants, but is discernible also among the guests of many of our northern species. Two of the common Staphylinids living with Liometopum occidentale in Colorado, namely, Dinardilla liometopi and Apterolina schmitti, are clearly mimetic, the former in color and pilosity, the latter in form. In the species of Dinarda of Europe, we have guests which resemble the loricate dorylophiles and ecitophiles in form and also mimic their hosts in color. The genus has been carefully studied by Wasmann (1901e, 1904d, etc.), who regards it as representing a series of forms actually in process of speciation. The various Dinarda have definite hosts: D. dentata living with Formica sanguinea, markeli with F. rufa, hagensi with F. exsecta, pygmaea with F. fusco-rufobarbis, nigritoides with F. fusca, and nigrita with Aphaenogaster testaceopilosa. D. dentata, markeli and hagensi are red and black like their hosts, pygmaea is dark and nearly unicolorous like F. fusco-rufobarbis, nigritoides and
nigrita black like the ants with which they live. These synœketes are also graduated in size according to their hosts, the largest and most primitive form being dentata (Fig. 224, B), whereas the others are hardly more than smaller subspecies or varieties, which Wasmann conceives to have been produced by a kind of unconscious selection on the part of their respective host ants. D. dentata is not uncommon in sanguinea nests, where it is usually tolerated with indifference. It mingles freely with the ants, but when attacked, as sometimes happens, it behaves like Myrmedonia and Megastilicus, raising the tip of its abdomen and startling its pursuer. It feeds on dead ants and other insects and is also fond of eating the ectoparasitic mites from the bodies of the living ants and their other guests (Fig. 225). In this capacity it is very useful to its hosts. When sanguinea moves to a new nest, it is accompanied by the Dinarda. This has been observed by several writers, and during the summer of 1907 I myself saw near Würzburg two of these beetles running along like ecitophiles in a procession of sanguinea workers that were carrying their slaves and pupæ to a new nest.

To the symphiloid type may be assigned several of the guests of our northern ants, but I shall here consider only the Histerid beetles of the genera Triballus and Hetarius and the Cetonine beetles of the genus Crenastocheilus. The numerous Histeridæ that live with ants have retained unmodified the hard, shining integument and seed-like form of the free-living species, which constitute the greater bulk of this family. Professor T. Kincaid has sent me a few specimens of Triballus californicus which he took from nests of Myrmica mutica in Washington. Though deep red, like many symphiles, this beetle has no yellow trichomes and is therefore in all probability an indifferently tolerated guest. The same is true of many species of other Histerid genera (Myrmetes, Dendrophilus, Sternocalis, Eremotes, Hister, etc.). The genus Hetarius, however, which is represented both in Europe and North America, has the thorax and legs peculiarly modified and the former sometimes furnished with trichomes. Forel (1874) and Wasmann (1886) at first regarded the European H. ferrugineus, when living with Polyergus rufescens, as an indifferently tolerated guest which feeds on the cadavers of the ants, but Escherich (1897), who observed it in nests of Lasius alienus, is inclined to regard it as a true symphile. The ants lick the beetle and carry it about, but have great difficulty in seizing it with their mandibles on account of its hard, smooth and rounded surfaces. Escherich describes one of their attempts as follows: "On uncovering the nest I saw an ant trying to seize a Hetarius. She persisted for a long time but her jaws kept
slipping from the smooth chitinous exoskeleton. Finally she succeeded in getting hold of one of the legs and carried the guest a short distance in this manner, till it suddenly slipped out of her mandibles. Then the ant made no further attempts to seize the beetle, but with her fore-feet rolled it along for some distance, like a barrel, while it held its legs completely withdrawn." Of our North American species *H. blanchardi* is recorded by Schwarz (1890) as occurring in the nests of *Aphanogaster fulva*, and *H. brunneipennis* as living in those of *Formica subsericea* and *exsectoides*. *H. horni* occurs in the nests of *F. schaufussi*, according to Wickham (1892). I have taken *brunneipennis* also in the nests of *F. neocinerea* in Illinois. Brues (1903) records the occurrence of a new species in the nests of *F. subpolita* in California.

I have recently published some notes on *H. brunneipennis* (1908c). April 12 seven of these beetles were placed in an artificial nest with a number of *F. subsericea* workers and larvæ and kept under observation till June 30. Although the golden-yellow trichomes are scattered over the elytra and thorax of *H. brunneipennis* (Fig. 229) and not collected in masses on the sides and front of the thorax, as in some of the species from the Western States (*e.g.*, *H. tristriatus*), these structures nevertheless powerfully attract the ants. The beetles run about the nest with surprising agility, considering the awkward shape of their body and legs, or stand motionless with the anterior part of the body elevated and the fore pair of legs raised from the floor, turned forward and strongly flexed at their femorotibial joints. When a beetle in this position happens to be touched by the antennæ of a passing ant, it begins to wave its fore legs as if to attract attention. The ant stops, begins to lick the beetle or seizes it with her jaws. The body of the latter, being very hard and smooth, slips from her grasp but the ant redoubles her efforts. She either seizes it by one of its legs, since the beetle does not feign death nor withdraw its appendages, but allows itself to be carried about the nest, or she stops, seizes it with her fore feet and, holding it in a vertical position, proceeds to lick its head in a very quick and effusive manner. For some time the beetle keeps its head withdrawn into its thorax, after the Histerid fashion, till the ant stops abruptly, protrudes her tongue and regurgitates a drop of food on its face. Then the beetle protrudes its head, opens its mouth, works its jaws and rapidly absorbs the liquid, which sometimes floods the whole cavity in the fore part of the thorax. Thereupon the ant again falls to licking the beetle as if to wipe its face free from the moisture, and either leaves the creature to its own devices or regurgitates another drop. Again and again the licking and feeding may alternate, as if the
ant were fascinated with her pet and could not feed and fondle it enough. This performance is, in fact, so frequently repeated that I could nearly always observe it whenever I uncovered the nest. I have rarely witnessed a more comical sight than the behavior of these slender, black ants while they are holding the chunky, little red urchins in their paws and pouring liquid into them as if they were so many casks. Comical, too, is the behavior of the beetle while it is waiting to be noticed, with its head and fore legs elevated. At such times it assumes a ridiculous, cocky air. Often, instead of receiving the caress and food which it is expecting, it is inadvertently knocked over onto its flat back by some scurrying ant intent on more important business. Then the beetle lies for a few moments with sprawling legs, but soon succeeds in righting itself and either scampers away or at once strikes its favorite attitude again. It seems to be greatly aided in the righting movements by the peculiar position of its tarsi, which are strongly flexed backward on the tibiae, so that when it is lying on its back, the claws are brought into the most advantageous position for taking hold of the floor of the nest. Like the European ferrugineus, H. brunneipennis also feeds on solid substances. It eagerly seeks out any dead or wounded ants on the refuse heap of the nest, and may be seen gnawing at their joints or mouth-parts or eating its way into the soft parts of the gaster, after having made a large hole in the chitinous integument. It will also spend hours gnawing away with its sharp little mandibles at the bodies of caterpillars and other insects that have been partially eaten by the ants. Occasionally the body of a single small caterpillar or dead ant will be covered with the beetles, all busily feeding. At such times the ants often come up, tear them away and feed them with regurgitated food. The beetles straighten up and patiently submit to the fondling, licking and feeding, but as soon as the ants move away, return to their ghoulish repast.

The singular genus Cremastocheilus (Fig. 230), which comprises more than twenty species, seems to be peculiar to North America. All of the species have very hard bodies and many of them are furnished with tufts of golden trichomes at the anterior and posterior corners of the thorax. The very peculiar mentum is cup-shaped and fits closely over the small mouth parts. A few of the species are deep red, but
most of them are opaque or shining black, with coarsely punctate or pitted surfaces. Their movements are very slow and awkward. The larvæ live in the débris of the nests, like the larvæ of Cetonia, and pupate in fragile earthen cocoons (Wheeler, 1908e). I have taken one of the smaller red species (C. spinifer) in a nest of Pheidole desertorum in western Texas. C. canaliculatus, castanea and harrisii are not uncommon in the nests of various species of Formica (schaufussi, exsectoides, subsericea, etc.) in the Eastern States. More rarely these same species occur in nests of Componotus and Aphanogaster. Schwarz records C. knochi from the nests of F. subanescens in Colorado, and in the same state I have taken many specimens of C. wheeleri from the nests of various forms of F. rufa. C. crinitus occurs in the nests of F. gnava in Texas, C. mexicanus in the nests of the same ant in Arizona. There is little doubt that the true hosts of Cremastocheilus are species of Formica and that the occurrence of these beetles with other ants is either secondary or accidental. In my artificial nests the beetles were almost continually being dragged about by their legs, but were neither fed nor licked by the ants. These insects, however, persistently gnawed at the anterior and posterior thoracic angles of the beetles as if much attracted by the trichomes (Fig. 231). I am inclined, therefore, to regard the Cremastocheilus as degenerate symphiles, which are now able to live as indifferently tolerated or even as persecuted synæketes, because their hard armor shields them perfectly from the mandibles of the ants. Even the mouth parts and antennæ are protected by the peculiar mentum, and the legs are so tough that they cannot be disarticulated by the ants. I was quite unable to ascertain the nature of the food of these beetles, some of which lived several weeks in my nests without eating. According to Braun (Wasmann, 1900a) the Cetoniine beetles of the genera Plagocheilus and Myrmecochelus, which are allied to Cremastocheilus, live in the nests of Plagiolepis in South Africa.

(c) Myrmecomoleptic.—Janet (1896b) gave the name of myrmecomolecenity to the peculiar behavior of the Lepismid Atelura [Lepisma] formicaria, which is common in the nests of various European ants. This insect is decidedly of the loricate type, with broad thorax, rapidly
tapering abdomen and very smooth surface, so that it cannot be readily seized by its host. Janet says that "these guests keep circulating and gliding about among the ants [Lasius mixtus], but never remain standing in their neighborhood. I have sometimes seen the ants threaten the Lepismina and even spring upon them, but the latter are so agile that they always escape. Nevertheless, in my artificial nests, where they have greater difficulty in concealing themselves than in the natural nests, they are eventually captured. Two days after installing them in the nest, I found five cadavers which the ants were holding in their mandibles and carrying about the nest." The Atelura will eat honey from the manger of the nest, but they seem, as a rule, to obtain their food by running up and imbibing some of the liquid regurgitated by one ant to another. After furnishing the nest with honey Janet made the following observations: "From the instant that the first foragers

Fig. 232. Atelura coming up to snatch the droplet of food that is being regurgitated by one Lasius mixtus worker to another. (Janet.)

returned to the inhabited chamber of the nest, the Lepismina showed by their excitement, that they perceived the odor of honey. Soon a considerable number of ants were grouped in couples for the purpose of regurgitating. They elevated their bodies slightly and often raised their fore legs, thus leaving a vacant space under their heads. As soon as a Lepismina came near such a couple, it thrust itself into the space, raised its head, suddenly snapped up the droplet that was passing in front of it and made off at once as if to escape merited pursuit [Fig. 232]. But the ants standing face to face are not free enough in their movements even to threaten the audacious thief, who forthwith proceeds to take toll from another couple, and continues these tactics until his appetite is appeased."

The habits of the golden yellow Atelura wheeleri, which occurs in the nest of many ants in Texas and northern Mexico, are probably very similar to those of formicaria. Escherich (1903a, 1905), who has recently monographed the Lepismidae, records a number of species of Lepisma, Braunsina, Lepismina and Atelura as
living with ants or termites. Like many other synœketes these insects are pannymecophilous and not restricted to particular hosts.

(d) The Strigilators.—I propose this name for a group of synœketes that lick the surfaces of ants and seem to feed very largely, if not exclusively, on the cutaneous secretions and the thin coating of saliva with which the ants cover one another. To this group belong the little wingless crickets of the genus Myrmecophila, the equally diminutive cockroaches of the genus Attaphila and the Staphylinid beetle Oxysoma. The symbiotic ants Leptothorax emersoni and glacialis also have similar habits, but these are more conveniently described in another connection (Chapter XXIII).

Like many other synœkete genera, Myrmecophila has a world-wide distribution. Two species (M. acervorum and ochracea) have been described from Europe, one from North Africa (M. salomonis), one from India (flavocincta), one from the Bintang Islands (dubia), one from Australia (australis), five from the United States (pergandei, formicarum, oregonensis, nebrascensis and nehawkee) and two from South America (americana and prenolepidis). Most, if not all, the species tend to become pannymecophilous. M. acervorum lives with ants of the genera Formica, Lasius, Myrmica, Apheanogaster and Tetramorium. M. flavocincta occurs with Plagiolepis longipes and Prenolepis longicornis and has been introduced into Brazil with the latter ant. M. ochracea inhabits the nests of Messor barbatus, Pheidole pallidula and Liometopum microcephalum. I have received M. australis with specimens of Camponotus nigroceps. According to Pergande (Scudder, 1899), M. pergandei, the largest species of the genus, lives with Camponotus pennsylvanicus, melleus, fallax var., Formica subsericea, pallide-fulva, integra, Apheanogaster tennesseensis and Cremastogaster lineolata. M. formicarum lives with Camponotus levigatus and M. oregonensis with F. neorufibarbis. Cockerell found M. nebrascensis in the nests of a Formica at Santa Fe, N. M.; in Texas I have taken it with Formica gnaev, Pogonomyrmex molefaciens, Camponotus sansabeanus and Pachycondyla harpax. M. nehawkee is recorded only from the nests of Cremastogaster lineolata. The males of the European Myrmecophila acervorum seem to be extremely rare, if not altogether unknown; they have been seen in all the American species except pergandei. All the species are peculiar in having a wide but discontinuous distribution; that is, they are very common in certain localities and completely absent from others, for no apparent reason. The habits of only a few of the species have been studied. I here give some observations which I made during the spring of 1900 on M. nebrascensis, taken from colonies of Formica gnaev and placed in artificial nests of
the Texan harvester (*Pogonomyrmex molefaciens*). April 3, twenty *Myrmecophila*, eight or ten of which had been squeezed or had lost one or both saltatory legs during capture, were placed in a *Pogonomyrmex molefaciens* nest. All the disabled individuals were at once seized and dispatched in so vindictive a manner that I could not doubt that the ants were irritated by the pungent *gnavo* nest-odor still clinging to the crickets. In an instant all the ants in the compartment of the nest had gathered in little groups, each devouring a *Myrmecophila*. The unjured crickets made not the slightest attempt to escape, but felt themselves perfectly at home as soon as they set foot on the floor of the nest. Their adaptation to a new nest and to an ant of larger size and belonging to an entirely different subfamily from their former host, was immediate and complete. With constantly vibrating antennæ they began to dodge in and out among the little groups of ants. From time to time one of them would be seen cautiously approaching an ant, that was busy with its dinner of *Myrmecophila*, and fall to nibbling at its legs or the tip of its abdomen (Fig. 233). There could be no doubt that the

![Fig. 233. *Myrmecophila nebrascensis* gnawing at the tibia of *Pogonomyrmex molefaciens*. (Original.)](image)

cricket derived some benefit from the oily secretions covering the ant's body. At first the ant disregarded this nibbling, which probably resembles the attentions of the toilet habitually received from sister ants, but the cricket's scraping mandibles and maxillæ soon grew to be annoying and the ant either moved away or turned her head, opened her mandibles and made a lunge at the *Myrmecophila*, like a large dog annoyed by a puppy. But before the huge mandibles had closed, the cricket was far away, nibbling at the gaster of some other ant. The cricket can get at only the legs and gaster of its host, since the spreading legs prevent its reaching the thorax. It often stands on its hind legs, as represented in the figure, and places its fore legs on the ant's leg, in order to reach the femur or tibia. For very obvious reasons it avoids
nibbling at or even approaching the ant’s head. It is always alert, as if perpetually aware of danger and ready to dodge at the slightest movement of the ant. Occasionally, in the narrow confines of an artificial nest, the ants do succeed in capturing and devouring one of their vigilant little nest-mates, but the fact that of the eleven sound crickets remaining after these observations were made, eight were still alive June 22, when I had to discontinue my observations for the summer, shows that the crickets are extremely expert in keeping out of danger. During all this time the attitude of the ants towards the *Myrmecophila* remained unchanged, so far as I could observe. The ants are compelled to tolerate the little crickets for a very simple reason. The former, with their long bodies, incapable of much lateral flexure, always walk or run in long straight or sinuous paths, and are quite unable to turn around abruptly, whereas the stout-bodied crickets move in a complicated zigzag path made up of very short lines and abrupt angles. This seems to be the key to the symbiosis of the two insects: they manage to get on together in the limited space of an ants’ nest

**Fig. 234.** *Myrmecophilous cockroach (Attaphila fungicola)* from fungus garden of *Atta texana*. (Original.) A, Male, dorsal view; B, female, dorsal view; C, same, ventral view.

because they have very different and, as it were, interdigitating modes of progression. Since the ants are quite able to clean themselves and one another and even take delight and spend much time in this employment, they probably derive little or no advantage from the crickets. The latter, while deriving much of their sustenance from the surfaces of the ants, are often seen haunting even the galleries abandoned by their hosts, scrutinizing the walls and nibbling at them from time to time. There can be no doubt that they find here the same substances which cover the ants, for the walls of the galleries of a populous nest soon become greasy from the attrition of the constantly passing ants. Sometimes the crickets may be seen nibbling at dead ants that have been temporarily abandoned in the galleries or placed on the kitchen midden.
In 1901 Wasmann published some observations on the European *M. acervorum* and also called attention to the all but forgotten work of Savi (1819) on this same insect. From these observations its habits appear to be very similar to those of *nebrascensis*. This cannot be said, however, of the south European *ochracea*. Both Emery (Wasmann, 1901) and Silvestri (1903) believe that this insect feeds on the larvae of its host. It is probable, therefore, that the species of *Myrmecophila* are more versatile in their relations to the ants than has been supposed, and further observations should be made in regions where these crickets abound.\(^1\)

The little cockroaches of the genus *Attaphila* (Fig. 234) inhabit the nests of the fungus-growing Atta and are the only insects known to live on intimate terms with these ants. The type of the genus (*A. fungicola*) which I described in 1900, from the fungus gardens of *Atta texana*, measures only 3–3.5 mm. in length, is of a yellowish brown color and has very small, apparently vestigial eyes, one-jointed cerci and peculiar antennæ, consisting of a few cylindrical joints. The females are wingless, the males have vestigial tegmina and hind wings. The antennæ are always mutilated, their terminal joints being bitten off, in all probability while the ants are clipping their fungi. The structure of the remaining joints is so unlike that of other Blattidae that *Attaphila* has been regarded as the type of a distinct subfamily, the Attaphilinae. Since publishing my first account of this singular insect, I have had an opportunity to observe its behavior in an artificial nest. It does not feed on the fungus as I at first supposed, but mounts the backs of the large *Atta* soldiers and licks their surfaces after the manner of *Myrmeco-\(^1\) Since the manuscript of this book went to the printer, Schimmer has published a fine account of the genus *Myrmecophila*, containing many valuable observations on *M. acervorum*: (Beitrag zu einer Monographie der Gryllodeengefartergattung *Myrmecophila* Latr., *Zeitschr. f. wiss. Zool.*, 93, 1909, pp. 409–534, pls. 22–24). He finds that this versatile insect not only feeds, like *M. nebrascensis*, on the surface secretions of its hosts, but also on liquid food solicited from them directly, or stolen, after the manner of *Atelura*, while it is being disgorge by the ants to one another, or just after it has been placed on the mouths of the larvae. The cricket also eats dead ant larvae and the insect food brought into the nest. No males of *M. acervorum* could be found, and Schimmer gives very good reasons for regarding the females as permanently parthenogenetic and theytocos. The eggs, which are very large (1.1 mm. long and .56 mm. broad) are laid among the ant’s eggs and hatch in about six weeks from the time of oviposition.
cophila. *Attaphila*, however, is tolerated by the ants without the slightest signs of hostility. The mutilation of the antennæ is probably accidental or unintentional.

In 1901 Bolivar described a second species of *Attaphila (A. bergi)*, taken many years ago in the nests of *Acromyrmex lundi*, in Argentina and Uruguay. This species is very similar to the Texan form and it, too, seems always to have the antennæ mutilated. According to Bolivar, “it is found in the nests of the ants, sitting on the back, neck or even on the head of the sexual individuals (never on the neuters), and when these swarm forth during the spring and summer, it is also carried out of the nests, still attached to its host.” Sheldon has recently described from the nest of a South American wasp (*Polybia pygmaea*) a peculiar Blattid (*Sphecophila polybiarum*) which superficially resembles *Attaphila* in many particulars.

Another strigilating synækete is *Oxysoma oberthueri*, a Staphylinid beetle which lives with *Myrmecocystus viaticus* in the deserts of Algiers where it has been observed by Escherich (1902b). Like *Attaphila* this beetle mounts the bodies of its host and licks or shampoos them with great eagerness, evidently feeding on the surface secretions (Fig. 235). Escherich is inclined to regard this beetle as a kind of degenerate symphile, because it has a very short tongue and sparse yellow trichomes, but as it is treated with indifference by its hosts, its proper place is among the synæketes.
CHAPTER XXII

TRUE GUESTS, ECTO- AND ENTOPARASITES

"Es gibt wohl wenige Gebiete der Zoologie, wo Morphologie und Biologie sich so nahe berühren, so innig durchdringen und sich gegenseitig so ergänzen wie hier: die Biologie erschliesst erst das volle Verständniss der betreffenden morphologischen Charaktere, und andererseits lassen die morphologischen Charaktere uns oft bereits die Biologie jener Wesen vorauserkennen und geben uns die wichtigsten Winke für die Erforschung derselben."—Wasmann, "Die Myrmekophilen und Termitophilren," 1896.

The persecuted and tolerated guests described in the last chapter are merely the plebeian precursors of the aristocracy among the myrmecophiles, the 300 or 400 true guests, which are no longer content to be treated with animosity or indifference, but have acquired more intimate and even friendly relations with the ants. These true guests are not, therefore, to be found skulking in the unfrequented galleries of the nest, or suspiciously dodging about among the ants, but live in their very midst with an air of calm assurance, if not of proprietorship. As a rule, they have abandoned such indefinite or panmyrmecophilous attachments as those of the synoeketes and have settled down to associations with particular host species or genera. The ants, however, still remain the passively exploited partners of the alliance; they become, in fact, only the more easily mulcted and despoiled as the symbiotic intimacy increases, till, in some cases, they seem to be suffering from a social obsession or disease like the alcoholism of human communities. It is but a step from these true guests, or symphiles, to the parasites in the restricted sense. Some have regarded the symphiles, like the synechthrans and the synoeketes, as parasites on the ant colony, in contradistinction to the ecto- and entoparases, which exploit the individual ant or ant larva, but this, as we shall see, is a somewhat artificial distinction.

The Symphiles.—These are very largely beetles, and though they belong to many different families, they show a remarkable adaptive convergence, for in order to solicit food from the ants and ingratiate themselves by means of peculiar exudations, they have developed the following peculiarities in coloration, in the structure of glands, mouth-parts and antennæ:

1. Symphic Coloration.—Wasmann has called attention to the peculiar red color and oily surface characteristic of many true guests.
This is best seen in the Lomechusini, Clavigeridae and Paussidae, but is also apparent in many other species (certain Cremastocheilus, Silphidae, Thoricitidae, etc.) which are, perhaps, degenerate symphilies. The exact signification of this symphilic coloration is not known.

2. Trichomes.—Several of the earlier students of myrmecophily (Erichson, Lacordaire, W. P. J. Müller) observed that the true guests, as a rule, bear tufts of red or golden yellow hairs (trichomes, or trichodes) which are assiduously licked by the ants, and much has been made of these structures by Wasmann, who regards them as the most characteristic organs of symphilies. He has shown that they are borne by the chitinous integument at points or depressions where clusters of unicellular glands open, and that they have the important function of rapidly diffusing some aromatic secretion. Glands of a similar type, from which the trichomes may have developed, are present in many

Fig. 236. Various species of Pausside. (Wasmann.) A, Pleuropterus brevicornis; B, Paussus hova; C, Pentaplantarthus natalensis; D, Paussus dama; E, Lebioderus goryi; F, Paussus spiniceps.
nonmyrmecophilous insects, *e.g.*, the epinotal glands of the ants themselves, the dorsal glands of the Blattidae, the scent glands of Lepidoptera, etc. Wasmann states that the secretion is not liquid, but "volatile or ethereal, perhaps a fatty ether." The ants are so inordinately fond of it that he believes that it must affect them very much as a good cigar affects a smoker. Perhaps it would be nearer the truth to say that its fascination is more like that exercised by catnip or oil of bergamot on the various members of the cat family. Wasmann summarizes the distribution of the trichomes, which may be developed on almost any part of the body, as follows: "On the sides and base of the portions of the abdomen not covered by the wing-cases (*Lomechusa* group of Staphylinids, many Clavigerids); on the tip of the abdomen (*Lomechusa* group), or pygidium (many *Paussus*); at the tips of the wing-cases (many Clavigerids, *Chetopistes* among termitophilous Scarabaeids); on the sides of the wing-cases (many *Paussus*); at the posterior corners or edges of the prothorax (*Pleuropterus* and many *Paussus* among Paussids, *Lomechon* among Silphids, *Corinthoderus* and *Chetopistes* among termitophilous Scarabaeids, *Tylois* among Histerids, many *Thorictus* among Thoric-

![Fig. 237. Two highly myrmecophilous Pselaphidae. (Original.) A, Adranes lecontei of North America; B, Claviger testaceus of Europe.](image-url)

tids); on the anterior corners of the prothorax (*Napochus termitophilus*); on the much elevated sides of the prothorax (*Teratosoma* among Histerids, *Gnostus* among Gnostids); in a median transverse groove on the prothorax (many *Paussus*); on the neck, between the head and prothorax (the myrmecophilous *Napochus* among the Scydmenidae, *Tetramopria* among Proctotrupids); on a perforated horn on the vertex (several *Paussus*); on the front (*Pogonoxenus* among Tene-
brionids); on the antennal club (many Paussus); and even on the coxae and tips of the femora (Lomechusa).

3. Mouthparts.—The symphiles are not only licked, but also fed by the ants. This has led to a peculiar shortening and broadening of the tongue, its fusion with the paraglossae and a reduction in the number and size of the joints of the labial palpi, in many symphiles. These modifications make the tongue a more spoon-like organ, adapted to receiving the liquid regurgitated by the ants.

4. Antenna.—In the symphiles these organs have, in many cases, undergone peculiar modifications, depending upon whether they are used primarily as organs of communication, of transportation, or of protection. In communication they may have a two-fold function, since they may be employed either in making supplicatory movements in order to induce the ants to regurgitate, or the movements may be of

![Image](image_url)

**Fig. 238.** Lomechusa strumosa. (Original.) a, imaginal beetle; b, full-grown larva.

such a character as to deceive the ants into mistaking the beetles for other members of the colony. Space forbids an adequate account of the wonderful variety of structures in the antennae of the symphiles. Suffice it to say that the antennae adapted for stroking the ants approach those of the Formicidae in structure and movement; others have the joints fused and dilated (Paussus) and are used as handles, by means of which the ants can carry or drag their guests about the nest. Such antennae are obviously protective, but there are also protective antennae of another type which are short, compact and spindle-shaped, so that they slip through the jaws of the ants. Such antennae are best developed in certain synœketes and synechtrrans and may be said to have a function the very opposite of communication.
The symphiles, as already stated, are nearly all Coleoptera. They belong to the families Paussidæ, Clavigeridæ, Pselaphidæ, Thoricidæ, Cossyphodidæ, Silphidæ, Nitidulidæ, Ectrephidæ, Gnostidæ, Scydma- nidæ, Staphylinidæ, Brenthidæ and Tenebrionidæ. As it will be impossible here to describe or even to enumerate the various species, I shall confine myself to some of the more striking and interesting types.

Of all myrmecophilous insects the Paussidæ (Fig. 236) are the most extraordinary. They are an aberrant offshoot of the Carabidæ, and, with the exception of two species of Homopterus, that have been taken in equatorial South America, are all paleotropical. Although nearly 300 species are known, the behavior of very few has been carefully observed, and the accounts are so different as to indicate a wide range of myrmecophilous habits within the family. The group, on account of the variety and bizarre structure of its species, is a favorite one with coleopterists. It has been studied by Boyes (1843), Westwood (1843-45), Dohrn (1851), Gueinzius (1858-'59), Peringuey (1883, 1886), Raffray (1885-'87, 1892), Wasmann (1888, 1890g, 1894g, 1896h, 1897g, 1904c, etc.) and Escherich (1898, 1907). The salient characters of the family are found in the antennæ which vary in the number of their joints from 11 to 2. In the latter case the distal joint is formed by a fusion of several. Wasmann divides the family into four groups of genera according to the number of joints: first, Protopaussus with 11 joints; second, Arthropoterus, Homopterus, Orthopterus, Ceraperus and Pleuropterus with 10 joints; third, Ceratoderus, Merismoderus and Pentaplatarthurus with 6, and Paussoides with 5 joints; and fourth, Lebioderus, Platyrhopalus, Paussomorphus, Paussus and Hylotorus with two joints. Several of these groups, of which Paussoides is one, were already represented in the Prussian amber (Lower Oligocene). These beetles are not only anomalous in the number of joints in the antennæ, but also in the form of these organs, which in some species are broad and elliptical, in others shaped like ribbons, antlers, scimitars, drumsticks, boats, etc. Westwood described Paussus sphærocerus as having phosphorescent antennæ “like two lanthorns spreading a dim phosphoric light,” and Wasmann believes that this observation is correct, as the two spherical antennal clubs in a cabinet specimen examined by him had a peculiar yellow color like the phosphorescing spots on the thorax of Pyrophorus. The remarkable development of trichomes in some of the species and their absence in many others indicate that these beetles are not all symphiles, though they are probably all myrmecophiles. In some forms, like Paussus cucullatus, the tufts of golden hairs may be present on the pygidium, in the median thoracic groove, in the double frontal pits and in the clefts of the antennal clubs. In
general these tufts are the better developed the greater the reduction in the number of the antennal joints, but Protopaussus is an exception to this rule. The Paussidae are also peculiar in possessing crepitating repugnatorial glands like the bombardier beetles (Brachynus), but distinct from the alimentary tract though opening at the tip of the abdomen. The secretion of these glands in Ceraperus 4-maculatus, according to Loman (1887), contains pure iodine! The Paussidae usually live in nests of Pheidole, more rarely in those of Acantholepis, Cremastogaster, Aphanogaster and Tetramorium. All these ants are much smaller than the beetles. According to Escherich (1907a), who is one of the few who have observed these insects in a living condition, some of the species are treated by the ants as synechthrans, some as synceketes and some as symphiles. He says: "Paussus turcicus, which I met with in Asia Minor, is extravagantly loved by its hosts (Pheidole pallidula), is continually licked, caressed with the antennae and not infrequently carried about in the nest. Much less affection is lavished by its hosts on the decidedly smaller Paussus javieri, which I studied in North Africa (Oran). In this case it is hardly possible to speak of a friendly relationship, for the ants usually ignore their guest completely, and only occasionally lick it in a perfunctory manner. Cooler still, or rather inimical, is the behavior of ants towards Paussus arabicus Raff. which I had an opportunity to study in northern Abyssinia (Erythrea)." Peringuey (1906) has made similar observations on the south African P. lineatus and linnaei, the former of which is treated with indifference, the latter with hostility. Both Peringuey and Escherich saw the beetles devouring the ant brood. Since even P. turcicus is not fed by the ants, the species of Paussus cannot be said to have reached the highest stage of symphily. Escherich believes that in this genus synoekey and synechthry have been secondarily derived from symphily by a kind of degeneration, but it seems more probable that these conditions are primitive, especially as they prevail, in all probability, among many of the less specialized genera of the family. The repugnatorial glands, whose very existence suggests the primitively synechthran or synoeketic character of the group, are said to function less frequently in the symphilic than in the other species. At any rate,
Escherich found this to be the case in the species which he studied. The larvae of the Paussidae are still unknown.

The families Gnostidae, Ectrephidae and Cossyphodidae are very small and aberrant, the first being allied to the Paussidae and containing only two species, Gnostus formicola and meinerti, taken from Cremasto-gaster nests in South America; the second allied to the Scydmænidæ and containing the genera Ectrephes, Polyplocotes and Diplocotes, with some seven species peculiar to Australia; and the third, of very uncertain affinities and containing the genera Cossyphodes, Cossyphodites and Cossyphodinus, represented by a few species in South Africa. Brauns (1901), who has studied the family last mentioned, finds that

*Fig. 240. Ateneles soliciting food from a worker Myrmica.* (Wasmann.)

Cossyphodites woodrooifei, which is abundant in the nests of Plagio-lepis custodiens, has trichomes in a cavity at the tips of its peculiar, ribbed wing-cases.

Vastly richer in species are the families Clavigeridae and Pselaphidæ, sometimes regarded as a single family and comprising hundreds of species of small red or yellow beetles with short wing-cases and ant-like bodies. Many, if not all, the Clavigeridae and several genera of Pselaphidæ are myrmecophilous, but the true guests seem to be confined to the former family. Some Pselaphids, like our American Decarthron stigmosum, which is sometimes common in the nests of Aphanogaster fulva and treateæ, and the species of Batrisus and Chenium, seem to represent transitions between the synæketes and the symphile types. The Clavigeridae are more interesting because they often show decidedly symphilic characters, such as antennal modifications and trichomes at the posterolateral corners of the wing-cases. Indeed, the antennæ of the former sometimes rival those of the Paussidae. They are usually cylindrical, but their joints may fuse and become drum-stick-shaped (*Rhyynchoclaviger, Adraes*), flattened and twisted (*Neocerus*), or even antler-like, as in *Microclaviger cervicornis* of Madagascar. Among
our American Clavigerids *Adranes cacus* and *lecontei* (Fig. 237, A) are worthy of mention, but nothing is known of their habits except that they live with species of *Lasius*. The only form that has been at all carefully studied is the common European *Claviger testaceus* (Fig. 237, B). This beetle, which is totally blind, figures prominently in the works of W. J. P. Müller, Maerkel, Wasmann, Hetchko, Janet and others. It lives only with species of *Lasius*, being most often seen in the nests of *L. flavus*, an ant which it closely resembles in color. It is provided with golden trichomes which are licked by its host, and is fed with regurgitated food, although it often eats the ant larvae. Hetchko (1896) found that it also eats other insect food and can be kept alive apart from the ants for a period of 57 days. Janet has kept individuals alive in company with ants for more than four years. The beetles are often carried about by the ants in their jaws and permitted to ride for hours at a time on their backs.

Symphily reaches its most perfect expression in the Lomechusini, a sharply circumscribed group of beetles which has been diligently studied for the past twenty years by Wasmann. He has recorded his observations in more than thirty special papers (see literature in Appendix E) and never tires of referring to these insects in his more general works. The following paragraphs, taken from one of his papers (1897a), give a summary of the life-history of these beetles:

"The Lomechusa group, embracing the palearctic genera *Lomechusa* and *Atemeles* and the nearctic genus *Xenodusa*, contains, from an ethological point of view, the most interesting and at the same time the largest of the true ant-guests (symphiles) of the north temperate region. These Staphylinids, which belong to the subfamily Aleocharinæ, are treated by the ants like their own kith and kin, live in antennary communication with them, are cleaned and licked and occasionally carried about, and are fed from the mouths of their hosts, although they are also able to feed independently and frequently devour the ant brood. The ants are especially attracted to these beetles on account of the prominent tufts of yellow hairs on the sides of their
abdomen which are licked by the host with evident satisfaction. Not only do these beetles themselves live as guests among the ants, but the same is also true of their larvae. The larvae of Lomechusa and Atemeles are reared by the ants like their own brood; they are licked, fed with regurgitated food and before pupation covered or embedded in cells like their own larvae. When the nest is disturbed they are carried by the ants in preference to their own larvae and pupae to a place of safety. The predilection of the ants for these adopted larvae is all the more remarkable because they are the worst enemies of the ant-brood and devour enormous numbers of the eggs and larvae of their hosts. This brood parasitism, in fact, causes the development of abortive individuals intermediate between the female and worker castes, and these intermediates, which I have called pseudogynes, gradually bring about a degeneration of the parasitized colonies.

"Within the Lomechusa group an important ethological difference obtains between Lomechusa and Atemeles, inasmuch as the former is homœcious, i. e., the species of this genus have each but a single host (a species of Formica), in whose company they complete their whole life-cycle; whereas the Atemeles are heterœcious, since as adult beetles they live with Myrmica rubra and a species of Formica, but have their larvae reared only by the latter. The fact that Lomechusa has only a single host explains the more highly developed passive character of its symphily. This is shown by the fact that the beetle is more affectionately treated by its normal hosts and is fed, not like an ant, but like an ant-larva. The heterœcious character of the Atemeles, which are compelled twice during their life to change their normal hosts, once in the spring when they migrate for reproductive purposes from Myrmica to Formica, to have their larvae reared by the latter, and once in the summer when they migrate from Formica to Myrmica for the purpose of hibernating, enables us to explain the greater active perfection of
their symphyls, their greater initiative towards the ants, and the close imitation of their behavior. The last peculiarity is especially apparent in that they do not, like *Lomechusa*, *Claviger* and *Amphotis*, beg the ants for food merely by stroking them with their antennæ, but also raise their fore feet after the manner of ants, and stroke the cheeks of the regurgitating hosts [Fig. 240]. On this account they are treated by their normal hosts like ants and not like ant-larvae.”

Five species of *Lomechusa* and a greater number of species and varieties of *Ateneles* have been described. Of these *L. strumosa* (Fig. 238) is the best known. It is exceedingly rare in England, but common in many places on the Continent (Holland, Luxemburg, Saxony, Switzerland). Its normal host is the blood-red slave-maker, *Formica sanguinea*, though very rarely it may be found in the nests of *F. rufa* and *pratensis*. Of the species of *Ateneles*, *pubicollis* (Fig. 239) breeds in the nests of *F. rufa*, *paradoxus* in those of *F. rufibarbis* and *emarginatus* in those of *F. fusca*. The American *Xenodusa* is also represented by several species, the best known of which is *X. cava* (Fig. 241). Like *Ateneles*, this beetle has two hosts, but both of these are Camponotine ants. It passes the winter in the nests of *Camponotus pennsylvanicus* or *noveboracensis* and breeds in the early summer in the nests of *Formica* species. I have seen its larva in the nest of *F. incerta*. They have longer appendages than *Lomechusa* larva and can walk about and beg the ants for food by raising and stroking their cheeks with the anterior pair of feet. Like the larva of *Ateneles* and *Lomechusa*, they devour the ant brood.

There is evidence that colonies of *incerta* infested with *Xenodusa* tend, like those of *sanguinea* infested with *Lomechusa*, to produce pseudogynes. These queer, mongrel forms (Figs. 57, 242; 267, b) are an abortive combination of the female thorax with the stature, gaster and head of the worker. They are usually paler in color than the normal
workers and very lazy, cowardly and incompetent—"frustrate existences," as Wasmann appropriately calls them. Usually they make up 5–7 per cent., more rarely as much as 20 per cent., of the personnel of *sanguinea* colonies infested with *Lomechusa*. In one colony of *incerta*, which I found in Connecticut, nearly 80 per cent. of the individuals were pseudogynes. Wasmann accounts for the development of these singular beings on the assumption that the ants of colonies, whose larval broods are being devoured by the *Lomechusa* larvae, try to transmute into workers some of the larvae which have already developed somewhat along the path terminating in the queen phase. These efforts result in the production of forms that belong to neither caste, that is, "outcasts" or pariahs. Wasmann has also

![Ant illustrations](image)

*Fig. 244. Lasius mixtus* worker carrying three *Antennophorus pubescens* in their normal positions. (Janet.) *A*, Ventral, *B*, dorsal, *C* lateral view.

suggested what seems to me the more probable explanation that the pseudogynes may arise without any effort at transmutation but from female larvae that have been merely neglected and left unfed after they have passed the stage at which such treatment would lead to the formation of workers. Of the two hypotheses the latter is simpler and accords better with the other known peculiarities of ant development. That the pseudogynes are not the result of pathogenic conditions in the egg or mother queen has been proved experimentally by Viehmeyer (1904), who removed an aged *sanguinea* queen from a colony that for years had been producing pseudogynes, owing
to the presence of *Lomechusa* larvae, and caused her to be adopted by a new set of unusually healthy workers from an uninfested colony. Under the changed conditions her eggs developed into larvae that gave rise to perfectly normal workers.

As a rule the pseudogynes make their appearance in *sanguinea* colonies only after these have been infested with *Lomechusa* for several consecutive years and are therefore in an exhausted or moribund condition. I was impressed with this fact during the summer of 1907, while examining a large number of mostly slaveless *sanguinea* colonies in two separate localities in the Upper Engadin. Nearly all of these colonies contained abundant *Lomechusa* larvae, but many were, nevertheless, very populous and flourishing and contained no pseudogynes. These were found only in a few very weak colonies which in some cases contained almost no normal workers. Such colonies, which were nearly all situated in lower and damper ground, represented, in all probability, the wrecks of once opulent communities that had succumbed to the inevitable annual scourge of *Lomechusa*.

This being the effect on the colonies that harbor the *Lomechusa*, one naturally inquires, why the habit of rearing these parasites has not long since led to the extinction of *sanguinea*? This question has been at least partially answered by Wasmann. He finds that the ants treat the beetle larvae like their own, even when the former are ready to pupate, and therefore embed them in the soil. And this is what the *Lomechusa* require, but they must not be unearthed again after pupation, like the ant brood, or they perish. The ants, however, are utterly ignorant of these different developmental requirements and therefore unearth as many of the *Lomechusa* pupae as they can find. Thus death, in the guise of what might be called a regulatory nemesis, overtakes

---

**Fig. 245.** Parasitic mites. (Berlese.)

- *Echinomegatius wheeleri* (dorsal view), from *Lasius aphidicola*;
- *B*, same, ventral view;
- *C*, *Ciliibano hirticoma* (dorsal view) from *Eciton schmitti*;
- *D*, ventral view.
all except the few pupae that have been forgotten or overlooked by the ants, but these few are sufficient to insure the survival of *Lomechusa strumosa* in its struggle for existence.

The singular life-histories of the *Lomechusinae* and other symphiles have been made the basis of a number of speculations by Wasmann. The fact that the ants actually rear and feed insects that destroy their brood is supposed by him to militate against natural selection, on the ground that this principle can be invoked only to account for the development of characters beneficial to the species. He therefore believes that the ants themselves act as the selecting agency, not only rearing and feeding the guests, but actually producing, by a kind of unconscious cultivation, such symphile characters as the trichomes and the peculiar antennal modifications. This he calls "amical selection" and compares it with man's treatment of his domesticated animals and plants. The ants are induced to undertake this selection through the strong appeal which the true guests make to their powerful and obsessional philoprogenitive instincts. The treatment of the *Lomechusa* larvae shows very clearly that the ants must regard them as their own progeny, whereas the adult beetles make an additional appeal with their trichomes. All this may be granted, but Wasmann goes further and maintains that there is "at least a special modification of the philo-

---

*Fig. 246. Cillibano comata, parasitic on Lasius mixtus.* (Janet.) A, Lasius worker with three Cillibano in their normal position; p, antenniform foot of Cillibano; B, Gaster of Lasius slightly compressed to show the black scars, (n) left by the mouthparts of the Cillibano; C, Cross-section of integument around one of the scars; ma, articular membrane; M, muscle fibres; ca, adipocytes; ci, intercalary cells; D, rostrum of Cillibano; li, ligula; ch, cheliceræ; pa, palps; ga, acute galea.
progenitive instincts, a modification which during the course of phylogeny has become differentiated from the more general instincts of this type." He believes that we are justified, therefore, in speaking of "special symphilic instincts," which, from the nature of the definition, would be hereditary. It will be noticed that Wasmann fails to distinguish between the "instinct stimulus," the "instinct action" or objective aspect of instinct and its subjective aspect, the "instinct disposition." Escherich (1898b et al.) has repeatedly attacked Wasmann's amical selection hypothesis, on the ground that there is nothing to show that the ants exercise any selective choice among their guests or that there is anything corresponding to "special symphilic instincts." The philoprogenitive instincts are quite sufficient to account for the phenomenon, which is merely a parasitic disease, or instinct aberration, comparable to the rearing of the young cuckoo by its foster parents, or the rearing of puppies by cats, of kittens by hens, etc. In these cases we do not postulate a special hereditary instinct modification, but a simulation of the normal stimulus by an abnormal object. The instinct action is normal, but adapts itself to the changed conditions and there is nothing to indicate that the instinct disposition has undergone any phylogenetic change. Wasmann's contention is disproved, as Escherich has pointed out, by the way in which the ants unearth the Lomechusa pupae.

In his attempt to substitute amical for natural selection Wasmann also overlooks the fact that ants live in opulence, to use Janet's expression, compared with solitary animals, and are therefore able to support a host of parasites on what may be called their large margin of vitality, without serious danger to the existence of the species. In fact, there is no essential difference between the behavior of F. sanguinea towards Lomechusa and that of other hosts towards their respective parasites of no matter how extreme a type, for all organisms nourish with their juices the parasites that manage to implant themselves in their tissues, just as the ants feed the Lomechusa with regurgitated food. Wasmann's objection would apply not only to all parasites but to all preda-
ceous animals, for in both cases the victimized species exists at the present time only because it has great reproductive powers or a margin of redundant vitality which can be exploited by its enemies and parasites; and the survival of these enemies and parasites themselves in turn depends on their refraining from overstepping this margin. In the case of *sanguinea* the enormous reproductive powers of the species must more than compensate for the destruction of colonies by the *Lomechusa*.

**Ectoparasites.**—With the *Lomechusini* we may close our account of the true guests, although these include also several other interesting forms, like *Lomechon* among the Silphidæ, *Amorfocephalus* among the Brenthidæ and *Pogonoxenus* among the Tenebrionidæ. Turning to the parasites proper, we find it impossible to draw a hard and fast line between symphiles and ectoparasites, owing to the existence of such intermediate forms as *Thorictus, Antennophorus* and *Orasema*. The group of ectoparasites as a whole is a heterogeneous assemblage of mites, Hymenoptera, Diptera and Coleoptera. The Coleoptera, however, are represented only by certain species of *Thorictus*.

Some of the ectoparasites, of which the Phorid flies of the genus *Metopina* and the Gamasid mites of the genus *Antennophorus* may be taken as interesting examples, are hardly more than commensals. In two papers (1901, 1907a) I have described the singular habits of *Metopina pachycondyle*, which lives in *Pachycondyla harpax* colonies in Texas. Its small larva clings to the necks of the ant-larva by means of a sucker-like posterior end and encircles its host like a collar (Fig. 243). Whenever the ant-larva is fed by the workers with pieces of insect placed on its trough-like ventral surface, within reach of its mouthparts, the larval *Metopina* uncoils its body and partakes of the feast; and when the ant-larva spins its cocoon it also encloses the *Metopina* larva within the silken web. The commensal, however, moves to the caudal end of its host and forms a small, flattened puparium which is applied to the wall of the cocoon. This is obviously an adaptation for preventing injury from the jaws of the worker ants when the cocoon is being opened and the callow extracted from its anterior end. The ant hatches before the *Metopina* and the empty cocoon with the puparium concealed in its posterior pole is carried to the refuse heap. There the fly emerges and escapes from the cocoon by the opening through
which its host emerged. The *Metopina* larva consumes so little food and is so considerate of its host, that it can hardly be said to produce any injurious effect on the colony; at any rate, the larvae which have borne commensals develop into perfectly normal workers. The ants clean the commensals while they are cleaning their own progeny and show no signs of even being aware of their presence in the nest.

Another case of commensalism is that of the European *Antennophorus* species (*A. uhlmanni, pubescens, foreli* and *grandis*), studied by Janet (1897b), Wasmann (1902j) and Karawaiew (1905c, 1906a). These mites occur only in the nests of *Lasius* and cling to the workers.
by means of their three posterior pairs of legs while the large fore pair is stretched out and moved about like antennae. Janet found that these creatures, whether present in odd or even numbers, are always oriented in a symmetrical position with respect to their host (Fig. 244). When only one *Antennophorus* is present, it clings to the gula, or ventral surface of the ant’s head, with its fore legs directed towards the ant’s mouthparts. When two are present, there is one on each side of the head or one on each side of the gaster; in the former case the antenniform appendages are directed towards the anterior, in the latter towards the posterior end of the ant’s body. When there are three mites, one attaches itself to the gula and the two others to the sides of the gaster. Four place themselves in pairs on the sides of the head and gaster. If

---

**Fig. 250. Oraeoma viridis.** (Original) *A*, Female; *B*, male.
six are present, which rarely happens, four are arranged in pairs on the sides of the head and gaster, while of the two remaining individuals, one attaches itself to the gula, the other to the mid-dorsal surface of the gaster. Janet believes that these symmetrical arrangements are for the purpose of balancing the burden and thus making it easier for the ants to carry. When attached to the head the mite obtains its food by drinking from the regurgitated droplet as it is being passed to or from

![Diagram of Orašema viridis development stages](image-url)

**Fig. 251. Development of Orašema viridis.** (Original.) A, First larval stage of Orašema. B, pupal worker of Pheidole instabilis with Orašema larva (o) attached to side of neck; C, female Pheidole pupa with somewhat older Orašema larva (o) attached in sternal region; D, female Pheidole pupa with Orašema larva (o) in same stage as in preceding figure, attached behind head; E, female Pheidole pupa (phthillos-ryne) with older Orašema larva (o) in sternal region; F, Orašema larva (o) beginning to pupate, with vesiculate knobs on its surface; G, Orašema pupa fallen from its host and developing within the vesiculate skin; H, fully formed pupa; I, pupa pigmented and ready to hatch.

the mouthparts of the host, or it titillates the ant with its antenniform legs and induces her to regurgitate for its special benefit. The mites attached to the gaster obtain their food by stroking other ants in the vicinity or by reaching out and partaking of the droplets as they pass
from one ant to another. The ants try to rid themselves of the parasites when these first attach themselves, but after they have taken up their definitive, symmetrical positions, they seem to be tolerated with indifference. There is nothing to indicate that the ants, while cleaning one another, are even aware of the existence of the parasites. The relations of the allied American ectoparasitic mites to their host ants have not yet been studied. *Echinomestus wheeleri* (Fig. 245, A and B), which occurs on *Lasius aphidicola*, is probably very similar to *Antennophorus* in its habits.¹

The number of mites living in the nests or on the surfaces of ants seems to be very great. Berlese, in a recent work (1904) has described more than sixty species of myrmecophilous Gamasidae alone. The habits of a few of these have been studied by Janet and Wasmann and may be very briefly described. *Cillibano [Discopoma] comata* is a peculiar tortoise-shaped mite which attaches itself to the workers of *Lasius mixtus* and its larvae (Fig. 246). On the ants it always assumes a definite position. According to Janet, when only one is present, it places itself on the side of the second gastric segment. If there are two, they place themselves symmetrically, one on each side. If there is a third, it is attached in the mid-dorsal line of the same segment. Rarely as many as six may be present; in which case there are three also on the third gastric segment in positions corresponding to those on the second. The ants dislike the *Cillibano* and tear them to pieces whenever they can seize them. The mites, however, usually slip out of their mandibles or apply the edges of their bodies so closely to the surfaces of the ants that they cannot be picked off. From scars (Fig. 246, B, C, n) left on the intersegmental membranes of the ant’s gaster Janet infers that the *Cillibano* sucks the blood of its host. The types of another *Cillibano* (*C. hirticoma*), with long, flexuous dorsal hairs, were found by me in Texas on an *Eciton schmitti* queen (Figs. 147, c; 245, C, D). This mite attaches itself not only to the body, but also to the antennæ and legs of its host.

¹I have recently found an undescribed species of *Antennophorus* on our North American *Acanthomyops interjectus.*
Janet calls attention to two other Gamasids, *Uropoda ovalis* (Fig. 247, A) and *Urodiscella philoctena* (Fig. 247, B). The former attaches itself by means of a glue-like secretion to the legs of ants, the latter clings to the comb of the strigil by means of one of its fore legs. This species evidently feeds on the dirt which is scraped by the ant from its body and appendages. A similar mite is sometimes found attached to the spurs on the legs of our American carpenter ant (*Camponotus pennsylvanicus*). Still another Gamasid, *Oötelaps oöphasis*, has been described by Wasmann. It is found on the eggs and packets of very young larvae of *Formica sanguinea* and *rufibraborism* and lives on the salivary secretion with which the ants coat their young progeny. Many of the mites found attached to adult ants probably feed on the same substance.

Wasmann (1897e) has also published some observations on a Sarcoptid mite (*Tyroglyphus wasmanni*) which lives in the nests of *F. sanguinea* and, in the adult, nymphal and larval forms, feeds on dead ants. At times, however, its hypopi become exceedingly numerous and cover the bodies of the living ants in masses. These hypopi always orient themselves with their heads towards the distal end of the appendage or part of the body on which they are resting. They seem to take no nourishment, but their great numbers impede the ants' movements and eventually kill them.

Some of the beetles of the family Thorictidae, comprising the single genus *Thorictus* of the Mediterranean region, must also be included among the ectoparasites, if we accept Wasmann's account of their habits (1898a, 1898b). These are small, subtriangular, reddish brown creatures, with tufts of golden trichomes at the posteralateral corners of the prothorax. Several of the species, like the myrmecophilous Histeridae, seem to live on dead ants, but others (*T. foreli* and *pauciseta*) are regularly found, as Forel (1894a) first observed, attached by means of their bidentate mandibles to the antennal scapes of *Myrmecocystus* workers. The host of *T. foreli* is *M. megalocola*, that of *pauciseta*, *M. desertorum*. The prothorax of the beetle is provided with a groove or depression to fit the scape, towards the distal end of which the beetle's head is always directed (Fig. 248). In this position the insect may remain for weeks in spite of all the efforts of the ant to dislodge it. Escherich (1898c) found that the beetle is frequently licked and that it sometimes attaches itself to the legs as well as to the antennæ. Wasmann maintains that it punctures the scape and sucks the blood of the ant and that *Thorictus* is therefore both an ectoparasite and a symphile. Other species of the genus seem not to have this habit of clinging to the ants. Mr. Walter Granger
brought me from the Fayum several specimens of *Thorictus castaneus* which he found free in the chambers of a *Myrmecocystus bombycinus* nest. These have much larger trichomes than either *foreli* or *pauciseta* and lack the peculiar prothoracic depression.

It has been found that certain groups of Chalcidid Hymenoptera, notably the Eucharinae, contain a number of very interesting ant-parasites, which are often brilliantly metallic and have bizarre forms. The first of these (*Eucharis myrmecia*) was discovered in the cocoon of a bull-dog ant (*Myrmecia forficata*) by Forel (1890a), who believed it to be an entoparasite. Cameron (1891) described another species (*Chalcura bedeli*) from the nests of the Algerian *Myrmecocystus viaticus*, and more recently (1907a) I have shown that species of several other Eucharine genera (*Orasema, Pseudochalcura, Kapala, Isomeralia, Pseudometagia*) are ant-parasites (Figs. 249 and 250). The life history of only one of the species, *Orasema viridis*, is at all adequately known (Fig. 251). This is a brilliant metallic blue and green fly which lives in the nests of several Texan and Mexican *Pheidole*, especially *P. instabilis*. The young larva is somewhat thysanuriiform and attaches itself to the neck of the ant-larva, sucking out its juices and in the course of a few days undergoing several ecdyses, pupating and hatching, without necessarily withdrawing sufficient substance from the ant-larva to prevent its pupating in turn. But such larvae have nevertheless lost much of the material which in uninfested individuals goes to form the head, thorax and eyes of the adult, so that these parts are very poorly developed in the pupae. These pupae, which I have called phthisergates (Fig. 252, B and C), phthisogynes and phthisaners, according as they arise from depleted worker, female or male larvae, never hatch. Both the larval and adult *Orasema* are effusively licked and fondled, and the latter are even fed by the *Pheidole* workers. The Chalcidids, however, have no affection for the ants, but endeavor to leave the nest at the earliest possible moment in order to mate in the open fields. Another *Orasema* (*O. coloradensis*) leads a similar life in the nests of *Solenopsis validiuscula* and *P. vinelandica* in Colorado, and a third species (*O. wheeleri*) was found in the nests of *Ph. ceras* in western Texas. I have also found the pupae of *Pseudochalcura gibbosa* in the cocoons of *Camponotus novoboracensis*, together with remains of the ant-pupae, showing that the eggs and young larval Chalcidids must attach themselves to mature *Camponotus* larva ready and able to spin their cocoons. Two to four of the *Pseudochalcura* pupae sometimes occur in a single cocoon. For further details concerning the parasitic Chalcidids, the Lomechusini and several
other myrmecophiles the reader is referred to my paper on the "Polymorphism of Ants" (1907a).

**The Entoparasites.**—These constitute an even more diversified assemblage of forms than the ectoparasites. The only entoparasitic Coleopteron, however, is the Styloid *Myrmecolax nietneri*, described by Westwood (1861) from the gaster of a Ceylonese ant. The habits of this beetle probably resemble those of the species of *Stylops* and *Xenos* which develop in the abdomens of bees and wasps. Among the remaining entoparasites may be mentioned certain Diptera, Hymenoptera and Nemathelminthes.

The Diptera are represented by several Phoridae and the Conopid genus *Stylogaster*. The Phorid *Apocephalus pergandi*, according to Fox (1887) and Persgande (1900), lays its eggs on the heads of *Camponotus pennsylvanicus* workers. The larvae hatching from these eggs enter the cranial capsule through the occipital foramen and feed on the tissues, causing the ant to become very lethargic. Later the creature literally loses its head, and the larvae pupate and hatch. Persgande has described the frantic efforts of the ants to rid themselves of these terrible executioners. Coquillett (1907) has recently described another Phorid, *Plastophora crawfordi*, which was taken in the act of ovipositing on the head of *Solenopsis geminata* in Texas. I have already alluded to the various peculiar Phorids with wingless females (p. 383). They, too, may be entoparasitic in their larval stages, but as there is no evidence of such habits, I have placed them among the synceketes.

As the Conopidae are known to be parasitic in the bodies of adult bees and wasps, it is not surprising to find that some of these flies also attack ants. Bates (1893) observed species of the genus *Stylogaster* hovering over *Eciton* armies in Brazil, and Townsend (1897) captured numbers of three species of the same genus in Mexico, while they were following an army of *Eciton foreli*. There can be little doubt that they lay their eggs on the bodies of the ants and that the larvae are entoparasitic.

Among the entoparasites is also to be included a number of minute Hymenoptera of the families Braconidae, Chalcididae and Proctotrupoide. The best known of these is the Braconid *Elasmosoma berolinense*, which has been seen by Giraud (1871), Forel (1874), Pierre (1893), Olivier (1893), and Wasmann (1894g) ovipositing on the
bodies of *Formica, Camponotus* and *Lasius*. The larva of the parasite develops in the ant's gaster.1 Wasmann (1899) has described and figured two interesting European Proctotrupids, *Solenopsis imitatrix*, from the nests of *Solenopsis fugax*, and *Tetramopria aurocincta*, from those of *Tetramorium cespitum*. *Solenopsis* seems to mimic the *Solenopsis* workers and *Tetramopria* is provided with golden trichomes and for this reason is regarded by Wasmann as a true guest. Ashmead (1893) enumerates among American Bethylids four species of *Pseudosbrachium* (*mandibulare, montanum, myrmecophilum* and *rufiventre*) as living in the nests of *Formica* and *Camponotus*. An exquisite, subapertous, purple, green and gold Asaphine Chalcidid, *Pheidoloosenus wheeleri* (Fig. 253), which lives in the nests of *Pheidole instabilis*, is probably also entoparasitic on the ants or their progeny during its larval stages.

Finally, we come to a number of extraordinary round worms which live in ants or their larvae. Janet (1893, 1897) and de Man (1894) have described several Nematodes from the bodies of worker ants. The former investigator saw some of these worms, several centimeters long, issue from the orifice of the labial glands of *Formica fusca*, and he and de Man described another form, *Pelodera janeti*, which lives in the pharyngeal glands of *Lasius* and *Formica*. "Within these glands the *Pelodera* are bathed in a yellow liquid on which they feed. They complete a larval stage in the glands and then escape from them to live a free life on the detritus of the nest. There they give rise to a series of generations whose larvae are distinctly different from those living in the heads of the ants and develop without entering the insects." Other Nematodes belonging to the family Anguillulidae have been seen in ants' nests, but nothing is known concerning their habits and development. The Gordiids are represented by *Gordius formicarum*, which von Siebold took from the gaster of an ant, and by *Mermis*, the larva of which live in the crops of the larval, pupal and adult workers of several different neotropical Formicidae and produce a great distension of the gaster in the imaginal instar. I first observed these parasites in the Texan *Pheidole commutata* (1901d, 1907a). They enter the larva and apparently by unduly stimulating its appetite cause it to be fed excessively, so that it becomes unusually large at the time of pupation and produces a gigantic worker form, with ocelli (Fig. 254, B and C). This form, which I have called the mermitherigate, was first seen by Emery (1890d) in the Costa Rican *Pheidole absurda*, but he supposed

---

it to be an egg-laying "parthenogenetic female." Since the publication of my paper (1901d) he has reexamined this specimen and several other worker ants with larger gasters and traces of ocelli in his collection and has found them to contain Mermis. Besides the two species already mentioned, he has recorded the occurrence of mermithergates in Odontomachus hamatodes and chelifer, Neoponera inversa, Ectatomma tuberculatum, Pachycondyla fuscoatra and Paraponera clavata. These pathological forms therefore occur rather generally, at least in the neotropical Myrmicinæ and Ponerinæ.

It is interesting to compare the modifications induced in their respective hosts by the parasites Orasema, Mermis and Lomechusa.

Fig. 254. Parasitism of Mermis in Pheidole commutata. (Original) A, Normal worker of Pheidole commutata; B, mermithergate, or worker containing Mermis parasite which it possessed as a larva; C, same, lateral view.

While the effects in all three cases are wrought through a withdrawal of nourishment from the developing larva, each of the parasites adopts a different method. Thus the ectoparasitic Orasema larva extracts important juices from the body of the Pheidole larva directly and with great rapidity, thereby reducing its host to a mere skin, which, though still able to pass on to the pupal stage, no longer possesses sufficient substance or vitality to reach the imaginal stage. The Mermis larva
develops much more slowly within the alimentary tract of the ant larva and appropriates a portion of the food before it has been assimilated. Finally, the *Lomechusa* within the *Formica* nest leads to a withholding of the necessary food from the larvae, or, if Wasmann's view be adopted, at least to a withholding of the proper kind of food. And the results of these different methods of direct and indirect vampirism are the phthisergate, the mermithergate and the pseudogyne, respectively.

In concluding this chapter brief mention must be made of two other categories of animals which have ethological relations to the ants, namely, the myrmecophags and myrmecoids. The myrmecophags merely prey on the ants without showing any desire to live in their nests. To this group belong several spiders (*Theridion*), the ant-lions (*Myrmleon*), the peculiar larvae of the Dipteran *Lampronymia miki*, which in the north African deserts entrap ants in pits like those of the ant-lions, certain solitary wasps (*Crabronidae*), some amphibians (toads), reptiles (lizards, amphibiaeans), birds (woodpeckers, ant-thrushes) and mammals (ant-eaters). The Doryline and slave-making ants regularly eat the larvae and pupae of other ants, and even man himself in some parts of the world is myrmecophagous.

The myrmecoids are the ant-mimics and are therefore hard to distinguish from the myrmecophiles. They comprise a great many arthropods, especially jumping spiders (*Synemosyna, Synageles*, etc.), Heteroptera (*Alydus calcaratus, Nabis lativeniris*, etc.), wasps and tiger beetles. Some of these insects may be at the same time myrmecophags or myrmecophiles, and their striking resemblance to ants may aid them in approaching their prey. Among the celebrated cases of myrmecoidy may be mentioned the Sudanese cricket *Myrmecophana fallax*, which is extremely ant-like, and the Indian wasp *Rhinopsis ruficornis*, which closely mimics *Sima rufonigra*. The striking resemblance of some of our longicorn beetles of the genera *Clytanthus, Eudercres, Cyrtophorus* and *Tillomorpha* to ants must have been noticed by every collector. Mr. Wm. Beutenmüller informs me that a black longicorn, *Michysoma heterodoxum* of North Carolina, mimics the workers of *Camponotus pennsylvanicus* to an extraordinary degree. Forel and Emery have pointed out certain cases of mimicry among the ants themselves, for example, *Dolichoderus raptor*, *Colobopsis truncata* and *Camponotus lateralis*, the workers of which are all very similar in color and behavior and are often found running on the same tree. Whether these and many other cases of myrmecoidy are anything more than accidental resemblances remains to be seen.
CHAPTER XXIII

THE COMPOUND NESTS

"Le but unique de tous les actes comme de toutes les représentations des insectes sociaux, c'est l'élevage des jeunes; mais si le but est unique, les moyens sont nombreux."—Espinès, "Des Sociétés Animales," 1877.

In several of the foregoing chapters I have discussed the ethological relations of ants to a variety of other organisms—flowering plants, fungi, Homoptera, caterpillars and a host of other arthropods belonging to the most diverse natural orders. These chapters, however, did not include an account of some of the most interesting symbiotic relations, namely, those of the ants to other species of their own taxonomic group and to termites. This living together of colonies of different species may be properly designated as social symbiosis to distinguish it from the simple symbiosis that obtains between individual organisms of different species and the intermediate form of symbiosis exhibited by individual organisms, like the myrmecophiles and termitophiles that live in ant or termite colonies.

The researches of the past forty years have brought to light a remarkable array of instances of social symbiosis, varying so much in intimacy and complexity that it is possible to construct a series ranging from mere simultaneous occupancy of a very narrow ethological station, or mere contiguity of domicile, to an actual fusion, involving the vital dependence or parasitism of a colony of one species on that of another. Such a series is, of course, purely conceptual and does not represent the actual course of development in nature, where, as in the animal and vegetable kingdoms in general, development has not followed a simple linear course, but has branched out repeatedly and terminated in the varied types existing at the present time.

It is convenient to follow the European writers, von Hagens, Forel, Wasmann and others, in grouping all the cases of social symbiosis under two heads, the compound nests and the mixed colonies. Different species of ants or of ants and termites are said to form compound nests when their galleries are merely contiguous or actually interpenetrate and open into one another, although the colonies which inhabit them bring up their respective offspring in different apartments. In mixed colonies, on the other hand, which, in a state of nature, can be formed only by species of ants of close taxonomic affinities, the insects live
together in a single nest and bring up their young in common. Although each of these categories comprises a number of dissimilar types of social symbiosis, and although it is possible, under certain circumstances, as will be shown in the sequel, to convert a compound nest into a mixed colony, the distinction is nevertheless fundamental. It must be admitted, however, that both types depend in last analysis on the dependent, adoption-seeking instincts of the queen ant and on the remarkable plasticity which enables allied species and genera to live in very close proximity to one another. By a strange paradox these peculiarities have been produced in the struggle for existence, although this struggle is severer among different species of ants than between ants and other organisms. As Forel says: "The greatest enemies of ants are other ants, just as the greatest enemies of men are other men." And just as the *homo homini lupus* may wear many a pleasing disguise, so the *formica formice lupa* may secure the aid or protection of another species of ant by exhibiting an engaging demeanor. This will be more apparent when we come to the cases of the mixed colonies. In the present chapter my remarks will be confined to the compound nests, with a brief consideration of the various known cases.

**A. Plesiobiosis.**—I have given this name (*1901c*) to the cases in which two or more colonies of different species of ants or of ants and termites establish their nests in contiguity or very close proximity, as often happens under the same stone. These are the double, triple, etc., nests of Forel (*1874*) and represent the most rudimental form of social symbiosis. The species nesting in this manner are either indifferent or hostile to one another, as may be readily observed by their behavior when the stone is removed and the walls between the nests broken asunder so that the insects can meet face to face, or one of the species is timid or hypogaeic in its habits. Two or more aggressive species can hardly live under the same stone, as their nest entrances would be necessarily so close together that the insects would be apt to encounter one another continually while entering or leaving the nest. I have never found two well-developed colonies of the same species under the same stone. Indeed, such a condition could hardly be maintained for any length of time, since the colonies would in all probability either become friendly and fuse into one, or would fight till one was compelled to seek quarters elsewhere. The fact that different species are able to live in plesiobiosis is probably due to differences of habit of sufficient magnitude to diminish or temper somewhat the struggle for existence.

**B. Parabiosis.**—This term was introduced by Forel (*1898b*) to designate a peculiar type of compound nest with inosculating galleries in
which two different Colombian ants (*Cremastogaster parabiota*ica and *Dolichoderus debilis*) were living together amicably, though keeping their broods separate. The workers were seen leaving the nest in a common file, which, however, eventually bifurcated, each species proceeding to its own feeding ground. This case, as Forel remarks, bears some resemblance to the joint flocks of certain birds, like those of the European *Corvus cornix* and *C. corone*. Under the term parabiosis may also be included the friendly or indifferent relations existing between certain species of ants which I found inhabiting the epiphytic

![Image](image.png)

**Fig. 255.** Mound of *Pogonomyrmex occidentalis* showing at (a) a crater of *Dorymyrmex pyramicus*. (Original.)

Tillandsias (especially *T. benthamiana*) on trees in Mexico, Florida and the West Indies. These plants often contain whole colonies of ants, with their larvæ and pupæ snugly packed away like so many anchovies in the spaces between the moist, overlapping leaves. The ants gnaw little holes through the leaves to serve as entrances to the interfoliar chambers, and these holes often perforate several leaves and extend to the very core of the bud-like plant. Sometimes a single colony is divided up into companies, each occupying the space under a leaf, but not infrequently two or even three flourishing colonies of as many species may live in a single Tillandsia, the whole habitable por-
tion of which is rarely more than 5-8 cm. long and 4 cm. in diameter. Sometimes these colonies are curiously intermingled in such a manner that though there is no actual blending and the space under a single leaf is always occupied by ants of the same species, nevertheless the whole colony or portions of a single colony may be completely surrounded by leaf spaces occupied by another colony. The Tillandsia ants, of which I have observed more than a dozen species (Pseudomyrma elongata and flavidula, Monomorium floricola, Xenomyrmex lucayanus, Cremastogaster minutior and steinheili, Leptothorax petiolatus, Cryptocerus astecus, varians and wheeleri, Tapinoma littorale, Camponotus planatus, rubroniger and inequalis) are mostly small and of a conciliatory or timid disposition. These various species, however, like Dolichoderus debilis and Cremastogaster parabiota, frequently live in independent nests in twigs, under bark, etc.

C. Cleptobiosis.—Forel (1901b) suggests that this term be restricted to those cases in which small ants establish their nests near or on the nests of larger species and either feed on the refuse food or waylay the workers when they return to their home and compel them to give up their booty. Certain Dolichoderine ants, like Tapinoma erraticum, Iridomyrmex analis, Forelius maccuki and Dorymyrmex pyramicus, appear to have developed habits of this kind. Wroughton (1891) has seen an Indian ant (Cremastogaster) “lie in wait for Holcomyrmex, returning home, laden with grain, and by threats, rob her of her load, on her own private road and this manœuvre was executed, not by stray individuals, but by a considerable portion of the whole community.” In the West and Southwest Dorymyrmex, as McCook (1879c) and I have observed, often builds its little craters within the bare clearings or even on the nest cones of Pogonomyrmex molefaciens and occidentalis and is not molested by these harvesters (Fig. 255). Dorymyrmex is a very agile and pugnacious little ant with a rank Tapinoma odor. It probably feeds on the remains of insects brought in by the
Pogonomyrmex. It is possible, however, as I have suggested (1901c), that both Dorymyrmex and Forelius merely nest in the Pogonomyrmex clearings because they prefer barren, sunny spots.

D. Lestobiosis.—Forel (1901b) has given this name to an extensive group of forms, the "thief ants," which I formerly included under cleptobiosis. At least the workers of these ants are of very small size and nest in the earthen walls separating the roomy galleries and chambers of termites and other larger ants. The lestobiotic species, most of which belong to the Myrmicine tribe Solenopsidii, comprise the following:

1. Pheidole calens, a small granivorous ant which nests on the mounds of Pogonomyrmex barbatus in Mexico, and probably helps itself to the seeds stored up by this ant in the flat, superficial chambers of its nest.

2. Solenopsis fugax of Europe, the African S. orbula and latro, the North American S. molesta and texana, and probably also many of the South American members of the genus. The workers of these ants are all very small and yellow, with vestigial eyes and are decidedly hypogæic in their habits. They often, but by no means always, live in the gallery walls of other and much larger ants. When this is the case, the passages occupied by the Solenopsis communicate with the apartments of the other species and are too tenuous to admit the workers of the latter. These do not appear to notice the little thieves which move about freely in the galleries and chambers and kill and eat their helpless larvæ and pupæ, as Forel (1869, 1874), Wasmann (1891h), and especially Janet (1897e), have observed in S. fugax. Our American molesta has very similar habits, but is often found leading an independent existence. It is also sometimes a pest in kitchens and is known to eat dead insects and the sprouting kernels of maize (Forbes).

3. Diplomorium longipenne.—Workers of this ant, which are small and yellow like those of Solenopsis, were sent me by Dr. Hans Brauns, who took them in Cape Colony in nests of a pale variety of Messor barbarus. These specimens were labelled "thief ants," and probably lived with the Messor in the same manner as Solenopsis lives with species of Formica and other genera.

4. Carebara vidua, lignata, etc.—These ants, which occur only in the African and Oriental regions, have minute, yellow, small-eyed workers like Solenopsis, but their males and females are gigantic and dark-colored, and have well-developed eyes and ocelli (Fig. 256). Carebara vidua was found by Haviland (Forel, 1901) nesting in the hills of Termes natalensis. There can be little doubt that the workers feed on the termites or their young and on account of their diminutive
size or neutral odor can move about unnoticed among their soft-bodied hosts.

5. The following species are closely allied to *Solenopsis* and *Carebara* and in all probability enter into similar ethological relations to various species of termites: *Erebornymyrmex longi* (Fig. 257) of Texas and *peruviana* of Peru; *Carebarella bicolor* and the species of *Trano*

![Image of ants](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

**Fig. 257. Erebornymyrmex longi.** (Original.) *a*, Female; *b*, male; *c*, worker drawn to same scale as male and female; *d*, worker enlarged, dorsal view; *e*, same, lateral view.

*pelata* of South America; the species of *Oligomyrmex* of India and Australia, and *Aëromyrna nossindambo* of Madagascar. The following, mainly Brazilian species, have also been recorded as living in termite nests: *Monomorium termitobium*, *heyeri* and *decamerum*, *Cremastogaster alegrensis* and *quadriformis*, *Pheidole termitobia*, *Tapinoma heyeri* and *Brachymyrmex termitophilus*. In the United States *Pheidole lamia* (Fig. 258) and the various species of *Strumigenys* often live, apparently as thief-ants, in the nests of other Formicidae.

The tribe Solenopsidii, to which belong the above mentioned species of *Diplomorhium*, *Carebara*, *Erebornymyrmex*, *Carebarella*, *Tranopeltula*, *Oli-
gomyrmex, Aëromyrm and Solenopsis, have two peculiarities which
have been interpreted by Forel as the result of lastobiosis, namely, the
diminutive size and hypogæic habits of the workers and the huge size
of the males, and especially of the females. The remarkable dimor-
phism of the female sex, which reaches its extremest development in
Carebara, the fertile female of which is more than a thousand times as
large as the sterile female, or worker, is easily accounted for by the
peculiar habits. The workers are compelled to remain dwarfs in order
to move about unperceived among their hosts and pass through the

Fig. 258. Pheidole lamia. (Original.) a, Soldier; b, same in profile; c, head of
same from front; d, worker.

slender galleries to and from their own nests. This subterranean habit
is also responsible for their pale color and the vestigial condition of
their eyes. At the same time these anæmic pygmies are able to rear
such gigantic males and females because the larvæ and pupæ of their
hosts furnish an abundant supply of highly nutritious food. The
sexual forms retain their deep pigmentation and large eyes because they
mate in the sunlight like the corresponding phases of most other ants.

E. Phylacobiosis.—This term is applied by Wasmann (1901-'02) to
the relations supposed to exist between the Brazilian Camponotus ter-
mitarius and Eutermes fulviceps, Anoplotermes ater and morio. The
Camponotus is said to nest only in the hills of these termites and as it
seems to be on friendly terms with them, Wasmann is of the opinion
that it acts as a guard or protection ("eine Art Schutztruppe"). This
case, however, like many of the other compound nests, is in need of
further investigation. It is quite probable that *C. termittarius* may be
carnivorous and represent merely an additional case of lestoibiosis.

**F. Xenobiosis.**—I have given this name to certain types of com-
 pound nests in which the relations between ants of two different species
 are of a very definite and intimate character. In these cases one of the
 species, known as the inquiline, or "guest ant," can live only in asso-
ciation with a host, and unlike several of the species included under the
 preceding captions, is never found living alone. Although the guest
 ants live with their hosts on terms of mutual toleration or even friend-
 ship, each species rears its brood in chambers of its own excavation.
 In midsummer, however, when these broods mature, individuals of all
 three phases of both species are found intermingled, moving about in
 the chambers of the host and freely consorting with one another. This
 condition is rarely seen in any other forms of social symbiosis, for in
 the mixed colonies, to be considered in the following chapters, the
 sexual phases of the host species are, in nearly all cases, suppressed.

1. *Formicoxenus nitidulus* (Fig. 259).—The habits of this small,

![Fig. 259. *Formicoxenus nitidulus.* (Original.) a, Worker; b, ergatomorphic male.](image)

slender, shining, yellowish-red ant, which much resembles certain spe-
cies of *Leptothorax*, have been described by Adlerz (1884), Forel (1874,
1886d), Wasmann (1891h) and Janet (1897e). It is a sub-boreal species
and nests only in the interior of the great débris mounds of *Formica
rufa* and *F. pratensis*. Here it excavates small chambers which com-
 municate by means of slender passages with the galleries and chambers of
its much larger hosts. Wasmann found a colony of *Formicoxenus*
inhabiting the cavity of an old cocoon of *Cetonia floricola*, a chafer
which passes its larval and pupal stages at the bottom of *rufa* nests.
The guest-ant moves about freely among its host who treats it with
indifference. Some observers have occasionally noticed slight indications of hostility between the two species. When the *rufa* moves to a new nest the *Formicoxeni* follow in the files of the host, carrying one another and their brood. None of the authors above mentioned, notwithstanding the closest observations, has been able to detect any other relations between the inquiline and its host. The *rufa* are never seen to feed the inquilines, and the latter have never been seen to eat the progeny of their host or the dead insects brought into the nest, so that the nature of their food remains an enigma.

*Formicoxenus nitidulus* is, moreover, an interesting species, because the male, discovered by Adlerz in 1884, is wingless and highly ergatomorphic. It can be distinguished from the worker only by the more curved antennal funiculi and their additional joint, the presence of sternmata (which, however, occur also in some workers), the additional gastric segment and the genital appendages; the eyes, head, thorax and legs are remarkably like those of the worker. The wingless condition of this male makes a nuptial flight impossible, of course, so that mating has to take place on the surface of the *Formica* nest or on the ground and stones in the neighborhood. The mating has been seen by several European observers, and during July, 1907, I had an opportunity to witness it near Samaden, on the slopes of Piz Ot, at an altitude of about 2,000 m. in the Upper Engadin. After a cold night, the sun remained behind a mass of clouds at about 9 A. M. when I saw dozens of *Formicoxeni* of all three phases, but mostly males, running hither and thither over the small twigs and other débris forming the outer covering of an old *rufa* nest which I had stopped to examine. The males moved very quickly, with feverishly vibrating antennæ, and were so amorous that they often seized workers and attempted to mate with them. The few winged females were soon supplied with partners and the supernumerary males continued to hurry about over and among the little sticks of the nest. Then the sun suddenly emerged from the clouds and, as if by magic, all the *Formicoxeni* disappeared into the nest. I waited for some time and during the remainder of the morning returned repeatedly to the spot, but none of the tiny inquilines reappeared.

2. *Formicoxenus ravouxi* and *corsicus*.—These two species are known only from female specimens. The former was taken in France by Ern. André (1893a) in a nest of *Leptothorax unifasciatus*. The host of the latter species is unknown.

3. *Xenomyrmex stolli*.—Forel (1884b) described this small, shining, dark-brown ant, which is allied to *Monomorium*, from some specimens found in Guatemala, living in a huge oak-gall in company with a much
larger ant, *Camponotus abscisus*. More recently Emery (1893–'94) has described a subspecies of *stolli* as *floridanus*, from specimens taken by Pergande in Florida from a hollow twig of *Sideroxylon*, and I have described (1905b) a variety, *lucayanus*, taken in a *Tillandsia* in the Bahamas. As both of these forms were living in independent formicaries, it is not improbable that the typical *stolli* was merely living in plesio- or parabiosis with the *Camponotus*.

4. *Phacota sichei* and *noualhieri*.—The former species was described by Roger (1862b) from a single worker taken in Andalusia, the latter by Emery (1895f) from a single worker taken in a nest of the Algerian *Monomorium subnitidum*. Nothing is known of the habits of these two species of *Phacota*, so that their position here is purely conjectural.

5. *Myrmoxenus gordiaginii* is a small ant recently discovered by Ruzsky (1902, 1905) living in the Kirghis steppes in nests of *Leptothorax serviculus*. This is probably a case of xenobiosis, but nothing definite seems to be known concerning the relations of the two species.

6. *Sifolinia lauræ*.—This ant, recently described by Emery (1907) from a female specimen taken in Italy, is structurally related to *Formicoxenus*, *Myrmoxenus* and *Harpagoxenus*, and is, therefore, in all probability, a parasitic or xenobiotic insect. Its host is unknown.

7. *Myrmica myrmoxena*.—Many years ago (1874) Forel described a singular diminutive male and female as aberrant forms of *Myrmica levindis*, since they were taken in a nest of this species by Bugnier at an altitude of about 2,000 m. in Switzerland. Although no one has since found these small forms, Forel now regards them as types of a distinct species (*M. myrmoxena*), probably living in xenobiosis with the closely allied *levindis*.

8. *Symmyrmica chamberlini* (Fig. 260).—This interesting little ant is allied to *Formicoxenus* in all three phases, especially in the male, which is ergatoid (Wheeler, 1904b). This sex, however, is much less worker-like in the structure of the head and thorax than the male of the European inquiline. The workers often have stemmata. The only specimens I have seen were sent me by Mr. F. V. Chamberlin, who found them in Utah living in nests of *Myrmica mutica*. The following note, which accompanied the specimens, leaves little doubt that the relations of the *Symmyrmica* to its host are similar to those of *Formicoxenus* to *Formica rufa*: “Nests of *Myrmica mutica* are common in some localities near Salt Lake City over the flood-plains of the Jordan River. The soil where they occur oftenest is prevalingly argillaceous and sometimes contains much ‘alkali.’ I have not found them in stony or gravelly ground. All the nests observed opened free from any cover,
and not a few were seen in the middle of foot-paths, although they prefer loose soil. In several parts of a ten-acre field where the soil is of the usual character, I found nests of this *Myrmica* containing the symbiotic species. Three of these compound colonies were present, two now being in a collection stored at my home in Utah, the other being the one you have examined. I never succeeded in finding one of the compound nests elsewhere than in this particular field. My

![Ants](image)

**Fig. 260. Symmyrmica chamberlini.** (Original.) *a* and *b*, worker; *c*, mandible, *d*, hairs of same; *e* and *f*, ergatomorphic male; *g*, mandible of same.

attention was drawn to the first compound nest by seeing two individuals of *Symmyrmica* disappear into a burrow immediately following a *Myrmica* worker. Upon excavating I found others of the symbiotic form, mostly collected in a chamber about eight inches below the surface of the ground. The nest seemed to be above the average in size." *Myrmica mutica*, which closely resembles in structure and habits the European *M. rubida*, is very common in the mountains of Colorado, but although I examined many nests in that state during two different
summers, I failed to find any traces of the Symmyrmica. We must conclude, therefore, that this ant is either very rare or very local. As it may be said to represent an archaic form of Formicoxenus, it is possible that this European ant was once a guest of M. rubida, which is closely related to M. mutica, and only later became associated with F. rufa. This is suggested by the fact that the present host belongs to a different subfamily and by the extreme ergatombiosis of the males. This specialization is, at any rate, an interesting example of the more advanced state of development of European as compared with North American species belonging to the same or allied genera.

9. Leptotheorax emersoni (Fig. 261).—This boreal ant is known only from the mountains of New England, but there can be little doubt that it occurs also in eastern British America. I found it first in the Litchfield and Berkshire Hills. Mrs. A. T. Slosson has since taken it on the summit of Mt. Washington and I have found it also at South Harpswell, Maine. It lives only in xenobiosis with another boreal ant, Myrmica canadensis, a variety of M. brevinodis. I have described the habits of these ants at length in two papers (1901c, 1903f), to which the reader is referred; here only the more essential particulars need be mentioned. M. canadensis builds its nest in the soil of bogs, in clumps of moss (Polytrichum) or under logs and stones, and the Leptotheorax excavates small cavities near the surface and communicating by means of short, tenuous galleries with those of its host. The broods of both species are brought up separately. The Leptotheorax, though consorting freely with the Myrmica workers in their galleries, resents any intrusion of these ants into its own chambers. The inquilines do not leave the nest to forage but obtain all their food, in a very interesting manner, from their hosts. Both in the natural and artificial nests the Leptotheorax are seen to mount the backs of the Myrmicas and to lick or shampoo their surfaces in a kind of feverish excitement. This shampooing has a two-fold object: to obtain the oleaginous salivary secretion with which the Myrmicas cover their bodies when they clean one another, and to induce these ants to regurgitate the liquid food stored in their crops. The Leptotheorax devote most of their time to licking the heads and clypei of their nest mates, stopping from time to time to imbibe the liquid food from their lips. Whenever the Myrmica workers return to the nest after visiting the aphids on the neighboring plants, they are intercepted by the Leptotheorax and compelled to pay toll in this comical manner. The Myrmica always treat their little guests with the greatest consideration and affection. In Lubbock nests they are often seen to break into the Leptotheorax chambers, as if seeking an opportunity to be shampooed. On such occa-
sions the inquilines seize them by their mandibles, antennæ or legs and try to force them to withdraw. Then the broken walls are rebuilt by the inquilines and new entrances are made into the Myrmica galleries at other points. When colonies of both species, together with their brood, are placed in nests containing no earth, the Leptothorax collect all their young in a pile and act towards any Myrmica that approaches them as they do when their earthen cells are invaded. For days the little ants struggle to maintain the integrity of their exposed nursery and even build around it ramparts of sugar or other substances which they may find in the nest, but the intrusions of the Myrmica become so frequent and insistent that they finally give up and allow their larvæ and pupæ to become mingled with those of their host. As soon as this occurs the ants no longer form a compound nest, but a mixed colony. While the two species are living together the Leptothorax never approach the food dish or feed independently, but if a colony of this species is isolated the workers begin to visit the food and feed, rather awkwardly at first, but eventually quite like ordinary ants. This indicates that the symbiosis between the two species must be of comparatively recent development. In natural colonies the feeding of the inquilines does not seem to constitute a serious drain on the hosts, as the latter, even when supporting a few hundred of the little satellites, are nevertheless able to bring up a great number of workers, males and females of their own species. Although the Leptothorax may be said to be truly parasitic, they have lost none of their essential instincts, such as those of excavating the nest and rearing their young. Only their feeding habits have become peculiarly modified, without, however, completely supplanting the ability to eat independently. Nevertheless the opulent trophic conditions among which the inquilines live have begun to tell on the

![Fig. 261. Leptothorax emersoni and Myrmica canadensis. (Original.) The two largest ants are workers of M. canadensis; in the lower middle portion of the figure a worker L. emersoni; in the vertical row to the right, a male, deilated female, ergatoid female and worker of this species.](image-url)
structure of the workers, for these have a pronounced tendency to
assume the characters of the queen. Miss Holiday (1904) and I have
shown that a large percentage of the workers possess ocelli and even
resemble the female in size, in the structure of the thorax, and in pos-
sessing a well-developed receptaculum seminis and ovaries. Hence we
may say that the abundant food supply has a tendency to increase the
fertility of the workers and to reduce the dimorphism of the female
sex. If this tendency, which is the reverse of that observed under
similar circumstances among lestobiotic ants like Carebara, should con-
tinue, it would probably give rise to one of two conditions in the course
of further evolution: either the worker caste would disappear com-
pletely, leaving the species to be represented by males and winged
females, or the winged female would be suppressed, leaving only males
and ergatoid females. As winged females seem to be produced by
Leptothorax emersoni in rather small numbers, I am inclined to believe
that evolution will take the latter course. In the ants to be considered
under the head of permanent social parasitism evolution has moved
along the other path and led to a complete extinction of the worker caste.

10. Leptothorax glacialis.—This ant, which I have described
(1907h) as a subspecies of L. emersoni, occurs in the Rocky Moun-
tains of Colorado at elevations of over 2,500 m. It lives with Myrmica
alpina, a western variety of M. brevinodis, in relations very similar to
those described above for the two eastern forms, except that glacialis
seems to feed less on the surface secretions and more on the regur-
gitated food of its host. Observations on a colony in an artificial nest
also seemed to show that the instinct to feed independently is more
blunted or vestigial in glacialis than it is in emersoni.

The relations of L. emersoni and glacialis to their respective hosts
represent the nearest approach to the formation of mixed colonies that
has been observed among xenobiotic ants. Indeed, so cordial and inti-
mate are the relations between these species and their hosts that even
the instinct to rear their broods in separate apartments can be sup-
pressed experimentally and the insects induced to form a true mixed
colony. If in a state of nature L. emersoni and glacialis should
develop a habit of mingling their eggs, larvae and pupae with those of
the Myrmica, these inquilines would probably soon cease to excavate
ests of their own and become permanent social parasites.
CHAPTER XXIV

THE TEMPORARY SOCIAL PARASITES

"Est-on bien sûr que les mœurs parasitaires soient dérivées de l'amour de l'inaction? Le parasite est-il devenu ce qu'il est parce qu'il a trouvé excellent de ne rien faire? Le repos est-il pour lui avantage si grand que, pour l'obtenir, il ait renié ses antiques usages? Eh bien, depuis que je fréquente l'hyménoptère dotant sa famille de l'avoir des autres, je n'ai encore rien vu qui, chez lui, dénotât le fainéant. Le parasite, tout au contraire, mène vie pénible, plus rude que celle des travailleurs. Suivons-le sur un talus calciné par le soleil. Comme il est affairé, soucieux; comme il arpente d'un pas brusque la nappe ensoleillée; comme il se dépense en recherches interminables, en visites le plus souvent infructueuses! Avant d'avoir fait rencontre d'un nid qui lui convienne, il a plongé cent fois dans des cavités sans valeur, dans des galeries non encore approvisionnées. Et puis, si bénévole que soit l'hôte, le parasite n'est pas toujours des mieux reçus dans l'hôtellerie. Non, tout n'est pas roses dans son métier."—Fabre, "Souvenirs Entomologiques," III, 1890.

Mixed colonies of ants were first discovered by P. Huber nearly a century ago (1810) and have since been studied in Europe by Darwin, Forel, Lubbock, Adlerz, Wasmann, Janet, Reichenbach, Escherich, Viehmeyer and many others; in America by McCook, Mrs. Treat, Forel and myself. These colonies present a great number of singular problems, on many of which light has been shed only within the past decade. In the study of this, as in that of so many other subjects, the startling and complex phenomena were the first to be seen and to call for an explanation. Various inadequate explanations were then advanced, till, in seeking support for these, the investigator happened on some obscure and hitherto disregarded or misinterpreted phenomenon which suddenly changed the aspect of the whole subject. Thus the highly specialized slave-making behavior of Polyergus and Formica sanguinea was the first to be observed by Huber and this was so extraordinary that it engrossed the attention of observers for nearly a century. As the slave-making forays are executed by worker ants, it was natural to seek for their origin and signification in the activities of this caste. In the meantime some apparently unimportant observations on the mixed colonies were being accumulated and the remarkable initiative of the queen ant in establishing her formicary began to be understood and appreciated. After vainly seeking the raison d'être of the mixed colonies in the behavior of the workers, an attempt was made to solve the problem by a study of the queen. This attempt proved to be so successful that we are now wondering how it could have taken so many
years to perceive that a mixed colony or a simple colony, for that matter, can only be understood by tracing its development and history—its ontogeny, as the embryologist would say. And as all ant-colonies are started by queens, it would seem to be most natural to approach the subject by studying the behavior of these insects. But all problems appear to be simple after they have ceased to be problems. I described in Chapter XI the various methods of colony formation exhibited by ants in general. Before considering the mixed colonies it will be necessary not only to refer the reader to that description but also to present the subject from a somewhat different point of view.

In the great majority of ant species the colony arises and develops in the following manner: The single female, or queen, after mating during her marriage flight, descends to the earth, divests herself of her wings, digs a small cell in the soil, or enters some preformed cavity under a stone or in the tissues of a plant, lays a number of eggs, feeds the resulting larvae with her salivary secretion, and guards and nurses them till they mature and constitute a brood of diminutive workers. These now proceed to enlarge the nest, to forage for food, both for themselves and their mother, and to care for the succeeding broods of young. The queen thenceforth gives herself up exclusively to feeding from the tongues of her offspring and to laying eggs. The colony grows apace, the workers increasing in number, size and polymorphism with successive broods. Eventually males and virgin queens are produced, though often only after the expiration of several years, when the colony may be said to have completed its ontogenetic development.

It will be seen from the foregoing summary that the mother queen lapses from the position of an independent organism with remarkable initiative to that of a parasite dependent on her own offspring. The latter stage in her life is of much longer duration than the former. This singular ontogenetic change in the instincts of the queen should be noted, as it foreshadows an important phylogenetic development exhibiting two different modifications, one of which is excessive, the other defective, in comparison with the primitive and independent type of colony formation. The excessive, or redundant, type is known to occur only among the Attiine ants of tropical America. These raise fungi for food and are quite unable to subsist on any other diet. The queens are often very large, especially in the typical genus *Atta*, and not only manage to bring to maturity a brood of workers, as has been shown (p. 329 *et seq.*), but at the same time have energy to spare to devote to the cultivation of a fungus garden. With the appearance of the first brood of workers, however, these queens, like those of most other ants, degenerate into parasites on their own progeny.
This dependent stage, which, as I have said, is of much greater duration than the independent stage in the long life of the queen, leads to a number of phylogenetic developments of the defective type. These first manifest themselves in the adoption of young queens by adult workers of their own species. A word of explanation will make this clear. In the colonies of many species of Formicidae we find several queens—in fact, there are comparatively few ants whose adult colonies do not contain more than one of these fertile individuals. And a study of the growth of such colonies shows that the supernumerary queens are either daughters of the original single queen that founded the colony, or have been adopted from other colonies of the same species. Hence these queens are either virgins, or have been impregnated by their own brothers (adelphogamy of Forel) in the parental nest, or have been captured by the workers and carried into the nest after descending from their nuptial flight. This passive or forcible adoption leads necessarily to a complete suppression of the independent stage in the life of such queens. I have found that merely removing a queen ant's wings with tweezers will at once call forth the dependent series of instincts, and the same result is undoubtedly produced when the workers deàlute the virgin or just-fertilized queens of their own or other formicaries. Such queens, finding themselves surrounded by a number of accomplished nurses, the workers, proceed at once to act like old queens that have already established their colonies and brought up a brood.

From this condition of facultative adoption to an obligatory adoption of the queen by workers of her own species is but a step. And here there are three possibilities: first, the queen can establish a colony only with the aid of workers of her own species and of the same colony. This condition seems not to obtain among ants, although it is well known in the honey-bees. Second, the queen must either be adopted by the workers of her own species of the same or another colony or by workers of an alien species. This is the case with many queen ants that have lost the power of establishing colonies unaided. Third, the queen must always be adopted by an alien species. This is the case in the highly parasitic forms that have lost their worker caste. The three conditions here enumerated clearly represent the transition from parasitism of the queen on the same to parasitism on an alien species. The latter alone is commonly regarded as true parasitism, but the former, which, of course, can occur only among social organisms or during social stages in the lives of solitary organisms, is parasitism in every essential particular.

Ant colonies are such closed and exclusive societies that the adop-
tion of strange queens, even of the same species but from alien colonies, often meets with insuperable opposition on the part of the workers, and, as a rule, female ants have to overcome even greater hostility when they seek adoption in colonies of alien species. There are, nevertheless, at least three different methods of overcoming this hostility and of effecting an adoption, and each of these is characteristic of one of the forms of mixed colony. I shall consider these in this and the two following chapters under the heads of temporary social parasitism, dulosis, or slavery, and permanent social parasitism. The following diagram will serve to illustrate the foregoing account of the different types of adoption, their supposed phylogeny and their relations to one another. The relations will be made clearer by the facts recorded in the sequel.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Independent Types} \\
\text{Redundant Type} \\
(\text{Attil}) \\
\text{Facultative Adoption of queen by workers of same species} \\
\text{Obligatory Adoption of queen by workers of same species} \\
\text{Obligatory Adoption of queen by workers of another species} \\
\text{Temporary Social Parasitism} \\
(\text{Tutelary Parasitism}) \\
\text{Slavery, or Dulosis} \\
(\text{Pupillary Parasitism}) \\
\text{Permanent Social Parasitism}
\end{array}
\]

In the cases of temporary social parasitism the initiative of the queen ant is shown with great clearness. She actively seeks adoption in the colony of another species and permits the alien workers to bring up her first brood of young. The full benefits of this form of parasitism, however, can be secured only by the elimination of the queen of the host species, for if this insect remained in the colony she would continue to produce young and the nurture bestowed on these by the workers would seriously interfere with the development of the parasite's own progeny. As will be shown presently, different species seem to have developed different methods of getting rid of the host queen.
In the course of a year or two, the workers of these host species, being unable to reproduce, gradually die off and leave the parasitic queen and her offspring in possession of their nest, as a pure colony, and requiring no further assistance in its growth and development. The colony becomes populous and aggressive, with nothing to indicate that it began life as a parasitic community. This method of colony formation is adopted by some of the most powerful ants of temperate regions, and some of the most remarkable temporary parasites are members of the circumpolar genus *Formica*. Two groups of species in this genus, one embracing *F. rufa* and its allies, the other *F. exsecta* and its allies, are especially interesting in this connection. The workers of these various species are very similar. They have red heads and thoraces and black or brown gasters, but the cospecific females may exhibit extraordinary differences in size, sculpture, pilosity and coloration. According to size they may be divided into microgynous species, in which the female is little larger and sometimes even smaller than the worker, and macrogynous species, with the female considerably larger than the worker as in the members of other *Formica* groups. It is a singular fact that although the species in both of these subgroups are widely distributed and often very common in certain localities, no one has ever seen one of the females founding a colony independently. It is known, however, that in some of the species the colonies are often enlarged by adoption of females of the same species or even of a different subspecies. The microgynous species are most abundantly represented in North America. It was a study of these which first led me to the discovery of temporary parasitism as a regular or normal occurrence and to make the prediction (1904) that it would be found to occur very generally in the *rufa* and *exsecta* groups on both continents. I will present the grounds for this prediction as succinctly as possible.

1. **Microgynous Formice of the Rufa Group**.—The commonest ants with minute females in the mountains of the Atlantic States are *F. difficilis* and its variety, *consocians*. The females of these are almost as small as the large workers and are fulvous yellow in color. In the Litchfield Hills of Connecticut I found that as a rule *consocians* lives in populous, independent formicaries under stones which it banks with plant débris. Like other members of the *rufa* group, it is a very pugnacious ant. During the course of several summers a number of small, incipient colonies were found, containing a *consocians* queen associated with workers of *F. incerta*, a variety of *schaufussi*, and sometimes also with a few *consocians* workers. *F. incerta* is a cowardly ant which forms numerous rather small formicaries in the same locality. The
workers are reddish-yellow and of about the same size as the *consocians* queen. I naturally inferred that the mixed colonies must owe their origin to the adoption of *consocians* queens by *incerta* workers. A number of experiments were performed, which left no doubt concerning the correctness of this inference. The account of one of these experiments may be repeated here:

July 21, 4.30 P. M., an artificially deälated *consocians* female was placed in a nest with twenty *incerta* workers and several workers cocoons taken from one of the most vigorous colonies found during the entire summer. The workers were unusually large and more like the workers of pure *schaufussii*, but with the coloration and pilosity of *incerta*. The female seemed disinclined to approach the workers, which were brooding over their cocoons, but she moved towards them when the illumination of the chamber was reversed. She was at once seized by a worker and showered with formic acid. She escaped to a
corner of the nest. By 5.15 P. M. she had returned, mounted the pile of cocoons and was licking the workers, who were submitting to this treatment as if it were a matter of course. A few moments later she fed one of the workers and then kept alternating between feeding and caressing them with comical rapidity and perseverance. The colony was watched till 7.45 P. M., but no hostilities were seen. July 22, 7 A. M.: The previous night had been cold and the female seemed to have passed it hanging from the roof pane in a corner of the nest. Later, as it grew warmer, she returned to the *incerta* and their brood, caressed and fed the workers and took food from their lips. Only once during the day was a worker seen to tug for a few moments at one of her antennae. On the four following days (July 23 to 26) no hostilities were observed. The *consocians* female had been definitively adopted.

Numerous observations in the field have convinced me that the queen soon after her adoption lays eggs, the larvæ hatching from which are reared by the *incerta* workers. In this manner a mixed colony arises. While the queen keeps on laying eggs and producing more workers, the *incerta* gradually die of old age. Then, of course, a pure colony remains, and the *consocians* workers have become sufficiently numerous to enlarge and defend the nest and care for their queen and successive broods of their own species. The purpose of adoption and the signification of the small size and yellow color of the female are apparent. The queen pursues the same tactics as some of the myrmecophilous beetles (*Lomechusa, Atemes*, etc.) described in a previous chapter. She ingratiates herself with the workers by means of her mimetic resemblance to them, by her conciliatory and passive demeanor and by her neutral or soothing odor, and is thus able to exploit their blind philoprogenitive instincts for her own advantage and that of her offspring. Since she is thereby relieved of the necessity of nourishing her young with substances elaborated from her own tissues, she can be of diminutive stature, and this, in turn, represents a saving to her parental colony, for it is thus enabled to rear on a given amount of food a much greater number of queens than the macrogynous species. As a matter of fact, the adult *consocians* colony produces an enormous number of these dwarf females.

One important problem in the parasitism of *consocians* remains to be elucidated: What becomes of the mother queen of the *incerta* colony? Several possible answers suggest themselves. The *consocians* queen may succeed in obtaining adoption only in moribund and queenless colonies, or if she enters colonies provided with a queen, this insect may voluntarily forsake the nest, or she may be driven away or killed.
by her own workers or by the intrusive queen. Observations on artificial colonies show that the consocians queen treats the host queen with indifference, even after she has been confined in the same nest for over a year, or as if she were one of the workers. Moreover, the incerta queen displays no inclination to forsake her colony, and no hostilities develop between her and her own workers. I deem it probable, therefore, that the parasite instinctively seeks out some impoverished or queenless colony of the host species. We shall see, however, that this custom is by no means universal among the temporary parasites.

Other North American Formicae of the rufa group known to have diminutive females as small as those of consocians or even smaller are: microgyna (Fig. 262), rasilis, nevadensis, impexa, nepticula and dakotensis. As the nesting habit of these is very similar to that of consocians, and as I have found in Colorado two small mixed nests of dakotensis and incerta, I believe that there is little doubt that all these species are temporary social parasites.

2. Macrogynous Formicae of the Rufa Group.—The forms included here are the typical European rufa, with its subspecies, pratensis and truncicola, and in America the subspecies obscuriventris, obscuripes and integra, with several varieties, and the species ciliata, crinita, oreas, comata and specularis. In several of these forms the stature of the female is somewhat diminished and in ciliata (Fig. 263), crinita, etc., her color, pilosity or sculpturing are aberrant. Small mixed colonies of F. truncicola and fusca have been known for some years. Forel (1874) described one which he found near Loco, Switzerland; one was found by Zur Strassen in Saxony, and Wasmann (1901–02, 1905d) has recently found three others in Luxembourg. These mixed colonies were originally regarded as accidental or abnormal occurrences, but my observations (1904h, 1906c) indicated very clearly that they are merely incipient and transitory stages in the normal life of the truncicola colony and that the queen of this species is a temporary parasite. After observing two of the mixed colonies in artificial nests Wasmann reached the same conclusion. Recently (1908) Viehmeyer has shown that truncicola females are readily adopted by fusca workers. Now as the North American integra and its varieties, haemorrhoidalis and coloradensis, closely resemble the European truncicola in structure and nesting habit, and as I have succeeded in causing a female integra to be adopted by workers of subsericea, there can be little doubt that the huge formicaries of all these rufa forms have their beginnings in temporary parasitism. Finally, the species with rich red or yellow, very glabrous or unusually
hairy females, like *ciliata*, *crinita*, *dakotensis* and *specularis*, probably have similar habits. Muckermann, in fact, discovered in Wisconsin some five colonies of *specularis* mixed with *subsericea*, and with females of the former species only. Although Wasmann has endeavored to make out that these nests represented cases of incipient slavery, there can be no doubt that the observations, as they stand, will bear no such interpretation, but point rather to temporary social parasitism.

![Image of ants](image)

**Fig. 263. Formica ciliata.** (Original.) *a*, Deailiated female; *b*, large worker drawn to same scale; *c*, head of worker; *d*, petiole of same seen from behind; *e*, petiole of female.

There are no published observations on the origin of *rufa* and *pratensis* colonies. It is not improbable, however, that these ants in the early stages of colony formation are parasitic on *fusca*. In Switzerland, during the summer of 1907, I found on two or three occasions a recently killed, but not mutilated, *pratensis* queen in the recesses of a *fusca* nest, and Professor Escherich showed me a typical *rufa* queen which
he found near Strasburg living with a small number of fusca workers.¹ These facts, taken singly are rather insignificant, but conjointly they point very decidedly to the conclusion that most, if not all, the ants of the rufa group are temporary parasites.

3. The Formicæ of the Exsecta Group.—This group, which is characterized by having the head of the worker and female deeply excised behind, is represented in Europe by the typical F. exsecta, its subspecies pressilabris and F. suecica, a species recently discovered in Sweden by Adlerz; in North America by F. exsectoides, its subspecies opaciventris and F. ulkei. These ants build mound nests, often several to a colony, and sometimes of large size, especially in America (Figs. 109 and 181). The females are large in our forms, but smaller in exsecta and pressilabris, and scarcely larger than the workers in suecica. There is indirect evidence that all of these ants, except ulkei, which has not yet been observed in nature, are temporary parasites. In his "Fourmis de la Suisse" Forel described two small mixed colonies of exsecta-fusca and two of exsectopressilabris-fusca. During the summer of 1907 I also found a mixed colony of the latter composition, occupying a single small mound, on the slopes of Monte Generoso. Similar mixed colonies of exsectoides and subsericea have been repeatedly observed in the Eastern States. Forel observed one at Hartford, Conn., and the late Rev. P. J. Schmitt found five near Beatty, Pa. These invariably contained queens of exsectoides only, and all were obviously incipient, since they comprised not more than fifty workers, both species included. I have found two of these mixed colonies at Colebrook, Conn., and have observed the behavior of an exsectoides queen when she is introduced into a colony of subsericea workers. She is very passive and conciliatory and in one of my experiments was readily adopted by the alien colony. Considering the close taxonomic affinities of F. ulkei to exsectoides and the diminutive stature of the female suecica, we may assume that these species can hardly differ in their habits from the other members of the exsecta group.

4. Bothriomyrmex.—Among the mixed colonies recorded by Forel (1874) there was one composed of two species of Dolichoderine ants, Bothriomyrmex meridionalis and Tapinoma erraticum, which he found on the Borromean Islands in the Lago Maggiore. This colony, like the colonies of truncicola-fusca and exsecta-fusca above mentioned, had

¹ During the past summer (1909) I found three mixed colonies of F. rufa and fusca, which show very clearly that the former is a temporary parasite like consocians. Two of these, discovered in the Turtman Valley, in Switzerland, each consisted of a rufa queen and several fusca workers, the third, found at Zermatt, contained besides a rufa queen a few workers of the same species.
been regarded as an exceptional or abnormal occurrence till very recently, when Santschi (1906, Forel, 1906d) discovered several mixed colonies of varieties of these species (B. atlantis and T. nigerrimum) in the Tunisian desert, and showed by a series of surprising observations that they were cases of temporary parasitism. The Bothriomyrmex queen, on descending from her nuptial flight, wanders about on the ground till she finds a Tapinoma nest and then permits herself to be seized and "arrested" by the Tapinoma workers. These then proceed to drag her into their burrow by her legs and antennæ. After entering the nest the parasite may be attacked from time to time by the workers, but she takes refuge on the brood or on the back of the Tapinoma queen. In either of these positions she seems to be quite immune from attack. This observation throws light on certain peculiarities in the behavior of F. consocians, for this insect also mounts the brood pile as soon as she enters the incerta nest and when in this position is never molested by the alien workers. Santschi observed that the Bothriomyrmex queen often spends long hours on the back of the large Tapinoma queen and that while she is in this position she busies herself with sawing off the head of her host! By the time she has succeeded in accomplishing this cruel feat, she has acquired the nest odor and is adopted by the Tapinoma workers in the place of their unfortunate mother. The parasite thereupon proceeds to keep them busy bringing up her brood. They eventually die of old age and the nest then becomes the property of a thriving, pure colony of Bothriomyrmex atlantis. The queen of this species, as Santschi has shown, is mimetic like that of consocians, being but little larger than the Tapinoma workers and provided with an odor like that of the host species, though this odor is lacking in her own workers. Santschi has thus been able actually to witness the elimination of the host queen. But the method employed by Bothriomyrmex in accomplishing this is not universal among parasitic species, as we shall see when we come to his interesting observations on the permanent social parasite Wheeleriella.

5. Aphanogaster.—The female of the Myrmicine ant Aphanogaster tennesseensis (Fig. 264), in being deep red and of very small size, with a glabrous body and huge, flattened epinotal spines protecting the vulnerable abdominal pedicel, is so unlike the females of any other members of the genus Aphanogaster that she was originally described by Mayr as the type of a distinct species (A. levis). These peculiarities suggest temporary parasitism and this is borne out by the observations of Schmitt and myself (1901c). Schmitt found near Beatty, Pa., a small mixed colony of A. tennesseensis and A. picea, a variety of fulva and one of the commonest ants in the Northern States. He was impressed
with the fact that the nest of this colony was under a stone, because *tennesseensis* normally nests only in rotting wood. During the summer of 1902 I found near Rockford, Ill., two mixed colonies like that observed by Schmitt, except that the variety *picea* was represented by the variety *rudis*. Both colonies were of small size and situated under stones. In one of them a *tennesseensis* queen was unearthed. There can be little doubt, therefore, that the glabrous queens seek out small nests of some variety of *fulva* and start their colonies in them just as *consocians* does in the nest of *incerta*. This habit is also indicated by the sporadic distribution of *tennesseensis* and its occurrence only in

![Fig. 264. In the first vertical row: virgin and dealed female of Aphanogaster tennesseensis; in the second vertical row: male and two workers of the same species; remaining figures: virgin female, male and workers of Aphanogaster fulva. × 1½. (Original.)](image)

localities where some form of *fulva* is abundant. After the extinction of the host workers the pure *tennesseensis* colony evidently migrates into old logs and stumps and there attains its full development. A single adult colony of this species, like that of *consocians*, produces a great number of small females, whereas the non-parasitic *Aphanogaster* have all they can do to bring up a few of their large queens. Another *Aphanogaster* (*A. mariae*), which is a rare species taken only in the Atlantic States and structurally closely related to *tennesseensis*, also has very small females (4.5 mm. long), with large epinotal spines. It is, in all probability, like this species, a temporary parasite in nests of *A. fulva*.

6. *Oxygyne.*—Forel has assigned to a special subgenus, *Oxygyne*, a series of *Cremastigaster* species (*emma, ebenina, soror, travancoren-
sis, dalyi, aberrans, ranavalona, agnetis, daisyi, martha and depressa) from Madagascar, India and the Malayan region, because they have unusually small, glabrous females, with falcate, pointed or very oblique mandibles, abbreviated frontal carinæ and sometimes very strong epinotal spines and a robust abdominal pedicel. The workers of these various forms are much like those of the ordinary species of Cremastogaster with large queens. In one species of Oxygyne (ranavalona, Fig. 265), according to Emery (1897a), the aged female has the gaster enormously enlarged and sub spherical like that of the mother queens of the permanently parasitic Anergates (Fig. 279, b). Forel has suggested that the structural peculiarities of the Oxygyne queens are probably correlated with peculiarities of habit. Comparison of a series of these insects, kindly given me by the eminent myrmecologist, with the microgyines of Formica and Aphaenogaster, convinces me that they must be temporary parasites on other species of Cremastogaster. Their sickle-shaped mandibles, so much like those of Polyergus and Strongylognathus (Figs. 271, 273) point to a method of assassinating the host queen similar to that employed by Bothriomyrmex. The suggestion here advanced would, at any rate, constitute a good working hypothesis in carrying on further researches on the species of Oxygyne.

While studying the foregoing known and hypothetical cases of temporary parasitism, one's attention is arrested by the following considerations of general interest:

1. Temporary social parasitism occurs in several unrelated species belonging to three of the five subfamilies of Formicidæ, and must therefore have originated independently on more than one occasion in the past history of the family.

2. Parasite and host are always members of the same genus or of closely allied genera. This seems to be necessary, because such inti-
mate symbiotic relations would be impossible between species of very
diverse habits.

3. The host, being in all cases a very widely distributed and abun-
dant species, forms an omnipresent substratum, so to speak, on which
the sporadic parasitic forms manage to graft themselves. That the
latter are either rare ants or abundant only in circumscribed localities,
suggests that the adoption of their queens by alien workers is beset
with many obstacles. The colonies of some of these ants, like those
of F. rufa and exsectoides, when once established, may, indeed, grow
to enormous dimensions and extend themselves over a number of nests
by repeatedly adopting fertile queens of their own species, but the geo-
ographical distribution of these forms is never as continuous and uniform
as that of the host.

4. The hosts of the temporary parasites are, as a rule, cowardly
and prolific species. Both of these peculiarities fit them for being
exploited, not only by these parasites, but also by the slave-making ants.
And as ant colonies are the more timid and conciliatory the smaller
they are, we find that the parasites prefer incipient or moribund colonies
to the larger and more aggressive communities of the host species.

5. Temporary parasitism, being transitory, has not, as a rule, pro-
foundly affected the morphological characters of the species. The
workers, in fact, have remained unaffected, though the female, in
whom the peculiar habit centers, certainly shows structural and instinc-
tive peculiarities that can be interpreted only as adaptations to a para-
sitic life. Such are the dwarf stature, the mimetic coloration, the long
yellow hairs of F. ciliata and crinita, so like the trichomes of many
myrmecophilous beetles, and the conciliatory and insinuating behavior.

6. The production of a great number of dwarf females by pure
adult colonies of F. consocians and A. tennesseensis bears a very inter-
esting and suggestive resemblance to the production of a vast number
of minute eggs by many nonsocial parasites like the ascarids, cestodes,
Sacculina, etc. This has been universally regarded as an adaptation
to the great destruction of individuals incident to the complicated and
arduous efforts of the parasite to get a foothold on or in its host. The
exception to this rule furnished by the macrogynous Formicae of the
rufa and exsecta groups may be due to the fact that in these species
the queens are so often adopted by workers of their own opulent colo-
nies, and the occasions on which they actually need to found colonies
with the aid of alien species so infrequent, that they have not become
dwarfed in stature and have not developed pronounced mimetic or
myrmecophilous characters.
7. The elimination of the host queen in colonies invaded by the temporary parasites destroys the reproductive powers of the host colony. Hence this form of parasitism is strictly comparable to the castration induced in their hosts by many nonsocial parasites like Sacculina and Stylops. We may therefore designate cases like that of Bothriomyrmex and Tapinoma as examples of social castration. This term, as will be shown in the sequel, will apply also to most of the mixed colonies formed by dulosis and permanent social parasitism.

8. The future development of the temporary parasites may be supposed to lead most naturally in the direction of permanent parasitism. This, however, can eventuate only if the species limits and accelerates the growth of its colonies or foists itself only on well-developed colonies of the host. Contrariwise the parasite would outgrow the host colony, or the latter would die off prematurely unless its queen were retained in the nest. We shall see that such Malthusian practices are actually carried out by the permanent social parasites and have resulted in the complete extinction of the unnecessary worker caste.
CHAPTER XXV

THE SANGUINARY ANTS, OR FACULTATIVE SLAVE-MAKERS

"I shall next bring forward a scene still more astonishing, which at first, perhaps, you will be disposed to regard as the mere illusion of a lively imagination. What will you say when I tell you that certain ants are affirmed to sally forth from their nests on predatory expeditions, for the singular purpose of procuring slaves to employ in their domestic business; and that these ants are usually a ruddy race, while their slaves themselves are black."—Kirby & Spence, "Entomology," 6th ed., 1846.

"Ce fait choquant et hideux, tâchons du moins de le comprendre. Il est propre à quelques espèces; il est un incident particulier, un cas exceptionnel, mais rentrant au total dans une loi générale de la vie des fourmis."—Michelet, "L'Insecte," 1884.

The mixed colonies described in the last chapter are transitory consociations of two species merely formed as a means of establishing colonies, which, in their adult stages, are able to hold their own unaided in the struggle for existence. The cases to be described in this and the following chapters are more permanent symbiotic alliances, though they differ so much among themselves that it is difficult to include them in a single definition. With one or two exceptions, to be described in their proper places, these mixed colonies may be said to be formed by dulosis, or slavery, and this peculiar phenomenon may be defined as the habit of making periodical raids on particular alien species, seizing their worker larvae and pupae and rearing and adopting a portion of these. But neither the periodical raid nor the rearing of the alien ants alone constitutes slavery. Many of the species of Eciton make such raids on other ants and pillage their nests, but they attack any terrestrial ants indiscriminately and the young are all devoured. And even if some of these were permitted to hatch, a mixed colony would not result, because the Ecitons have no fixed home, but wander from place to place. Moreover, although the mixed dulotic colony certainly owes its origin to the rearing and adopting of the alien young, many nondulotic ants will do this if such young are placed in or near their nests. Forel (1874) long ago formed mixed colonies in this way, and more recently Miss Fielde (1903c) has shown the extreme to which this experiment can be carried. She succeeded in making triple and quadruple mixed colonies of ants belonging not only to different genera, but also to different subfamilies (Fig. 266). One
of her experiments resulted in the formation of a colony comprising workers of Stigmatomma pallipes (Ponerine), Formica subsericea (Camponotine), and Aphenogaster fulva (Myrmicine); another was made up of such heterogeneous components as Camponotus pennsylvanicus, Formica sanguinea, A. fulva and Cremastogaster lineolata. In these artificial mixed colonies she found that

Fig. 266. Mixed colony consisting of workers of Camponotus pennsylvanicus, Formica subsericea and Aphenogaster picea reared by Miss A. M. Fielde. Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and Dr. O. S. Strong.)

“there is a close affiliation of ants of different species. Those of different subfamilies sometimes lick one another. Introduced young is carried about and taken care of without regard to its origin. Ants of one genus accept regurgitated food from those of another genus.” She gives the following recipe for producing such colonies: “If one or more individuals, of each species that is to be represented in the future mixed nest, be sequestered within twelve hours after hatching,
and each ant so sequestered touch all the others with its antennæ during the three ensuing days, these ants will live amicably together thereafter, although they be of different colonies, varieties, species, genera or subfamilies." Such experiments are of the greatest interest as showing the importance of the philoprogenitive instincts and the uniformity of their development in the workers of the most diverse species of Formicidae, and adequately account for the presence of slaves in the mixed colonies, but they cannot be said to throw any light on the other essential peculiarities of slavery, namely, the raiding habit and its concentration on particular species. These peculiarities, as we shall see, must be referred to a different source.

Like the temporary parasites, with the possible exception of Oxycyrne, the slave-making ants are confined to the north temperate zone and extend far up into boreal and alpine regions. Indeed, it is not improbable that the development of the slave-making habit is connected in some way with the long winters, short summers and small amount of food in the subarctic belt. All the known slave-makers are members of four genera: Formica (the species of the sanguinea group), Polyergus, Strongylognathus and Harpagoxenus, the first two comprising Camponotine, the last two Myrmicine ants. The habits of Harpagoxenus are imperfectly known, but the other genera form an interesting series, in which Formica sanguinea represents the slave-making habit in process of development, Polyergus its most specialized and Strongylognathus its involutionary or degenerate development. F. sanguinea and Polyergus have been studied by many observers. As Huber's and Forel's brilliant accounts of these ants have been extensively quoted in many accessible works, it will not be necessary to repeat them here. I shall therefore confine myself to a brief enumeration of the known slave-makers and to some observations of my own on the American forms. This will be the more advisable, since there are few published observations on our sanguinea and almost none on the expeditions of our Polyergus.

1. The European Sanguinea.—The typical form of this, the sanguinary, or blood-red slave-maker, which is easily distinguished by the median notch in the anterior border of its clypeus, is common throughout Europe and probably also in northern Asia (Fig. 267). In Japan, the easternmost portion of its range, it has developed at least one variety, fusciceps. In Europe it lives under stones, in logs and stumps, or about the roots of plants and often accumulates considerable vegetable débris about its nest entrances. Those who have studied its habits are unanimous in regarding it as one of the most gifted and versatile of ants. It is certainly one of the most belligerent, and, at
least when living in large colonies, assails any intruder with its mandibles, simultaneously turning the tip of its gaster forward and injecting formic acid into the wound. *F. sanguinea* is, to use Wasmann’s expression, a facultative slave-holder, for it sometimes lives in independent, slaveless colonies. As it has lost none of its essential formicine instincts, it is able to excavate a nest, secure its own food and bring up its own young without the aid of slaves. But even when these auxiliaries are present, much, if not most, of the labor of the

![Image of ants]

**Fig. 267.** The typical *Formica sanguinea* of Europe. (Original.) *a,* Deaïlated female; *b,* pseudogyne; *c,* worker; *d,* head of same, showing the notched clypeus.

colony devolves on the *sanguinea*, and there is nothing to show that the slaves contribute anything more to the communal activities than would be contributed by an equal number of small *sanguinea* workers.

The normal slaves of *F. sanguinea* are members of the *F. fusca* group, namely, *fusca*, *glebaria*, *rubescens*, *gagates*, *rufibarbis* and *cinerea*, but it occasionally enslaves members of the *rufa* group (*rufa*, *pratensis* and their varieties). Wasmann (1902a) has published statistics of 410 *sanguinea* colonies found nesting within an area of 4 sq. kilom. in Holland. In this region the ratio of slave-containing to slaveless colonies was as 40:1; that of colonies containing the normal slaves (*fusca*, *rufibarbis*) to those with *pratensis* and *rufopratensis* as 78.6:1; and that of the nests containing *fusca* only, *rufibarbis* only or both of these forms as 70.5:3. There can be no doubt that the typical *fusca* is the form most frequently enslaved in northern Europe and at
higher elevations in the Alps, but in the valleys of Switzerland the varieties *glebaria* and *rubescens* and *F. cinerea* are the commonest slaves. In other words, *sanguinea* usually enslaves the common *fusca* form of its environment, and the ability of the slave-maker to live in a variety of different environments accounts for the diversity of its slaves. Wasmann's statistics therefore apply only to certain regions, as he himself admits, for he calls attention to the fact that in the vicinity of Luxemburg *rufibarbis* furnishes a greater number of slaves than in Holland. Forel (1874) mentions a number of slaveless colonies of *sanguinea* which he found at Maloja at the end of the Engadin, and near the same place (at Samaden and St. Moritz) I found two large areas in which the proportion of slaveless to slave-containing colonies must have been fully as 40:1, or the reverse of Wasmann's ratio. But even the slave-holding colonies of the European *sanguinea* contain comparatively few slaves, the average ratio of the *sanguinea* workers to that of the auxiliaries in 100 nests near Limburg being, according to Wasmann (1891) 3-5:1. He maintains that the youngest colonies, as a rule, have the greatest number of slaves and that it is usually the oldest colonies that are slaveless. In this respect the *sanguinea* colonies bear an interesting resemblance to those of the temporary parasites.

The tactics of *F. sanguinea* in procuring its slaves have been vividly described by Huber (1810), Forel (1874) and Wasmann (1891A). The sorties occur in July and August after the marriage flight of the slave species has been celebrated and when only workers and mother queens are left in their formicaries. According to Forel the expeditions are infrequent—"scarcely more than two or three a year to a colony." The army of workers usually starts out in the morning and returns in the afternoon, but this depends on the distance of the *sanguinea* nest from the nest to be plundered. Sometimes the slave-makers postpone their sorties till three or four o'clock in the afternoon. On rare occasions they may pillage two different colonies in succession before going home. The *sanguinea* army leaves its nest in a straggling, open phalanx sometimes a few meters broad and often in several companies or detachments. These move to the nest to be pillaged over the directest route permitted by the often numerous obstacles in their path. As the forefront of the army is not headed by one or a few workers that might serve as guides, but is continually changing, some dropping back while others move forward to take their places, it is not easy to understand how the whole body is able to go so directly to the nest of the slave species, especially when this nest is situated, as is often the case, at a distance of 50 or 100 m. We must suppose
that the colony has acquired a knowledge of the precise location of
the various nests of the slave species within an area of a hundred
meters or more of its own nest. This knowledge is probably acquired
by scouts leaving the nest singly and from time to time for a period of
several weeks, and these scouts must be sufficiently numerous to deter-
mine the movements of the whole worker body when it leaves the nest.
This presupposes not only a high development of memory, but some
form of communication, for the nest attacked is usually one of many
lying in different directions from the sanguinea nest.

When the first workers arrive at the nest to be pillaged, they do not
enter it at once, but surround it and wait till the other detachments
arrive. In the meantime the fusca or rufibrasis scent their approach-
ing foes and either prepare to defend their nest or seize their young
and try to break through the cordon of sanguinea and escape. They
scramble up the grass-blades with their larvæ and pupæ in their jaws
or make off over the ground. The sanguinary ants, however, intercept
them, snatch away their charges and begin to pour into the entrances
of the nest. Soon they issue forth one by one with the remaining
larvæ and pupæ and start for home. They turn and kill the workers
of the slave-species only when these offer hostile resistance. The troop
of cocoon-laden sanguinea straggle back to their nest, while the bereft
ants slowly enter their pillaged formicary and take up the nurture of
the few remaining young or await the appearance of future broods.

Forel is of the opinion that many of the young brought home by the
sanguinea are eaten, for the number of those which eventually hatch
and become auxiliaries is very small compared with the number pillaged
during the course of the summer. Wasmann believes, however, that the
forays take place for the specific purpose of obtaining young to rear.
This seems to be disproved by the fact that even small sanguinea colo-
nies are quite able to get along without slaves and by the insignificant
number of these individuals in many nests. Darwin has interpreted
the surviving and adopted workers as a kind of by-product, or as rep-
resenting food which the ants failed to eat at the proper time, and such
they would appear to be in the adult colony, though, as we shall see,
they have an additional significance as the result of an instinct inherited
by the sanguinea workers from their queen. That the foray is, to
some extent at least, due to the promptings of hunger, seems to be
shown by the fact that sanguinea sometimes plunders the nests of ants
which it could not adopt as slaves. Thus Forel and others have
described forays of sanguinea on Lasius niger and flavus.

Not only are the forays of sanguinea very similar to those of the
nest-pillaging Ecitons, but the former ant also resembles the rapacious
Dorylines in its frequent change of dwelling. I have already mentioned the summer and winter nests of _sanguinea_, but this ant is also fond of changing its habitation in the same wood or field and of moving into nests which it has pillaged. Hence one often encounters _sanguinea_ workers in the act of moving their young or sexual forms to new quarters. On such occasions they also carry their slaves in the same manner as they carry small workers of their own species; the ant carried being held by the mandibles while she coils herself up and remains motionless under the head and thorax of her carrier. It is not always easy at first sight to distinguish these changes of dwelling from dulotic expeditions.

2. **The American Sanguinea.**—The typical _sanguinea_ does not occur in North America, but in its stead we have no less than six subspecies and varieties: _aserva_, _rubicunda_, _subnuda_, _subintegra_ (Fig. 268), _puberula_ and _obtusopilosa_, and two species: _pergandei_ and _munda_, which, however, might be regarded merely as extreme subspecies. All of these forms have the clypeal border notched, a character which serves to distinguish them from our numerous other _Formica_ of the _rufa_, _exsecta_, _fusca_ and _pallide-fulva_ groups. _F. munda_ is confined to the Rocky Mountains, where it lives in rather small colonies and never makes slaves. _F. pergandei_ is a more widely distributed species, but seems to be very rare, as only a few of its colonies have been seen. The one from which the types of the species were taken near Washington, D. C., contained also workers of _F. pallide-fulva_, and one which I found near Colorado Springs contained several workers of _subpolita_. The _sanguinea_ subspecies and varieties cited above present a maze extremely difficult to disentangle taxonomically, and although I have made many observations on dozens of colonies in different parts of the country, I am quite unable to define their ethological peculiarities. I have no doubt that such peculiarities exist, but their accurate definition will require years of observation over a great area.¹ Some of the forms, such as _rubicunda_, _aserva_ and _subnuda_ are preëminently boreal or alpine, others, like _subintegra_ and _puberula_ prefer warmer latitudes and lower altitudes. In this general account I shall not endeavor to distinguish further between the habits of the various forms, but compare them as a whole with the single European type. This comparison will show that the American forms are peculiar in more than one particular.

The colonies of our _sanguinea_ are quite as frequently slaveless as

¹I have recently found (1908f) that the workers of one of our subspecies, _aserva_, are not slave-makers. The queens of this form of _sanguinea_ establish their colonies by kidnappin the pupae of _F. glacialis_, but the workers do not inherit this instinct. Hence the old colonies of _aserva_ are pure, as Forel has observed (1900e).
Fig. 268. Dissected queens, workers and cocoons of *Formica subintegra*, nearly twice the natural size. (Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and Dr. O. S. Strong.)
those of the typical form. In the Ute Pass and Florissant Canyon of Colorado I have found localities abounding in slaveless colonies like the localities in Maloja, Samaden and St. Moritz in the Engadin. As a rule, however, the colonies contain slaves and the ratio of these to the sanguinea is usually much greater than it is in Europe. The average ratio in seventy colonies on which I have made notes is 1.5 sanguinea to 4.5 slaves, which is practically the opposite of the ratio given by Wasmann for the European form. I have been unable to confirm his statement that the number of slaves decreases with the size of the colony, as I have seen many large colonies with numerous slaves and many small ones with few or none at all.

As the typical forms of the fusca group of Formicae are confined to Europe, our sanguinea is found to enslave our peculiarly American varieties of the same group. Of these we have an extensive series, some of which are very local in their distribution. But still another group of Formicae, that of pallide-fulva, not represented in Europe, is compelled to contribute slaves to our sanguinea. This group, including the typical pallide-fulva, schaufussi, incerta, nitidiventris, fuscata, etc., occurs only east of the Rocky Mountains. The following list includes the names of the fusca and pallide-fulva forms (cited in the order of their frequency) which I have taken as auxiliaries in the nests of our various sanguinea:

1. F. aserva—slaves: F. subsericea, F. glacialis.
2. F. rubicunda—slaves: F. subsericea, neorufibarbis, subænescens, fuscata, neogagates.
4. F. subintegra—slaves: F. subsericea, glacialis, subpolita, subænescens, nitidiventris, schaufussi, incerta, fuscata, neogagates.
5. F. puberula—slaves: F. subsericea, argentata, subpolita, neocinerea, neoclara, neogagates.

It will be seen that of the fourteen different slave forms in this list F. subsericea (Fig. 269) is far and away the most common. This, F. glacialis and argentata are also the most closely allied to the European fusca. The predominance of subsericea as a slave is due to its being the most abundant and widely distributed ant of its group in North America. The other forms are local: F. cinerea, e. g., occurring only in sunny meadows from Colorado to Illinois; neorufibarbis and glacialis in alpine and boreal regions; neoclara along the sandy water-courses of the Rocky Mountains; subænescens in the shady, deciduous woods of Wisconsin and the neighboring states,
etc. These forms are enslaved only when *sanguinea* happens to be living in the particular regions where they are the dominant *fusca* forms. But as these regions are usually inhabited by *subsericea* to some extent, this ant never enjoys complete immunity if there are any slave-makers in the neighborhood. Occasionally *sanguinea* colonies are found to contain slaves of two or even three *fusca* or *pallide-fulva* forms. One small colony observed at the edge of a meadow in Colorado contained *neoclara*, *neocinerea* and *nitidiventris* workers in nearly equal proportions.

According to my observations, our *sanguinea* makes many more raids during the course of the summer than her European prototype. On several occasions I have seen a colony plunder a *subsericea* nest nearly every day for a week or a fortnight. Provided Forel's statement in regard to the typical *sanguinea* is correct, this peculiarity of the American forms would account for its having so many more slaves. This, however, is not the only reason: though individually smaller as a rule, less pugnacious and living in smaller and obscurer formicaries, our *sanguinea* enslaves *fusca* forms which are much more cowardly and

---

Fig. 269. Deilated females, workers, larvæ, nude and covered pupæ of *Formica subsericea*, nearly twice the natural size. (Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and Dr. O. S. Strong.)
docile than the typical European fusca and rufibarbis. This latter is, indeed, very far from being a gentle and tractable ant.

The slave-making tactics of our sanguinary ants are in the main very similar to those of the European form. They usually start on their raids in the morning and may return laden with booty before noon, or their expeditions may drag along for the remainder of the day or even over the following day if the colony to be pillaged is at some distance, of large size and belligerent, or contains a great number of larvæ and pupæ. Sometimes, however, the sortie is postponed till the afternoon. This was the case in the following instance which I take from a number of similar expeditions of which I have kept notes:

Rockford, Ill., July 14. At 4 P. M. I located a large colony of F. fusca, which was nesting under a piece of wood in a loose hazel thicket. On removing the wood I found a large, flat chamber, from the bottom of which a single opening 2 cm. in diameter led down into the subterranean galleries of the nest. The chamber was full of fusca workers, winged females, larvæ and naked pupæ and the whole assemblage hastily poured down the opening out of sight. Looking up I saw a scattered army of rubicunda rapidly approaching the nest. When they reached the circle of grass immediately surrounding the earth just exposed by the removal of the wood, they stopped and completely surrounded the spot. They waited or kept advancing and retreating, but never entered the hole until the rear detachment had arrived. Even after the whole army, numbering at least 400 rubicunda, had assembled, they kept up this advancing and retreating movement for fully fifteen minutes, as if fearing the fusca, which in the meantime were hiding in their nest. Now and then a rubicunda, bolder than her sisters, would enter the hole, but dart out again immediately. After twenty minutes more of this manoeuvring, however, the slave-makers grew bolder and began to pour into the opening. For some time longer and at intervals of three to five minutes a rubicunda would emerge from the nest with a larva or pupa and start for home. As soon as one of these lucky individuals appeared, four or five of the workers on the outside of the nest would try to wrest away her booty. Sometimes one of them was successful and at once started off for her nest. Finally, at 4.35 P. M., thirty-five minutes after the nest had been surrounded, a winged fusca female shot out of the opening, immediately followed by fully fifty others and a flood of fusca workers carrying larvæ and pupæ in their jaws. They scattered at once in all directions, breaking through the rubicunda cordon and making for the grass beyond. The rubicunda instantly fell upon both females and workers and tore the larvæ and pupæ from the jaws of the latter. The long-
legged *fuscata*, however, all managed to escape unscathed and with a few of their young. The wildest excitement prevailed till all the *fuscata* were out of the nest, but not one of them remained on the premises ten minutes after the first winged female had emerged from the opening. The *rubicunda* then proceeded to pillage the nest at their leisure, bringing out the deserted larvae and pupae and making for home. I followed them as they hurried off over a very tortuous path under the hazel bushes to their formicary, which was covered by a pile of twigs and dead leaves, some 40 meters from the nest they had pillaged. Loitering about the *rubicunda* nest were a number of slaves, large *subsericea* and an occasional small *fuscata*. These seemed to show great interest in the larvae and pupae with which the *rubicunda* were constantly arriving. I returned to the *fuscata* nest. It was now 5:25 P. M. and the last straggling *rubicunda* were just starting home with the last of the pupae. In the meantime the *fuscata* had established themselves under a bunch of dead leaves around the roots of a hazel bush about two meters from their old quarters. They had transported thither the rescued larvae and pupae and were very busy carrying in the workers and females that had strayed about in the grass. This was done with marvellous dispatch and precision. The whole raid had been accomplished in an hour and a half, without the death or injury of a single ant, showing that the *rubicunda*, like her European congener, accomplishes her purpose by surprising and terrorizing rather than by killing the colonies on which she preys. The unharmed *fuscata* could at once set to work to raise another large brood to be pillaged in turn at a later date, and this is as it should be—from the *rubicunda* point of view.

*F. fuscata*, like the other members of the *pallide-fulva* group, is even more cowardly than *subsericea*, so that the raid above described is not typical in all respects. Large *subsericea* or *neoclara* colonies offer a much more hostile resistance to the invading slave-makers, and the battle may continue for hours or even days before the latter succeed in pillaging the nest. At such times the *sanguinea* will not hesitate to use her mandibles and the ground may be strewn with the corpses of both species. Colonies that have been attacked and plundered repeatedly season after season seem to submit to the affliction more passively than those attacked for the first time. Owing to the great differences in the size and condition of the colonies of both the slaves and the slave-makers, the forays of the latter present an enormous range of variability, and it would be desirable to record many more observations on them, both in Europe and North America.

Like the typical *sanguinea*, our American forms may also pillage the nests of ants belonging to strange genera. I once witnessed a
ridiculous foray of a large *rubicunda* colony on a woodland variety of *Myrmica scabrinodis* near Rockford, Ill. The foray was carried out exactly as if it had been directed against one of the normal auxiliary species. After killing or putting to flight the *scabrinodis*, the *rubicunda* returned to their nest with the small larvae and pupae of an ant belonging to an entirely different subfamily. In another *rubicunda* nest in the same wood, I found two of the flat chambers full of uninjured pupae of *scabrinodis*. These had evidently been set apart from the *rubicunda* young and from those of the normal auxiliaries (in this case *F. subanescens*). Forel (1874) made a similar observation on a *sanguinea* nest in which *Lasius niger* and *L. flavus* cocoons had been stacked up in a chamber by themselves. Near Rockford, Ill., a large number of *subintegra* workers were seen one morning to make a normal assault on a *Lasius americanus* colony and to return with a number of cocoons in their jaws and many *Lasius* workers hanging to their legs and antennae. These forays, which are probably not at all infrequent and are, moreover, undoubtedly undertaken by colonies of considerable size and of some experience in capturing the normal auxiliaries, point to hunger as one of the impulses which compels them to undertake their expeditions. We can hardly suppose that *sanguinea* workers, even after some practice in making slaves, have any definite ideal association between the kidnapped pupae and the slaves that hatch from them or they would not make forays on such unsuitable species.

3. The Founding of the Sanguinea Colony.—How do the mixed colonies of the facultative slave-makers arise? As no one had been able to observe the behavior of the *sanguinea* queen just after descending from her nuptial flight and while establishing her colony, Forel and Wasmann supposed that she must either be adopted by some colony of the slave species or bring up unaided a brood of her own which could then by dulosis make the mixed colony. During the summer of 1905 I performed a number of experiments on young, artificially deãlated queens, introducing them into nests containing several *subsericea* workers with their brood. I here transcribe the account of one of these experiments from my paper “On the Founding of Colonies by Queen Ants” (1906c):

July 8, 9 A. M. A *rubicunda* female was placed in a nest containing 33 *subsericea* workers, small and large, 150 cocoons, and a few larvae. The workers at once seized their cocoons and fled into the light chamber. One or two of them attacked the female, but she shook them off and killed one of them. In the meantime some of the workers kept stealing into the dark chamber for the purpose of securing cocoons and carried them to the remotest corner of the light chamber. As the
morning wore away the female gradually became more and more
excited. By 1 P. M. she had killed five more workers and was busy
carrying the cocoons back from the illuminated into the dark chamber,
where she had already stored most of them in a corner. In a few
minutes she had secured all the cocoons in the light chamber, 36 in
number. She interrupted this task twice, each time for the purpose of
killing a worker that came within her reach. Finally she retired to
the dark chamber and began to collect the cocoons into a more compact
pile. Two of the workers persisted in stealing in and hurrying back
with a cocoon taken from the edge of the pile. The female soon per-
ceived this, however, and dispatched both of them. The whole per-
formance resembled a dulotic expedition in miniature, carried out by
a single virgin queen instead of by an army of _rubicunda_ workers. In
killing the _subsericea_ workers she was quite as ruthless as the workers
of her own species, but more sure on account of her larger size and
greater strength. She exhibited very beautifully what may be called
the "prancing" movement, so characteristic of the females in this stage
of their activities. She moved in a jerky fashion, taking a few steps
in one direction, then turning her body and taking a few steps more.
July 9, 8 A. M., only two of the workers survived. They had regained
possession of 30 of their cocoons, however, and were guarding them in
a remote corner of the light chamber, while the female was watching
over the great bulk of the brood in a corner of the dark chamber. By
10.30 she had entered the light chamber, recaptured all but 6 of the
cocoons, carried them into the dark chamber and placed them on her
pile. The two workers were wandering about in a state of "aberic
dejection." At 11.30 one of them was seen to enter the dark chamber
and approach the female, but the latter opened her mandibles and the
worker fled. The female had stacked her cocoons in a compact heap
and was bent on defending them. Apparently she had not forgotten
the 6 cocoons still remaining in the light chamber. At any rate, she
secured 4 of them by 12 M. She took up her position on the pile of
cocoons, and whenever light was admitted into the dark chamber,
opened her mandibles and went to prancing about as if looking for an
enemy. By 1.15 P. M. she had secured one of the remaining cocoons
in the light chamber. July 10, 6 A. M. In the night the female had
killed the two remaining workers and had taken their last cocoon.
Throughout the day she kept closely to the brood, prancing whenever
the light was admitted into the chamber and fiercely seizing a straw
or my finger whenever either was held near her. She seemed to dis-
play a much greater interest in the pupae than in the larvæ. July 11 to
15 she remained in _status quo_. Whenever the nest was uncovered she
hastily took up a cocoon and tried to conceal it. July 16, 7 A. M., five callow workers had hatched during the night. One larva had been partially eaten by the female. At 1:40 she was surprised in the act of opening a cocoon. She used her fore and middle feet to hold the cocoon while she tore a large, elliptical hole in the portion of its wall overlying the concave ventral surface of the pupa. Through this hole the worker was later drawn after it had thrust out its antennae and legs. Whenever the nest was uncovered throughout this and the following of the first days, the female could nearly always be detected in the act of either opening a cocoon or removing the pupal envelope from a callow just released. By the afternoon of July 16 some of the callows began to assist the female in releasing their sister workers so that the number of callows now began to increase rapidly. On the morning of July 17 there were 19 altogether, by 5 P. M. 24, by 7:30 A. M., July 18, 30, and by 7:30 A. M., July 19, 50. On the following days the numbers ran thus: July 20, about 60; July 21, about 75; July 22, about 100; July 23 and 24, about 130. This completed the callow brood, as some of the cocoons failed to hatch. The female took the greatest interest in her black family, and they bestowed on her every attention. Soon after they had begun to feed and clean her another marked change supervened in her instincts. Instead of defending herself and brood when the nest was uncovered she slunk away, or at any rate attempted to conceal herself among the mass of workers. She had become highly photophobic and behaved exactly like the old queens, that invariably make for the galleries whenever the nest is disturbed or illuminated. This experiment was concluded and the ants were liberated in the garden on July 26.

The above experiment shows very clearly that the female _rubicunda_, when placed with a small number of _subsericea_ workers and their pupae, displays a chain of instincts that result in her gaining possession of the latter. To all appearances she is quite ready to be amicably adopted by the _subsericea_, but when received with marked hostility, as is probably almost invariably the case, her animosity is very quickly kindled, and she slays the _subsericea_ with all possible dispatch, thus manifesting instincts very similar to those of her own workers when engaged in a dulotic raid. Owing to her powerful mandibles and closely knit frame she is always a match for several workers and may kill as many as twenty-one of these in a very short time. Before she has killed them all, however, she becomes much interested in their brood, eagerly collects and secretes it in some favorable corner and guards it with open mandibles till the callows are ready to hatch. These she skilfully divests of their cocoons and pupal envelopes. Their advent in consid-
erable numbers appears to be the signal for another marked change in the instincts of the female. She now becomes very timid, fleeing whenever the nest is disturbed and taking refuge in the darkest and remotest corner of the nest. In this instinct phase the female remains throughout the remainder of her life. The reactions displayed in the foregoing experiment are, moreover, so definite, uniform and purposeful even in artificial nests that one can hardly doubt that they are similarly manifested in a state of nature. It is evident that, especially in timid, incipient, wild colonies of *F. subsericea*, the females may meet with less opposition and therefore with greater and more immediate success. Still the fact that *rubicunda* is a local ant and by no means one of our most abundant species shows that the successful establishment of colonies in a state of nature must be attended with considerable difficulties. The search of the *rubicunda* female for weak or incipient *subsericea* colonies, even in regions where the latter ant is very abundant, must often be vain or illusory. This is tantamount to saying that the element of chance must enter very largely into the life of the *rubicunda* queen, just as it does into the lives of most parasitic animals.

If it should happen that the *rubicunda* queen enters a *subsericea* nest with a queen of its own, the latter must be eliminated. In one of my artificial nests there was a queen cocoon among the worker cocoons of *subsericea* appropriated by the *rubicunda*. She eventually hatched and lived unmolested for a time. In the course of some weeks, however, the *subsericea* workers began to pull their sister about by the legs and antennae in a vicious manner. One morning, probably as a result of this treatment, she was found dead in the nest. This assassination of a queen by her sister workers acquires a new significance in the light of Santschi's observations on *Wheeleriella* and *Monomorium salomonis* to be described in Chapter XXVII. Perhaps in many cases the *subsericea* queen is simply driven out of the nest or killed by the intrusive *rubicunda* queen. Which of these two methods is commonly adopted can be determined only by further observations and experiments. It is certain, however, that queens of the slave species are not permitted to live in mixed dulotic colonies of the *sanguinea* and *Polyergus* type. In this respect these colonies resemble the mixed colonies of the temporary and permanent social parasites.

My experiments and conclusions were received with skepticism by Wasmann (1906h) and Escherich, because they had been performed on unfertilized queens. These authors argued that fecundated queens in their natural environment would probably behave differently. Wasmann performed several experiments with such queens and found that they were adopted by the slave species without hostility. Viehmeyer,
however, has recently (1908) found that the fecundated European
sanguinea behaves in precisely the same manner as rubicunda, and still
more recently (1908b) Wasmann has repeated his experiments with
this same result. A number of experiments which I performed during
the summer of 1907 with queens of F. aserva and subintegra showed
that these insects behave precisely like rubicunda (Wheeler, 1908f).

Although the young colony of sanguinea resembles that of the tem-
porary parasites like F. consocians and truncicola, it differs in one
important respect: the alien workers which it contains are younger,
whereas in the incipient colony of the temporary parasite, they are
older than the queen. Santschi (1906) therefore calls the former a
"pupillary," the latter a "tutelary" parasite. Wasmann and Santschi
believe that slavery has arisen from temporary parasitism, but although
I was the first to advance this opinion, I have been compelled to aban-
don it. Wasmann found that a colony of F. truncicola, which he has
shown to be a temporary social parasite in all essential particulars like
F. consocians, accepted and reared fusca pupae placed in its nest. This,
however, is not dulosis. In order to establish his case he would have
to prove that the truncicola workers can also make periodical forays
on fusca for the sake of capturing their young, and there is no more
evidence that truncicola can do this than there is of similar behavior
on the part of consocians. Santschi, if I understand him correctly,
believes that the sanguinea colony restricts its forays to the scattered
fragments of the original fusca colony from which the queen secured
her first supply of auxiliaries, and that the slave-making expeditions
cease when these fragments are exhausted. This assumption seems to
explain the fact that old sanguinea colonies are sometimes slaveless and
pure, like the adult colonies of consocians, truncicola, etc. It is, how-
ever, rendered highly improbable by the fact that both in Europe and
in North America sanguinea colonies not infrequently contain slaves
of two or more different species or varieties. There is also some evi-
dence that the same colony may have slaves of different species at
different times (see p. 472). The similarity between old sanguinea
colonies and adult colonies of temporary parasites like F. consocians
may be due to various causes: in the slave-makers to a dearth of suit-
able nests to pillage, or adaptation to an independent life owing to
sufficiency of other food (dead insects, honey-dew, etc.), or to a lapsing
of the predaceous instincts with age; in the temporary parasites the
purity of the colony is brought about, as has been shown, by a gradual
extinction of the tutelary workers. In my opinion both temporary
parasitism and dulosis have arisen independently from the practice of
F. rufa and F. sanguinea of adopting fertilized queens of their own
species, and to this extent my views coincide with those of Wasmann and Santschi.

Great difficulty was formerly experienced in accounting for the various dulotic instincts, because these were supposed to be the exclusive property of the sterile workers. On this assumption they could be transmitted only through the queen and she was supposed not to manifest them. The discovery in the queen of a type of behavior essentially like that of the workers solves this problem, for these instincts are seen to be primarily important in the establishment of the colony. They are naturally inherited by the workers, but in this caste they have been modified and intensified by fusion with the foraging instincts. Thus instincts which in the reproductive caste are useful in establishing the colony are useful in the sterile caste in procuring food and incidentally, perhaps, in adding to the working personnel of the colony. The differences in the display of the instinct by the two castes is due to the fact that the workers make their forays in concert and on populous colonies of the slave species, which the female could probably not enter. The discriminative character of dulosis, that is, its concentration on particular slave species, may be readily explained by the fact that both worker and queen sanguinea have been reared by the slave-workers, or at any rate have become familiar with them in the parental nest. What is more natural, therefore, than that both sanguinea queens and workers should seek out colonies of the familiar species, the queens for the purpose of nidification, the workers for the purpose of obtaining food? If we adopt Wasmann's view that the young of the slave species are pillaged for the purpose of being reared instead of eaten, we may suppose that the pure colonies of these species in the vicinity of the sanguinea nests appear to these ants as so many detached and refractory portions of their own colony and therefore to be brought together in the one nest. I have already given my reasons for dissenting from Wasmann's view, although I admit that the sanguinea workers of the same or different colonies may inherit in very different intensities their mother's instinct to pillage larvæ and cocoons for the sake of rearing them, and that the number of slaves in a colony may represent the degree to which this instinct on the part of the workers preponderates over that of hunger. Hunger and affection are such closely linked emotions in all animals that we cannot doubt that queens and workers alike possess them. They are, moreover, displayed by all ants in their tendency to eat their own larvæ and pupæ. It is certain, however, that a rational explanation of slavery can be formed only by recognizing it as a form of parasitism in which the slaves are the host.
But as the slaves are brought together from different colonies, the host is really synthetic. Santschi expresses this conception when he says: "In fine, slavery reduces itself to a form of pupillary parasitism that perpetuates and extends itself beyond the confines of the nest." The dulotic raid and synthetic character of the host sharply distinguish the slave-makers from the temporary parasites.
CHAPTER XXVI

THE AMAZONS, OR OBLIGATORY SLAVE-MAKERS

"L'histoire des fourmis amazones et de leurs auxiliaires, nous prouve encore, que si l'éducation peut effacer la haine qui existe entre des espèces différentes, et par conséquent ennemies, elle ne saurait changer leur instinct et leur caractère, puisque les amazones et leurs esclaves, élevées avec les mêmes soins et par les mêmes nourrices, vivent dans la fourmilière mixte sous des lois entièrement opposées."—P. Huber, "Recherches sur les Moeurs des Fourmis Indigènes," 1810.

The observations recorded in the last chapter show that the European and American sanguinary ants represent two different stages in the development of slavery, and suggest the question as to which is the more advanced or specialized. The greater variation and usually smaller size of the New World forms indicate a more primitive or inchoate condition, but, on the other hand, the greater number of slaves and more frequent expeditions, except in F. aserva, indicate a higher and more specialized development of the dulotic instincts. A very similar problem confronts us in the obligatory slave-makers of the genus Polyergus, the amazons, whose distribution parallels in an interesting manner that of F. sanguinea. Polyergus, too, is circum-polar, with only a single representative in Europe, the typical P. rufescens, whereas North America has at least four subspecies and a few undescribed varieties. The subspecies are: P. breviceps, ranging from the Rocky Mountains eastward to Illinois and Kansas; mexicanus in Mexico; bicolor, known only from Wisconsin and Illinois, and lucidus, ranging from the Atlantic seaboard, north of the Carolinas, to the eastern slopes of the Rocky Mountains. The genus is therefore represented by the greatest number of different forms in the Middle West.

1. The European Amazons.—P. rufescens was the first slave-making ant to be described by P. Huber (1810). His splendid observations were confirmed and extended by Forel in 1874 and little of importance has since been added. Unlike sanguinea, rufescens is, on the whole, a rare ant, especially in northern Europe. In Switzerland, however, along the shores of Lake Leman, where Huber and Forel carried on their investigations, one may be sure of finding a number of its colonies without difficulty. It is one of the most beautiful of ants, the worker and female being of a rich brownish-red color, slightly tinged with
purplish, while the male is coal-black with white wings. The worker is extremely pugnacious, and, like the female, may be readily distinguished from the other Camponotine ants by its sickle-shaped, toothless, but very minutely denticulate mandibles. Such mandibles are not adapted for digging in the earth or for handling thin-skinned larvae or pupae and moving them about in the narrow chambers of the nest, but are admirably fitted for piercing the armor of adult ants. We find therefore that the amazons never excavate nests nor care for their own young. They are even incapable of obtaining their own food, although they may lap up water or liquid food when this happens to come in contact with their short tongues. For the essentials of food, lodging and education they are wholly dependent on the slaves hatched from the worker cocoons that they have pillaged from alien colonies. Apart from these slaves they are quite unable to live, and hence are always found in mixed colonies inhabiting nests whose architecture throughout is that of the slave species. Thus the amazons display two contrasting sets of instincts. While in the home nest they sit about in stolid idleness or pass the long hours begging the slaves for food or cleaning themselves and burnishing their ruddy armor, but when outside the nest on one of their predatory expeditions they display a dazzling courage and capacity for concerted action compared with which the raids of *sanguinea* resemble the clumsy efforts of a lot of untrained militia. The amazons may, therefore, be said to represent a more specialized and perfected stage of dulosis than that of the sanguinary ants. In attaining this stage, however, they have become irrevocably dependent and parasitic. Wasmann believes that *Polyergus* is actually descended from *F. sanguinea*, but it is more probable that both of these ants arose in pretiary times from some common but now extinct ancestor. The normal slaves of the European amazons are the same as those reared by *sanguinea*, viz: *F. fusca*, *glebaria*, *rubescens*, *cinerea* and *rufibarbis*; and of these *fusca* is the most frequent. But the ratio of the different components in the mixed nests is the reverse of that in *sanguinea* colonies, there being usually five to seven times as many slaves as amazon workers. The simultaneous occurrence of two kinds of slaves in a single nest is extremely rare, even when the same amazon colony pillages the nests of different forms of *fusca* during the same season. This is very probably the result of the slaves' having a decided preference for rearing only the pupae of their own species or variety and eating any others that are brought in. Two slave forms may, however, appear in succession in the same nest. Near Morges, Switzerland, Professor Forel showed me an amazon colony which during the summer
of 1904 contained only *rusibarbis* slaves, but during 1907 contained
only *glebaria*.

Unlike *sanguinea*, *rufescens* makes many expeditions during July and
August, but these expeditions are made only during the afternoon hours.
One colony observed by Forel (1874) made 44 sorties on thirty after-
noons between June 29 and August 18. It undoubtedly made many
more which were not observed, as Forel was unable to visit the colony
daily. He gives the following statistics on these 44 expeditions: “On
4 of them the army separated into two columns, from 6 it returned
without having found a nest to plunder (through fatigue or losing the
trail), on 3 the amazons found only formicaries containing neither
larvae nor cocoons, from 6 they brought back only a meager supply of
these, from 25 a great number. Of the 44 attacks, 19 were on *fusca*
colonies and 19 on *rusibarbis*. Three of the latter were unsuccessful
because they yielded no booty. The same formicary was visited repeat-
edly: the ants visited altogether 7 colonies of *fusca* (one 6 times, one
4 times, one 3 times, two twice and two once), and 8 *rusibarbis* colonies
(one 5 times, two 4 times, one twice and four once).” Forel estimated
the number of amazons in the colony at more than 1,000 and the total
number of pupae captured at 29,300 (14,000 *fusca*, 13,000 *rusibarbis*
and 2,300 of unknown provenience, but probably *fusca*). The total
number for the summer (1873) was estimated at 40,000. This number
is certainly above the average, as the amazon colony was an unusually
large one. Colonies with only 300 to 500 amazons are more frequent,
but a third or half of the above number of pillaged cocoons shows what
an influence the presence of a few colonies of these ants must have on
the *Formica* colonies of their neighborhood. Of course, only a small
proportion of the cocoons are reared. Many of them are undoubtedly
injured by the sharp mandibles of the amazons and many are destroyed
and eaten after they have been brought home.

The tactics of *Polyergus*, as I have said, are very different from
those of *sanguinea*. The ants leave the nest very suddenly and assemble
about the entrance if they are not, as sometimes happens, pulled back
and restrained by their slaves. Then they move out in a compact
column with feverish haste, sometimes, according to Forel, at the rate
of a meter in 33½ seconds or 3 cm. per second. On reaching the nest
to be pillaged, they do not hesitate like *sanguinea* but pour into it at
once in a body, seize the brood, rush out again and make for home.
When attacked by the slave species they pierce the heads or thoraces
of their opponents and often kill them in considerable numbers. The
return to the nest with the booty is usually made more leisurely and in
less serried ranks.
The observer of one of these forays cannot fail to be impressed with the marvellous precision of its execution. Although the ants may occasionally lose their way and have to retrace their steps or start off in a different direction, they usually make straight for the nest to be plundered. They must, therefore, like sanguinea, possess a keen sense and memory of locality. There can be little doubt that they often leave the nest singly and make a careful reconnaissance of the slave colonies in the vicinity. "This year [1873]," says Forel, "I kept seeing the amazons of my colony leaving the nest one by one and going great distances (as much as fifty paces from the nest), marching a short distance at a time. I saw some in little squads of four or five inspecting the nests of F. fusca situated at more than thirty paces from their own. They hunted out the openings and carefully scrutinized the surroundings. These facts prove more and more that each amazon worker studies the slave-nests around its own and on its own account, and this permits the army as a whole to direct itself in a mass and to reach a decision at a given moment."

It is an interesting fact that the slaves take on certain peculiarities, apparently by imitation, from the amazons with which they are living. The timid fusca, e. g., becomes fierce and aggressive, a peculiarity which it also acquires when dwelling with sanguinea. In rufibarbis the change in behavior is less apparent, because this ant, even when living alone, is very belligerent. The behavior of the amazons seems also to be influenced by their slaves. According to Forel, those with rufibarbis slaves leave their nests more frequently and earlier and later in the day and move in denser armies and more rapidly than amazons with fusca slaves. It is rather difficult to account for these colonial idiosyncrasies. Perhaps only the more vigorous Polyergus succeed in enslaving rufibarbis, while feebler or more languid colonies have to content themselves with the more tractable fusca. While in its nest rufescens is under the tutelage of its slaves. These sometimes prevent the warriors from making a foray or go out and meet them, when they have gone astray and carry them home. When the colony moves to a new nest the slaves take charge of matters and carry the amazons. We have seen that when the sanguinea colony changes its headquarters, it is the slaves that are carried.

2. The American Amazons.—I have been able to observe all our American subspecies of rufescens in a living condition, except mexicanus, which is known only from a few cabinet specimens. Even the precise locality from which these came is unknown, but it must have been either in the northern portion of Mexico, or if further south, at a considerable altitude. The worker of this subspecies resembles that of
breviceps very closely, judging from Forel's description (1899a) and a couple of type specimens which he has generously given me. The Mexican form differs only in having very few or no hairs on the dorsal surface of the body, and is hardly more than a variety of breviceps. Its slaves are unknown but are in all probability some form of fusca. I take from my note books the following observations on our other amazons:

(a) Polyergus breviceps.—This subspecies, which I shall call the occidental amazon, is not uncommon in several localities in the mountains of Colorado and New Mexico at altitudes between 2,000 and 2,500 m. I have also seen a few specimens that were taken at much lower elevations in Illinois and Kansas. Of all our subspecies breviceps resembles the European type most closely. Its color, pilosity and sculpture are practically the same, it forms rather large formicaries and its slaves are much like those of rufescens. These comprise F. argentata, subsericea and neocinerea, ants so similar in size and color that they would be regarded as identical by any one but a myrmecologist. F. neocinerea occurs only in rich meadows, the two others on dryer ground. The ratio of slaves to breviceps workers is the same as that of fusca to rufescens in Switzerland. During the summer of 1903 and 1906 I witnessed several forays of breviceps in Cheyenne Canyon near Colorado Springs and in Florissant Canyon, west of Pikes Peak. One of the most typical of these forays was seen in the former locality. An unusually large colony, containing fully 1,000 breviceps workers, was found nesting under some large stones near the top of the steep bank of Cheyenne Creek. The formicary extended out under the stones and must have covered an area of fully 2.5 sq. m. Under the edge of one of the stones was the single entrance, about 2 cm. in diameter. July 20 at 1 P. M., after seeing a few breviceps and their slaves (subsericea) loitering about the entrance, I stationed myself at the nest in the hope of witnessing a foray. After waiting nearly an hour (at 1.55 P. M.) I saw the beautiful red ants boil up, so to speak, in the opening. In a few moments they came rushing out in great numbers and kept running about just outside the entrance till 2.15, when they started in a compact army up the embankment and obliquely in a southwesterly direction. Soon, however, they returned to the nest as if changing their minds and again started out due south and straight up the bank. The procession formed with great alacrity and then pushed ahead at the rate of one m. in forty seconds, over smooth ground, but requiring about one minute to make the same distance over the dead oak leaves. There was no leader, the army being headed by a few workers which were continually being passed by workers overtaking
them from the rear. They neither hesitated nor stopped till they reached a large *subsericea* nest about 25 m. from their own, on the top of the embankment. This nest was under and around a couple of large, flat stones, and had two entrances a short distance apart. There were a few *subsericea* sauntering about the entrance, but as soon as they scented the approaching army they scampere into their nest. The amazons arrived at 2:40 P.M. and at once poured into the two entrances in a mass like wine being poured into a couple of funnels. Two minutes later the first *breviceps* emerged with a cocoon in her jaws and was at once followed by a file of others similarly laden. They started for home in great precipitation. One that was timed made the entire distance of 25 m. in a little more than four minutes. As the army must have comprised fully 1,000 workers, there was soon a long file, each carrying a larva, nude pupa or cocoon. I returned to the *subsericea* nest in time to see a few workers of this species rush out of the opening with larvæ, run the gauntlet of the amazons and make off to the open ground beyond. From time to time a *breviceps* would emerge from the nest carrying a *subsericea* worker, take it a few centimeters from the opening and put it down. To my surprise the black ant scrambled to her feet and ran away uninjured. I saw this performance repeated more than a dozen time by different amazons. Not a single *subsericea* was killed or even maimed! The plundering of the nest continued, the *breviceps* returning repeatedly from their own nest to get more pupæ. By 2:55 the number of these brought out of the nest had dwindled considerably and at 3:06 the supply ceased altogether. Nevertheless the *breviceps* kept entering the nest and coming out with empty jaws till 3:15 when they began to struggle home. The last ones left the pillaged formicary at 3:30 and moved away slowly or sauntered about as if reluctant to return home without booty. The feverish excitement so apparent in these insects a few moments before had suddenly subsided. At the entrance of their own formicary the slaves were running about in considerable numbers and seemed to be greatly excited over the quantities of booty that were being brought in. Soon, however, both slaves and *breviceps* entered their nest and all was quiet. I again went back and found the *subsericea* cautiously returning to their pillaged nest. On raising the stones I found a great many unharmed workers in the galleries but not a single larva or pupa. These ants must have remained in their nest during the whole time that the rape of their brood was in progress! The foray was remarkable on account of the behavior of both species, for the *subsericea*, though abundant, had made no attempt to protect the young which they had for weeks been rearing with infinite solicitude, and the *breviceps*
had been more courteous and considerate than their vocation of professional kidnappers would seem to permit.

In the neighborhood of Colorado Spring *breviceps* is rare and sporadic, but in the subalpine meadows about Florissant it is as common as the typical *rufescens* in the meadows on the shores of Lake Leman. The nests of *neocinerea* in which *breviceps* lives at Florissant are grass-covered mounds like those of the European *glebaria* and *rubescens*, but larger (sometimes nearly a meter in diameter and 2–3 dm. high). On the slopes surrounding the meadows, however, the western amazon also lives in the nests of *argentata*, which are usually found under stones or logs. The abundance of these slave-makers at such an altitude (2,500 m.) indicates that they belong to the Canadian zone and that they will also be found in the southern portions of British America. This distribution is significant in connection with their close structural and ethological relationship to the European and probably also Asiatic *rufescens*.

(b) *Polyergus bicolor*.—This subspecies was simultaneously discovered by Father Muckermann at Prarie-du-Chien, Wis., and myself at Rockford, Ill., and has not been recorded from any other localities. It is closely related to *breviceps*, but differs in its smaller size and in having the gaster of the worker and female black, instead of red, like the remainder of the body. We may therefore call it the black and red amazon. Like *breviceps* it often forms rather large colonies and its slave (*F. subanescens*) is closely allied to the typical European *fusca* and *gagates*. *F. subanescens*, according to my observations, occurs only in rich, shady woods, and prefers to nest in logs or stumps so rotten as to be easily broken apart. The six colonies of *bicolor* which I have found in widely separated localities near Rockford, were all in such logs or stumps in shady spots where the undergrowth had been removed. The average ratio of *bicolor* to *subanescens* workers in the mixed colonies was at 1:3. The following notes were made on a single colony of these ants late in July and early in August, 1902:

July 24, 2 P. M., I came upon a troop of about 300 *bicolor* in the act of pillaging a rather large *subanescens* colony that was nesting in a small rotten stump under some hickory trees. The stump was cautiously broken open and the *bicolor* were seen rushing about the galleries, biting the shining, black *subanescens*, or even the bits of wood in a kind of insensate "Mordlust." The *subanescens* seemed to be more dismayed than injured. The *bicolor* seized the larvae and pupae with tremulous eagerness and began to leave the nest. Soon the whole troop, laden with booty, was under way, in an open phalanx, threading
the grass and pattering over the dead leaves. By 2.20 they had reached
their own nest, which was in a dead branch only 8 cm. in diameter,
concealed under a pile of old oak leaves. Some of the ants made one
or two journeys back to the *subanescens* nest, which was some 20 m.
from their own, for the purpose of bringing the remaining pupae. The
*subanescens* workers were left wandering about their stump disconso-
lately and by 2.30 all the *bicolor* had entered their branch under the
leaves.

July 26, I again visited the *bicolor* nest, but a shower came up, so
that no observations could be made. July 27, the rain continued and
although it cleared off in the afternoon the amazons remained in
their nest.

July 29 was warm and sunny. I reached the nest at 1.35 P. M.,
just as the straggling rear of the army was issuing from under the
leaves covering the dead branch. The main body had advanced only
2.5 m. from the nest and was soon joined by the stragglers. The ants
moved rapidly at a rate of 1.3 m. per minute in a rather compact body
2.3 m. long and 5–15 cm. broad. They seemed to be greatly excited
and hastened on in frenzied eagerness. When about 10 m. from the
nest they halted as if they had lost their way and scurried about wildly
in all directions over and under the dead leaves. This lasted nearly
fifteen minutes. Then the troop again formed and advanced even more
rapidly than before in the direction of the stump where I first saw it
July 24 in the act of pillaging a *subanescens* nest. But when the ants
had come within about 1.5 m. of the stump they veered off to the left
to a pile of dead leaves. At this point a few *subanescens* workers
were running about and it seemed as if there must be a nest of these
ants in the immediate vicinity. Such was evidently also the impression
of the amazons, for the troop halted and began to scurry about under
the leaves. The few *subanescens* did not desert the premises, but fell
upon the amazons and pulled them about by the legs and antennae.
Fully fifteen minutes were consumed in this feverish search. Then
the amazons seemed to have gained the impression that there was no
nest at this spot. The column turned back slowly, with movements
indicative of disappointment or fatigue. After retreating about 2 m.
in the direction of their own nest, an offshoot of the troop suddenly
started to the right and after covering about 60 cm. came upon a nest.
I raised the leaves slightly and found a small hollow in the vegetable
mould containing several hundred *subanescens* workers huddled about
some twenty larvae and pupae. This undoubtedly represented a colony
that had been previously pillaged, probably the one I had seen attacked
July 24. The poor ants had moved first to the spot where the *bicolor*
had first scented them, but had again decamped and were now detected. The amazons pounced upon the disheartened band, part of which scattered in all directions with a few of the larvae. Many, however, stood their ground resolutely and attacked the invaders. These lashed themselves into a kind of fury, pierced the heads and thoraces of the subanescens with their sickle-shaped jaws and strewed the leaves with their jet-black corpses. There were very few larvae and pupae to take home, but many of the amazons seized uninjured subanescens and joined the ranks of the homeward bound procession. They moved back in a long, loose file, very unlike the compact troop on its outward journey, and over a different path. They arrived at their nest by 2.35 P. M. The whole foray had taken little more than an hour and only a quarter of this time had been spent in pillaging the temporary subanescens nest.

July 30. I remained in the vicinity of the bicolor nest from 1.10 to 4.30 P. M., but there was no sortie, although the weather was propitious.

July 31. There was no sortie, but I stayed near the nest and made the following observations: At 2 P. M. a single amazon left the branch and by her apparent determination arrested my attention. She hurried on in a southeasterly direction over a rather irregular course, making short excursions to the right and left, and exploring every hole and cavity in the ground and under the dead leaves. I followed her for a distance of nearly 25 m. to a pile of dead leaves heaped about the base of an old stump. Here she slipped out of sight. After waiting some minutes for her to reappear, I removed the leaves and found, a few cm. from the spot where I had lost sight of her, a large subanescens nest containing many larvae and pupae. The galleries ran under the dead leaves and up into the stump. This nest had evidently not been pillaged during the course of the summer, and I inferred that the amazon was a scout that had succeeded in locating a treasure. She failed to reappear and must have returned to her nest unnoticed. About half an hour later another amazon left the nest in the branch and made off in a direction at a right angle to the first. She went about 2 m. in one direction, then turned abruptly and continued 2.3 m. in another direction to a large rotten stump surrounded by dead leaves. Like the first scout she slipped under the leaves and failed to reappear. As several subanescens were running about on the stump, there must have been a nest in the immediate neighborhood, but I failed to find it. After watching the amazon nest for some time longer without observing any further developments, I went home.

August 1. On reaching the bicolor nest at 1.10 P. M. I noticed no unusual activity. A few of the amazons and slaves emerged from time
to time from the mass of oak leaves covering the branch and anon
reentered the nest. At 1.15 a bicolor scout emerged and went in the
direction taken by one of the scouts on July 31. I followed her for
about 6 m. when she disappeared under the dead leaves. I returned
to the nest in time to see another scout start out and move away in
the opposite direction. When about 4 m. from the nest she also dis-
appeared under the leaves. At 1.35 the bicolor, about 300 strong, came
pouring out of the nest as if in response to some sudden signal. They
were not restrained by the slaves loitering about the entrance, but
moved around rather leisurely for some minutes like a crowd assem-
bling. Then at 1.40 P. M. they started and soon detached themselves
completely from the nest. I expected to see them make for one of
the stumps that had been reconnoitered by the scouts July 31, but they
took the opposite direction. They moved very rapidly, in a more
crowded body than they had presented on previous occasions, and four
to six abreast. They soon reached the spot where some twenty minutes
before I had seen the first scout disappear. Here they halted for a
few moments and assembled, then they turned at a right angle and pro-
cceeded about half a meter and forthwith began to disappear under
the leaves. Two subanescens suddenly darted out with larvae in their
jaws and fled. I raised the leaves and found in a depression of the
soil about 500 subanescens workers and two dealeted queens all hud-
dled together with only six or eight pupae in their midst. This was
certainly a temporary nest in which the ants had taken refuge after
being plundered by the amazons on some previous afternoon. The
bicolor fell upon them, tore away their few remaining pupae and by
1.50 P. M. were starting home. At first the subanescens did not flee,
but hung about as if thoroughly disheartened or indifferent. Some of
them attacked the amazons, but these for some reason showed very
little animosity. Finally the subanescens dispersed and the amazons
filed home, many of them carrying uninjured subanescens, apparently
because they did not wish to leave the nest with empty jaws. By a
few minutes past two the slave-makers were all in their branch under
the oak leaves and all was quiet in the neighborhood.

August 2. Arriving at the bicolor nest at 1.20 P. M. I saw the last
members of the troop just leaving the dead oak leaves. I followed the
stragglers and found that the army had assembled at the spot to which
I had traced the first scout August 1. The ants were ferreting in
some galleries in the vegetable mould under the leaves, but there were
no subanescens to be seen. They seemed to be very reluctant to leave
the spot, but they finally spread apart and began to investigate the oak
leaves in the vicinity. They soon reached the stump that had con-
tained the flourishing *subanescens* colony reconnoitered by the scout, climbed about on it and thrust their heads into every cranny. It was all to no purpose—the *subanescens* had moved away with their fine lot of young. Slowly and in what seemed to be a crestfallen and disappointed spirit the amazons assembled and returned with empty jaws to their nest. They had all entered the dead branch before 2 P.M.

August 5. At 1.45 P.M. I visited the *bicolor* nest for the last time. Carefully removing the dead oak leaves I broke open the branch, but it was empty. The colony had moved to some other spot and I searched for it in vain in the neighborhood.

These observations are recorded in detail because they illustrate so many of the interesting peculiarities of the amazons. The behavior of

![Image](image-url)

*Fig. 270. Polyergus lucidus* and its slave, somewhat enlarged. (Original.) In the upper row: worker of *P. lucidus*, head of same and head of *Formica schaufussi*; in the middle row, male, virgin female and worker of *P. lucidus*; in the lower row workers of *F. schaufussi*.

the scouts confirms Forel’s opinion of the way in which the location of slave nests is ascertained, and the behavior of the amazon troups and of the harassed *subanescens* colonies on successive days shows how complicated are the environmental conditions which these insects have to meet and the intricacy of the problems with which the observer has to deal. The slave colonies are repeatedly plundered and driven from pillar to post, till they probably emigrate to other localities in sheer desperation. Then the *Polyergus*, too, finding no nests to pillage, are compelled to seek a new field for their persistent and pernicious activities. Surely Fabre is right in maintaining that the life of a preda-
tory parasite is not a bed of roses. The amazons have indeed acquired brilliant military instincts, but if these ants were capable of reflection they might occasionally regret having abandoned the quiet pastoral life which their ancestors probably led.

(c) *Polyergus lucidus* (Figs. 270 and 271).—This is the largest, handsomest and most graceful of our amazons, and even surpasses the European form in its brilliant red coloring and gleaming surface. It may be called the shining amazon. Owing to its wide distribution in the Eastern States it has been known for some time. Mrs. Treat (1877) and McCook (1880b) saw its colonies, but Burrill (1908) is the only author who has described one of its forays. In the Atlantic States it is very rare and sporadic. During the past five years I have seen only four of its colonies in New York and New Jersey, and these were at great distances from one another. It is more frequently met with on the warm eastern slopes of the Rocky Mountains in Colorado, where, unlike *breviceps*, it occurs only at lower elevations. It is the furthest removed of all of our subspecies from the European type in its smooth surface, in the coloring of its queens, which, in eastern colonies, at least, have the head and thorax nearly black, in the small size of its communities and the character of its slaves. These are not members of the *fusca*, but of the *pallide-fulva* group of *Formica*, and are represented by *schaufussi*, or the closely allied *incerta* or *nitidiventris*. The very small size of the colonies of these ants may account for the same peculiarity in *lucidus*. The slave species makes obscure crater nests in sunny, open pastures and such places are therefore also the home of the shining amazons. The ratio of these to slaves in the mixed colonies is about 1:5 or 6. It is an interesting fact that *lucidus* resembles its slaves in having a smooth, shining surface, a slender, elegant stature and long legs, whereas *breviceps* and *bicolor* resemble the *fusca* forms which they enslave, in having a more pilose and pubescent surface, more thickset stature, and shorter legs. These resemblances may therefore be regarded as mimetic.

Near my former home in Bronxville, N. Y., there was an unusually fine *lucidus-incerta* colony, which I had under observation for five years. During four years this colony produced numbers of males and females, both winged and ergatoid, and the winged females lingered for weeks in the nest without deëlation. The first week of April 1908, I found the whole community with its larvae and mother queen enjoying the spring warmth in the superficial galleries just under the large flat stone with which I covered the nest in September 1903. I captured the queen and part of the colony and transferred them to an artificial nest. August 9 I again visited the nest, and to my
surprise, found it teeming with several hundred males clinging to the lower surface of the stone, but with no winged or deilated females. Besides the males I found only a single large ergatoid female, several dozen workers and slaves, and half a dozen cocoons enclosing nearly mature male pupae. Without doubt, the ergatoid had usurped the rôle of the mother queen and, being unfertilized, had produced only male offspring. The comparatively small number of slaves had been able to rear an enormous number of these little creatures, although the absence of incerta pupae in the nest indicated that the Polyergus

![Fig. 271. Polyergus lucidus. (Original.) a, Worker in profile; b, head from above.](image)

workers had made no forays during the summer of 1908. The following is a description of one of the forays made by this colony July 31, 1904, while it was still in a normal condition:

On reaching the nest at 2.20 P. M. I found the lucidus pouring out of it in numbers. They ran about on the stones and surrounding soil till 2.37, when a troop of nearly 200 had congregated and began to move away from the nest, slowly at first and then with feverish paces. At 2.45 they reached, by a direct path through the grass, an obscure crater nest of incerta, situated some fifteen meters from their own. They at once poured into the opening, slaughtering or putting to flight the incerta that were loitering about or issuing from the galleries. One minute later (at 2.46) the first lucidus emerged with a cocoon. Then followed a stream of these ants, each similarly laden, and started for home. Several were unable to secure sound pupae, but grabbed up empty cocoons and pupal exuviae and fell in line. Some also brought out recently hatched and callow incerta and slaughtered them on the nest crater. The last cocoon was brought out at 3.13 and a few moments later the last amazon left the nest and joined the returning troop. During the pillage some of the incerta endeavored to defend their nest,
but were promptly dispatched by the *lucidus*. The corpses were
dragged away by a lot of *Myrmica sabuleti* that had their nest about
the roots of a plant within 30 cm. of the *incerta* nest. By 3 P. M. the
last *lucidus* had disappeared into her nest. The whole expedition there-
fore consumed only forty minutes.

During the summer of 1902 I found near Rockford, Ill., a fine
*lucidus-nitidiventris* colony. Thirty of the amazons were transferred
to an artificial nest furnished with a wet sponge and a dish of honey,
for the purpose of studying their behavior when isolated from their
slaves. In the course of a few days the ants were famished and kept
vainly begging one another for food. They often licked the water
from the surface of the sponge and two that had accidentally stumbled
into the honey head foremost, so that their tongues were brought in
contact with it, lapped it up with avidity. They soon began to die of
hunger and when only sixteen of them survived I wished to see whether
they would adopt alien workers of *subsericea* and *nitidiventris* taken
from a garden far removed from any *lucidus* colony. At two o’clock
one afternoon three of the former (*A’, B’, C’*) and three of the latter
(*A, B, C*) were placed in the nest. They began to run about in great
dismay, especially when they happened to touch one of the amazons
with their antennæ. From the first, however, the *subsericea* seemed to
be much more frightened and to irritate the amazons more than did the
*nitidiventris*. One large *lucidus* that had lost her right antenna and
right tarsus seemed to be in a particularly vicious frame of mind, possi-
bly because she had been spending much of the day trying to comb
an imaginary antenna with an imaginary strigil and had repeatedly
tumbled over while attempting this feat. This ant pounced on *A’
and *B’* like a cat and killed them in quick succession. She pierced
the gaster of *A’* with her sharp jaws till its contents flowed out on
the floor of the nest. *B’* she pierced through the thorax. For some
time the surviving *subsericea* (*C’*) succeeded in evading the amazons,
which in the meantime had worked themselves up into such a fury that
they even attacked one another. I saw one of them grab a sister
worker by the neck and hold on for three quarters of an hour. The
amazons, though visibly irritated by the *nitidiventris*, did not seize them
by the body, but only by the legs and antennæ. The smallest individual
(*A*) lost its left middle leg in such an encounter. At this point the
observations were interrupted.

At 9 P. M. both *A* and *B* were found dead, and *C* and *C’* were run-
ning about. *C’* skulked in the corners of the nest, but *C* was seen to
walk up to one of the amazons, protrude her tongue, and feed the
famished creature for several minutes, then go to the food chamber, take a draught of honey, return and feed a number of them in succession. For an hour she thus moved back and forth between the amazons and the honey till all had been fed. At 8 A. M. on the following morning the amazons were huddled together on the sponge, as if asleep, and in their midst was the nitidiventris, C, also resting peacefully. The subsericea, C', still alive but distrustful, was lurking in the furthest corner. I tapped the nest gently to arouse its inmates. C immediately ran into the food chamber, imbibed a lot of honey, returned and began to feed the lucidus, like a solicitous mother who wakes early and sets about getting breakfast for a large family. The friendly relations between C and the amazons continued throughout the day. Early the following morning C' was found dead in a corner and C was ministering to the amazons. Before noon, however, I found her lan-

Fig. 272. Queen of Polyergus rufescens and her incipient colony of Formica fusca workers. (Photograph by Prof. C. Emery.)

guidly dragging her body about the food chamber. Her head had been pierced by one of the stupid and ungrateful lucidus. She died in a few hours.

At 3 P. M. twenty large subsericea workers, with a number of larvae and pupæ, were placed in the light chamber. The sixteen amazons entered the chamber and began to attack the black intruders in a perfect frenzy of valor. To my surprise the subsericea stood their ground, took the offensive and were soon driving the amazons around the nest like a herd of sheep. They seized the lucidus by the legs and antennæ,
showered them with formic acid, mauled them about, gnawed off their legs and left them in a pitiable plight. This victory for the *subsericea* was not only a surprise, but coming so soon after the death of the self-sacrificing *nitidiventris*, made me feel much as I felt when a boy on reading of the death of the suitors in the Odyssey.

These observations on *lucidus*, with many others which space forbids relating, show that this subspecies is much more belligerent and of a more vicious disposition than *brevicaps* or *bicolor*. This is the more surprising because the ants which it enslaves are more cowardly and docile than the slaves of the other subspecies. The behavior of the ministering *nitidiventris* also shows that this form and not *subsericea* is the natural slave of *lucidus*.

3. The Founding of Amazon Colonies.—Most authors have inferred from the absence of the domestic instincts in the amazons that the queens of these ants would be unable to establish a formicary without the aid of alien workers. Forel and Wasmann have therefore insisted that the *rufescens* queen must be adopted by a band of *fusca*, and they have published several observations which go to show that such an adoption can be rather easily brought about in artificial nests. These observations have been recently confirmed and extended by Viehmeyer (1908). In this respect *Polyergus rufescens* resembles the temporary parasites. Several experiments in which I introduced artificially deálated queens of *lucidus* into nests containing *incerta* workers with their brood gave rather conflicting results. In some cases the *lucidus* queens behaved like *sanguinea* queens under similar conditions, to the extent of killing the alien workers, but they paid absolutely no attention to the brood. In other cases they were more passive and conciliatory, but equally indifferent to the *incerta* cocoons. It will be necessary, therefore to study this question further before making definite statements in regard to the method employed by our American amazons in establishing colonies. But even if the method of *rufescens* should be found to obtain also in our subspecies, we should not be justified in deriving it from that of the temporary social parasites, for we might conceive it to have arisen secondarily by involution or degeneration from that employed by *sanguinea*.

1 Professor Emery, in a paper just received (Nuove Osservazioni ed Esperimenti sulla Formica Amazzone. *Rend. Sess. R. Accad. Sci. Ist. Bologna*, 1909, pp. 31–36), records an experiment which goes a long way towards solving the problem here considered. July 13 he placed a deálated *P. rufescens* queen in a Janet nest containing a *F. fusca* queen, fourteen workers and a few pupae. The *rufescens*, on being attacked by the workers, offered no resistance, but showed great interest in the *fusca* queen, who received her amicably. By July
The dulotic instincts reach the apogee of their development in *Polyergus*. This ant is, however, at the same time a permanent social parasite on its host, the slaves, and replete with degenerate tendencies. These, in the further course of evolution, may be expected to gain the upper hand, and, overwhelming and supplanting the predatory instincts, lead to the peculiar conditions to be described in the next chapter.

The attacks had ceased and both queens were living on friendly terms with two of the workers. On the morning of July 22 the *fusca* queen was found dead in the nest. Her head had been perforated by the mandibles of the *Polyergus*, who was now adopted and courted by all the workers. Fig. 272 is taken from a photograph of the diminutive colony that arose in this manner. This experiment indicates that *P. rufescens* founds its colonies in the same manner as *Bothriomyrmex* (*vide supra*, p. 447).
CHAPTER XXVII

THE DEGENErate SLAVE-MAKERS AND PERMANENT SOCIAL PARASITES

"Concluons donc que le parasitisme n'est inoffensif qu'accidentellement et que son effet normal est de nuire. Il faut par conséquent considérer comme aussi éloigné que possible de l'union sociale tout être qui se nourrit de la substance d'un autre. Au point de vue physiologique sa fonction est en opposition avec celles de sa victime; au point de vue psychologique il n'entre dans la sphère de sa conscience que pour y causer de la douleur, autre signe non moins manifeste d'opposition. Il appartient à un optimisme plus courageux que clairvoyant de chercher une harmonie au sein de la plus âpre concurrence. Mais le parasitisme ne nuit pas seulement à la victime, il nuit au parasite lui-même, sinon immédiatement dans l'individu, du moins par accumulation dans l'espèce."

The true slave-making ants, both facultative and obligatory, are closely allied members of the Camponotine subfamily. The ants to be considered in the present chapter, however, are all Myrmicinae and cannot, therefore, have arisen from such forms as sanguinea and Polyerus. Considered by themselves they represent a heterogeneous assemblage of remotely related genera, which may be described in the order of increasing degeneration. Several of these ants resemble their respective hosts so closely that it is from these that some authors suppose them to have been derived. But this supposition, though plausible, is, nevertheless, open to doubt, for the resemblance between host and parasite may be due to mimicry and therefore to convergence rather than to true morphological relationship. We have seen that many myrmecophiles, some of the temporary parasites, like Formica consocians, and some of the amazons simulate their hosts, and it is conceivable that parasites as extreme as those we are about to consider, might show even more striking resemblances as the result of a long process of adaptation and association. Very similar resemblances are also known to obtain between many parasitic bees of various genera and their respective hosts.

The symbiotic ants with which we are here concerned, fall naturally into two groups. Those which I shall call the degenerate slave-makers, resemble Polyerus in certain respects, but differ in permitting the queens of the host species to survive and reproduce in the mixed colonies. The permanent social parasites, on the contrary, live in host colonies whose queens have been eliminated, and differ, moreover, from
all the other social parasites in lacking the worker caste. The ants of both groups are throughout life dependent on their hosts and are, therefore, permanent social parasites, but I would restrict this term to the workerless species, since they represent the most extreme type.

A. The Degenerate Slave-makers.—This group embraces only two genera, Strongylognathus and Harpagoxenus, formerly known as Tomognathus. Strongylognathus is a strictly palearctic genus, confined, so far as known, to Europe, western Siberia, Asia Minor and the southern shores of the Mediterranean. It contains only two species, testaceus and huberi, but the latter has several subspecies and varieties (christophi, rehbinderi, afer and cœciliae). These ants are very small, measuring only 2.5–4.5 mm. in length, and of a yellowish or dark brown color. The head of the worker and female is more or less excised behind, with very prominent posterior corners and subparallel sides. The mandibles are toothless, narrow, pointed and sickle-shaped, like those of Polyergus, but without denticles. All of the forms occur only in nests of Tetramorium cespitum (Fig. 273, d), a very common ant which they closely resemble in size and appearance.

1. Strongylognathus huberi (Fig. 273, c).—This species was origi-

Fig. 273. a, Strongylognathus testaceus worker. (Original.) b, head of female of same; c, S. huberi, head of worker; d, Tetramorium cespitum L. host of S. testaceus and huberi.

nally described by Forel (1874) from specimens taken in Canton Vallais, Switzerland, on a warm slope near Fully, in the valley of the Rhone. More recently (1900d) he has published additional observations on a colony from the same locality. He found that the workers of huberi are very numerous, that they will go forth in a closed phalanx, much like that of the amazons, and pierce the heads of strange Tetramorium workers placed near their nests and that they
will also take up the pupae of the strange ants and carry them home. In his more recent observations Forel found that the strange pupae thus brought in were carried out by the host workers and cast away. This behavior and the fact that no one has witnessed a spontaneous foray of *huberi*, seem to indicate that these ants never voluntarily leave the nest and pillage the *Tetramorium* colonies in their neighborhood. It is probable, therefore, that the habits observed by Forel are vestigial. In other respects, however, *huberi* is less degenerate than the amazons, for it occasionally excavates the soil.¹

2. *Strongylognathus afer*.—This is merely a variety of *huberi* from Spain and Algiers. It was originally described by Emery (1880) from the female only. Forel discovered its colonies in Algiers and found that they resemble those of the typical *huberi* in having numerous workers.

3. *Strongylognathus christophi*.—Emery (1889a) described this subspecies from female specimens collected at Sarepta on the Volga. Ruzsky (1905) has recently taken the workers at Turgai in western Siberia and Astrachan.

4. *Strongylognathus rehbinderi*.—This robust variety of *christophi* was found by Rehbinder (Forel, 1904a) in a convent garden at New Athos near the foot of the Caucasus. The workers were running along a path, apparently carrying pupae in their jaws. Forel believes that they must have been on a foray. If this is true, we should have to admit that *Strongylognathus* is still able to make forays on *Tetramorium* like those of the amazons on *F. fusca*, but we must await further observations before accepting this inference.

5. *Strongylognathus cacilia*.—Only the male and female of this form are known. It was based by Forel on specimens taken in Spain.

6. *Strongylognathus testaceus* (Fig. 273, a and b).—This species is widely distributed in Europe and is not uncommon in certain portions of Germany and Switzerland. Its habits have been studied by Schenck (1852), von Hagens (1866), Forel (1874), Wasmann (1891h), Viehmeyer (1906, 1908) and others. It is of a yellowish color and distinctly smaller and feeble than *huberi* and its varieties. Moreover, the workers are so much reduced in numbers as to represent a mere vestige of their caste. Forel is, therefore, of the opinion that they are on the verge of disappearing and leading to a condition in which the species is represented by males and females only. It is certain that these workers no longer make spontaneous

¹During July, 1909, I found near Zermatt, in the valley of the Visp, seven colonies of *S. huberi*. Some experiments, performed on the largest of these, confirmed Forel’s conclusions.
forays on alien colonies of *Tetramorium*. When the latter are brought near a mixed colony and a conflict ensues, the *testaceus* endeavor to kill the strange workers, but are too feeble to pierce their armor, and, if the mixed colony is victorious, this is due to the efforts of the host workers. The *testaceus*, though able to excavate and to feed independently, contribute little or nothing to the structure of the nest and probably obtain most of their food from the tongues of the *Tetramorium*. The broods of both species are cared for by the host, since the parasites have ceased to interest themselves in the education of their own young. Unlike many parasitic ants, *S. testaceus* is often found in vigorous and populous colonies of the host species. The flourishing condition of such colonies, a number of which were shown to me by Mr. Viehmeyer in the heaths near Dresden, must be due either to the retention of the *Tetramorium* queen or to the adoption of the *Strongylognathus* queen at a very late stage in the development of the colony. That we must accept the former alternative is proved by the following observations: In Bohemia, Wasmann found a large mixed colony which contained 15,000–20,000 *Tetramorium*, some thousand *Strongylognathus* and pupae of both species. About 70 per cent. of the pupae were males and females of the parasitic species, the remainder were worker pupae, and there were two large male pupae of the host. This nest contained a fertile queen of *Tetramorium* and one of *Strongylognathus*, living side by side. During June, 1907, Professor Forel and I were able to confirm this discovery. We found a similar *testaceus-Strongylognathus* colony on the Petit Salève, near Geneva. This colony, though much smaller than the one described by Wasmann, contained a fertile *Tetramorium* queen. The diminutive *Strongylognathus* queen was not found, but must have been present, as there were in the nest young worker pupae in addition to the imagines of this species. Wasmann is inclined to believe that these mixed colonies arise through the alliance of a *testaceus* and a *Tetramorium* queen, but it is more probable that the former enters a colony of the latter after it has been established and become rather populous, since the founding of colonies even by pairs of queens of the same species is an extremely rare occurrence (see p. 190). Although the host and parasitic queens come to live side by side in the mixed colonies, the offspring of the latter are exclusively workers, the two male pupae found by Wasmann being the only known exception to this rule. Forel (1900d) explains this absence of the male and female offspring of the host queen as the result of a regulatory instinct: “The females and males of *Strongylognathus* are smaller and less troublesome to nourish. This is evidently sufficient to induce the *Tetramorium* workers to rear them in the place of their own enormous
queens and males, the larvae of which they therefore undoubtedly devour or neglect, as they do in the case of all that seems to be superfluous." The absence of the conspicuous males and females of the host species in nests infested with *testaceus* aids the investigator in searching for the parasites, especially during late June and early July, when the host species is rearing the sexual brood, for nests containing male or female larvae or pupae of the *Tetramorium* may be quickly passed over and attention concentrated on the nests in which these are absent. Wasmann has shown that *testaceus* is more resistant to unfavorable conditions than its host. This suggests the feasibility of introducing it into America, where *T. cespitum* has become thoroughly acclimated and rather abundant, especially in some parts of the Atlantic States.

II. *Harpagoxenus* (*Tomognathus*).—The two known species of this genus are rare and very local ants, allied to *Leptothorax*, the genus to which their hosts belong. The workers are small, dark-brown, with short legs and hairy bodies and are easily recognizable by their broad, toothless mandibles and their peculiarly elongated frontal carinae, which extend back to the vertex and there bend outward, forming scrobe-like depressions for the short antennae.

1. *Harpagoxenus sublevis* (Fig. 274).—The habits of this ant have been studied by Adlerz (1886, 1896) and Viehmeyer (1906, 1908). It

![Fig. 274. *Harpagoxenus sublevis*. (Adlerz.) a, Male; b, ergatoid female.](image-url)
nests of *L. muscorum* and *L. tuberum*. The mixed colonies may contain males and females as well as workers of both the host and parasitic species. The males of *sublevis* are so much like those of *Leptothorax* that Adlerz failed to distinguish them till he published his final paper (1896). All the females which he found were wingless and ergatoid, with a thorax like that of the worker, but with ocelli and a receptaculum seminis. He naturally took these ergatoids to be the only females of the species, but in addition to these Viehmeyer has discovered winged females in some of the colonies in Saxony. Adlerz’s observations seem to show that *sublevis* secures its auxiliaries by attacking *Leptothorax* colonies, driving away the adult ants and taking possession of their nests and young. The latter are then reared as auxiliaries, or hosts. It is not impossible, however, that *sublevis* may recruit the number of its auxiliaries by making occasional sorties like *Polyergus*, for Adlerz succeeded in finding one nest in which the parasites were living with two species of *Leptothorax* (*acervorum* and *muscorum*). The domestic instincts of *sublevis* are very much blunted or obsolescent. It rarely or never excavates, and although it is able to feed itself if food is within reach, it does not go in quest of it, but leaves this to its host. A number of *sublevis* which Adlerz isolated with a number of larvae and some food managed to live for 135 days, but the larvae shriveled up or died. It seems probable, therefore, that this ant depends on its slaves for the nurture of its young. When the mixed colony moves to a new nest the *sublevis* are carried by the *Leptothorax*; very rarely are the rôles reversed. Sometimes when the *sublevis* endeavor to leave the nest they are restrained by their slaves in much the same manner as *Polyergus*. Adlerz observed the males mating with the ergatoid females, but this occurred only between individuals belonging to different colonies. The larvae of *sublevis* are so much like those of their hosts that he could not distinguish them. They are nourished both with regurgitated liquid food and with pieces of insects, a method of larval feeding which was also observed by Viehmeyer. This author believes that *sublevis* was originally lestoibiotic like *Solenopsis*, that is, that it once robbed and devoured the young of an ant in whose neighborhood it nested without forming a mixed colony. The following are his views on the phylogeny of *sublevis* and its method of establishing colonies: “The starting point of the development was represented by an ant allied to *Leptothorax*, with males and females, both winged, and, like many other ants, with a predilection for eating the larvae and pupae of allied species. This habit, practiced only occasionally at first, became established and the ants took to nesting near other ants, which at first tolerated these thieves unwillingly (compound
nest). The thief ants then gradually became marauders (mixed colony). With increasing dependence on their auxiliaries, which showed itself in the dwindling of the worker instincts and the disappearance of the mandibular teeth, the difficulty of founding colonies by means of winged females increased and led to the development of the ergatoid forms. In these the ancient lestobiotic and predatory instincts united with the newly acquired female instincts, so that the ergatoids became incomparably better fitted for founding colonies than the winged forms, which therefore tended to extinction. We must still, however, endeavor to explain why the winged females have never been found in the colonies of northern Europe. This may be accounted for in two ways. We may regard the winged female either as a reversion or as the lingering vestige of a not yet completely eliminated winged form. The latter alternative seems to be indicated by the remoteness of the locality in which this form occurs from the true geographical range of the species. The development of this sex would probably be unequally advanced in two regions differing so much in climate and other conditions. But we must wait to see whether this ant does not occur also in other regions, perhaps in northern Germany.

2. Harpagoxenus americanus (Fig. 275, A).—This species, which is smaller and of a darker brown color than sublevis, seems to be extremely rare. To my knowledge it has been taken on only three occasions. The type specimens, describe by Emery (1893-'94), were found by Pergande at Washington, D. C., in a nest of Leptothorax curvispinosus (Fig. 275, B), but no observations on the relations
of the two species were recorded. Schmitt found a few specimens while sifting vegetable mould for beetles near Beatty, Pa., and I found it during the summer of 1905, in a rich, boggy wood near Bronxville, N. Y. Here there were several fine L. curvispinosus colonies nesting in the hollow twigs of elder bushes, and in three of these colonies there were specimens of H. americanus. One contained only a single worker, another six, and a third eight workers and a queen of the parasitic ant. The latter insect was not ergatoid, but decidedly larger than the workers, with well-developed ocelli and a typical, though small, female thorax, showing distinct traces of having borne wings. All three colonies contained larvæ and pupæ, presumably of the parasitic species, but no Leptothorax queens. When confined in artificial nests the americanus were very inactive and paid no attention to the brood. All the colonies were too small to admit of the supposition that they had been formed by repeated forays on the part of Harpagoxenus. This ant, in fact, has every appearance of having reached a more abject stage of parasitism than its European congener. In the same locality I found a mixed queenless colony of the yellow L. curvispinosus and the black L. longispinosus inhabiting a hollow elder twig. If a délated queen of H. americanus happened to establish her colony in such a nest as this, we should have a case like Adlerz's sublevis living with both L. acervorum and muscorum, but the inference that this indicated repeated slave-making forays on the part of americanus would be erroneous.

B. The Permanent Social Parasites.—The ants included in this group are all small and nearly all of them belong to monotypic genera. The absence of workers makes it difficult to assign definite positions to these genera in our classifications, which are based very largely on the worker forms.

1. Wheeleriella santschii (Fig. 276).—This is a small, dark-brown species, the female of which measures 4–4.7 mm. in length, the male only 3.3–3.6 mm. It was discovered by Santschi in the cactus fields near Kairouan, Tunis, and lives in the nests of the most abundant of all the North African ants, Monomorium salomonis and its varieties. The female Wheeleriella resembles Strongylognathus testaceus in having the posterior border of the head deeply excised and its posterior corners projecting as blunt horns. Santschi's interesting observations have been published by Forel (1906d) and may be briefly summarized. Although both sexes have well-developed wings, mating seems to take place, at least as a rule, in the outer galleries of the nest and between brothers and sisters (adelphogamy). After fecundation the délated female roams about over the surface of
the soil in search of Monomorium nests. When near the entrance of one of these, she is "arrested," to use Santschi's expression, by a number of Monomorium workers, which tug at her legs and antennæ and sometimes draw her into the galleries. At other times she may be seen to dart into the nest entrance suddenly, so that she is arrested within the nest itself. There are no signs of anger on the part of the Monomorium and she is soon able to move about in the galleries without restraint. The workers forthwith feed and adopt her. In the course of a few days she begins to lay eggs which are received and cared for by the Monomorium workers. Santschi observed that the colonies infested with Wheeleriella were usually of small size, had an impoverished appearance and lacked queens of the host species, and he was able to account for these peculiar conditions. The Wheeleriella queen pays no attention to the much larger Monomorium queen, but this insect is assassinated by her own workers and the parasitic queen is adopted in her place. Forel believes that this singular perversion of instinct is due to the preference of the workers for a smaller fertile individual, just as the Tetramorium workers prefer to rear the small males and females of Strongylognathus instead of their own bulky sexual phases. This explanation is not very satisfactory, however, for, as we have seen, the huge mother Tetramorium is retained in the nest, whereas it is precisely this individual that is destroyed in the infested Monomorium colonies. Hence there must be some other reason for the assassination of the host queen by her own progeny.

2. Epixenus andrei and creticus.—These ants have been recently described by Emery (1908a), the former from females taken between Jaffa and Jerusalem in a nest of Monomorium venustum, and originally referred to this species by Ern. André (1881b), the latter from a single
male taken in Crete. As both species are related to Wheeleriella santschii, Emery believes that they lack the worker caste.

3. Sympleidole elecebra (Fig. 277, A).—This species, which is much smaller than Wheeleriella (female 2.75–3 mm.; male 2.5–2.75 mm.), lives in the nests of Pheidole ceras, a common ant in the mountains of Colorado and New Mexico at altitudes between 2,500 and 3,000 m. The parasites and host are very similar, but the female of the former is much smaller, has a more rounded head and a very broad post-petiole. I have seen only two females: one taken by Schmitt in a ceras nest at Boulder, Colo., the other with eighteen males, taken by myself August 17, 1903, in the Ute Pass, near Manitou in the same state. The ceras colony in which I found these ants was carefully examined, but contained only workers and soldiers of the host species, and besides the adult parasites, a number of their pupæ. No workers of the latter species could be detected, though from what we know of other ants, they should have been in the nest, if they exist at all, at the time of maturity of the males. When the nest, which was under a stone, was first disturbed, the Pheidole workers seized the parasites and their pupæ and quickly carried them into the galleries. As there are usually from one to five deælated queens in the unininfested colonies of ceras, their absence in this nest shows that they must have been eliminated. And as the elecebra queens are very small and feeble compared with the ceras queens (which measure 5–5.5 mm.), it is probable that the latter are killed by their own workers and soldiers.

4. Epipheidole inquilina (Fig. 277, B).—Like the Sympleidole, this ant resembles its host, which is also a common Pheidole (P. pilifera). Emery (1893–04) saw the small queen of Epipheidole (length 3–3.3 mm.) among some soldiers and workers of pilifera collected in Nebraska, but he regarded the insect as an unusually microgyinic Pheidole. During late July and early August, 1903, I found near Colorado Springs three colonies of Ph. coloradensis, a subspecies of
pilifera, containing males and females of the Epipheidole. In these colonies the coloradensis queens were absent, as in the case of the ceres and Symphheidole. It is probable, therefore, that they are eliminated by their own workers after the intrusion of the parasite.

5. *Epecus pergandei* (Fig. 278).—This species is known only from the types, a number of small black males and females taken by Pergande in a nest of Monomorium minimum near Washington, D. C., and described by Emery (1893-'04). According to Pergande's statement, the nest contained the winged sexes of the host in addition to those of the parasite, but as he also found that when both species were put in the same vial the *Epecus* queens attacked and killed some of the Monomorium males, I am inclined to believe that there is some confusion in his observations. He may have mixed two Monomorium colonies that were nesting very close together, one of which may have been pure and have contained the winged sexes, whereas the other consisted of male and female *Epecus* and Monomorium workers. During the past eight years I have examined hundreds of *M. minimum* nests, but have never succeeded in finding *Epecus*. This is not surprising, however, as all the workerless parasites are rare and very local in their distribution.

6. *Anergates atratulus* (Fig. 279).—This extraordinary ant, like the preceding, is far from common, though it is widely distributed in continental Europe. For this reason it is better known than any of the other workerless parasites. Its host is *Tetramorium cespitum*. Studies on its habits have been published by Schenck (1852), von Hagens (1867), Forel (1874), Adlerz (1886), Wasmann (1891h) and Janet (1897e). Both male and female are peculiarly modified. The former is 2.7–3 mm. long, of a pale, sordid yellow color, wingless and pupa-like, with the gaster strongly curved downward at the tip. Although its legs are rather well developed, it moves very slowly and with a dawdling gait. The fore legs are furnished with strigils which are pectiniform in specimens from certain localities (Switzerland), but in those from other localities (Sweden, Holland, France) the teeth are lacking and the strigils may be vestigial or absent. Janet has shown that the mandibular glands are well developed, though the mandibles are very small and feeble. The black, winged female is of the same size as the male.
and has the gaster of normal dimensions, but with a longitudinal dorsal groove before fecundation. After entering the Tetramorium nest, however, the ovaries become greatly enlarged and the gaster expands till it becomes a flattened sphere 4 mm. in diameter, on which are seen, in the form of little plates, isolated by the enormous distention of the articular membranes, the strongly chitinized rings, which, in the virgin, constitute the whole external surface of the gaster. Both male and female have 11-jointed antennae and large ocelli, but the eyes are rather poorly developed. Owing to the apterous condition and sluggish movements of the male, mating takes place in the nest among the offspring of the same mother (adelphogamy). This can be readily observed both in natural and artificial nests. The couples are so firmly united that they can be killed, without separating, in warm alcohol. After fecundation the females fly out of the nests, so that the nuptial flight, though vestigial and unisexual in this ant, still subserves the important function of disseminating the species. Tetramorium colonies infested with Anergates contain only the workers of the host species. Adlerz and Wasmann have shown that these pay very little attention to the virgin Anergates, but carry the males about and lick them assiduously, and that during these operations the latter assume a characteristic, motionless attitude. Both the male and female parasites are, of course, fed by their hosts, as they are quite unable to eat independently.

Fig. 279. Anergates atratulus. (Original.) a, Virgin female; b, old queen; c, head of same; d, pupoid male; e, head of same.
Adlerz and Wasmann have made some experiments with a view to ascertaining the method whereby the female Anergates becomes associated with the Tetramorium. Adlerz in Sweden placed several unfertilized Anergates queens in a strange nest of the host species. They moved about among the workers as if unperceived. Nearly the same results were obtained on placing unfertilized Anergates in a normal colony containing a Tetramorium queen. He also placed several larvae, pupae and male and female imagines of Anergates in a normal Tetramorium colony which was living in an artificial nest. In every case the strangers were almost at once amicably received. Similar observations were made by Wasmann in Holland. He found that strange Tetramorium workers did not in the least injure the male and female Anergates, whereas they killed without mercy a number of Strongylognathus testaceus males and females which he placed in the nest.

The experiments of Adlerz and Wasmann were not carried far enough to throw any light on the permanent adoption of the Anergates and the fate of the Tetramorium queen. It now seems probable that the latter insect is killed by her own workers soon after the colony is invaded by the parasitic queen. Since the publication of Santschi's notes on Wheeleriella, renewed observations on young Anergates queens in the presence of alien Tetramorium colonies, and under natural conditions, have become a desideratum. June 6, 1907, at 2 P. M., while collecting ants near Vaud, in the very meadow in which Forel as a very young man made many of his classical observations on Formica sanguinea, Polyergus, Strongylognathus testaceus and other species of his "Fourmis de la Suisse," I discovered a medium-sized Tetramorium colony from which female Anergates were escaping in considerable numbers. The nest was around the roots of a plantain, and the females issued one by one from the entrances, climbed the leaves to their tips and flew away in all directions over the sun-lit grass. At 3.30 P. M. Professor Forel joined me and we excavated the nest with great care. It contained, besides the obese mother queen of Anergates and several thousand Tetramorium workers, more than a thousand winged queens, a few hundred of the pupa-like males, several pupae and a few larvae of the parasitic species. In the galleries of the nest dozens of couples were united in the act of mating. The Tetramorium workers picked up the single males and hurried away with them, but they paid little attention to the females. The colony was placed in a bag and on the following day used for experiments on Tetramorium colonies in Professor Forel's garden at Chigny. On opening the bag I found several of the Anergates in copula, but most of the females had either lost their wings or were ready to drop them at the slightest touch. Eight Tetra-
morium colonies that had large nests with multiple craters in the paths of the garden were selected and the females were placed near them one at a time on the ground. In all cases when they were placed within a few centimeters of the openings, they entered the nests almost immediately; when placed at a greater distance they wandered about demurely till they found an opening and then at once crept into it. Seven of the nests were thus entered by numbers of the queens without creating the slightest excitement among the Tetramorium workers. These merely stopped when they happened to meet a female, seized her by the wings, thorax or pedicel, but at once dropped her and went about their work. In no case was one of the queens injured. In three of these colonies they were seized by single workers and carried into the nest as fast as I could set them on the craters. Both males and females were placed near the openings of one of these nests. The males were seized with signs of keen interest and some animosity, to judge from the way in which the workers bent their gasters forward and tried to sting the helpless creatures. They were not killed, however, but carried a few decimeters from the nest and then thrown away, sometimes from the top of a pebble or lump of earth. This was being done while other workers were carrying the females into the nest. One vigorous colony exhibited a different behavior: All the parasites, both male and female, were at once seized, pulled about by the legs, wings and antennæ, and then carried away and dumped on the ground at some distance from the nest. In this instance several of the parasites of both sexes were injured so that they could not walk. Strange Tetramorium workers placed on any of the nests above mentioned were suddenly pounced upon and killed. These observations show that the Anergates queens are, as a rule, treated with great lenity and even carried into the nests, but that the males are rejected. They also show that certain colonies are positively hostile to both sexes of the parasites. In all cases, however, the behavior of the Anergates queens was very uniform: they sought and entered the Tetramorium nests as if these belonged to them, offered no resistance when seized, and, when roughly handled, merely curled up and feigned death. The experiments were continued throughout the morning. With the gradually increasing temperature towards noon the Tetramorium became more numerous and active outside their nests, but their treatment of the Anergates, which I was continually giving them, remained the same. Late in the afternoon the experiments were repeated on two of the colonies, which, during the morning, had been entered without protest by a number of the parasitic queens. The workers were out in a multitude, excavating and dragging in insect food. When male, female or pupal Anergates were placed
on these nests, the males and pupae were promptly seized and thrown away and the females were also seized, but less promptly, and also rejected. Some of the latter that had managed to enter the nests were soon brought out and dumped at a distance of several decimeters from the entrances. I watched the nests for some time and although a few of the females were not brought out, I am, of course, unable to state whether they were subsequently adopted, killed in the galleries, or ejected. It appears, therefore, that the acceptance of the parasites by the Tetramorium under natural conditions is not as immediate and simple as the observations of Adlerz and Wasmann on artificial nests would lead one to suppose. The fact that Anergates is so rare an ant, notwithstanding its sporadic colonies produce enormous numbers of females in regions inhabited by myriads of Tetramorium colonies, shows that permanent adoption is not easily effected. Were the contrary the case, Tetramorium cespitum would itself become a rare, if not extinct, species.

There can be no doubt that of the seven permanent social parasites above enumerated, Anergates is the most specialized and degenerate. This is clearly shown in the ergatoid and nymphoid structure of the male and the structure of the head in both sexes. All the other species agree in being in a less advanced stage, although they, too, have lost the worker caste. This loss may be said to be due to disuse, but it followed necessarily upon the reduction in size of the male and female, and this condition in turn was probably initiated by the same causes that have led to the dwarfing of the queens among the temporary parasites. Forel, Lubbock and Wasmann are inclined to believe that Anergates represents a form that was once dulotic. Lubbock says: "In Anergates, finally, we come to the last scene of this sad history. We may safely conclude that in distant times their ancestors lived, as many ants do now, partly by hunting, partly on honey; that by degrees they became bold marauders and gradually took to keeping slaves; that for a time they maintained their strength and agility, though losing by degrees their real independence, their arts, and even many of their instincts; that gradually even their bodily force dwindled away under the enervating influence to which they had subjected themselves, until they sank to their present degraded condition—weak in body and mind, few in numbers, and apparently nearly extinct, the miserable representatives of far superior ancestors, maintaining a precarious existence as contemptible parasites of their former slaves." This interpretation of Anergates as a very degenerate dulotic ant seems to have been suggested by the obvious dwindling of the worker caste in Strongylog-
nathus testaceus, but there is nothing in the structure of Anergates or of any of the other workerless ants to prove that they are descended from slave-making species. More probable is the supposition that they have been derived from temporary parasites or xenobiotic forms with habits like those of Leptothorax emersoni. The Anergates or Wheel-erieilla colony differs from those of species like Formica consocians in reaching its complete development, that is, the stage in which the sexual offspring of the mother queen mature, in a much shorter period of time. This period must fall within the lifetime of the Tetramorium or Monomorium workers and can therefore hardly exceed three or four years. This acceleration of colonial development is made possible by a suppression of the useless worker caste and a dwarfing of the sexual individuals, although there is a concomitant increase in their numbers. And all of these interesting compensatory developments are necessitated in turn by the castration of the host colony, for this is what the elimination of the host queen amounts to. As this is a mortal injury to the host colony and a serious injury to the host species, it is not surprising that the intrusion of the parasites is resisted and that the latter, as Lubbock says, are "few in number and apparently nearly extinct." In other words, extreme parasitism in ants, as in other organisms, tends continually to defeat its own ends and to undermine its own existence.

The zoologist, as such, is not concerned with the ethical and sociological aspects of parasitism, but the series of ants we have been considering in this and the four preceding chapters cannot fail to arrest the attention of those to whom a knowledge of the paragon of social animals is after all one of the chief aims of existence. He who without prejudice studies the history of mankind will note that many organizations that thrive on the capital accumulated by other members of the community, without an adequate return in productive labor, bear a significant resemblance to many of the social parasites among ants. This resemblance has been studied by sociologists, who have also been able to point to detailed coincidences and analogies between human and animal parasitism in general.¹ Space and the character of this work, of course, forbid a consideration of the various parasitic or semi-parasitic institutions and organizations—social, political, ecclesiastical and criminal—that have at their inception timidly struggled for adoption and support, and, after having obtained these, have grown great and insolent, only to degenerate into nuisances from which the sane

and productive members of the community have the greatest difficulty in freeing themselves.²

²Besides the mixed colonies of ants considered in this and the two preceding chapters, there are a few cases of a very exceptional and problematic character. These are:

1. A mixed colony comprising workers of Lasius niger and L. flavus found by Adlerz (1896b) in Sweden.

2. Two small mixed colonies comprising workers of L. nearcticus and L. americanus found near Rockford, Ill. (Wheeler, 1905a).

3. Four small mixed colonies comprising workers of L. latipes and L. americanus found near Colebrook, Conn. (Wheeler, 1905a).

4. The small mixed colony of Leptothorax curvispinosus and L. longispinosus mentioned on p. 495.

5. A colony consisting of a male, two winged females and several workers of Pseudomyrma flavidula and several workers of Ps. elongata, found in a hollow Cladium culm in the Bahamas (Wheeler, 1905b).

Adlerz believed that his mixed Lasius colony had been formed by dulosis, but Wasmann suggested that it was probably the result of an accidental alliance between fertilized queens of different species. I am inclined to believe that neither this nor the other colonies above enumerated arose in either of these ways, but by the accidental irruption of one colony into the contiguous brood galleries of another, followed by the pillaging and rearing of a number of alien worker larvae or pupae. This is not dulosis, but as I have shown (p. 452), merely one of its conditions.
CHAPTER XXVIII

THE SENSATIONS OF ANTS

"Il faut donc, bon gré mal gré, étudier la psychologie et la physiologie en rapport l'une avec l'autre, en comparant leurs résultats, en tâchant de trouver les relations les plus exactes possibles, entre leurs notions et les termes qui s'y rapportent, même au risque de retomber souvent dans l'anthropomorphisme sans le vouloir. Si nous connaissons ce dernier danger, et si nous le combattons sans relâche, le corrigeant sans cesse, nous marcherons, d'erreur corrigée en erreur corrigée, lentement mais sûrement vers la vérité relative que seule nous pouvons connaître. Si pas contre, ne voyant qu'un côté de la question, nous nous obstinons à vouloir d'un coup faire de la mécanique soi disant objective là où toutes les bases nous manquent pour le faire, nous tomberons dans l'absurde et n'arriverons à rien."—Forel, "Sensations des Insectes," V, 1901.

To close our survey of the ants without a more coherent treatment of the subject of their behavior than is represented by the scattered references to "reactions," "habits" and "instincts" in the preceding chapters, would be to turn aside from the very fons et origo of our interest in these insects. For structure and development, distribution in time and space, and the multifarious ethological relationships we have been considering are merely the more obvious aspects of an intricate and subtle behavior that enables these creatures to lead their balanced, but nevertheless plastic, social life amid an environment made up of refractory matter and more or less indifferent or hostile organisms.

In endeavoring to gain an insight into the behavior of any animal, two courses are open to us. These may be designated as the intellectual and the intuitional, and it depends on the temperament and training of the observer which he will follow, or whether he will be inclined to follow both. The intellectual course is the one usually pursued by the scientist pure and simple, and is especially exalted by those most thoroughly imbued with the spirit of our laboratories, where living organisms are best loved when they are dead, or, at any rate, when they can be subjected to the methods of investigation that have yielded such valuable results to the development of physics and chemistry. In this environment the intellect proceeds on her clean path, according to her peculiar method, first cutting up the indiscernible, flowing process, which is the life of every organism, into stationary concepts, and then combining these congealed and partial abstractions into a system that will have "explanatory" value—in obedience to Goethe's well-known dictum:
"Wer will was Lebendig's erkennen und beschreiben
Sucht erst den Geist herauszutreiben;
Dann hat er die Theile in seiner Hand,
Fehlt leider nur das geistige Band."

Nor is the intellect able to proceed in any other manner, and that her
ways are right and justifiable is shown by her triumphs. To extoll
these in this place is unnecessary, but it should be remarked that the
intelect, as Bergson has so beautifully shown, was evolved as an instru-
ment of action and fabrication, and not for the purpose of under-
standing or explaining an inorganic flux or movement, much less a
durational and creative flux, like that which we call life.¹

The intuitionist, in dealing with the behavior of animals, proceeds
along the path of æsthetic insight, sympathy and introspective knowl-
dge of our own internal processes. His method is, therefore, essen-
tially psychological and metaphysical. He does not deal with things
or quantities, but with the living creative movement as immediately
experienced in his own consciousness. He attempts to place himself
en rapport with the organism and to move in the stream of its vital
current. Being an animal organism himself, he may, therefore, be
said to feel something of what must be taking place in other animals.
This experience cannot be expressed, or can be expressed only through
indirect or artistic channels, because language is essentially a work of
the intellect. Thus the intellectual course is definite and concise, but
its prime object is to eventuate in action or practice, whereas the
intuitional course is vague, contemplative and ineffable, but is nearer
reality.

To the narrow scientific mind the intuitional method of contem-
plating animal behavior has always been as great an abomination as is
the self-sufficient, geometrical and mechanical method of the scientist
to the nature lover. Both methods, when carried to extremes, lead
to false or inane, or, at best, very partial interpretations—the scientific
to a kind of animal phoronomy, like the reflex-theories of Bethe and

¹“Modern science, no less than ancient science, proceeds according to the
cinematographic method. It cannot do otherwise; all science is subject to this
law. It is, in fact, of the essence of science, to manipulate signs, which it
substitutes for the objects themselves. These signs undoubtedly differ from
those of languages in their greater precision and higher efficacity, but they are
none the less subject to the general condition of the sign, which is to denote
a fixed aspect of reality under an arrested form. In order to think movement,
an incessantly renewed effort of the mind is necessary. Signs are made for the
purpose of dispensing with this effort by substituting for the moving continuity
of things an artificial recomposition which is their equivalent in practice and
has the advantage of being easily manipulated.”—Henri Bergson, "L'Évolution
Créatrice," 4th ed., Paris, Félix Alcan, 1908, p. 356. See also the other works
of this remarkable philosopher: “Essai sur les Données Immédiates de la
Uexküll, the intuitional to the humanizing of animals and all the perversities of the American "nature-fakers." It is generally easy to class a particular observer according to his temperament and training. The scientist is prone to follow the intellectual method till he ends in rank atomic materialism, but he deserves admiration and sympathy for his consistency and his whole-souled confidence in his method. The intuitionist tends to become a panpsychist and though he may humanize the brute, we must remember that this is not a penal offence and that it does credit to his heart if not to his head. The scholastic will naturally adopt the intellectual method because he is used to working among concepts and abstractions as if they were realities, but if he be a member of some religious body, he will not be averse to using the intuitional method, though in his hands it will be curbed and more or less perverted in the interests of dogma. He who enters on the study of animal behavior in the right spirit will strive to avoid both the narrowness of the laboratory worker and the superficial emotionalism of the nature-lover. That he will always adopt the proper attitude between these extremes is not to be expected of human nature, but it is possible to cultivate a critical and catholic spirit. If I decline to join the ranks of those whose only ambition is to describe and measure the visible movements of animals, and am willing to resort to a comparative psychology in which inferences from analogy with our own mental processes shall have a place, I do this, not because I believe that the former course would be altogether unfruitful or uninteresting, but because the latter seems to me to promise a deeper and more satisfactory insight into the animal mind.

In attempting to give a comprehensible account of such complicated phenomena as those of animal behavior, it is necessary to follow the course of the intellect and classify the various processes involved according to certain salient characters. Some authors have dwelt on the simplicity of certain processes, the complexity of others, while other authors have laid greater stress on automaticity and plasticity as differentiae. It is, indeed, convenient to distinguish first, simple responses to sensory stimuli, i.e., reflex behavior; second, instinctive behavior, which has been referred by some to chains or series of such reactions—melodies, so to speak, of which the reflexes are but single notes or chords—and third, plastic or modifiable behavior, that is, behavior which is not stereotyped and automatic like the typical reflexes and instincts, but varies adaptively in response to the exigencies of the environment, and is more or less influenced by the previous experience of the individual organism. By many this modifiable activity is supposed to be essentially intelligent. While such a treatment of
the subject is convenient and will be followed in this and the two succeeding chapters, it must be borne in mind that it is very artificial and schematic, as is clear from the fact that the psychical process in animals, the source of its visible activities, is neither a unity nor a multiplicity. Whatever views may be entertained concerning the nature of this process and the best method of studying it, all authors agree in regarding the simple sensory reactions as the basis of any scientific study of behavior and that this should be supported in turn by a morphological study of the sense organs. I shall, therefore, follow this course in our study of the ants, referring the reader to Chapter IV for the necessary data on the structure of the sense organs. For many interesting details, which lack of space compels me to omit, the reader must also be referred to the works of the following authors, who have contributed to our knowledge of sensation in ants: Huber (1810), Forel (1874, 1878d, 1886, 1900–01), Lubbock (1881), Bethe (1898, 1900, 1902), Janet (1893b, 1894), Wasmann (1899a), von Buttet-Reepen (1900), Miss Fiedle (1901a, 1901b, 1902, 1903a, 1903b, 1904, 1905), Miss Fiedle and Parker (1904), Viehmeyer (1900), Piéron (1904, 1905, 1906, 1907), and Turner (1907b).

The study of the sensory responses of ants is beset with grave difficulties, first, because these responses are more numerous, complex and obscure than in many lower animals; second, because several senses may be coimpllicated in what appears as a single response, and third, because the sense organs of ants are merely analogous and by no means homologous with our own. These conditions prevent the observer and experimenter from isolating a single sense. Both the structure of the sense organs and experiment show, moreover, that ants respond to stimuli to which our own senses are irresponsive. It has, therefore, been suggested by Bethe and others that we abandon the terminology of human sensation with its subjective connotations and adopt a new one of purely objective import, that we speak of photorecepting instead of seeing, chemorecepting instead of smelling, tasting, etc. The reasons given for adopting these terms are not very cogent. Strictly speaking, we should have to use them for the higher animals and our fellow-men. As Forel remarks: “One ought not to say, ‘My wife has a headache.’ One should say, ‘This animal machine which I believe to be my wife exhibits certain facial contortions and emits certain articulate sounds that correspond with those emitted by myself when I have a headache, but I have no right to say that she has a headache.’” The difficulties above mentioned are not to be avoided by adopting a new nomenclature, but by further and more persistent
experimentation and observation. I have emphasized them because they seem to have been ignored by some investigators.

Although touch is one of the most important senses of ants, it has not been thoroughly studied in these insects. Its great delicacy is attested by the number, distribution and structure of the tactile hairs or sensillæ. As these are extremely fine and abundant on the antennal funiculi, we are justified in concluding that the latter are the principal organs of touch and as the moving ant continually palpates and explores the surfaces over which she travels, it is not improbable that she gleans perceptions of the forms of objects. But it is impossible to dissociate this mechanical sense from the chemical or olfactory sense, since the organs of both are not only situated in the same antennal joints, but are intermingled with one another. It is probable that ants also perceive tactile stimuli to the general chitinous integument where it is not furnished with hairs. That these insects have a very delicate temperature sense, although the location and nature of its organs are quite unknown, is shown by many of their habits, notably by the way they regulate their hours of activity and the way they place their brood in the best situations for utilizing the warmth of the earth and stones. That ants are capable of feeling pain hardly admits of doubt, for, as Forel says: "They often exhibit unequivocal signs of discomfort, especially when their antennæ are pinched, or when their nerve terminations come in contact with certain corrosive or strongly irritating substances." But the quiet manner in which an ant, that has just had an antenna, a leg or even her abdomen cut off, will gorge herself with honey, shows that her sensation of pain must differ profoundly, both in quality and intensity, from that which we should suffer from similar operations.

Much more attention has been devoted to the study of the sense of smell than to that of touch. Forel (1874, 1878d), the pioneer in this field of investigation and the one who has established all the important facts, found that many ants, when deprived of their antennæ, not only do not attack alien ants, but even lick them, that they cannot care for the young or excavate the nest, and are able to eat only when they stumble on their food by accident. Such ants also make unusual movements with their legs and palpi in attempting to substitute these organs for their missing antennæ. Forel believes that the prostrate, club-shaped sensillæ (see Chapter IV, p. 62) are the principal olfactory organs, because they are the ones best developed in insects with the keenest sense of smell (e. g., in Ichneumon flies). Ants are able to perceive odors diffused in the air as well as those dissolved in liquids; for even the blind species often stop and wave their funiculi about in a peculiar manner when within a short distance of an odorous
body. It is probable, however, that the odor stimulates the delicate end organs only when it is dissolved in the thin film of glandular secretion covering the antennal club. When the antennæ actually touch the surface of a body, however, the ant, in all probability, receives both tactile and olfactory stimuli, and these probably fuse to produce a single sensation, which Forel calls the topo-chemical, or contact-odor sensation. He believes, therefore, that the ant has a sense of odor-shape. To make this clear he suggests that we fancy ourselves to be blind or in total darkness and in possession of delicate olfactory organs in our finger-tips. Then, if we moved about, touching objects to the right and left along our path, our environment would appear to us to be made up of shaped odors, and we should speak of smells that are spherical, triangular, pointed, etc. Our mental processes would be largely determined by a world of chemical configurations, as they are now by a world of visual (i.e., color) shapes. Blind ants are, of course, permanently in the condition here described, and as all other ants spend most of their time in the dark recesses of the nest, and, with the exception of very few species, rely but little on their eyesight, we can see how different must be our own mental processes from those of these insects.

In order to understand many of the commonest reactions of ants, such as the recognition of friends and foes, the homing instincts of the worker and the development of certain peculiarities of myrmecophiles, we must suppose that ants have not only extremely acute powers of odor-discrimination, but no less extraordinary powers of odor-association. Even the degenerate human olfactories can detect the different species in some cases even the different castes of ants (Eciton) by their odors, but these insects carry the discrimination much further. They not only differentiate the innate odors peculiar to the species, sex, caste and individual and the adventitious or "incurred" odors of the nest and environment, but, according to Miss Field, they can detect "progressive odors," due to change of physiological condition with the age of the individual. She believes that "as worker ants advance in age their progressive odor intensifies or changes to such a degree that they may be said to attain a new odor every two or three months." Miss Field is also convinced that different antennal joints are specialized for the perception of different odors. This conclusion was reached by cutting off the joints one at a time and studying the subsequent behavior of the ant. She says: "The organ discerning the nest-aura, and probably other local odors, lies in the final joint of the antenna, and such odors are discerned through the air; the progressive odor or the incurred odor is discerned by contact, through the penultimate joint; the scent
of the track by the antepenultimate joint, through the air; the odor of the inert young, and probably that of the queen also, by contact, through the two joints above, or proximal to those last mentioned, while the next above these by contact also discerns the specific odor.” This statement not only lacks confirmation by other observers, but seems to be the only one which implies that the olfactory organs of an animal may exhibit regional differentiations. This has not even been claimed for dogs, which, nevertheless, possess extremely delicate powers of odor discrimination and association. This would be no serious objection, however, if we were able to discover the slightest support for Miss Fielde’s hypothesis in the structure of the antennæ. We do, indeed, find in the funiculi a variety of sensillæ, as has been shown in Chapter IV, but none of these is confined to a single joint or to two joints. Miss Fielde, moreover, completely ignores the tactile organs of the antennæ and makes this surprising statement: “During five years of fairly constant study of ants I have seen no evidence that their antennæ are the organs of any other sense than the chemical sense.” And still she observed that ants that had lived in a Petri dish for over a year felt perfectly at home in any new Petri dish to which they were transferred. For an interpretation of such a case of “recognition” one would certainly turn to a mechanical rather than to a chemical sense. Many of her interpretations of the behavior of ants with mutilated antennæ are open to the obvious objection that she tacitly denies the existence of perception where there is no visible response or where the animal inhibits certain of its activities. If we add to this objection the very limitations of the method, i.e., the necessity of removing all the joints distal to the one whose function is being tested, and the consideration that the hypothesis is not needed in explaining the facts, it will be seen that we are not sufficiently justified in regarding the ants’ antenna as an organ made up of a series of specialized “noses.”

It is not always easy to distinguish taste from smell in our own sensory experience, and in ants, where even the structure of the sensillæ in the antennæ and mouthparts are very similar, the difficulty is greatly enhanced. That the rows of sensillæ on the maxillæ and at the base and tip of the tongue are the organs of taste seems to be proved by the observations of Forel (1886–88, 1900–01). He found that “when morpaine or strychnine are mixed with honey, the ants fail to detect these substances with their antennæ. The odor of the honey attracts them and they begin to eat it. But as soon as their mouthparts come in contact with it they at once turn away. It is easy to observe the preferences of ants for certain viands; they will partake of some and not of others, but they will neglect everything, sometimes
even their duties and the defence of the nest, in order to partake of honey, so inordinate is their fondness for this substance.” Forel has seen ants that were attacked in their nest and in imminent danger of being overpowered by their enemies, nevertheless stop a moment and imbibe a little of the honey which he was holding out to them. The fondness of nearly all ants for sweets, such as the excreta of plant-lice, and their dislike of ill-smelling things, such as carrion and the feces of mammals, is very pronounced. Taste is evidently the sense in which these insects approach most closely the higher animals and man.

Whether or not ants are able to perceive the stimuli that we call auditory, has been much debated. In Chapter II I have shown that stridulatory organs are well developed in the Ponerinæ and Myrmicinae and are present in a rudimental form also in the Dorylinæ; and that the ants possessing these organs actually emit very shrill sounds—usually of so high a pitch as to be inaudible to us—has been observed more or less clearly by a number of investigators, notably by Swinton (1878, 1879), Wroughton (1892), Sharp (1893), Janet (1893), Emery (1893), Wasmann (1893), Adlerz (1895) and myself (1903f). Forel (1874) and Wasmann (1893k) have shown that the workers of European Camponotus make sounds also by striking the walls of their nest repeatedly with their gasters, and Gounelle (1900) observed that workers of the Brazilian Camponotus mus, which nests in the twigs and dried leaves of the bamboo, produce, when disturbed, a very audible, metallic and whirring sound like that of a rattlesnake, by repeatedly striking the walls of the nest with their heads. In Chapter IV attention was called to the fact that all ants (even the Camponotinae and Dolichoderinae!) possess in all their tibæ, and probably also in other parts of their bodies, structures built on the same fundamental plan as the famous chordotonal organs of the stridulating crickets and katydids. This fact renders it extremely probable that ants perceive not only the stridulatory vibrations of their fellows, but also other vibrations. All students of these insects would doubtless agree to this statement. At this point, however, opinions begin to diverge. Huber (1810) and Forel (1874) deny that ants hear sounds, and the latter, while admitting that they respond easily to grosser mechanical shocks, failed to obtain any response to sounds of a very high pitch. Lubbock (1881), on the other hand, believed that they react to such sounds, but he failed to obtain any experimental evidence for his view. Parker and Miss Fielde (1904) failed to observe any reactions to "aerial

*I have seen Ecton caecum visiting carrion, but this was evidently for the purpose of feeding on the larvae of flies, Silphids, etc. A correspondent informs me that the ants of the Philippines have similar habits and are very important agents in reducing the number of flies at certain seasons of the year.
sound waves from a piano, violin and Galton whistle, which collectively gave a range of from 27 to 60,000 vibrations per second.” The insects reacted, however, to vibrations reaching them through the soil and other solids. These vibrations were received through the legs, as they were perceived even when the antennæ, head, abdomen and any one or two pairs of legs were removed. In contradiction to this view and that of Forel, several authors have recently maintained that ants do perceive aerial vibrations. That this is the case has been stated by Weld (1899) for Cremastogaster lineolata, Lasius americanus and Aphaenogaster sp., and by Metcalf (1900) for “a small black ant.” Wasmann (1891, 1899) has recorded similar, rather inconclusive observations. I have also virtually expressed myself in favor of such a view in one of my papers (1903a), in a passage which as been overlooked or misunderstood by some recent students of this subject, and may therefore be repeated in this place: “Stridulation, at least among the Myrmicinae, Ponerinae and Dorylinæ, is an important means of communication, which Bethe has completely ignored and even Forel and other myrmecologists have failed to appreciate. It readily explains the rapid congregation of ants (Myrmicinae) on any particle of food which one of their number may have found, for the excitement of finding food almost invariably causes an ant to stridulate and thus attract other ants in the vicinity. It also explains the rapid spread of a desire to defend the colony when the nest is disturbed. This is especially noticeable in species of Pheidole, Myrmica and Pogonomyrmex. It is the secret of being able in a short time to catch ants like P. molefaciens in great numbers by simply burying a wide-mouthed bottle up to its neck in the mound of the nest. An ant approaches and falls into the bottle. It endeavors to get out, and failing, begins to stridulate. This at once attracts other ants which hurry over the rim and forthwith swell the stridulatory chorus till it is audible even to the human ear. More ants are attracted and soon the bottle is filled. If it be corked and shaken for the purpose of still further exciting its contents, and then held over another Pogonomyrmex colony whose members are peacefully sauntering about on the dome of the nest, the wildest excitement will suddenly prevail, as if there had been a call to arms—or to dinner. Even more remarkable is the stridulation in a colony of Attta fervens (= texana), the Texan leaf-cutting ant. Here the different ants, from the huge females through the males, large soldiers and diminishing castes of workers to the tiny minims, present a sliding scale of audibility. The rasping stridulation of the queen can be heard when the insect is held a foot or more from the ear. To be audible the male and soldier must be held somewhat closer, the largest workers
still closer, whereas the smallest workers and minims, though stridulating, as may be seen from the movements of the gaster on the post-petiole, are quite inaudible to the human ear. It is not at all improbable that all this differentiation in pitch, correlated as it is with a differentiation in the size and functions of the various members of the colony, is a very important factor in the cooperation of these insects and of ants in general. The contact-odor sense, important as it undoubtedly is, must obviously have its limitations in the dark, subterranean cavities in which the ants spend so much of their time, especially when the nests are very extensive like those of _Atta_. Under such conditions stridulation and hearing must be of great service in maintaining the integrity of the colony and of its excavations.” If the view of Miss Fielde and Parker be accepted, we must suppose that the _Pogonomyrmex_ in the experiment above described, were thrown into agitation by vibrations passing from the bottle of stridulating ants through my body to the soil of the nest. It seems to me much more probable that the ants perceived the stridulation directly as aërial vibrations. More numerous experiments, however, have been recently performed by Turner (1907b). Although he worked only with Camponotine ants (_Formica fusca_ and _F. sanguinea_), which are not known to stridulate, he found that they responded to vibrations as low as 256 and as high as 4,138 per second. “The responses, in the form of zigzag movements, were usually slight for pitches higher than 3,000 vibrations per second and sometimes slight for other pitches; but, to most pitches under 3,000 vibrations per second, the ants usually responded in a pronounced manner, usually darting about as though much excited.” Turner believes that he took sufficient precautions, by resting the nest on cotton and felt, to exclude the transfer to the ants of vibrations through the floor, table and walls of the nest. It is, however, extremely difficult to prove that such vibrations were excluded, and for this reason we cannot, with the data at hand, reject the statements of Miss Fielde and Parker. As these authors say: “It has long been recognized by physiologists, if not by the scientific public, that touch and hearing in the vertebrates are very closely related. The apparent separateness of these senses in us is due to the fact that the air waves by which our senses are usually stimulated are too slight to affect our organs of touch. If, however, we transfer our experiments to water, we at once meet with a medium in which, as has long been known, vibrations can be both heard and felt. In dealing with a like question among the lower animals it therefore seems to us misleading to attempt to distinguish touch from hearing, and we shall be more within the bounds of accuracy if we discuss the
question from the standpoint of mechanical stimulation rather than attempt to set up questionable distinctions based upon human sensations."

In Chapter IV attention was called to the fact that the eyes of ants, especially those of the workers, exhibit remarkable differences of development in different species. That this implies an equally wide range in the reactions of these insects to light is proved by observation and experiment. There can be little doubt that these reactions are both phototropic and visual; in other words, that they involve not only an adaptive orientation of the ants' movements as a whole with reference to the direction of the light rays, but also some discrimination of colors and objects. We are not surprised to find that the workers of hypogaeic ants, like the smaller species of Solenopsis, all species of Acanthomyops and Dorylus and certain species of Eciton, which are virtually cave-dwellers and either have no eyes or mere vestiges of these organs, are strongly photophobic, or negatively phototropic; whereas certain tropical tree ants (Gigantiops, Dimorphomyrmex, Myrmoteras, Gessomyrmex and Pseudomyrmex), which have large convex eyes, are positively phototropic. The workers of the common ants of temperate regions (Camponotus, Formica, Lasius, Myrmica) stand about midway between these two extremes in the development of the eyes, but are, on the whole, rather strongly photophobic. This is shown by their actions when suddenly exposed to the light, especially when they happen to be in possession of their brood. However slowly or reluctantly they may react to sudden illumination when alone, they make the greatest haste to remove their brood to a dark place.

The phototropic response, both in the workers and the sexual forms, may be reversed rather suddenly, apparently as the result of changes in physiological condition. This is very clearly seen in the males and females, which in their callow stages are negatively phototropic, but as the time for the marriage flight approaches, exhibit a strong positive phototrophism, as Loeb (1890) has shown. After their marriage flight and the loss of their wings, the females again become negatively phototropic and this reaction seems to become the more pronounced the longer the insect lives. It is evident that these reactions are all highly adaptive and depend on important physiological changes in the wing-musculature and reproductive organs. The dependence of the phototropism of the workers on physiological conditions is not so clear. It is possible, however, that hunger may have something to do with changing the usual negative to a positive phototropism and impelling the worker to leave the nest and forage, while repletion or exposure to the light for several minutes may reverse the reaction and induce the ant to return to the nest. But this is, perhaps, too simple an explanation,
for it is certain that prolonged exposure causes many ants to become indifferent to light, and I know two species (*Hypoclinea mariae* and *gagates*) which seem to be normally in this condition.

That the eyes of our common ants are sufficiently developed to enable their possessors to discriminate colors and forms has been maintained by several observers. Lubbock (1882), Forel (1886–88, 1900–01), Forel and Dufour (1902) and Miss Fielde (1902) have made many experiments to test the ants’ power of discriminating light of different wave lengths. Lubbock found that ants avoid the ultra-violet rays of the spectrum, and Forel, by hoodwinking ants, showed that these rays were perceived through the eyes and not through the general integument as Graber (1883–85) had maintained. Miss Fielde summarizes her results, which agree with those of Lubbock and Forel, in the following words: “The ants manifested no liking for any of the rays of light. If obliged to stay in light rays of some sort, the rays of longer wave-lengths are preferred to those of shorter wave-lengths. Dividing the spectrum, as we know it, into red, green and violet, we may say that to the ants’ eyes red and green are most like the darkness that they prefer and that violet is to them most luminous; or that the red and green are less visible to them than is violet. In this regard the eyes of the ant appear to be the reverse of our own. Our eyes perceive in the spectrum three fundamental colors—red, green and violet. The eyes of the ant perceive there only two fundamental colors—one made up of the red and green rays, the other of the violet and ultra-violet rays.” She says further: “It appears that the eye of the ant is not well-adapted to the reception of light-rays whose wave-length is longer than in the violet rays; that it receives blue and indigo more perfectly than red, orange, yellow and green; and that there is a sudden increase of luminosity in the light rays at that point in the spectrum where violet begins for our eyes. The ants may discern colors, and yet have no preferences among the colors discerned. Color is determined by the wave-length in the light-ray, and since the ants discriminate between rays of different wave-lengths, they probably perceive color in the rays. Sensitivity to the length of the wave indicates perception of color.”

Forel and Dufour also experimented on ants with Roentgen rays. These were directed up through the bottom of an artificial nest, and although they were allowed to act on the ants and their brood for fifteen minutes, the insects made no response. Moreover, a week later, they showed no signs of having sustained any injury from the experiment.

If we accept Exner’s view that the compound eye of insects forms of an object a single upright image, which is the more definite the
greater the number of omnmatidia and the more convex the surface of the eye, it is very probable that only ants with well developed eyes, like Formica, Pseudomyrma, etc., can distinguish objects by means of these organs. Wasmann's experiments (1899g) indicate that workers of various species of Formica can see resting objects as large as a finger at a distance of 5–10 cm., but that they are unable to see small objects, like beetles, at a greater distance than 4–5 mm. My own observations tend to confirm these statements. Moving objects are, of course, much more readily perceived. Indirect evidence of visual discrimination in ants is furnished by the mimetic coloration and form of certain myrmecophiles (see Chapters XXI and XXII). Undoubtedly male ants, which always have very large, convex eyes, are able to see the flying females at a considerable distance. The function of the ocelli, so highly developed in the males and females, has not been determined. It has been suggested that they may be of use in seeing objects at very close range and in dark places, like the galleries of the nest.

On the whole, we are led to conclude that vision in worker and female ants is very poorly developed, compared with the chemical and mechanical senses (contact-odor and the perception of vibrations). Indeed, ant behavior is so profoundly influenced by these senses, that it may be said to differ fundamentally, not only from the behavior of man and the higher mammals, but even from that of such closely allied Hymenoptera as the bees and wasps.
CHAPTER XXIX

THE INSTINCTIVE BEHAVIOR OF ANTS


If ants exhibited merely the reflexes, or such brief and simple responses to sensory stimuli as we have been considering in the preceding chapter, their lives would flow on with the same monotonous regularity as those of many other insects and the lower invertebrates in general. In addition to these reflexes, however, ants manifest more complicated trains of behavior, the so-called instincts; and both these and the reflexes may be affected with a certain modifiability or plasticity which, in its highest manifestations, has been called intelligence. Leaving for my last chapter a consideration of this latter aspect of behavior, I shall here confine myself to the instincts.

Many attempts have been made to define instinct, but it is evident that none of these could be completely successful, because instinct transcends intelligence and has its mainspring in the depths of the life-process itself. Perhaps as good a formal definition as I am able to give is the following: An instinct is a more or less complicated activity manifested by an organism which is acting, first, as a whole rather than as a part; second, as the representative of a species rather than as an individual; third, without previous experience; and fourth, with an end or purpose of which it has no knowledge. This definition will satisfy the person of scholastic mind, but to the biologist it is a mass of obscurities; for it is certain that the man lives not who can tell where the whole begins and the part leaves off in a living organism, or can frame a satisfactory definition of a living individual or a species; and the intellect abdicates when it is called upon to grasp an activity that is unconsciously purposeful.

In all probability these very obscurities have attracted many stu-
dents to the study of instinct. At any rate, there is no end of the
literature on the subject. Instinct could not, of course, be studied by
so many authors without much controversy, and the employment of
the word in many different senses. This is pardonable, at least to some
extent, since the subject itself presents no less than four aspects,
according as it is studied from the ethological, physiological, psycho-
logical or metaphysical points of view. From the first two of these
instinct is open to objective biological study in the form of the “instinct
actions.” These may be studied by the physiologist merely as a regu-
larly coördinated series of movements depending on changes in the
tissues and organs, and by the ethologist to the extent that they tend to
bring the organism into effective relationship with its living and inor-
ganic environment. But that these movements have a deeper origin
in psychological changes may be inferred on the basis of analogy from
our own subjective experience which shows us our instincts arising as
impulses and cravings, the so-called “instinct-feelings”; and these in
turn yield abundant material for metaphysical and ethical speculation.

Modern biological writers naturally wish to restrict the term instinct
to the instinct-actions, whereas scholastic, psychological, metaphysical
and theological writers throw the emphasis on the instinct-feelings.
That this was the original meaning of the word is shown by its deri-
vation from the Latin instinguere, to incite, and its probable relation
to the Greek Ἴντισθαι. The contrast between the subjective and objec-
tive aspects of instinct is brought out sharply in Descartes’ notion of
the animal as an automaton, a conception which has profoundly
affected biological and even theological thought. The following pas-
sage, quoted from the Seventh Bridgewater Treatise by the Rev.
William Kirby, will make this clear: “An eminent French zoologist
[Virey] has illustrated the change of instincts resulting from the modi-

1 During the past ten years I have read a small library of books on instinct.
Among these the following have been most suggestive from the physiological
point of view: Chapter XIII of Loeb’s “Physiology of the Brain,” Driesch’s
“Die ‘Seele’ als Elementarer Naturfaktor,” and the second volume of his
“Science and Philosophy of the Organism”; from the psychological point of
view: G. H. Schneider’s “Der Thierische Wille,” Wundt’s “Vorlesungen uber
die Menschen- und Thierseele,” Chapter XXIV of the second volume of Wm.
James’s “Principles of Psychology,” and Groos’s “Die Spiele der Thiere”; from
the metaphysical point of view: Chapter XXVII of the second volume of
Schopenhauer’s “Welt als Wille und Vorstellung,” Chapter III of von Harte-
mann’s “Philosophie des Unbewussten” and Chapter II of Bergson’s “L’Évoluti-
on Créatrice”; from the scholastic and doctrinaire points of view: Reimarus’s
“Allgemeine Betrachtungen über die Triebe der Thiere” (1798), Joly’s ”L’In-
stinct, ses Rapports avec la Vie et avec l’Intelligence,” Wasmann’s “Instinct und
Intelligenz im Thierreich,” and Supplement A of Maher’s “Psychology: Em-
pirical and Rational.”
fication of the nervous system, which takes place in a butterfly in the
transit to its perfect or imago state from the caterpillar, by a novel and
striking simile. He compares the animal to a portable or hand organ,
in which, on a cylinder that can be made to revolve, several tunes are
noted; turn the cylinder and the tune for which it is set is played;
draw it out a notch and it gives a second; and so you may go on till
the whole number of tunes noted on it have had their turn. This,
happily enough, represents the change which appears to take place in
the vertebral cord and its ganglions on the metamorphoses of the
caterpillar into the butterfly, and the sequence of new instincts which
result from the change. But if we extend the comparison, we may
illustrate it by the two spheres of organized beings that we find on
our globe, and their several instinctive changes and operations. We
may suppose each kingdom of nature to be represented by a separate
cylinder, having noted upon it as many tunes as there are species differ-
ing in their respective instincts—for plants may be regarded, in some
sense, as having their instincts as well as animals—and that the con-
stant impulse of an invisible agent causes each cylinder to play in a
certain order all the tunes noted upon it; this will represent, not inaptly,
what takes place with regard to the development of instincts in the
vegetable and animal kingdoms, and our simile will terminate in the
inquiry, whose may be that invisible hand that thus shakes the sistrum
of Isis, and produces that universal harmony of action, resulting from
that due intermixture of concords and discords, according to the will
of its Almighty Author, in that infinitely diversified and ever-moving
sphere of beings we call nature.” Kirby concludes that the powers
which turn the hand organ of instinct are “the physical Cherubim of
the Holy Scriptures, or the heavens in action, which under God govern
the universe.”

This specimen, extracted from the theological dust-bin, derives its
interest from the fact that it is a caricature of views that are still held
on the subject of instinct. It is, in fact, more like the scholastic con-
ception of instinct than would appear at first sight. Considering for
the present only the objective, or hand organ, portion of the above
simile, and neglecting the “physical Cherubim,” who keep turning the
handle, we see that the peculiarity of instinct—the combination of
complexity with automatic or mechanical fixity—that impressed earlier
thinkers is the one that still arrests our attention. Indeed, this pecu-
liarity is responsible both for the “lapsed intelligence” and the
“reflex” hypotheses of instinct. The former of these seems to be
moribund, the latter, according to which instincts are merely chain
reflexes (“Kettenreflexe”), still flourishes, at least, in our biological
laboratories. Spencer, Loeb, Bethe, Driesch and others have supported this hypothesis with much clean-cut argument; but the way to its conception was prepared long ago by Claude Bernard in his description of certain complex physiological activities, like those of the alimentary tract, as "mouvements reflexes régulièrement enchainés." The difficulty with the hypothesis is its schematism, for while we may admit that an instinct may be described as a compound reflex, we must also admit that it is more than this, since the reflexes are not merely strung along in sequence, but constitute an organized system of coordinated activities which coinplicate and interpenetrate one another, so to speak, and grow and change by modification in toto, or by intersusception and not by simple apposition of new activities.

Biologists find it increasingly difficult to draw a hard and fast line between instinct and reflexes, or between either of these and the simple vital activities of protoplasm. The definition of instinct cited above is perfectly applicable to a unicellular organism, or to a single Metazoan cell, considered as a whole. It is difficult or impossible, moreover, as Loeb and Driesch have insisted, to dissociate the instinctive activities from those of growth and development. This is due to the fact that instinct is so intimately and inextricably involved in the structure of the organism. As Bergson says: "It has often been remarked that most instincts are the prolongation, or better, the achievement, of the work of organization itself. Where does the activity of instinct begin? Where does that of nature end? It is impossible to say. In the metamorphoses of the larva into the nymph and into the perfect insect, metamorphoses which often require appropriate adaptations and a kind of initiative on the part of the larva, there is no sharp line of demarcation between the instinct of the animal and the organizing work of the living matter. It is immaterial whether we say that instinct organizes the instruments which it is going to use, or that the organization prolongs itself into the instinct by which it is to be used." The spinning of the cocoon by the larval ant is a good example of the kind of instinct to which Bergson refers. From one point of view this is merely an act of development, and the cocoon, or result of the secretive activity of the sericeteries and of the spinning movements of the larva, is a protective envelope. But an envelope with the same protective function may be produced by other insect larvæ simply as a thick, chitinous secretion from the whole outer surface of the hypodermis. Here, too, we have an activity which, though manifested in a very different way, is even more clearly one of growth and development. And when the workers of Ecophylla or Polyrhachis use their larvæ for weaving the silken envelope of the nest, as described in Chapter XIII, we have
a further extension and modification of the cocoon-spinning activities. In this case the spinning powers of the larva are utilized for the purpose of producing an envelope, not for its individual self, but for the whole colony. In conventional works this latter activity would be assigned a prominent place as a typical instinct, the spinning of the cocoon might also be included under this head, but the formation of the puparium, or pupal skin, would be excluded as a purely physiological or developmental process, yet this last, no less than the two other cases, has all the fundamental characteristics of an instinct.

Viewed in this light there is nothing surprising about the complexity and relative fixity of an instinct, for it is inseparably correlated with the structural organization, and in this we have long been familiar both with the dependence of the complexity and fixity of parts on heredity and the modifiability of these parts during the life-cycle of the individual. Fixed or instinctive behavior has its counterpart in inherited morphological structure as does modifiable, or plastic, behavior in well-known ontogenetic and functional changes.

There is no better group for the study of instinct, both as a stereotyped heredity activity and in its correlation with structure, than the ants. Wundt and others have called attention to the fact that all instincts center about alimentation and reproduction, and that in these processes themselves we have the most typical instincts. As alimentation may be regarded as subservient to reproduction, we may say that all instincts converge towards the propagation of the species. This statement meets with no exception in the ants on account of their social organization. On the contrary, this merely lends it greater emphasis. All the foraging, nest-building and other activities revolve about the care and education of the brood, and, as has been shown in Chapters XIX, XXI and XXII, even the extravagant and aberrant activities that these insects exhibit in their tolerance and care of myrmecophiles and parasites, have their origin in the same obsessional generative instincts.

The ant colony, as many authors have suggested, is analogous to a single large organism, in which the soma is represented by the body of workers, the reproductive organ by the fertilized queen. It follows, of course, from this conception that the differentiation of the colonial soma into castes is merely the visible result of a psychological and physiological division of labor. It is also noticeable that in the ant colony the closer instincts come to those of pure growth, development and reproduction, the more fixed and mechanical they appear, whereas the ancillary and more remote ethological instincts, like those of foraging and nest building and those relating to other organisms such as alien ants, myrmecophiles and parasites, are much less constant and
universal. Here, too, the analogy of the colony to a Metazoon is apparent, for in the latter we also find that growth, ontogeny and reproduction are very rigidly determined as compared with the activities that bring the organism into relation with its multiform and changing environment.

The castes have often been cited as fine examples of the correlation of instinct and structure, but it is only recently that we have come to feel the full force of this assertion. As I have discussed this subject at some length in Chapter VII, I may here confine myself to a few remarks. The male and female ant present an extraordinary contrast in the development of their instincts; the male, though possessing very highly developed eyes and antennæ, having such abortive instincts that he scarcely ranks above many lowly organized, solitary insects, whereas most female ants may be said to be richly endowed with all the instincts of their respective species. For this reason, and also because the queen ant, while forming her colony leads a solitary life and is not disconcerted by being kept in confinement, she is an extremely favorable object for the study of instinct. Her activities, as an individual, are so methodical that they strike the observer, who first witnesses them, as a beautiful example of the catenary or compound reflex. Beginning with deâlatation, which seems to be the necessary initiatory stimulus, she goes through a regular routine, excavating a small cell in the earth, closing its opening, laying eggs, feeding the larval workers with her own secretions, guarding them, burying them when mature till they have spun their cocoons, unearthing them and eventually assisting them to hatch, all as if she were merely a machine wound up and set in motion by definite external and internal stimuli. But closer study of her reflexes, especially under changed conditions, shows that matters are not so simple as they seem. Gaps may be formed in the series of activities without affecting the outcome. Thus the excavation of the nest may be omitted if the insect finds some pre-existing cavity under a stone, in a gall or in an artificial nest, or when she is adopted by a number of workers of her own or another species, without in the least disturbing her subsequent reactions. Or, if food is placed in the nest, the young may be fed with it instead of with the maternal secretions, or some of the eggs or larvae may be devoured by the mother for the sake of nourishing the remainder of the brood, etc. Moreover, the young may not all mature at the same time and must, therefore, be treated differently, according to their respective ontogenetic stages. In short, the activities, though all tending towards one end, the matura-

Digitized by Google
instincts of different queen ants representing not only the common
method of colony formation just considered, but also the methods
adopted by the fungus-growers, the temporary and permanent social
parasites and the slave-makers. In these latter cases the aim still
remains the same—the bringing to maturity of the first brood—and
undoubtedly they have developed out of the common type of colony
formation. This development, however, could not have taken place
by a mere omission or addition of single reflexes, but only through a
more or less profound modification of the instinct theme as a whole.

With the exception of the parasitic females, we find that ants of
this sex exhibit all the instincts of their species and it would seem
that, like the queen bee, even the parasitic queens must virtually possess,
although they never manifest, the worker instincts. This statement,
of course, can have no meaning to those who limit instinct to the
instinct actions. Yet we must suppose that the parasitic queen ant, like
the degenerate queen of the honey-bee, is capable of transmitting to her
worker offspring the tendency to forage and construct, although she
never manifests this tendency in her own person. We should expect
the worker, as an abortive female, to exhibit an abridgment of her
mother's instincts, and this, generally speaking, is found to be the
case. In the workers, however, under normal conditions, certain of
the queen's activities, especially those of nidification, foraging and
defence, are exaggerated, while others, such as those of reproduction,
are suppressed or kept in abeyance. This intensification of certain
tendencies and suppression of others is, of course, eminently purposeful
and adaptive.

In the structural differentiation of the various castes of workers, so
elaborately carried out in the species of *Atta s. str.*, *Pheidologeton,
Camponotus*, etc., we see a corresponding differentiation of instincts.
But, as I have shown in Chapter VII, even monomorphic workers
exhibit a tendency to separate into groups of individuals that tempor-
arily or permanently perform specific functions in the life of the
colony. Both this and the fact that some queen ants that have become
parasitic, show as yet in their size and external structure no visible
effects of these peculiarities, indicate that instinct leads with changes
in the more delicate texture of the nervous system and tissues of the
body generally, and that the grosser structures follow more slowly in
the wake of these modifications.

Some authors have laid considerable stress on the deferred instincts,
but it is obvious that these, too, are merely instincts that are unable to
manifest themselves till the necessary structural apparatus has been
developed. Male, female and worker ants all have deferred instincts.
The males and females do not attempt the nuptial flight till they are thoroughly mature, and the queen does not begin to start a colony till her wings have been removed. The worker will not forage or take part in excavating or guarding the nest till its integument has hardened and taken on the adult coloration. As a callow, it remains in the nest and functions only as a nurse. The tendency of certain old workers to become sexually mature and to act as gynæcoids may also be regarded as a deferred instinct, depending on unusual powers of assimilating food and the ripening of eggs in the ovaries. To the same category we may also assign the behavior of old queens that shun the light and merely assimilate food and lay eggs, without paying any attention to the brood or to the adult workers.

As additional evidence of the intimate correlation between instinct and structure we may point to the vestigial, decadent and deceased instincts and the analogy between form regulation and instinct regulation. Ants furnish abundant examples of all of these, especially of activities that must once have been of the greatest importance to the species, but have since fallen into desuetude and been overlaid or all but completely replaced by more recently acquired tendencies. Cases of this description are most obvious in the parasitic species, or in those that have changed their nesting habits within comparatively recent times. Forel (1900, 1904f) has called attention to vestigial slave-making instincts in Strongylognathus huberi and rehbinderi, ants now living as permanent parasites in the nests of Tetramorium cespitum (see Chapter XXVII), but in all probability descended from slave-makers like Polyergus rufescens, which they still resemble in the peculiar falcate structure of their jaws. P. rufescens, too, has its vestigial instincts. As we have seen, the workers of this species are no longer able to take food except from the tongues of their slaves, and perish when these attendants are removed, but the queens have retained to a very slight degree the ability to feed independently. This case and many others that might be cited, are interesting as proving that the castes may show different stages in the decay of the same instinct. In other words, we not only find the ants exhibiting vestigial instincts as species, but a certain caste within the species may show vestiges of instincts whose full exercise is the normal prerogative of a different caste. Thus, under extraordinary circumstances, the usually sterile worker may lay eggs, like the female, or the female may forage like the workers or accompany them on slave-making expeditions. In Leptothorax emersoni I have observed a very striking example of an obsolescent feeding habit (see Chapter XXIII). This ant when living with its host, Myrmica canadensis—and in a state of nature it is always found in this
association—obtains its food only from the tongues of the *Myrmica* workers (i.e., by regurgitation), or by licking their oily bodies, but when it is separated from the *Myrmica* in an artificial nest, it begins to visit the food dish and feeds, rather awkwardly at first, but eventually quite like the nonparasitic species. In this case, an instinct, which would certainly be put down by the casual observer as completely absent, can be resuscitated under experimental conditions. The nidification of ants also furnishes examples of vestigial activities. *Cre-mastogaster lineolata*, e.g., a common North American ant which nests in the ground or in rotten wood, belongs to a largely tropical, arboreal genus, many species of which construct great paper or carton nests, roughly resembling the nests of certain social wasps (see Chapter XIII). On very rare occasions, however, and in moist localities which somewhat resemble the jungles of the tropics, *C. lineolata* constructs small carton nests or diminutive "sheds" of the same material over the plant-lice and mealy bugs on whose excrement it feeds. This is obviously a feeble reminiscence of formerly well developed carton-building instincts.

That the instincts of ants may become pathological, or, at any rate, result in the production of diseased individuals, was shown in Chapter XXII, where I described the habits of *Lomechusa* and *Xenodusa*. The presence of these parasitic beetles in the nest causes the ants to neglect their own brood and even to rear abnormal or defective individuals (pseudogynes), which are of no use to the colony. A similar aberration of instinct is seen in the rearing and toleration of the mermithergates in nests of *Pheidole commutata*, and perhaps also in the production of workers of the intermediate type in nests of *Ph. instabilis* infected with *Ora-sema*.

All of these parasites eventually bring about the decay of the colony in which they establish themselves, through a disturbance of its trophic status, or balance. This balance is an extremely delicate adjustment to the food supply and any change in it is very soon reflected in the growth or decay of the colony as a whole. Such growth or decay is best gauged by the appearance or disappearance of the brood, or of certain castes which require an unusual amount of food for their maintenance. Favorable trophic conditions show themselves first in the increase and growth of the brood, and unfavorable conditions in the arrest of its growth and its disappearance. The second indication of prosperity in a colony is the increase in the number of large workers or soldiers and the appearance of virgin queens. Price and I have shown that incipient colonies of ants contain only minim workers and that the major and maxima forms and the queens appear only after
the colony has been in existence for some years. A decline in the food supply, continuing after the elimination of the larvae leads, as I have observed in artificial nests, to a suppression, first, of the soldier forms, and then of the males and supernumerary females. Thereupon, the smaller workers gradually die off, leaving only the queen surviving as the most resistant and most important individual in the colony. These facts indicate that there is an instinctive regulation of the personnel of the colony, but there are others which point in the same direction. In colonies infested with the Lomechusine beetles, if we accept Wasmann’s interpretation, there is an endeavor on the part of the ants to replace the workers, which the parasites have destroyed, by converting female larvae into workers. Like many form regulations, this effort fails, since it results in the nonviable pseudogynes, but it is, nevertheless, sufficiently successful to indicate the presence of regulation. Another phase of regulation is seen when the queen of the colony disappears. When this happens one of the workers may become gynæcoid and assume her functions, as Wasmann and I have found in Polyerergus colonies. In a few ants (Leptogenys and perhaps Diacamma and Champsomyrmex) this condition has become permanent, so that winged queens are no longer produced. Another case which shows the resemblance between instinct regulation on the one hand and form regulation and regeneration on the other has been observed by Janet. He found that if the workers of a very young colony be removed, the queen, instead of lapsing into the impassive, egg-laying stage characteristic of her sex in old colonies, proceeds at once to produce and rear another brood, thus restoring or regenerating the lost part of the colony, just as many mutilated animals and plants restore their missing organs. Many cases of parasitism among ants probably depend on the regulation of instincts. The killing of the queen Monomorium by her own workers in colonies that have been entered by Wheeleriella queens (Chapter XXVII), and the elimination of the host queen in many other cases, may depend on a tendency to preserve the individual that is able to reproduce on the smallest amount of food. This, I take it, is the significance of Forel’s hypothesis that the hosts prefer the small parasitic to their own much larger queens. Simpler examples of regulation in instinct are seen in the rebuilding in typical form of the disturbed nests and fungus-gardens of ants. In such cases a part of the nest is repaired with reference to the whole, just as if it were part of a living body undergoing regeneration.

Among recent writers Driesch (1903, 1908) is one of the few who have given some thought to the nature of the stimuli which set the instinct actions going. He distinguishes two kinds of stimuli, the
"simple," meaning "light of different wave-lengths, or heat, or moisture, or chemical compounds, etc.," and "individualized" stimuli, by which he understands "specific typical bodies," or objects. That many instinct actions are called into existence by simple stimuli admits of no doubt, but it is an open question whether this may be accomplished by individualized stimuli. In this connection Driesch (1908) says: "It is very important to notice that, if an actual case of a specific individualized stimulus of an instinct should become known, the limits of the possibility of a mechanical explanation would be exceeded. They would be exceeded and an autonomic or vitalistic factor would be at work, because we could by no means understand how the specifically combined or 'individualized' stimulus could be received by the organism in such a way as to become the cause of a specific and fixed series of motions in the organism. Supposing that any organism were specifically affected in its instinctive movements by the mere sight of any other typical organism, say of the same species, but of the other sex, and that this affection were the same, whether the organism which forms the stimulus were seen from before or from behind, or from the side or at any angle whatsoever, what would follow from such a fact? A machine could only be fitted to receive the specific complicated stimulus in a few typical positions, but how could a machine be imaginable if an infinite variety of aspects had the same invariable instinctive effect?" It seems probable, as Driesch suggests, that the sexual instincts, at least in the higher animals, may be set going by individualized stimuli. He cites in support of this supposition the observations of Mayer and Soule (1906) who found that female moths, unless deprived of their sight, would not copulate with male moths that had their wings removed. I am at a loss to see how the question raised by Driesch can be answered satisfactorily through a study of the ants. It is, of course, possible that many of their instincts are initiated by individualized stimuli, such as perceptions of the young in various stages and of the various castes as typical bodies, but as the dominant senses of ants are mechanical and chemical, it is at least equally probable that these objects may call forth appropriate instinctive reactions merely as tactile and olfactory sensations, and hence as simple stimuli.  

With a description of the instinct actions and their stimuli the ethological and physiological consideration of instinct is exhausted. I

*Probably many authors would be inclined to doubt the dependence of instincts on individualized stimuli on the ground that "purely inherited responses can be adapted only to certain broad, roughly distinguished classes of stimuli, for these are common to the experience of all members of the species" (Miss M. F. Washburn, 1908).
do not wish to intimate that this task has been accomplished in any group of animals, much less in the ants, which offer an endless field for further investigations. But it will be necessary before leaving the subject to admit openly what has been somewhat covertly assumed in the preceding pages—the existence of some factor which directs and coordinates the instinct actions in their adaptive course. Such a factor has been postulated under a variety of names by a host of thinkers and speculators on the subject of instinct. It is the "physical Cherubim" of the Rev. William Kirby in the passage cited above. Aristotle calls it the ψυχή αληθική, the school-men dubbed it the vis estimativa, Wasmann calls it the "sinnliches Erkenntniss- und Strebevermögen," Driesch calls it the "entelechy," while some modern psychologists, considering the matter from the introspective and therefore necessarily human standpoint, are satisfied to speak of it as the "instinct-feeling," "Trieb," "craving" or "impulse."

It is evident that the best way to know what instincts are is to experience, that is, to live them. Such experience shows that they arise as primitive volitions or cravings, or what the Germans call "Trieb"—a word for which we have no exact equivalent in the English language—and that they are inseparable from certain pleasurable or painful emotions. The question then suggests itself as to whether there is anything to indicate that ants experience similar internal states. We are, of course, working here merely with analogical inferences and probabilities, and may, therefore, incur the contempt of a whole school of German physiologists, but, as has been often stated by other authors, we must either proceed in this manner or abandon animal psychology altogether. I admit that it is very easy and very reprehensible to read one's own psychology into an animal, but after a patient, and, I believe, unprejudiced study of the ants, I have reached the same conclusions as Forel, Wasmann and others, namely, that these insects show unequivocal signs of possessing both feelings and impulses. In my opinion they experience both anger and fear, both affection and aversion, elation and depression in a simple, "blind" form, that is, without anything like the complex psychical accompaniment which these emotions arouse in us. Whether a stinging ant or hornet merely exhibits a pure reflex or has a feeling of anger besides, is a nice problem. I have unintentionally sat on nests of Vespa germanica and Pogonomyrmex barbatis, and while I have no doubt that I myself acted reflexly under the circumstances, it will take quite an army of physiologists to convince me that these creatures were acting as nothing but reflex machines.

As would be expected, instinct, in its teleological and unconscious aspect, has appealed very powerfully to the philosopher. He has, in
fact, been inclined to regard it as a brilliant manifestation of the principle conceived to lie at the heart of his particular metaphysical system. Thus Schopenhauer and many of his followers have regarded instinct as a vivid revelation of the "will to live," and von Hartmann finds in it a striking activity of the "unconscious." More recently Bergson has defined it as "divinatory sympathy." This is, of course, in no sense a scientific definition, but it suggests an interesting line of reflection. May it not enable us to understand why ants live as parasites on particular hosts, tolerate particular myrmecophiles or attend certain aphids and Lycænid larvae? On any other view these relationships, in which one organism acts as if it had an intimate and innate knowledge of the structure and activities of another, seem to depend too much on accident or chance. Bergson's conception may also explain why the investigator who puts himself into sympathetic rapport with an animal is more likely to interpret its behavior correctly than one who uses it merely as so much material for the solution of some laboratory problem.
CHAPTER XXX

THE PLASTIC BEHAVIOR OF ANTS


While there has long been unanimity of opinion in regard to the predominant rôle of instincts in the lives of ants, there is still considerable diversity of opinion in regard to the plasticity or modifiability of behavior in these insects. This plasticity is what Hobhouse calls "the power of an organism to adapt action to requirement without the guidance of a hereditary method of adjustment." It may also be defined as action on the basis of individual, i.e., ontogenetic experience ("historische Reaktionsbasis" of Driesch), and as such is commonly designated as "intelligence." Scholastic writers, like the Jesuit Wasmann, and a few modern psychologists, like Wundt, however, restrict this term to reasoning, or ratiocination, the highest type of plastic behavior. Though not in conformity with general usage, Wasmann's preference for using the term in this sense is not a serious matter, but when he persists in comprising under instinct also the modifiable activities of organisms, he clearly reveals his zeal to minimize the difference between automatic and plastic behavior on the one hand, and to increase the gap between the latter and ratiocination on the other, in order to save one of the old Thomistic dogmas concerning the nature of the human soul. While I am quite as unable as all his other non-scholastic critics (Forel, Emery, Escherich, Bethe, von Buttel-Reepen, Driesch, etc.) to accept Wasmann's terminology, I nevertheless find myself in rather close agreement with his interpretation of the facts of ant behavior. This interpretation, however, is not original with Wasmann, but is essentially that of Forel, as outlined in his earliest myrmecological work (1874) and since developed in a number of his publications.

In addition to instinct, two types of plastic behavior may be distin-
guished in ants: first, random behavior, like that observed by Jennings, Holmes, Yerkes and others in so many of the lower invertebrates and by Lloyd Morgan, Thorndike, Hobhouse and others in the higher animals. Random, or "trial and error" movements, occur, so to speak, in the very bosom of the instincts, as, for example, when an ant goes out to forage for food that has not as yet been located. She moves along slowly and in a very irregular course, palpating all the elevations and depressions in her path, till she happens on some bit of food. Then her demeanor suddenly changes, she seizes the food and returns with it rapidly to the nest. Of course, there are also random movements of a more primitive type, such as the righting movements, or those performed by an ant that is trying to extricate herself from some sticky substance, from the jaws of another ant, or from under a pebble or bit of earth that has fallen on her body. Such movements have the same teleological significance which they have in other animals: they greatly increase the likelihood of escape and survival, and through what Jennings calls the "readier resolution of physiological states after repetition" they have a prospective value in relation to future circumstances of a similar character.

A second type of behavior is that in which the organism when confronted with a new situation does not proceed to make random movements, but at once adapts itself to the situation by a process which some authors (Loeb, Turner) have called associative memory. The nature of this process is, of course, a matter of conjecture and on this account it is differently conceived by different authors. Before considering this matter; however, we may pass in review the main facts that compel us to postulate the existence of some form of memory in ants. These facts may be grouped under the heads of foraging and homing, recognition of nest mates and aliens, communication, imitation, cooperation and docility.

1. Foraging and Homing.—Forel was the first to show that ants are guided in their foraging and homing excursions very largely by their sense of contact-odor, i.e., that they recognize by means of their antennal sense-organs the odor-form, and hence also the direction of the trails laid down by their own feet and those of their nest mates. He showed also that some blind or small-eyed ants, like the Dorylines and Lasius, ants which habitually forage in files, stick very close to their odoriferous trails and therefore rely mainly or altogether on their topochemical sense in finding their way back to the nest, whereas others, like the species of Formica, use their eyes as well, and therefore often abandon the sinuosities of the trail and make straight for their feeding grounds or for the nest. These observations have been
fully confirmed by Wasmann. Lubbock, Viehmeyer and, more recently, Turner, have found some evidence that ants may also be guided by the direction of the light rays. Turner, especially, has emphasized this point, but he seems to overlook the fact that it can have only subordinate significance, as many of our ants forage as readily at night or in the dark store-rooms of houses, the holds of ships, etc., as they do in the daylight, that many tropical and desert species are nocturnal at certain seasons, and that others are permanently nocturnal or hypogaeic. We are compelled, therefore, to regard the topochemical, or contact-odor sense as all important in the foraging and homing behavior of ants, although it must be admitted that other senses may be relied upon to some extent. Bethe (1898), with a rather superficial knowledge of the habits of ants and of the literature pertaining to them, has endeavored to show that these insects follow the odor trail from and to the nest in a purely reflex manner and therefore neither exhibit nor require even a rudiment of memory. Like a true physiologist, he selected for his studies the first ants that came to hand—*Lasius niger*, *L. emarginatus* and *Myrmica scabrinodis*—all species which adhere closely to their trails and, overlooking Forel's important studies, postulated a "polarization" of the paths as more acceptable to the scientific mind than any explanation involving a psychical factor. Wasmann, in a comprehensive work on the mental endowment of ants (1899g), has adequately demonstrated the falsity of Bethe's position. To this work and to Forel's controversial articles (1900-'01, 1903e, etc.) the reader is referred for the further arguments on the subject. Here it will suffice to quote a passage in which Forel gives some of his reasons for assuming the existence of memory in the insects under discussion: "An ant may perform an arduous journey of thirty meters from her ruined nest, there find a place suitable for building another nest, return, orienting herself by means of her antennæ, seize a companion who forthwith rolls herself about her abductrix, and carry her to the newly selected spot. The latter then also finds her way to the original nest, and each carry back another companion, etc. The memory of the suitable nature of the locality for establishing a new nest must exist in the brain of the first ant, or she would not return, laden with a companion, to this very spot. The slave-making ants (*Polyergus*) undertake predatory expeditions, led by a few workers, who for days and weeks previously have been searching the neighborhood for nests of *Formica fusca*. The ants often lose their way, remain standing, and hunt about for a long time till one or the other finds the topochemical trail and indicates to the others the proper direction by rapidly pushing ahead. Then the pupæ of the
Formica fusca nest which they have found are brought up from the depths of the galleries, appropriated and dragged home, often a distance of forty meters or more. If the plundered nest still contains pupae, the robbers return on the same or following days and carry off the remainder, but if there are no pupae left they do not return. How do the Polyergus know whether there are pupae remaining? It can be demonstrated that smell could not attract them from such a distance, and this is even less possible for sight or any other sense. Memory alone, i.e., the recollection that many pupae still remain behind in the plundered nest can induce them to return.” The same reasoning, of course, applies to the cases of simple foraging, and the attendance of ants day after day on the same plant-lice.

2. Recognition of Nest-mates and Aliens.—Bethe has also endeavored to show that the mutual recognition of ants is a mere chemoreflex, without a trace of sensation or perception, but in this he has failed even more signally than in his reflex interpretation of the homing behavior. The existence of mixed colonies like those of the slave-holders and other social parasites shows very clearly that ants, both young and adult, not only learn to accept alien ants as friends, but may actually treat as enemies members of their own colony from which they were separated as pupae. These facts and their bearing on Bethe’s contention have been clearly analyzed by Wasmann as follows: “An ant could be born only with the amicable reaction to the odoriferous secretions of those ants with whom she is connected by descent. No one would be willing to state that the amicable reaction towards any kind of odor of an alien colony or alien species is innate, for this would patently contradict the observed facts. Therefore we can regard as innate only the amicable reaction of an ant towards the family odor of her own species and her own colony, from which she is descended, but not the amicable reaction to the odor of alien ant colonies and species, which are in fact recognized as “enemies” by their different odors. Now the auxiliaries that are reared in the colonies of predatory ants react amicably to the odor of the alien species (the so-called mistresses in the colony), but are hostile to the odor of their own sisters, from whose colony they were kidnapped as pupae. Therefore the amicable reaction of ants to the odor of their own colony is not innate, but is acquired individually by the single ants. This individual acquisition occurs during the period in which the young, freshly developed worker begins to harden and take on her adult coloration. During this period her own definite individual odor first develops, and during this period there develops in her antennae the olfactory sense, by means of which she is able to distinguish the odor of her own nest-mates from those
of other ants. Hence the ant's ability to distinguish between "friend" and "enemy" does not depend on inherited reflexes, but on the sensory perception of the olfactory impressions she receives during the first days of her life as an imaginal worker." These facts have been placed beyond doubt by the experiments of Forel, Wasmann, Miss Fiehde, myself and others. The ease with which, as I have shown, colonies will adopt adult queens of alien species, and the immediate adoption of strange myrmecophiles by some of the ants observed by Wasmann, show that reflexes are very far from offering a satisfactory explanation of the facts and that we must suppose ants to be capable of remembering odors and of regulating their behavior accordingly.

3. Communication.—We are not surprised to find among both scientific and lay observers a very general belief in the existence of some power of communication among ants, for the social organization of these insects is alone sufficient to suggest such a belief. That it is of long standing is shown by several passages in the ancient writers, and by Dante's simile (Purg. xxvi, 34):

"Così per entro loro schiera bruna
S'ammusa l'una con l'altra formica,
Forse a espiar lor via e lor fortuna."

I believe that no one who has watched ants continuously and under a variety of conditions will doubt that they actually communicate with one another. This is clearly indicated by the rapidity with which they congregate on a spot where one of their number has found food, or retire from any spot in which a few of their number have been killed or injured. That there is often a desire on the part of ants to coerce their companions into performing certain acts is shown by the way in which they drag their queens about by the mandibles, or transport one another bodily to new nests or back to the old nest. And the compliance or obedience of the ants thus treated shows that they grasp the meaning of this conduct on the part of their nest-mates. Forel, Wasmann and myself have also interpreted the rapid antennary vibrations, the minatory divarication of the jaws, the butting with the head, the supplicatory posture of the body, the striking of the floor of the nest with the gaster, etc., as so many signs which may be understood and acted on by other ants. In Chapter XXVIII I gave some reasons for concluding that stridulation, at least in the Myrmicinae and Ponerinae, also serves as an important method of communication. I grant that one is in very imminent danger of falling into gross anthropomorphisms in interpreting these various movements, but they are so clearly associated with certain needs in the lives of ants and, moreover, meet with such uniform response from other members of the colony, that they
soon come to have the same significance to the observer as the characteristic attitudes and cries, or what have been called "the expressions of the emotions" in our domestic animals. Of course, all the signs or signals employed by ants and other animals in conveying their impressions to other members of their respective species are concrete and instinctive, or what Bergson calls "adherent," and not "movable" or rational signs like those of language and mathematics.

4. Imitation and Coöperation.—These are very closely connected with communication, for the object of much of the interchange of impressions in an ant colony is to secure coöperation through imitation. This is clearly observed in the carrying out of foraging expeditions, like those of the slave-makers and Dorylines, in bringing in large and unwieldy booty, in the removal of the brood when danger threatens, in the construction of nests, aphid-tents and covered ways, in defending the colony against intruders, in storing seeds in particular chambers, in building and cultivating fungus-gardens, in restraining the males and females from leaving the nests for their nuptial flight till the propitious time arrives, etc. Many of these activities can be studied in artificial nests. Under such conditions one usually sees a particular activity started by one or a few workers, which have more initiative or respond more quickly to a change of conditions than the great bulk of the colony. The movements of such individuals attract the attention of others in their immediate neighborhood and these forthwith proceed to imitate their more alert companions. Then the activity spreads like a conflagration till it has seized on most or all the members of the community. Imitation and coöperation of this description, which is really a form of learning by experience, is best seen in a colony that is moving into an artificial nest placed in the Forel arena or on a Lubbock island (see Appendix A). Sometimes it is difficult to decide whether a particular change of condition has simultaneously stimulated a great number or only a few workers to perform an appropriate reaction. Such doubtful cases are most liable to arise when the stimulus acts continuously and for a long time, as when a colony is situated in an unfavorable locality, or in one that makes it necessary to construct a peculiar form of nest. Then it may be doubtful whether the nest modification is initiated by one or a few workers that are imitated by the remainder, or whether all or nearly all the workers simultaneously alter the style of architecture. Even in such cases, however, I am inclined to regard the former supposition as the more probable. There has been much discussion as to whether or not coöperation among ants extends to the succoring of companions in danger or distress. Reuter (1888) claims to have found positive evidence of such acts of sym-
pathy, but the observations of most myrmecologists have yielded only
doubtful results. My own observations are negative, except in a single
instance. Several years ago I kept a large colony of *Eciton schmitti*
in a Lubbock nest surrounded by a water moat. Workers repeatedly
fell into the water and on several occasions I saw other workers reach
down and pull them out. Forel, Lubbock and Wasmann relate instances
of ants nursing and caring for crippled or mutilated companions. But
if we reject all such observations as too infrequent or doubtful to have
any value, there still remain a great many easily observed cases that
can be explained only on the supposition that ants respond quickly by
imitating the purposeful activities which they perceive in their nest-
mates. The stimulus in these cases would seem to be highly individ-
ualized, to use Driesch's expression, and entirely unlike those which
call out reflex and instinct actions. By certain critics of the general
position here taken much has been made of the numerous cases in
which ants of the same colony work at cross-purposes, or in opposition
to one another. Such cases naturally arise on account of the powerful
initiative of the individual ants, but they eventually resolve themselves
into cooperation, or, at any rate, into a lack of opposition, through a
weakening or reversal of the tactics of one of the contending parties.
These contentions are, in fact, merely slight temporary disturbances or
maladjustments analogous to those which are continually occurring
among the different organs and tissues of a Metazoan body.

5. Docility.—Although the facts recorded in the preceding para-
graphs indicate very clearly that ants are capable of learning by expe-
rience, and that they must, therefore, possess memory, this becomes
even more evident when it is shown that they can actually be trained
like many of the higher animals. Wasmann (1899) succeeded in the
course of a few days in training workers of *Formica rufibarbis* and
*fusca* to come for food to his finger, from which they at first fled.
Ernst (1905) obtained similar results with a *fusca* worker, which he
taught to come out of a test-tube and take food from his finger while
it was in motion. Turner (1907b) has recently described some experi-
ments in which *Myrmica punctiventris* and *F. subsericea* trained them-
selves to drop from a stage with a pupa and to carry it to the nest.
These ants then permitted him to replace them on the stage with a
pair of tweezers. This act was repeated over and over again. More
interesting is the following experiment in which he taught *F. subsericea*
to use a section lifter as an elevator on which to pass to and from a
stage connected with an island nest by an incline: "On this occasion
two marked workers, $A$ and $B$, were being experimented upon at the
same time. The one I have called $A$ readily learned the way down
and up the incline, but to B this was an insoluble problem. It con-
tinued for a long time to move at random over the stage, reaching down
over first one edge and then over another, as though it were reaching
for a support that was not to be found; but nothing prompted it to
pass down the incline. In experiments where the time required to
learn the trick was not the point to be investigated, I had sometimes
helped ants to learn the way by forcing them with forceps or spatula
to move in the right direction. I thought I would thus help B to learn.
So with my forceps I pushed it along. Several times I succeeded in
going it to the incline, but nothing that I did would induce it to go
down. I had failed, but this was not the first time I had failed in
similar attempts with other ants.

"Prompted by another thought, I shoved the section-lifter under
the ant and transferred it to the island. The ant then stepped off and
carried the pupa into the nest. As soon as B returned to the island, I
shoved the section-lifter under it and transferred it to the stage. B
stepped off and picked up another pupa. With the section-lifter I
again transferred it to the island. After this had been repeated several
times, the moment I presented the section-lifter, whether on the island
or on the stage, the ant immediately mounted it and rested quietly
thereon until it had been removed to the stage or to the island; then
it stepped off and picked up a pupa or else went into the nest. I
usually held the section-lifter from two to four millimeters above the
surface of the island or stage. In this manner the industrious creature
passed to and from the stage about fifty times in something less than
two hours.

"Whenever I presented the section-lifter to other ants of the same
colony they would attack it or avoid it, or else mount it and roam
over blade and handle and sometimes even my hand. When the same
section-lifter was presented to A (the one that all this time had been
carrying pupae down the incline) it would avoid it and pass on.

"Thus I had two individuals of the same colony, at the same time
and under identical external conditions, responding to the same stimulus
in quite different ways. To the one the incline had no psychic value,
to the other it was a stimulus to pass to and from the stage. To the
one the section-lifter was a repellent stimulus, to the other an attractive
stimulus. Each had acquired a different way of accomplishing the
same purpose and each had retained and utilized what it had gained
by experience."

While the foregoing considerations leave little doubt that ants have
memory, in the general sense of the word, it is, for obvious reasons,
no easy matter to form a satisfactory conception of the psychic proc-
esses which this involves. At least three different views may be entertained on the subject. First, it may be said that ants not only have images or ideas as the result of sensory stimulation, but are able to recall them at will, and to refer them to the past. This would imply that ants, like man, not only have memory (μνημη in the Aristotelian, memoria sensitiva, in the scholastic sense) but also recollection (ἀναμνησθεὶς, reminiscencia). Second, it may be maintained that ants have images only as the result of sensory stimulation, but are unable to call them up at will, much less to refer them to the absent or to the past. This would imply that the insects have sensory association but not recollection. Third, it may be maintained that ants are unable to form images or ideas and are hence devoid of memory. This is really Bethe's view, which will not be discussed, as it obviously contradicts the facts. Of the two other views I believe that the second does not go further than the facts warrant, and is far and away the more plausible. I am unable to find anything in the observations above recorded, or in many others, which the limits of this volume prevent me from presenting, that would compel us to believe that ants can recollect in the true sense of the word. There is, indeed, much doubt as to the existence of such a capacity even in the higher animals (Thorndike). "We must admit," as Miss Washburn says, "that it is not easy to prove the possession by any animal of memory in the sense of having ideas of absent objects, rather than in the sense of behaving differently to present objects because of past experience with them. The dog shows clearly that he remembers his master in the latter sense by displaying joy at the sight of him. Can we be sure that he has remembered him in the former sense during his absence; that is, that he has had a memory image of him?" Although it seems to be necessary to assume that ants have images or ideas, it must not be supposed for a moment that these bear anything but the remotest resemblance to our own. The fact that the ant's sense-impressions are, almost exclusively, those of odors, contacts and vibrations, make it evident that her mental imagery must differ enormously from ours, in which visual and auditory images luxuriate to the almost complete exclusion of others. To appreciate this difference we have only to contrast with our dull powers of olfaction the ants' exquisite perception, recognition and association of odors. A dog that is born deaf and nearly blind would probably resemble an ant rather closely in its psychical processes, but would be inferior in lacking the ant's fine tactile sense and her power of associating tactile with olfactory impressions.

If this moderate estimate of the memory of ants be correct, it follows that they must be incapable of reasoning—of "focusing the
wherefore," to use Lloyd Morgan's expression, for a mere association of sense impressions is not deducing conclusions from premises. There are in the literature, however, many startling accounts in which ants are described as reasoning like human beings, or as acting in such a manner as to make any other interpretation of their behavior seem impossible. These accounts may be separated into two classes; those involving a demonstrable misinterpretation of facts and those whose main or only value at the present time is to suggest lines of experimental investigation. In the first class belong such cases as the following:

Several writers have described ants as building earthen bridges over sticky bands that at first prevented them from climbing trees (Leuckart), over water moats surrounding their nests (Turner, 1907b), or over the surface of honey placed in their nests (Ern. André, 1894). In each of these cases the observer, a trained zoologist, regarded the act as due to reasoning, or, at least, as the result of a "practical judgment." In reality, however, nothing more than a reflex or simple instinct was manifested in any of these cases. If the observers had had a more intimate acquaintance with ants, they would have known that these insects almost invariably throw earth, empty cocoons, or particles of debris on any liquid or viscid substance in their immediate environment. Such actions result in covering the whole surface of a small amount of liquid, so that the ants are able to cross over to the other side on what was never intended to be a bridge. That this is the true interpretation of the foregoing observations is shown by experiments like those performed by Wasmann. He placed near a nest of Formica sanguinea a watch glass full of water, with a number of pupae on an island in the middle. The ants threw sand into the water till they had made a bridge to the island and then carried away the pupae. Later he placed near the nest a watch glass full of water, but without pupae, and the ants filled it with grains of sand as before! The significance of this reflex or simple instinct which may be observed in any artificial nest in which the ants are provided with liquid food and a little earth or detritus, is not altogether clear. Escherich (1906) interprets it as an instinct of cleanliness, but I am inclined to believe that it represents an effective method of dealing with water that may soak into the galleries of the earthen nests during showers.

Another case that has been interpreted as an example of reasoning is the behavior of the fungus-growing Atta sexdens queen while she is founding her colony, and of the workers of this species during inundations. These are such complicated bits of behavior that von Ihering (1898) can scarcely be blamed for saying that the insects are "fully
conscious of the fact that the cutting of leaves is not sufficient, but that a portion of the fungus mass itself is necessary for the growth of the fungus garden.” And yet a critical examination of the facts since brought to light by J. Huber and related in Chapter XVIII, shows that only typical instincts are manifested. The queen feeds on fungus hyphae before leaving the nest for her nuptial flight, and as this food is solid, it is packed into the hypopharyngeal pocket, which also receives the dirt scraped from her body by her strigils. The pellet thus formed is not expelled till she has excavated her cell in the ground. Then it is cast out like the hypopharyngeal pellets of other ants. It contains enough extraneous substance to cause the hyphae to proliferate and the presence of these evidently stimulates the ant to attend to their cultivation and to manure them with the only substance at her disposal, namely, her feces. There is no point in this series of activities where it is necessary to postulate a process of reasoning on the part of the insect. The saving of portions of the fungus garden by the workers when the nest is inundated is also quite as instinctive as the rescuing of the larvae and pupae by these and other insects under the same circumstances.

Here belongs also the following case of a wasp described by Erasmus Darwin (“Zoonomia,” I, p. 183): “One circumstance I shall relate which fell under my own eye and showed the power of reason in a wasp, as it is exercised among men. A wasp on a gravel walk had caught a fly nearly as large as himself; kneeling on the ground I observed him separate the tail and the head from the body part, to which the wings were attached. He then took the body part in his paws, and rose about two feet from the ground with it; but a gentle breeze wafting the wings of the fly turned him around in the air, and he settled again with his prey upon the gravel. I then distinctly observed him cut off with his mouth, first one of the wings, and then the other, after which he flew away with it unmolested by the wind. Go, thou sluggard, learn arts and industry from the bee, and from the ant! Go, proud reasoner, and call the worm thy sister!” Some knowledge of the ways of wasps would have taught Erasmus Darwin that they instinctively cut off the legs, wings, head, etc., of their insect prey before carrying the more nutritious portion of it to their young, and that they perform these activities with machine-like regularity whether the wind happens to be blowing or not. This case may be regarded as the type of a large number of ant, bee and wasp stories. The recorded facts are often perfectly accurate, but the inferences are false and misleading, owing to ignorance or insufficient knowledge of the normal behavior of the animals under consideration.
The second class of accounts that are supposed to demonstrate the power of reasoning in ants cannot be adequately considered in this place. It must suffice to give examples of the many references to ants dropping food from high places to other ants at a lower level, and to ants themselves dropping from ceilings onto tables when they have been prevented from climbing up for food. Of the former behavior the following anecdote recorded by Romanes ("Animal Intelligence," 1892, p. 99) is an example: "In Herr Gredler's monastery, one of the monks had been accustomed to put food regularly on his window sill for ants coming up from the garden. In consequence of Herr Gredler's communications, he took it into his head to put the bait for the ants, pounded sugar, in an old ink-stand, and hung this by a string to a cross-piece of the window and left it hanging freely. A few ants were in the bait. They soon found their way out over the string with the grains of sugar and so their way back to their friends. Before long a procession was arranged on the new road from the window sill along the string to the spot where the sugar was, and so things went on for two days, nothing fresh occurring. But one day the procession stopped at the old feeding place on the window sill and took the food thence without going up to the pendent sugar jar. Closer observation revealed that about a dozen of the rogues in the jar above were busily and unwearyingly carrying the grains of sugar to the edge of the pot and throwing them over to their comrades down below." Turner (1907b), who quotes this observation, attempts to explain the separation of the continuous procession of workers into two coöperating companies as due to the accidental falling of sugar heaped on the edge of the jar. I am inclined to believe that the ants in the jar were burrowing in the sugar and that they acted just as if the bottle were partially filled with sand. Under such circumstances they would certainly carry the excavated sand to the edge of the bottle and throw it down. But this is mere supposition, and both in this and in similar cases which I have met with in the literature, the data are insufficient to prove rational coöperation.

Of the many observations on ants dropping from ceilings in order to reach food, I will cite only the following, which was made by a young entomologist, Mr. E. S. G. Titus (1905) on the Argentine ant (Iridomyrmex humilis) in New Orleans: "An experiment was tried with some sugar syrups on a table which stood against the wall. The ants came up the wall to reach the table. When it was removed from the wall they came up the legs. Next morning the legs were wrapped with cloths soaked in coal-oil and the table removed some distance from the wall. That day the ants were persistent in their efforts to reach
the food, constantly climbing up and down the legs, but only a few attempted to cross the oiled bandages and these were not successful. The following morning the table was well covered with ants. They had gone up the wall over the first trail and passed on up to the ceiling, then over that diagonally until they were over the table, when they dropped down onto it. Very few ants were noticed returning from the ceiling, but a constant stream of them was going up. At the point where the table had formerly touched the wall quite a number of ants were clustered, evidently at a loss to know where to go. The ants, on leaving the table, usually went down one of the legs and were crossing the coal-oil bandages with apparently little or no injury to themselves. Some dropped directly from the table top to the floor.” The facts related by Titus are not to be questioned, but the same criticism applies to this case as to the preceding: the whole series of events was not observed. Moreover, although ants are often seen to drop from plants or walls, either voluntarily or when disturbed, we know nothing as yet about the various instinctive adaptations which such behavior may involve. It may be a much more frequent method among ants of clearing vertical distances than has been supposed. Hence, I believe that instead of attributing such acts to reasoning, it would be wiser to suspend judgment till careful experimental data are available.

In conclusion it may be noted that all the activities of ants, their reflexes and instincts, as well as their plastic behavior, gain in precision with repetition. In other words, all their activities may be secondarily mechanized to form habits, in the restricted sense of the word. This is tantamount to saying that even the reflexes and instincts are not so stereotyped but that they may become more so by exercise during the lifetime of the individual. And not only do ants thus form habits, but, as several myrmecologists have observed, these habits when once formed are often hard to break. It is certain that many instincts among the higher animals are at first incomplete or indefinite and are guided into their proper course by stimuli that affect the organism at a later period. This is probably true also of many formicine instincts. There is little doubt, moreover, that the more fixed or stereotyped instincts are phylogenetically the older. This fact, and the close superficial resemblance of habits to instincts, has led many authors to derive the latter from the former. The views on the origin of automatic behavior, however, are so diverse and conflicting that they cannot be satisfactorily considered without entering into a discussion of the doctrines of the Neodarwinians, Neolamarckians and those who believe in coincident, or organic selection. In my opinion we have little to gain at the present time from such a discussion. As Bergson says: “It is
a remarkable fact that the scientific theories of instinct keep oscillating back and forth between the *intelligent* and the merely *intelligible*, that is to say, between the likening of instinct to a 'lapsed' intelligence and the reduction of instinct to a pure mechanism. Each of these two explanatory systems triumphs in its criticism of the other, the former when it proves to us that instinct cannot be a pure reflex, the latter when it asserts that instinct is something different from intelligence, even when this has lapsed into the unconscious. Does not this mean that we have here two symbolisms equally acceptable from certain points of view, and from other points of view equally inapplicable to their object?" It is, in fact, quite futile to attempt a phylogenetic derivation of the automatic from the plastic activities or *vice versa*, for both represent primitive and fundamental tendencies of living protoplasm, and hence of all organisms. As instinct, one of these tendencies reaches its most complex manifestation in the Formicidae, while the other blossoms in the intelligent activities of men.
APPENDIX A

METHODS OF COLLECTING, MOUNTING AND STUDYING ANTS

Most of the methods of collecting and preserving ants, both in the entomological cabinet and as living objects in artificial nests, are so simple that they would be devised by almost anyone who undertakes a serious study of these insects. Nevertheless it may save some of my readers, who may wish to study ants, considerable time and experimentation if I give a condensed account of the methods I have found to be most useful.

The collecting outfit (Figs. 280 and 281), which may be readily carried in a large pocket, or in a small bag such as hunters use for ammunition, consists of the following: a small but very strong trowel, or a short, broad chisel, for digging into the nests, a pair of tweezers with rounded, flat and smooth, i.e., not transversely ridged points, for picking up the insects, a number of homoeopathic or shell vials of strong glass, three quarters full of commercial alcohol (about 95 per cent.)¹ for preserving the specimens, some absorbent cotton, blank labels, a large handkerchief or napkin, and some small bags made of strong

¹Wood alcohol, denatured alcohol or even strong whiskey may be used as a preservative if commercial alcohol cannot be obtained. Formalin should be avoided as it makes the specimens very rigid and refractory and has other disagreeable qualities.
cloth. Small wads of the cotton are used for separating the specimens from different colonies in the same vial of alcohol, so that there may be no possible confusion of the often very closely related species and varieties. The handkerchief is spread upon the ground and small nests may be dug up hastily and placed in the middle of it and broken apart. The ants can then be readily seen and captured before they can reach the periphery of the cloth and escape. The bags are used as temporary receptacles for living colonies or portions of them, to be transferred to artificial nests by a method to be described below, or for transporting ants from one region and dumping them near the nests of the same or other species in other localities. In the battles which inevitably ensue the ants display many instinctive peculiarities that might otherwise be overlooked. Forel has used this method with great success in his studies of the Swiss ants. In order to secure material for such experiments, or for artificial nests, the ants, together with their brood and portions of their nest, are hastily shoveled into the bag, which is then tied with a string and carried without shaking. It is well before filling the bag to put in it a few twigs or leaves to prevent the pebbles and earth from moving about and crushing the ants. If several days must elapse before the contents of the bag can be transferred to an artificial nest, the earth
should be occasionally moistened with water, or the ants will die. Large, wide-mouthed bottles or vials that can be plugged with cotton are often more useful than bags, especially for the accommodation of small colonies. Each colony from which specimens are taken, either for the cabinet or for the artificial nest, should be given a number and all the important data concerning it should be entered in a note book.

Nothing is easier than to find ants in the fields and woods. The most convenient place to seek them is under stones and logs, but many specimens rarely or never nest in such situations and must be sought under or in bark, in rotten wood, hollow twigs, old galls and rootstocks, in vegetable mould, about the roots of plants, or in the open soil of the woods and fields. The nests of many small species which form diminutive colonies, are extremely difficult to find unless individual workers are first located on the soil or vegetation and then carefully followed while they are returning to their nest.

For study large series, illustrating all the obtainable phases in a colony, should be mounted dry, and the greatest care should be taken to avoid mixing specimens from different nests and localities. Ants should always be carded and in no case—no matter how large the specimens—should they have pins run through their thoraces. Some myrmecologists prefer to glue the specimens on small triangular, or rather trapezoidal pieces of card, in such a position that the body of the ant lies at right angles to the long axis of the card and across its shortest side, which is turned to the left and should be broad enough to support at least the posterior portion of the thorax, the whole pedicel and the base of the gaster. A stout insect pin is then run through the middle of the broad right-hand end of the card. It is convenient and economical to mount three such specimens, one above the other, on the same pin. The size of the trapezoidal cards must, of course, be adapted to the size of the ants. Other myrmecologists prefer to glue the ants singly, or in a series, on a square or oblong card, and to run the pin through the card behind instead of to the right of the specimens. I would earnestly insist on the advantages of mounting ants in one or both of these ways because the method of pinning them, as if they were flies or bees, entails an enormous loss of valuable material in collections. Ants mounted in this way are almost sure, sooner or later, to break at the neck or pedicel and lose the head or gaster, or both. Many specimens in the great number of collections that have been sent to me for study from various parts of the United States have been rendered worthless by this vicious method of mounting. No matter how thoroughly one may know our ants, there is little satisfaction in identifying a species which is represented only by a thorax or
a few legs, the former destroyed by being spitted on a pin, and the whole enveloped in a mass of grease and verdigris.

While collecting ants and making every endeavor to secure all their phases, it is important to collect all the parasites and myrmecophiles that may occur in their nests. These insects are most easily found in the early spring when they seek the warmth in the upper galleries, or

![Diagram of Janet nest of porous material such as plaster, terra cotta, soft stone, etc. (Janet.) B, Seen from above with covers removed; A, in vertical section: a, block with three chambers; b, water chamber which is filled once or twice a week; Ch. 1, dark and very moist chamber; Ch. 2, dark and somewhat humid chamber inhabited by the ants; Ch. 3, dry chamber, exposed to light and containing the manger; g, communicating galleries in the walls separating the chambers. v¹, large plate of glass covering all the chambers, pierced with a hole (c) over the center of each chamber; v², three separate pieces of glass which close the openings in the large plate; op, opaque cover (felt, cardboard or plaster) serving to darken chambers 1 and 2; s, plate of glass placed under the nest to prevent the moisture of the nest from reaching the table on which it stands.

on the lower surfaces of stones. They should always be mounted on the same pins with one or more specimens of their host. The same rule should be followed in the case of all parasitic or inquilinous ants, which are also myrmecophiles. I find it best not to mix the myrmecophiles in with the general collection of ants, but to keep them by themselves in a systematically arranged collection, in which the ants are represented merely as hosts.

The student will find that the new Zeiss pocket microscope, consisting of a couple of lenses of rather long focal distance and magnifying some sixteen and twenty-seven diameters respectively suffices for the taxonomic study of most ants. In the examination of some of the smaller species, however, especially in counting the antennal and palpal
joints, the ommatidia and teeth of the mandibles, it will be found necessary to use a compound microscope.

I am convinced that there is no form of entomological work more fascinating than collecting ants, for these insects are everywhere abundant and no two of their colonies ever present the same picture to the observer. Hence one is always coming upon new and interesting facts in the commonest species, and even in localities in which one has been diligently collecting for years. Certainly there is no more delightful avocation for the man who desires a not too strenuous employment that will keep him in the open air. Many years ago Moggridge called attention to the value of myrmecology to the valetudinarian and the convalescent, and it is surprising that physicians have so seldom recommended it to patients who need to spend much time out of doors and to have some intellectual interest that will make this seem worth while.

Although field study is absolutely essential to an understanding of the taxonomy and ethology of ants, it must be supplemented by observations on colonies kept in artificial nests. And while such colonies are necessarily prevented from manifesting all their instincts in a perfectly normal manner, this disadvantage is more than outweighed by the great ease and thoroughness with which nearly all of their activities can be observed. Artificial nests must, in fact, be used in all studies on the relations of myrmecophiles to their hosts and the behavior of ants towards their young.

Various artificial nests have been devised, but these are all of two types—those with and those without earth. Ants kept in nests of the former type are, of course, removed from one of the most important elements of their natural environment. Nevertheless, this does not interfere with their other activities; the excavating instinct simply remains in abeyance without inconveniencing the insects. Naturally, the nests containing earth were the first to be devised and the conclusion that this substance can be dispensed with is of comparatively recent date.

The earliest account of an artificial nest I have seen is in Swammerdam’s “Biblia Naturæ.” This remarkable entomologist placed the ants in a quantity of earth in a flat dish and surrounded this with a strip of wax, which was five fingers broad, hollowed out and filled with water. This served as a moat and prevented the ants from escaping. A modification of Swammerdam’s nest has been recently recommended and will often prove to be useful when it is necessary to construct a nest on very short notice. It consists of a dish containing some earth covered with a pane of glass and set in a larger dish containing water.
Huber (1810) describes two artificial nests which he used in his researches. One of these consisted of a box mounted on legs, not unlike those of a sewing machine, and covered with a large bell-jar.

Fig. 283. Bases of Fielde nests of different sizes made to fit into shelves of portable case. (Miss Fielde.) The shaded portions represent the walls of the nest built up with strips of glass. $S$, slice of sponge.

A colony of *Formica rufa* that was placed in the box built up its mound of sticks under the bell-jar and tunneled in the earth of the box. The
other nest consisted of a wooden frame twenty inches long and ten inches broad, with glass on the two sides separated by a distance of ten lines. The space thus enclosed was subdivided into two equal and very flat compartments by a perforated sheet of tin placed parallel with the glass panes. The space between the glass and tin on each side was filled with earth. An opening with a sliding door was made at one end of the frame, to permit the ants to enter and leave the apparatus, and there was also an opening in the top of the frame for the introduction of food (honey) and water. These were simply poured upon the soil. The frame was placed vertically on the ground.

Lubbock combined the water-moat of Swammerdam with Huber's frame nest, which he placed horizontally and simplified by omitting the perforated tin and bringing the two panes of glass close together. A detailed description of this nest, with a figure, is given on pp. 2-4 of Lubbock's well-known book on "Ants, Bees and Wasps."

Wasmann uses a Lubbock nest, to which he attaches Florence flasks and other glassware to serve as play-grounds, dumping-grounds and mangers for the ants. Although he dispenses with the water-moat, his nest is clumsy and not readily moved about. He has published figures and descriptions of it in several of his papers, notably in the one entitled: "Die psychischen Fähigkeiten der Ameisen," 1899, Pl. I.

Janet's nest (1897d) differs considerably from the types that have just been described (Fig. 282). It consists of an oblong block of colored plaster of Paris, containing a series of disk-like depressions in its upper portion. One of these, isolated at the end of the series, is smaller than the others, and is used as a water reservoir, the others, which are inhabited by the ants, are connected with one another by short galleries and are covered with glass plates and in part also with opaque covers. The water diffuses from the reservoir through the porous plaster block in such a manner that there is a gradation of moisture in the different chambers. This permits the ants to station themselves and their brood at the spot where the conditions are most favorable. Janet has also constructed some large and elegant plaster nests that can be hung on the walls like pictures, but these did not prove to be successful, owing to the crumbling of the moist plaster.

Viehmeyer (1905c) has improved on the Janet nest by enclosing it in a zinc box and adding metal strips across the top for the purpose of preventing the glass covers from slipping. In this form the nest, though rather clumsy and heavy, can be more readily transported.

Miss Fiede has devised a very useful glass-nest, which is compact and light and has many advantages over the nests of the Lubbock and Janet patterns. This she first described in 1900, but more recently
she has published more detailed directions for its construction. These I give in her own words, together with some of her figures (Figs. 283–285):

"The floor of the nest is a pane of double-thick, transparent glass. This is laid upon very thick, white blotting-paper, giving an elastic bed to the pane of glass and the best background for observation of the ants. The paper has just the area of the glass, but is not fastened thereto.

"The outer walls of the nest are laid a quarter of an inch, or six millimeters, from the edge of the pane. They consist of two strips of double-thick glass, a half inch, or thirteen millimeters, wide, the one

superimposed on the other. Both are held in place by crockery cement. The wall is smoothly laid up, with no interstices where an ant may hide or escape.

"The partitions are double the width of the wall, which they otherwise copy. At one end of every partition a space is left whereby the ants may pass from room to room. This passageway is covered by a thin celluloid film, or a piece of mica. It is desirable that this covering be transparent, so that the passageway underneath it may be scanned from above, on lifting the end of the towelling which is to overlay it.

"After the cement is well dried, the edge of the floor-pane and the outside of the walls are covered with a cambric impervious to light. Cloth serves better for this purpose than does paper, the edges of the nest being subject to much handling. Le Page's or some other good liquid glue is used for securing the fabric upon the walls.

"The walls and partitions are topped by Turkish towelling of a sleazy sort, folded over one layer of cotton wadding so that the edges

Fig. 284. Fielde nest of three chambers seen from above, with opaque covers removed. (Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and Dr. O. S. Strong.)
METHODS OF COLLECTING AND STUDYING ANTS

553

of the strip of towelling meet in the center of the underside of the
wadding. The wadding is cut to the same width as the wall or the
partition. The towelling is just twice the width of the wadding, and
its edges are basted evenly together, making a cushion of even thick-
ness. It serves the double purpose of admitting air into the nest and
preventing the escape of the ants between the roof and its supports.
It is held taut and is made level; it is fitted snugly at the corners,
exhibits no ravelings to afflict the ants and is firmly glued to the glass
beneath it. When a cushion becomes soiled by long use of the nest,
the glue may be softened by soaking and the cushion may be removed
and be replaced by a new one. The ends of the cushions are fringed
out a half inch or more, and are left open so that the enclosed wadding
may be adjusted to present a perfectly level surface.

"There is a glass roof-pane for each room in the nest. The glass
is thin; extends to the middle of the partition and to the outer edges
cf the walls on which it rests; prevents the exit of the ants and permits
observation of their behavior. The glass may be without color, or it
may be of a red or orange tint that will partially exclude ultra-violet
rays of light. Ants perceive only such rays of light as are of short
wave-length, and, by use of a spectroscope, a glass roofing may be
selected which renders the ants visible within the nest, while it protects
them from such light-rays as they instinctively shun. If such glass is
used for roofing the nest, the ants will behave as if in the darkness
where they habitually live.

"An outer roofing of blotting paper makes the interior of the nest
wholly dark. The food-room should be light, as it represents the ants' outside world.

"When any room in the nest requires cleaning, it is covered only
with transparent glass, and then the ants withdraw from it with their
young into a dark room, which may in its turn be made light.

"The food-room is dry, and in cool weather requires attention but
once a fortnight. Sponge-cake, merged in a little honey or molasses,
banana, apple, mashed walnut, and the muscular parts of larvae of
insects are among their favorite edibles. Food is constantly attainable
in the nest, but is introduced in tiny morsels that it may not vitiate
the air.

"Since moisture encourages the growth of mould, no water is put
into the food-room. But ants often drink, and they require a humid
atmosphere. All other rooms than that allotted to their food are made
humid by laying a flake of sponge on the floor and keeping the sponge
saturated with clean water dropped twice a week from a pipette. The
proportion of the floor which is covered by the sponge depends on the
degree of moisture in the soil usually chosen as the habitat of the species. The sponges are kept clean by weekly washing and an occasional immersion in alcohol. Sponges of fine, tough texture render the best service, as they offer no apertures where the ants may conceal their eggs. The flake of sponge is so thin as to permit the ants to pass between it and the roof-pane.

"The completed nest is less than half an inch, or thirteen millimeters, in its interior height, and does not exceed three-fourths of an inch, or two centimeters, in its exterior height. A low-power lens is easily focused upon the ants within the nest."

Miss Fielde makes her nests of such sizes as to fit snugly into the

![Portable case showing three Fielde nests on shelves.](image)

Fig. 285. Portable case showing three Fielde nests on shelves. (Photograph by J. G. Hubbard and Dr. O. S. Strong.)

shelves of a portable box like the one represented in the figure (Fig. 285). This box has an interior length of seventeen inches, a width of seven inches and a height of four and three-fourth inches. In a case of these dimensions a number of nests can be carried safely for long distances.

I have used with considerable success a combination of the Janet and Fielde nests. The glass base and sides of the latter are replaced
by a single thin block of colored plaster of Paris, but the height and arrangement of the chambers, their communications, the towelling and roof-panes are those of the Fielde nest. Other details of construction may be readily inferred from an examination of Fig. 286 and its legend.

Miss Edith Buckingham (Amer. Natur., Oct., 1909, pp. 611–614) has described a nest of the Fielde pattern, in which the weight is greatly diminished by replacing the glass base by one made of sheet aluminum.

Dr. F. Santschi has given me directions for making a nest which he has used with excellent results in his studies on small ants, such as Oxyopomyrmex, Leptothorax, Monomorium, Tapinoma and the parasitic Bothriomyrmex and Wheeleriella. It is quickly constructed merely with wet plaster of Paris and glass plates, such as those used in photography. Onto the surface of a plate of the required dimensions the plaster is poured in the form of the walls of two oblong or square chambers and a short connecting gallery. Then another plate of the same dimensions, with its surface oiled, is pressed down somewhat onto the plaster before it sets, leaving a space of a few millimeters between the two plates. As soon as the plaster has set, the upper plate is removed and may be cut into two pieces to serve as the covers of the chambers. The plaster is sufficiently porous to admit the air, and the walls leave no spaces for the escape of the ants. This nest is so shallow that it can be placed on the stage of the compound microscope and its inhabitants studied under a low objective.

All of the various artificial nests here described have both admirable qualities and serious defects, so that anyone who wishes to gain a thorough knowledge of the ants will do well not to pin his faith to any one of them, but will select the form best adapted to the special problem in hand. For small colonies very simple nests consisting of Petri or flat stender dishes will often answer every purpose. In all nests, however, there should be plenty of moisture, food and fresh air, as ants soon sicken and die when the supply of these essentials is insufficient. The food should be varied. Fresh insects and honey are nearly always acceptable. I have kept colonies for many months on a thick mixture of raw yolk of egg, honey and sugar, with an occasional mess of hashed meal-worms, or of the larvae and pupae of alien ants. The harvesting ants (Pogonomyrmex, Pheidole) are fond of our various breakfast foods, but these species also thrive best on an occasional diet of fresh insects.

Ants are readily induced to move with their brood into the nests of the Lubbock, Janet and Fielde patterns. This is accomplished by
using the water-moat or the Forel arena. I prefer the latter, which is very easily constructed. On a table or large board a circular or elliptical enclosure a few feet in diameter is made by laying down a wall of dry, powdered plaster of Paris about two or three inches broad and an inch high. The inner edge of this wall is made smooth and steep with the aid of a putty or case knife. The artificial nest, with its chambers moistened and darkened, is placed in this arena. Then the colony to be installed, together with its brood and the earth of its nest, is dumped from the collecting bag into the arena just as it was brought in from the field. The ants are at first much excited and

![Combination Janet and Fielde nest used by the author](image)

Fig. 286. Combination Janet and Fielde nest used by the author. The roof-pane of the light, or food chamber is removed. r, Plaster of Paris base cast in a single piece; c, entrance, to be plugged with cotton after the admission of the ants from the Forel arena; m, glass roof-pane, resting on strips of Turkish towelling (s); a, opening between the two chambers; n, manger, a cup-shaped depression in the plaster base; e, slice of sponge, which is kept wet. The plaster base measures 20 × 25 cm. and is heavily coated with varnish over its entire surface.

wander about in the enclosure, but are unable to scale its crumbling walls. They soon learn to avoid the powdery plaster, find the entrance of the nest and migrate into it with their whole brood and any myrmecophiles they may have. This migration is hastened by spreading out the earth from their old nest so that it may dry. When the colony has entered, the nest opening is plugged with cotton and the nest is removed from the arena. Small colonies or colonies of small and delicate species, which, as I have said, are best collected in bottles plugged with cotton, may be hastily poured directly into one of the chambers of the nest. By illuminating this chamber the ants may be induced to move into the adjoining dark chamber and the fragments of the original nest can then be removed.
APPENDIX B

KEY TO THE SUBFAMILIES, GENERA AND SUBGENERA OF THE NORTH AMERICAN FORMICIDÆ, FOR THE IDENTIFICATION OF THE WORKERS

1. Cloacal orifice ventral, slit-shaped; sting well developed or vestigial; abdominal pedicel consisting of one or two segments. 2.
   Cloacal orifice terminal, circular, surrounded by a fringe of hairs; abdominal pedicel consisting of only a single segment; no constriction between the first and second gastric segments; pupae usually enclosed in cocoons.
   Subfamily Camponotinae.

2. Sting developed; sometimes very small but nevertheless exsertile; abdominal pedicel consisting of one or two segments; when of only one there is a distinct constriction between the first and second gastric segments. 3
   Sting vestigial; abdominal pedicel consisting of a single segment; no constriction between the first and second gastric segments; anal glands which produce a secretion with a peculiar rancid-butter odor ("Tapinoma odor") are often present; pupae naked. Subfamily Dolichoderinae.

3. Pupae always enclosed in cocoons; abdominal pedicel consisting of a single segment; gaster with a distinct constriction between its first and second segments; frontal carinae separated or close together; when close together they are dilated to form oblique or horizontal laminae partly covering the insertions of the antennae. Subfamily Ponerinae. Pupae naked; abdominal pedicel consisting of two segments in the American species (excepting Cheliomyrmex of Central America). 4.

4. Frontal carinae very close together, almost vertical, not at all covering the antennal insertions. Eyes always very small or absent; tropical and subtropical. Subfamily Dorylinae. Frontal carinae of a different conformation and covering the antennal insertions. Eyes rarely vestigial or absent; cosmopolitan. Subfamily Myrmicinae.

Subfamily Ponerinae

1. Frontal carinae closely approximated; antennæ inserted very near the oral margin; tip of gaster strongly deflected downward. 2.
   Frontal carinae of a different conformation; tip of gaster not deflected downward. 3.

2. Front of clypeus projecting in the middle; petiole nodiform. Sysphincta Roger.
   Clypeus not projecting in the middle; petiole surmounted by a scale.
   Proceratium Roger.

3. Mandibles linear, inserted close together at the middle of the oral border; petiole terminating in a point or spine above. Odontomachus Fabr. Mandibles inserted at the corners of the head; petiole rounded or flattened above. 4.

4. Antennæ very thick and robust. 5.
   Antennæ not greatly thickened. 6.

5. Pygidium with a row of prominent prickles on its lateral border; last antennal joint not greatly enlarged. Acanthostichus Mayr. Pygidium without prominent prickles on its lateral border; last antennal joint greatly enlarged. Cerapachys F. Smith; subgen. Parasyscia Emery.
ANTS

6. Mandibles long and slender with coarse, bidenticate teeth; clypeus with numerous teeth on its anterior border; petiole not constricted posteriorly .................................................. _Stigmatomma_ Roger.

Of a different conformation ........................................... 7.

7. Claws pectinate ......................................................... 8.

Claws simple .............................................................. 9.

8. Mandibles edentate, slender; without apical masticatory border.

_Leptogenys_ Roger s. str.

Mandibles broader, generally toothed; with distinct masticatory border at apex .................................................. _Subgen. Lobopelta_ Mayr.

9. Median spur of middle and hind legs alone developed, lateral spurs lacking; small species with vestigial eyes .................................................. _Poneria_ Latr.

Both spurs of the middle and hind legs well-developed; medium or large species, with larger eyes .................................................. 10.

10. Cheeks with a longitudinal carina .................................. _Neoponera_ Emery.

Cheeks without a carina .................................................. 11.

11. Clypeus flat, separated from the frontal carina by a scarcely perceptible suture or none at all; body opaque .................................................. _Platythyrea_ Mayr.

Clypeus separated from the frontal carina by a distinct suture; body sub-opaque or shining .................................................. 12.

12. Pronotum more or less marginate on the sides; middle tibiae not abbreviated nor beset with prominent bristles ........................................ _Pachycondyla_ F. Smith.

Pronotum not marginate on the sides; middle tibiae short, with prominent bristles on their extensor surfaces.

_Euponera_ Forel; _subgen. Pseudoponera_ Emery.

Subfamily _Dorylinae_

1. Claws toothed ......................................................... _Eciton_ Latr.

Claws simple .............................................................. _Subgen. Acamatus_ Em.

Subfamily _Myrmicinae_

1. Workers absent. _Epactes_ Emery; _Symphidole_ Wheeler; _Epipheidole_ Wheeler.

Workers present .......................................................... 2.

2. Clypeus not extending back between the frontal carinae, which are closely approximated; antennae 12-jointed .................................................. _Pseudomyrmica_ Guérin.

Clypeus almost always extending back between the frontal carinae, which are more or less separated, in the opposite case the antennae are 11-jointed 3.

3. Antennal fossae prolonged as grooves for the antennal scapes along the sides of the head dorsal to the eyes and covered by the expanded lateral margins of the head; antennae 11-jointed .................................................. _Crypticerus_ Fabr.

Antennal fossae of a different conformation or antennae of a different number of joints .................................................. 4.

4. Postpetiole articulated to the dorsal surface of the gaster which is flattened dorsally, more convex ventrally and acutely pointed .................................................. _Cremastocharis_ Lun.

Postpetiole inserted at the anterior end of the gaster which is of the usual shape .................................................. 5.

5. Antennae 6-jointed; head cordiform, antennal fossae as long as the scapes. .................................................. 6.

_Antennae_ with more than six joints .................................. 6.

6. Antennae 11-jointed; without a distinct club, or with a club consisting of only a single joint .................................................. 7.

Antennal club consisting of several joints, or the antennae not 11-jointed 10.

7. Integument rough, bearing stiff or hooked hairs .................................................. 8.

Integument smoother; hairs scale-like and appressed .................................................. 8.
8. Large species; workers highly polymorphic; head with only one pair of occipital spines; thorax with three pairs of dorsal spines or tubercles. 
   *Atta* Fabr. s. str.

Smaller species; workers monomorphic or feebly polymorphic; thoracic dorsum with four pairs of spines or tubercles. 9.

9. Head broad, with rounded occipital lobes, without supraocular spines or tubercles ............................................... Subgen. *Malliterius* Emery.
   Head narrow, with angular occipital lobes; body rough, covered with small tubercles ........................................ Subgen. *Trachymyrmex* Forel.

10. Antennae with a 2-jointed club ........................................ 11.
   Antennal club, when developed, with more than two joints. 12.

   Antennae 11-jointed; epinotum dentate .......... *Erebomyrma* Wheeler.

12. Posterior margin of clypeus elevated in the form of a welt or ridge bordering the antennal fossa in front. .................. 13.
   Posterior border of clypeus not thus elevated. ................. 15.

13. Portion of clypeus in front of antennal insertion narrow but not reduced to a mere ridge (antennae of male 10-jointed) .......... 14.
   Portion of the clypeus in front of antennal insertion reduced to a mere ridge (antennae of male 13-jointed) .................. *Myrmecina* Curtis.

   Antennae 11-jointed ........................................ *Xiphomyrmex* Forel.

15. Antennae 11-jointed ........................................ 16.
   Antennae 12-jointed ........................................ 19.

16. Thorax and petiole without any traces of teeth or spines; pronotum never angular .................................................. 17.
   Epinotum armed with spines or teeth .................. 18.

17. Petiole distinctly pedunculate .................. *Monomorium* Mayr.
   Petiole not pedunculate .......................... *Xenomyrmex* Forel.

18. Mesoscaponal constriction distinct; males ergatomorphic. 
   *Symmyrmyrma* Wheeler.

Mesoepinotnal constriction faint or lacking .................. *Leptothorax* Mayr.

19. Workers strongly dimorphic, usually without intermediates connecting the extreme forms; antennal club 3-jointed, longer than the remainder of the funiculus ........................................ *Pheidole* Westwood.
   Workers monomorphic or polymorphic, i.e., with medie intermediate between the major and minor forms; antennal club indistinct or shorter than the remainder of the funiculus. .................. 20.

20. Last three antennal joints much shorter than the remainder of the funiculus and not forming a distinct club. ............ 21.
   Last three antennal joints forming a distinct club nearly as long as the remainder of the funiculus. .................. 26.

21. Thoracic dorsum impressed at the mesoscaponal suture; promesoponal suture usually distinct .......................... 22.
   Thoracic dorsum without any traces of suture or impression ........................................ *Pogonomyrmex* Mayr.

   Posterior tibial spurs simple .................. 23.

23. Small hypogeic species, with vestigial eyes and two keels on the clypeus ........................................ *Stenamma* Westwood.
   Medium sized species, with well-developed eyes and no keels on the clypeus .................. 24.

24. Workers monomorphic ........................................ 25.
   Workers polymorphic ........................................ *Messor* Forel.

25. Cosmopolitan species with moderately slender thorax and legs. 
   *Aphanogaster* Mayr. s. str.
Tropical and subtropical species with very slender thorax and legs.

Subgen. *Ischnomyrmex* Mayr.

26. Clypeus armed with a pair of ridges which project forward in the form of teeth, rarely without teeth, but then the epinotum is quite unarmed; mesoepinotal suture marked. *Monomorium* Mayr. 
Clypeus of a different conformation; rarely 2-toothed, but then the mesoepinotal suture is indistinct. 

27. Postpetiole campanulate, not constricted behind but applied with its whole posterior surface to the first gastric segment. *Macromisca* Roger. 

**Subfamily Dolichoderinae**

1. Chitinous integument hard and brittle, declivity of epinotum strongly concave. 
*Dolichoderus* Lund; subgen. *Hypoclinea* Mayr. 
Chitinous integument thin and flexible, smooth or very finely sculptured, declivity of epinotum not strongly concave. 

2. Scale of petiole very small, strongly inclined forward, or even altogether absent. 

3. Scale of petiole more or less inclined but well-developed. 

4. Scale of petiole small but indistinct; gizzard with a convex, 4-lobed calyx. *Forelius* Emery. 
Scale vestigial or absent; gizzard with a depressed calyx, without lobes. 

Epinotum without a conical elevation. 

6. Body not conspicuously hairy or pubescent; gizzard very short, with a large reflected calyx; ocelli absent. *Eridomyrmex* Mayr. 
Body densely pubescent; gizzard at least as long as broad; ocelli usually present in large workers. *Lionetopum* Mayr.

**Subfamily Camponotinae**

Antennae with more than 9 joints. 

2. Workers di- or polymorphic. 
Workers not polymorphic though often of variable size. 

3. Workers polymorphic, i.e., with forms (media) intermediate between the largest and smallest workers; head of largest workers not sharply truncated anteriorly. *Camponotus* Mayr. s. str. 
Workers dimorphic, i.e., without intermediate forms; head of largest workers sharply truncated anteriorly. *Subgen. Colobopsis* Mayr. 

4. Clypeal fossa distinctly separated from the antennal fossa. 
Clypeal fossa confluent with the antennal fossa. 

5. Antennal scapes and tibiae without erect hairs; mesonotum strongly constricted and subcylindrical. *Prenolepis* Mayr. s. str. 
Antennal scapes and tibiae with erect hairs; mesonotum constricted but not subcylindrical. *Subgen. Nylanderia* Emery. 

6. Joints 2-5 of the funiculus shorter or not longer than the succeeding joints; ocelli usually absent. 
Joints 2-5 of the funiculus longer than the succeeding joints; ocelli distinct. 


8. Fourth joint of maxillary palpi nearly as long as the fifth. 

*Myrmecocystus* Wesmael. Fourth joint of maxillary palpi a little longer than the fifth. 

APPENDIX C

A LIST OF DESCRIBED NORTH AMERICAN ANTS

Subfamily PONERINAE

Genus Stigmatomma Roger

pallipes Haldeman. — Canada to Texas.
— subsp. oregonense Wheeler. — Oregon.

Genus Acanthostichus Mayr
texanus Forel. — Texas.

Genus Cerapachys F. Smith
Subgenus Parasycia Emery
augustae Wheeler. — Texas.

Genus Sysphincta Roger

melina Roger. — Atlantic States.
pergandi Emery. — Atlantic States.

Genus Proceratium Roger
croceum Roger. — Southern States to Texas.
silaceum Roger. — Atlantic States.
crassicornem Emery. — Atlantic States.
— var. vestitum Emery. — Atlantic States.

Genus Platythyrea Roger

punctata F. Smith. — Texas.

Genus Pachycondyla F. Smith

harpax Fabr. — Louisiana to Texas.

Genus Euponera Forel
Subgen. Pseudoponera Emery

stigma Fabr. — Florida.

Genus Neoponera Emery
villosa F. Smith. — Texas.

Genus Ponera Latreille
gilva Roger. — “North America.”
courcata Latr. subsp. pennsylvanica Buckley. — Northeastern States, Canada.
opaciceps Mayr. — Texas.
trigona Mayr. var. opacior Forel. — Texas.
inexorata Wheeler. — Texas to Colorado.
ergatandra Forel. — Texas.
ANTS

Genus Leptogenys Roger
Subgenus Lobopelia Mayr
elongata Buckley. — Texas.

Genus Odontomachus Latreille
hamatodes L. subsp. insularis Guérin. — Florida.
clarus Roger. — Georgia to Texas.

Subfamily Dorylineae
Genus Ecton Latreille
Subgen. Ecton s. str.
cucum Latreille. — Texas.
esenbecki Westwood. — Texas.

Subgenus Acanthos Emery
sumichrasti Norton. — Texas.
scimitri Emery. — Texas to Missouri and Colorado.
californicus Mayr. — California.
opacithorax Emery. — Texas to Missouri.
carolinensis Emery. — North Carolina.
wheeleri Emery. — Texas.
pilosus F. Smith. — Texas.
paulsillus Wheeler. — Texas.
commutatus Emery. — Texas.
arizonensis Wheeler. — Arizona.
oisare Wheeler. — Arizona.
minor Cresson. — Texas.
melsheimeri Haldeman. — Utah to Texas.
harrisii Haldeman. — Utah to Texas.
nigrescens Cresson. — Kansas to Texas.
mexicanus F. Smith. — Texas.

Subfamily Myrmicinae
Genus Pseudomyrma Lund
gracilis Emery var. mexicana Roger. — Texas.
pallida F. Smith. — Florida to Texas.
flavidula F. Smith. — Florida to Texas.
brunnea F. Smith. — Florida to Texas.
elongata Mayr. — Florida.

Genus Myrmecina Fabr.
graminicola Fabr. subsp. americana Emery. — Northeastern States
— var. brevispinosa Emery. — Northeastern States.
— subsp. texana Wheeler. — Texas.

Genus Monomorium Mayr
pharaonis L. — United States (introduced).
minimum Buckley. — Atlantic, Southern States, Texas.
ergatogyna Wheeler. — California.
floricola Jerdon. — Florida (introduced).
destructor Jerdon. — Southern States (introduced).
Genus Xenomyrmex Forel

stolli Forel subsp. floridanus Emery. — Florida.

Genus Epicpus Emery

pergandi Emery. — District of Columbia.

Genus Solenopsis Fabricius

geminata Fabr. — Southern States.
— var. xyloni McCook. — Texas.
— var. diabola Wheeler. — Texas.
— subsp. rufa Jerdon. — Florida (introduced).
aurea Wheeler. — Texas to California.
salina Wheeler. — Texas.
krockowi Wheeler. — New Mexico.
pilosula Wheeler. — Texas.
molestia Say. — Northern and Eastern States.
— var. validiviscula Emery. — Western States.
— var. castanea Wheeler. — Colorado and New Mexico.
texana Emery. — Texas.
— var. catalina Wheeler. — California.
— subsp. carolinensis Forel. — North Carolina.
— subsp. truncorum Forel. — North Carolina.
pergandi Forel. — North Carolina.
picta Emery. — Florida.

Genus Erebomyrma Wheeler

longi Wheeler. — Texas.

Genus Pheidole Westwood

megacephala Fabricius. — Florida (introduced).
pilifera Roger. — Eastern and Northern States.
— var. simulans Wheeler. — Atlantic States.
— subsp. coloradensis Emery. — Colorado.
— var. neomexicana Wheeler. — New Mexico.
ceres Wheeler. — Colorado to Texas.
kingi Ern. André subsp. instabilis Emery. — Texas, Mexico.
proserpina Wheeler. — Arizona.
soritis Wheeler. — New Mexico.
sitarches Wheeler. — Texas.
— var. transvarians Wheeler. — Texas.
— subsp. rufescens Wheeler. — Texas.
— var. campestris Wheeler. — Texas.
schiophila Wheeler. — Texas.
serephila Wheeler. — Texas.
— subsp. tucsonica Wheeler. — Arizona.
— var. gilvescens Wheeler. — Arizona.
barbata Wheeler. — California.
maccleloni Wheeler. — Texas.
rhea Wheeler. — Arizona.
desertorum Wheeler. — Texas, Arizona.
— var. comanche Wheeler. — Texas.
— var. maricopa Wheeler. — Arizona.
morrisi Forel. — South Atlantic States.
— var. impexa Wheeler. — Texas.
— var. vanessa Forel. — North Carolina.
dentata Mayr. — Southern States to Texas.
— var. commutata Mayr. — Southern States to Texas.
— var. faisonica Forel. — North Carolina.
crassicornis Emery. — Southern States to Texas.
— diversipilosa Wheeler. —
— subsp. porcula Wheeler. — Texas.
— var. tetra Wheeler. — Texas.
titanis Wheeler. — Texas.
hyatti Emery. — Texas to California.
— var. ecitonodora Wheeler. — Texas.
cockerelli Wheeler. — New Mexico.
texana Wheeler. — Texas.
californica Mayr. — California.
oregonica Emery. — Oregon.
bicarinata Mayr. — Wisconsin and Illinois.
davisi Wheeler. — New Jersey.
vineandica Forel. — Eastern States.
— var. longula Emery. — Colorado, Texas.
— subsp. leviuscula Emery. — Missouri.
— subsp. buccalis Wheeler. — Arizona.
flavens Roger subsp. floridana Emery. — Florida.
anastasii Emery. — Florida.
casta Wheeler. — Texas.
humeralis Wheeler. — Texas.
marcidula Wheeler. — Texas.
pincalis Wheeler. — Texas.
constipata Wheeler. — Texas.
laevia Wheeler. — Texas.
nuculiceps Wheeler. — Texas.
malleolens Emery. — Florida.
— subsp. splendidula Wheeler. — Texas.
lamia Wheeler. — Texas.

Genus Sympheidole Wheeler
clecebra Wheeler. — Colorado.

Genus Epipheidole Wheeler
inquilina Wheeler. — Colorado, Nebraska.

Genus Cremastogaster Lund
lineolata Say. — Northern States and Canada.
— var. cerasi Fitch. — N. Atlantic States.
— var. lutescens Emery. — Atlantic States.
— var. subopaca Emery. — South Atlantic States.
— subsp. pilosa Pergande. — South Atlantic States.
— subsp. leviuscula Mayr. — Texas.
— var. californica Emery. — California.
— var. clara Mayr. — Texas to Arkansas.
— subsp. coarctata Mayr. — California.
— var. mormonum Emery. — Utah.
— subsp. opaca var. depilis Wheeler. — Texas, New Mexico, Mexico.
— var. punctulata Emery. — Colorado to Texas.
ashmeadi Mayr. — South Atlantic States.
LIST OF DESCRIBED NORTH AMERICAN ANTS

vermiculata Emery. — California.
arizonensis Wheeler. — Arizona.
victima F. Smith subsp. missouriensis Pergande.
iminitissima Mayr. — Texas.

Genus Stenamma Westwood
brevicorne Mayr. — Northern States.
   — subsp. diecki Emery. — Northern States.
   — — var. impressum Emery. — New York, Vermont.
   — subsp. impar Forel. — Virginia, Pennsylvania.
nearcticum Mayr. — British Columbia.

Genus Aphænogaster Mayr
Subgen. Aphænogaster s. str.
subterranea Latr. subsp. occidentalis Emery. — Western States eastward, to Colorado.
patruelis Forel. — Lower California.
   — subsp. bakeri Wheeler. — California.
maria Forel. — South Atlantic States.
treata Forel. — South Atlantic States, north to Connecticut and west to Texas.
   — var. ashmeadi Emery. — Florida.
lamellicans Mayr. — South Atlantic States.
fulva Roger. — Northeastern States.
   — subsp. aquia Buckley. — Northeastern States.
   — — var. picca Emery. — Northeastern States.
   — — var. rudis Emery. — Northern States.
   — — var. texana Emery. — Texas.
matica Pergande. — Texas.
tennesseensis Mayr. — Northeastern States.
   — var. ecalcarata Emery. — Vermont.

Subgenus Ischnomyrmex Mayr
albisetosus Mayr. — Texas.
cockerelli Ern. André. — Texas to Arizona.

Genus Messor Forel
julianus Pergande. — Lower California.
carbonarius Pergande. — Lower California.
stoddardi Emery. — California.
pergandei Er. André. — Arizona, California.
andrei Mayr. — California.

Genus Pogonomyrmex Mayr
Subgen. Pogonomyrmex s. str.
barbatus F. Smith var. molefaciens Buckley. — Texas.
   — var. fuscatus Emery. — Texas to Colorado.
   — var. nigrescens Wheeler. — Texas.
   — var. marvensis Wheeler. — Texas.
   — subsp. rugosus Emery. — Arizona to California.
ocidentalis Cresson. — Wyoming, Colorado, Kansas, New Mexico, Arizona.
   — var. subnitisus Emery. — California.
comanche Wheeler. — Texas.
subdentatus Mayr. — Arizona to California.
desertorum Wheeler. — Texas to Arizona.
californicus Buckley. — Texas and California.
— var. estebaniius Pergande. — Lower California.
— subsp. longinodis Emery. — California.
badius Latreille. — South Atlantic States.
apache Wheeler. — Texas.
sancti-hyacinthi Wheeler. — Texas.

Subgenus Ephemyrmex Wheeler

imberbiculus Wheeler. — Texas.
pima Wheeler. — Arizona.

Genus Myrmica Latreille

mutica Emery. — Northwestern States.
bradleyi Wheeler. — California.
punctiventris Roger. — North Atlantic States.
— subsp. pinitorum Wheeler. — Middle Atlantic States.
rubra L. subsp. brevinodis Emery. — Colorado.
— — — var. sulcinodoides Emery. — Utah, Colorado, New Mexico.
— — — var. frigida Forel. — British Columbia.
— — — var. whymperi Forel. — British Columbia.
— — — var. canadensis Wheeler. — Northeastern States and Canada.
— — — var. subalpina Wheeler. — Colorado.
— — — var. decedens Wheeler. — Colorado.
— — — var. brevipinosa Wheeler. — Colorado.
— subsp. levinodis Nyl. — Mass. (Introduced.)
— — — var. bruesi Wheeler. — Mass. (Introduced.)
— subsp. neolevinodis Forel. — New York. (Introduced.)
— subsp. champlaini Forel. — Canada.
— subsp. scabrinodis Nyl. var. fracticornis Emery. — Northeastern States.
— — — var. sabuleti Meinert. — Northern States.
— — — var. schencki Emery. — Northern States.
— — — var. detritinodis Emery. — Northern States.
— — — var. lobifrons Pergande. — Alaska.
— — — var. glacialis Forel. — British Columbia.

Genus Leptothorax Mayr

Subgen. Leptothorax s. str.

acervorum Mayr. subsp. canadensis Provancher. — Northern States and British America.
— — — var. yankee Emery. — Northwestern States.
— — — var. kincaidi Pergande. — Alaska.
— — — var. obscurus Viereck. — New York.
hirticornis Emery. — District of Columbia.
muscorum Nyl. var. sordidus Wheeler. — Colorado.
provancheri Emery. — Canada.
— subsp. glacialis Wheeler. — Colorado.
schaumi Roger. — Atlantic States.
detritinodis Mayr. — Atlantic States.
— var. melanoticus Wheeler. — Illinois.
— var. gilvus Wheeler. — Texas.
LIST OF DESCRIBED NORTH AMERICAN ANTS

longispinosus Roger. — North Atlantic States.
curvispinosus Mayr. — North Atlantic States.
— subsp. ambiguus Emery. — Northern States.
— subsp. rugatulus Emery. — S. Dakota, Colorado.
— var. cockerelli Wheeler. — New Mexico.
— subsp. annectens Wheeler. — Colorado.
schmitti Wheeler. — Colorado.
nitens Emery. — Utah.
— var. heathi Wheeler. — California.
texanus Wheeler. — Texas.
— subsp. davisi Wheeler. — New Jersey.
neomexicanus Wheeler. — New Mexico.
obturator Wheeler. — Texas.
nevadensis Wheeler. — Nevada.
melanderi Wheeler. — Idaho.
terrigena Wheeler. — Texas.
tricarinatus Emery. — South Dakota.
furunculus Wheeler. — Colorado.
andrei Emery. — California.

Subgenus Dichothorax Emery

pergandei Emery. — Southern States and California.
floridanus Emery. — South Atlantic States.

Genus Symmyrmica Wheeler
chamberlini Wheeler. — Utah.

Genus Harpagoxenus Forel
americanus Emery. — Atlantic States.

Genus Macromischa Roger
subditiva Wheeler — Texas.

Genus Tetramorium Mayr
Subgen. Tetramorium s. str.
cesspitum L. — North Atlantic States (introduced).
guineense Fabr. — Florida (introduced).

Subgenus Tetrognus Roger
simillimum Roger. — Florida (introduced).

Genus Xiphomyrmex Forel
spinosus Pergande. — Texas to Arizona.

Genus Cryptocerus Fabricius
variatus F. Smith. — Florida.
angustus Mayr. — Texas.

Genus Strumigenys F. Smith
louisianae Roger. — Gulf States.
pergandei Emery. — Atlantic States.
pulchella Emery. — Atlantic States.
ornata Mayr. — Atlantic States.
clypeata Roger. — Atlantic States.
--- var. pilinasis Forel. — Atlantic States.
rostrata Emery. — Atlantic States.
margarita Forel. — Texas.

Genus Atta Fabricius
Subgen. Atta s. str

texana Buckley. — Texas.

Subgenus Mallerius Emery

versicolor Pergande. — Arizona.
--- subsp. chisosensis Wheeler. — Texas.

Subgenus Trachymyrmex Forel

septentrionalis McCook. — New Jersey.
--- var. obscurior Wheeler. — Gulf States.
turrifex Wheeler. — Texas.
arizonensis Wheeler. — Arizona.

Subgenus Mycetosoritis Wheeler

hartmani Wheeler. — Texas.

Genus Cyphomyrmex Mayr

wheeleri Forel. — Texas to California.
rimosus Spinola var. comalensis Wheeler. — Texas.
--- subsp. minutus Mayr. — Florida.

Subfamily Dolichoderinae

Genus Dolichoderus Lund
Subgenus Hypoclinea Mayr

maria Forel. — South Atlantic States.
--- var. davisii Wheeler. — New Jersey.
taschenbergi Mayr. — Louisiana.
--- var. gagates Wheeler. — Atlantic States.
plagiata Mayr. — Northeastern States.
--- var. inornata Wheeler. — Atlantic States.
--- subsp. pustulata Mayr. — Atlantic States.
--- --- var. beutenmuelleri Wheeler. — Atlantic States.

Genus Liometopum Mayr

apiculatum Mayr. — Texas, New Mexico.
--- var. occidentale Emery. — Colorado to California.
--- subsp. lucitusum Wheeler. — Colorado to Arizona.

Genus Doromyrmex Mayr

pyramicus Roger. — Southern States.
--- var. niger Pergande. — Southern States.
--- var. flavus Pergande. — Southern States.
--- var. bicolor Wheeler. — Texas to Arizona.
LIST OF DESCRIBED NORTH AMERICAN ANTS 569

Genus Tapinoma Förster

sessile Say.—Northern States.
littoralis Wheeler.—Florida.
pruinoseum Roger.—South and Middle Atlantic States.

Genus Iridomyrmex Mayr

analis Ern. André.—Southern States.
humilis Mayr.—Louisiana, California (introduced).

Genus Forelius Emery

maccorkili Forel.—Texas.

Subfamily CAMPONOTINAE

Genus Brachymyrmex Mayr

heeri Forel subsp. depilis Emery.—Northeastern States.
nanellus Wheeler.—Texas.

Genus Prenolepis Mayr

Subgen. Prenolepis s. str.

imparis Say.—New England to California.
— var. testacea Emery.—Middle Atlantic States.
— var. minuta Emery.—Middle Atlantic States.

Subgenus Nylanderia Emery

parvula Mayr.—Northeastern States.
fulva Mayr. subsp. pubens Forel.—District of Columbia (introduced).
longicornis Latreille.—Florida (introduced).
bruesi Wheeler.—Texas.
arenivaga Wheeler.—Texas to New Jersey.
guatemalensis Forel.—Arizona.
vividula Nyl. subsp. melanderi Wheeler.—Texas.

Genus Lasius Fabricius

Subgen. Lasius s. str.

niger L. var. neoniger Emery.—Northern States.
— var. americanus Emery.—Northern States.
— var. sithaensis Pergande.—Alaska, British America, Colorado.
brevicornis Emery.—North Atlantic States.
flavus L. subsp. nearticus Wheeler.—Northeastern States.
ubratus Nyl. subsp. mixtus Nyl. var. aphidicola Walsh.—Northern States.
— subsp. minutus Emery.—Atlantic States.
— subsp. sububratus Viereck.—New Mexico.
— subsp. speculiventris Emery.—Northern States.

Subgenus Acanthomyops Mayr

interjectus Mayr.—Northern States.
claviger Roger.—Northern States.
— var. subglaber Emery.—Northern States.
latipes Walsh.—Northern States.
murphyi Forel.—Northern States.
occidentalis Wheeler.—Colorado.
Genus FORMICA L.

pergandi Emery. — Northern States.

munda Wheeler. — Colorado, New Mexico.
sanguinea Latr. subsp. aserva Forel. — Canada and Northern States.
— subsp. rubicunda Emery. — Northern States.
— subsp. subintegra Emery. — Northern States.
— subsp. subnuda Emery. — British America.
— subsp. puberula Emery. — Colorado, S. Dakota.
— subsp. obtusopilosa Emery. — New Mexico.
moki Wheeler. — Arizona.
adams Wheeler. — Isle Royale, Lake Superior.
rufa L. subsp. obscuriventris Mayr. — Northeastern States.
— var. gymnomena Wheeler. — Northern States.
— var. integroides Emery. — California to Nebraska.
— subsp. obscuripes Forel. — Northwestern States, British America.
— var. rubiginosa Emery. — Nebraska, Colorado, Dakota.
— var. melanotica Emery. — Wisconsin.
— var. whymeri Forel. — British America.
— subsp. integra Nylander. — Northeastern States.
— var. hamorrhoidalis Emery. — Dakota, Colorado.
— var. coloradensis Wheeler. — Colorado.

oreas Wheeler. — Colorado.
ciliata Mayr. — Colorado.
crinia Wheeler. — Colorado.
comata Wheeler. — Colorado.
dakotensis Emery. — S. Dakota, Colorado.
specularis Emery. — Wisconsin.
morsei Wheeler. — Massachusetts.
difficilis Emery. — Middle Atlantic States.
microgyna Wheeler. — Colorado.
— var. rasilis Wheeler. — Colorado.
nevadensis Wheeler. — Nevada.
impeza Wheeler. — Michigan to Massachusetts.
essectoides Forel. — Northeastern States.
— var. opaciventris Emery. — Colorado.
ulkei Emery. — Nova Scotia to S. Dakota.
palidade-fulva Latreille. — Southern States.
— var. succinea Wheeler. — Texas.
— subsp. schaufussi Mayr. — Northern States.
— var. meridionalis Wheeler. — Texas.
— var. incerta Emery. — Northern States.
— subsp. nitidiventris Emery. — Northern States.
— var. fusca Emery. — Northern States.
rufibarbis Fabr. var. occidentalis Wheeler. — Western States.

dusea L. var. subsericea Say. — Northern States
— var. argentata Wheeler. — Northern States.
— var. densiventris Viereck. — New Mexico.
— var. subanescens Emery. — Northern States.
— var. neocinera Emery. — Colorado, Mass.
— var. gnava Buckley. — Texas to Colorado.

subpolita Mayr. — Northern States.
LIST OF DESCRIBED NORTH AMERICAN ANTS

--- var. neogagates Emery. — Northeastern States.
--- var. montana Emery. — Nebraska.
--- var. perpilosa Wheeler. — Texas to Arizona.
lasionides Emery. — South Dakota.
--- var. picea Emery. — South Dakota.
cineria Mayr. var. neocineria Wheeler. — Colorado to Illinois.
pilicornis Emery. — California.
rufiventris Emery. — California.

Genus POLYERGUS Latreille

rufescens Latr. subsp. breviceps Emery. — Colorado to Arkansas and Illinois.
--- subsp. bicolor Wasmann. — Wisconsin.
--- var. forelli Wheeler. — Illinois.
--- subsp. lucidus Mayr. — New York to Colorado.

Genus MYRMECOCYSTUS Wesmael

melliger Forel. — Texas.
--- subsp. orbiceps Wheeler. — Texas to Arizona.
--- var. comalins Wheeler. — Texas.
--- subsp. mimicus Wheeler. — Texas to Arizona.
--- var. jesuita Wheeler. — Texas.
--- var. depilis Forel. — California.
--- subsp. semivexus Emery. — Arizona, New Mexico and California.
--- var. testaceus Emery. — California.
mexicanus Wesm. var. hori-deorum McCook. — New Mexico and Colorado.
--- subsp. navajo Wheeler. — New Mexico.
--- subsp. mojave Wheeler. — California.
lugubris Wheeler. — California.

Genus CAMPSolithus Mayr

Subgen. Camponotus s. str.

socius Roger. — Florida.
abdominalis Roger subsp. floridanus Buckley. — Florida.
fumidus Roger var. festinatus Buckley. — Texas.
--- var. fragilis Pergande. — Texas.
--- var. pubicornis Emery. — Texas.
levigatus F. Smith. — Rocky Mts., California.
maculatus Fabr. subsp. vicinus Mayr. — California.
--- var. niidiventris Emery. — Western States.
--- var. semistercatus Emery. — California.
--- subsp. tortuganus Emery. — Florida.
--- subsp. ochreatus Emery. — California.
nacoochi Forel. — California, Arizona, Colorado.
--- var. sansabeans Buckley. — Texas.
castaneus Latreille. — Atlantic States.
--- subsp. americanus Mayr. — Northeastern States.
herculeanus L. var. whymperi Forel. — British America, Colorado.
--- subsp. pennsylvanicus De Geer. — Canada to Texas and Louisiana.
--- var. semipunctatus Kirby. — California.
--- var. farrigineus Fabr. — New York to Illinois.
--- subsp. ligniperdu Latr. var. noveboracensis Fitch. — Canada, Northeastern States.
--- var. rubens Wheeler. — Maine and Michigan.
planatus Roger. — Florida and Texas.
mina Forel. — Arizona.
frontalis Pergande. — Texas.
texanus Wheeler. — Texas.
schaefferi Wheeler. — Arizona.
fallax Nyl. var. nearcticus Emery. — Northeastern States.
— var. minutus Emery. — Northeastern States.
— var. decipiens Emery. — Middle States to Texas.
— subsp. subbarbatus Emery. — Atlantic States.
— — var. paucipilis Emery. — Atlantic States.
— subsp. rasilis Wheeler. — Texas.
— subsp. discolor Buckley. — Texas.
— — var. clarithorax Emery. — California.
— — var. enemidatus Emery. — District of Columbia.
sayi Emery. — Arizona.
hyatti Emery. — California.
— var. bakeri Wheeler. — California.

Subgenus Colobopsis Mayr

impressa Roger. — Florida.
abdita Forel var. etiolata Wheeler. — Texas.
pylartes Wheeler. — Texas.
APPENDIX D

METHODS OF EXTERMINATING NOXIOUS ANTS

In houses, gardens, orchards and fields several of our imported, and a few of our native ants, may become such intolerable nuisances that measures must be taken to exterminate them. Merely killing off their workers is, as a rule, quite ineffectual, since their place is soon filled by a fresh brood reared from the eggs and larvæ remaining in the nest. Hence the only proper method is to destroy the whole colony, and this can be accomplished only by killing the queen. But as ant colonies often contain a number of queens, and as these habitually lurk in the deepest and most inaccessible portions of the nest, total eradication of a colony is often difficult or impossible. The usual method of treatment, apart from digging up the nest completely—which is often impracticable—consists in forcing into the nest a liquid or gaseous insecticide that will permeate all the chambers and galleries and kill their occupants. Our noxious ants may be divided into four groups, which are here very briefly characterized, together with some of the most approved methods that have been recommended for their extermination.

1. House Ants.—The most prevalent species are Monomorium pharaonis, a small reddish-yellow ant, with well-developed eyes and 3-jointed funicular club; Solenopsis molesta, an even smaller, more yellowish species, with vestigial eyes and 2-jointed funicular club; Tetramorium cespitum, the small, black or dark brown "pavement ant" and the large, black "carpenter ant," Camponotus pennsylvanicus, or some of the allied varieties (C. ferrugineus and noveboracensis). The Monomorium, Solenopsis and Tetramorium nest in crevices of the woodwork, tiling and masonry and forage in pantries, store-rooms and kitchens, where they often become a great nuisance, not because they consume much of the food, but because they crawl into it. The carpenter ants have similar habits and in addition sometimes do considerable damage by weakening or destroying old woodwork in which they mine their galleries. On account of their habits it is often very difficult to get at the nests of these various house ants, but they may sometimes be exterminated by pouring or injecting boiling water, benzine, gasoline, or, preferably, carbon bisulphid, into the crevices which they inhabit. Their numbers can often be greatly diminished by placing
on their foraging grounds small sponges saturated with sugar-water. The ants collect on these and can be killed by dropping the sponges into hot water. This process can be repeated till no ants come to the sponges. *Solenopsis molesta* seems not to be attracted by sweets, but it can be entrapped and killed in the same manner by using bones or rags saturated with grease instead of sponges. This is, however, merely a makeshift, for as long as the queens remain in their nests in the woodwork and masonry of the house, the colonies may be regenerated.

Newell (Journ. Econ. Entom. II, 1909, pp. 324-332) has recently shown that the Argentine ant (*Iridomyrmex humilis*) which has become a serious house-hold pest in Louisiana and California, and promises to overrun all the warmer portions of the United States, has a unique habit. This ant nests both out of doors and in the masonry and woodwork of houses. On the approach of winter numerous colonies, that have inhabited a considerable area during the summer, come together and unite to form a single huge colony, which may contain, at "a conservative estimate," upwards of 1000 fertile queens! In the spring this colony splits up into numerous smaller colonies which move out and again cover an extensive territory. For ridding the premises about houses of these insects, Newell suggests the use of a trap consisting of a dry goods box about $2 \times 2 \times 3$ feet, filled with cotton seed and straw or other porous vegetable material. The top of the box is left open so that its contents are exposed to the weather. The interior of the compost mass becomes warm through decomposition and as winter approaches attracts the ant colonies. During January, after the colonies have assembled in the box, its cracks are closed, a pound or two of carbon bisulphide is poured into the compost and the whole is covered with a water-proof canvas till the ants are asphyxiated.

2. Garden Ants.—The ants that most frequently disfigure our lawns and garden beds with their untidy earth-works are, in the Northern States, *Lasius americanus*, *Formica subsericea*, and, occasionally, *Prenolepis imparis* and *F. subintegra*, and various species of *Pheidole* (especially *Ph. dentata*), *Dorymyrmex pyramicus* and the "fire-ant," *Solenopsis geminata*, in the Southern States. The fire-ant stings viciously and is often a serious pest in gardens, dooryards and barnyards. The most effective method of dealing with all of these ants is that described by Hinds (Farmers' Bulletin, No. 145, U. S. Department of Agriculture): "The treatment consists in making one or more holes in the nest with a stick or iron bar to the depth of from one to two feet, and pouring into each hole one or two ounces of carbon bisulphid. The hole may be closed immediately by step-
ping on it, or, as many writers suggest, the vapor may be exploded at the mouth of the hole with a match, in order to drive the fumes deeper into the chambers. If the latter method is adopted, the hole should be covered with fresh earth immediately after the explosion, in order to put out the fire and confine the fumes. If this is not done, a large portion of the gas will be burned and the efficiency of the treatment be lessened thereby. Right at this point an added word of caution must be given. After the explosion the vapor continues to burn with a colorless flame. It is therefore invisible, but its presence may be easily perceived by holding the hand over the opening or by blowing into it. This point should be carefully noted, for if the operator, thinking the fire had ceased and desiring to make the extermination of the insects doubly certain, should attempt to recharge the hole from a can or bottle, an explosion would surely follow, with possibly fatal results. Explosion does not appear to add to the efficacy of the treatment, and is not at all necessary. If it is not attempted, it may be well to cover the nest with a wet blanket, which will aid greatly in confining the fumes. If any considerable area is infested, as is often the case in lawns, the holes should not be more than one and one-half feet apart each way, and, after the close of the application, the surface treated may be thoroughly watered, as the wet surface will add to the efficiency of the treatment by preventing the rapid diffusion of the fumes into the air.” A method recently recommended by Woglum and Wood (Journ. Econ. Entom., 1908, p. 348) would probably prove to be very effective in dealing with the various ants above mentioned. These authors use a solution of potassium cyanide (one ounce of the salt to a gallon of water). Holes are dug and the solution is poured into them in the same way as when bisulphid is used. The ants are killed by the very poisonous cyanide fumes and probably also by getting the liquid into their mouths when they attempt to clean themselves. Kerosene oil may also be used like the cyanide and bisulphid, but greater quantities are required, as it kills only by contact.

3. Harvesting Ants.—In the Southwestern States two species of Pogonomyrmex (P. molefaciens and P. occidentalis) often occupy so much space with their large mounds and cleared areas in the fields, sidewalks and yards, and sting so viciously on the slightest provocation, that it becomes necessary to exterminate their colonies. This is most easily accomplished by means of the bisulphid method described above. Headlee and Dean (Kans. Exper. Station Bull. No. 154, 1908), however, have recently recommended the following modification of this method, which they found to be very successful in dealing with P.
*occidentalis*, in Kansas: "Start fumigation when gateways are open; take a vessel, such as a galvanized-iron wash-tub, and place it bottom side up in such a manner as to cover the openings and as much of the mound as possible; if there are more openings than the tub will cover, they should be closed by throwing some of the surrounding soil on them; place under the tub, in a shallow pan or dish, near the opening, one to three ounces of carbon bisulphid, depending on the size of the nest, quickly pack soil around the edge of the tub, making it as nearly air-tight as possible; allow to stand thus for about five hours." It was found that "breaking open the mound before setting the fumigation is of no advantage, nor did the practice of pouring the fluid into the broken-up mound give any better results than that of evaporating it from a shallow pan." The method here recommended would probably give equally good results with the Texan harvester, *P. molefaciens*.

4. Leaf-cutting Ants.—The only Attine ant which is at all a serious menace to gardens, orchards or forage crops in the United States is *Atta texana*, which seems to be confined to certain portions of Texas. Mexico, Cuba, Central and South America have similar pests in *A. mexicana*, *insularis*, *sexdens* and *cephalotes*. The nests of these ants, as I have shown in Chapter XVIII, are often of huge dimensions and their colonies when once established are difficult to eradicate. A common method of dealing with *A. texana* is to dig up the nest till the large queen is found and can be destroyed, but this is an arduous task. The sulphur method, which I have not seen in operation, is sometimes employed in Texas, Cuba and South America. Dr. C. L. Marlatt, who has seen it in operation on the ranch of Mr. E. L. Sanborn, Jr., at Artamisa, Pinar del Rio, Cuba, describes it (*in litteris*) as follows: "It consists in digging a large hole six feet deep by three or four feet wide in the midst of the colony. This hole is filled with dry brush or shed palm leaves and a great roaring fire started. Into this is then poured a bucketful of powdered sulphur. The opening is closed with a large iron plate. Through a hole in the center of this plate air is forced down into the burning mass with a large bellows two or three feet in diameter, and by this means the fumes of the sulphur are driven out through the ramifications of the colony around the nest to a distance of several rods, thoroughly destroying all inmates. The escape of the fumes can often be seen from holes which are at a long distance from the point of operation. It is a rather expensive process, but seems to be effectual." Dr. Marlatt also describes another treatment which has recently come into use in Cuba. This is known as the bichlorid of lime and sulphuric acid treatment." The bichlorid of lime
is made into a paste so that it may be easily poured. The sulphuric acid solution is made by putting four ounces of crude acid into a gallon of water. The amount used of the two mixtures will vary with the size of the nest. Equal quantities of each are employed. First pour the bichlorid into the main entrance to the nest through a funnel and follow with an equal quantity of the diluted sulphuric acid. Close all the entrances to the nest and the chlorin gas generated penetrates through the galleries of the nest and kills the ants. At least this is the belief of the exploiters of this remedy.”
APPENDIX E

LITERATURE

Notes: In the following pages, the number in parentheses, thus (5), refers to series; the first number not in parentheses, to volume or year; the next number, if preceded by a comma, to part, number, Abteilung, Heft, Lieferung, etc.; and the numbers preceded by a colon (:) to pages. The references preceded by an asterisk (*) contain materials bearing on myrmecophily, symbiosis, parasitism, etc.


André, Ed. *Relations des Fourmis avec les pucérons et les gallinsectes.


ANTS


Bacon, F., 1623. De Dignitate et Argumentis Scientiarum. 5, 2.


LITERATURE


Bergroth, E., 1892a. *On an Indian Ant-mimicking Hemipteron (Dulichius Wroughtoni n. sp.).* *Ent. M. Mag.* (2) 3: 107. —1892b. *Note on Dulichius*


Blochmann, F., 1884. *Über eine Metamorphose der Kerne in den Ovarialleijern*


LITERATURE

Burrill, A. C., 1908. *A Slave-making Foray of the Shining Amazon (Polyergus lucidus Mayr).* Jour. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 16, 3: 144-151.


Butler, E., 1899. Two Rare Ants at Gomshall. *Ent. M. Mag.* (2) 10: 12.


Charley, R. S., 1877. Ponera tarda nov. sp. found in Britain. Ent. M. Mag. (1) 14: 162.


Chus, C., 1903. Aus den Tiefen des Weltmeeres. 2 (Jena): 129.


Conway, C., 1834. Ants conveying in their mouths other ants of their species; Courage of the Wood or Fallow Ants (Formica rufa). Mag. Nat. Hist. (1) 7: 266-267.


LITERATURE


De Geer, K., 1778. Mémoires pour servir à l'histoire des insectes 7.


Doslein, F., 1903. Beobachtungen an den Weberameisen. (CEophylla smerag-
LITERATURE


cinq nouveaux genres de Formicidés. Ibid. 41 (1893): ccxxv-ccxxvii.
Sc. Nat. (3) 27, 105: 258-260. — 1892e. Révision critique des Fourmis de
ta Tunisia. Exploration scientifique de la Tunisie. Hyménoptères. I, II:
1-21. — 1892f. Sopra alcune Formiche raccolte dall’Ingegnere L. Briccetti
110-122. — 1892g. Formicidés de l'archipel malais. Rev. Suisse Zool. 1:
187-220, pl. 8. — 1892h. Intorno ad alcune Formiche della Collezione Spinola.
— 1893b. Voyage de M. Ch. Alluaud aux îles Canaries. Formicidés Ibid.
13: 189, 190. — 1893-94. Beiträge zur Kenntniss der nordamerikanischen
pl. 8. — 1893a. Die Entstehung und Ausbildung des Arbeiterstandes bei den
Arbeiterstandes bei den Ameisen. Biol. Centralb. 14: 53-59. — 1893e. Descri-
Soc. Ent. France p. lxxxiii. — 1893h. Gedanken zur Descendenz- u. Verer-
Bologna (5) 3: 119-152, 2 pls. — 1893l. Studi sulla Formiche della Fauna
Ueber Entstehung des Soziallebens bei Hymenopteren. Biol. Centralb. 14:
60-62. — 1893n. Viaggio del Dottor Alfredo Borelli nella Repubblica Argentina
Chili 5: 10-18. — 1893b. Die Gattung Dorylus Fab. und die systematische
Civ. Genova 35: 175-184. — 1893d. Le problème des Doryles (Hyméno-
M. Ch. Alluaud dans le territoire de Diego Suarez (Madaga-
Description de quelques fourmis nouvelles d’Australie. Ibid. 39: 345-358.
— 1893g. Note sur les fourmis du Chili avec descriptions de deux espèces
from New Zealand. Trans. N. Zool. Inst. 27: 635, 636. — 1893i. On the
Kritisches Verzeichnis d. myrmekophilen Arthropoden. Biol. Centralb. 15:
191-192. — 1893l. Viaggio del Dr. E. Festa in Palestina, etc. Descrizione
Torino


596

ANTS


LITERATURE


Forbes and Peal, 1881. (Sound Produced by Ants in Sumatra and Assam.) Nature 24: 101, 102, 484.

LITERATURE


Fox, W. H., 1887. *(Note on a new Parasite of Camponotus pennsylvanicus.}
LITERATURE


LITERATURE


Gray, G. R., 1832. The Class Insecta arranged by Baron Cuvier, with supplementary additions to each order by Edw. Griffith, and notices of new genera and species. Animal Kingdom 15.


Grenier, A., 1863. Matériaux pour servir à la faune des Coléoptères de France. 1 (July).


Groshans, W. P. F., 1839. Prodromus Faunæ Homeri et Hesiodi (Cestrus, Tettix, Cicada, Gryllus, Formica, etc.). Lugduni, Batavorum, Luchtmans p. 32; 1843 p. 43 fascic. post.


Hooke, R., 1667. Micrographia or some physiological descriptions of minute bodies made by magnifying glasses, with observations and inquiries thereupon (p. 203 Formicae). *London 38 pls.


Huéppach, 1777. Beschreibung einer Maschine die Ameisen und anderen Insekten zu vertilgen. (In Germ. and French.) Cöln, 1 pl.

Hutton, F. W., 1904. Index Fauna Nova Zealandiae. London, Dulau & Co. (pp. 95, list of Formicidae).

Hudson, G. V., 1890. (Swarming of Atta antarctica.) Ent. M. Mag. (2) 1: 23.


Illiger, J. C. W., 1802. Magasin für Insektenkunde, 1: 188.


ANTS


KALM, 1748. Travels, 1: 238.


LITERATURE


LITTERATURE


de Llave, Pablo, 1832. Registro Trimestre o Collection de Memorias de Historia Literatura Ciencias y Artes. Mexico.


ANTS


Mayet, V., 1882. *(Note on the larva and pupae of Microdon mutabilis in the formicaries of Lasius niger.)* *Ann. Soc. Ent. France* p. CVI.


LITERATURE


PANZET, G. W. F., 1798. Faunae Insectorum Germaniae Initia, oder Deutschlands Insecten.


Perkins, R. C. H., 1891. Male and Worker characters combined in the same individual of Stenamma Westwoodi. Ent. Mag. (2) 2: 123.

Perrin, 1661. Divers Insects, la pouce, le moucheron, le papillon, la fourmi, le grillot, le ver à soie, l'abeille, pièces en poésie. Paris, Duval.


Petiver, J., 1708. De varii Animalibus Philippensis ex MSS. Cameli. (For-...)


Literature


* [Note on Tettigometra iseta with Tapinoma erraticum.] Ibid. p. lxxxiii.
— 1870. *[Note on Tettigometra obliqua with Formica pratensis.] Ibid. p. lxxvi.


Schäffer, J. C., 1769. *Icones insectorum circa Ratisbonam indigenorum coloribus naturam referentibus expressae.*


*Amiesen als Schutztruppen. Prometheus 15: 548-551. 2 figg.*


Semper, C., 1881. *Natural Conditions of Existence* p. 391, fig. 104.
cokheoren. Upsala,* 410 pp., 11 pls.
Silvestri, F., 1903. *Contribuzioni alla conoscenza dei Mirmecofi. I. Osser-
optera.* *Upsala,* pp. 97-118, 3 pls.


Spence, W., and W. Kirby. *An Introduction to Entomology or Elements of the Natural History of Insects 2* (by Spence) 5th Ed.


de Stefani, T., 1897. Note per servire allo studio delle Mutille di Sicilia. Nat. Sicil. (2) 11, 4: 77–86.


LITERATURE


Thwaites, D., 1881. *[Observations on Lycanid larvae attended by (Ecophylla Smaragdina).] Moore, Lepid. of Ceylon i: 70, London.*


*Beobachtungsnester für Ameisen. *Aus der Heimat. — 1905d.


Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Paussiden mit biologischen und phylogenetischen
er 2. Ed. 323 pp., 4 pls., 40 text-figg. Herdersche Buchh. Freiburg, i/B.
- 1905a. *Die phylogenetische Umbildung ostindischer Ameisengäste in
*Some Remarks on Temporary Social Parasitism and the Phylogeny of
Frage über die temporär gemischten Kolonien und den Ursprung der
Sklaverei bei den Ameisen. Ibid. 25: 644-653. - 1905g. *Zur Lebensweise
Maria-Laach 70: 405-425; 517-531. - 1906b. *Zur Myrmekophagie des
17 pp., 2 pls. - 1906f. K. Escherich, Die Ameise, Schilderung ihrer Lebens-
1906. 2. - 1906h. *Die moderne Biologie und die Entwicklungstheorie
des Deutschen Entomologischen National-Museums. Ibid. pp. 561-566, 3
Centralbl. 28: 68-73. - 1908b. *Weitere Beiträge zum sozialen Parasitismus
und der Sklaverei bei den Ameisen. Ibid. 28: 257-271; 289-306; 321-333;
Ameisen. Vortrag gehalten auf der Wander-Versammlung "Luxemburger
Naturfreunde" in Ettelbrück, am 3. Mai 1908. Luxemburg. W. Wort-
Merkens. - 1908e. *Myrmechusa; eine neue Gattung zwischen Myrmedonia
1908g. *On the Evolution of Dinarda, a genus of Coleoptera. Transl. by


ANTS


Wray, J. De acido formicarum succo. *Phil. Trans.* **68**: 2063; *Crell’s Chym. Arch.* **1**: 27.


ANTS

ANONYMOUS


(D.), 1743. Das Lob des Flohes, der Ameisen und der Spinne.


1897. Early Appearance of Formica rufa. *Ent. M. Mag.* (2) 8: 141; 158; 183.


INDEX

Abdomen 26
Acacia 207, 224, 298, 299, 305, 307; A. fistulosa 208, 314, 313; A. hindsii 208; A. spadicigera 208; A. sphaerocephala 208, 300, 309, 311
Acamatus 138, 255; A. schmitii 258
Acanthognathus 141, 180
Acantholepis 125, 143, 148, 403; A. abdominalis 365
Acanthomyopis 80, 143, 150, 156, 159, 182, 203, 342, 347, 416, 515; A. claviger 80, 88, 94, 203; A. interjectus 203; A. latipes 94, 193
Acanthomyrmex 112, 139, 150
Acanthoponera 135
Acanthostichus 137
Acanthostichus 136, 137, 151, 227, 266
Acromyrmex 141, 180, 319, 327, 328, 338; A. coronata 324, 325; A. disciger 324, 328; A. lundii 397; A. maleri 324, 345; A. octospinosa 17, 334
Acron 51
Acropyga 143
Acrostichum 299
Acrostigma 167, 171
Adelphogamy 439
Adipocytotes 47, 48, 49
Adetria 139
Aderane 404; A. cactus 405; A. lecontei 400, 405
Ænitoteleon 137, 248
Ænitus 26, 28, 66, 137, 245, 248, 253, 255, 256, 266, 386; Æ. aitkeni, 250; Æ. eugeni 254; Æ. grandis 252; Æ. wrouthoni 255
Æromyrmex 140, 158, 159, 163, 174, 429; A. nizzindambo 428
Agricultural ants 187
Atlanthus 299, 300
Akermes collina 349
Alaopone 137, 248
Alchorea 299
Aleocharina 405
Afoaria 135
Alimentary Tract 31
Alladape 11
Allomerus 140, 303
Alloithus hirsutus 360
Alpha-female 113
Alydus calcarius 422
Amaranthus viridis 277, 278
Amazonis 471
Amblyoponii 26, 134
Amblyopone 26, 134, 227
Amblytes 91
Ambrosia beetles 338
Ammochaeae 16
Ammophila hirsuta 91
Amoeboctyes 48, 49
Amorphaeophalus 412
Amphisbaenians 422
Amphoisis 407
Ancleus 140
Aner 93
Aneneuteus 142, 148, 245; A. simoni 172, 244
Annular lamina 29
Anochetus 96, 136, 227, 230, 234; A. sedilioti 180
Anomma 137, 167, 174, 175, 248, 259; A. arcens 146, 249, 251, 252; A. molestum 253; A. nigricans 252; A. rubella 165
Anommatophilus 386
Anommatoxenus 386
Anoplognathus 229
Anoplotermes 426; A. morio 429
Antennae 20
Antennophorus 412, 415, 416; A. foreli 413; A. grandis 413; A. pubescens 408, 413, 414; A. uhlmani 413
Ants of North America, list of, 561
Ant-nests, architecture of, 192
Anus 36
Apota 46
Aphidicolous ants 11
Aphids 11, 339
Aphys 347, 352; A. madi-radicis 11, 354; A. papaveris 352
Aphraeus 359; A. loki 258
Aphomomyrmex 143
Apsi 72; A. cypria 115; A. mellifica-fasciata 115
Apocephalus pergandei 419
INDEX

Apteronina schmitti 387
Apterozitia 24, 141, 319, 326, 328, 329, 337, 338; A. mulleri 324, 328; A. pilosum 319, 344, 328, 329; A. wassmanni 324
Arabis Thalena 271
Arachnida 379
Aristida 284, 287; A. oligantha 286; A. pungens 273; A. stricta 286
Artemisia vulgaris 340
Arthropod 403
Association, arenicolus 157; cespite-colus 157; deserticolus 157; eri-ceticulos 157; nemoricicolus 157; pratinicolus 157; silvicicolus 157
Astragalus 290
Atelura 302, 396; A. formicaria 391, 392; A. wheeleri 392
Atopomyrmex 139, 172, 174
Attaphila 303, 397; A. bergi 397; A. fungicola 395, 396
Attil 71, 141, 177, 318, 377
Attoxus 166
B
Balsamina 299
Baltic amber 162
Bambusa 295
Bartrix 404
Battles of Ants 181
Bead-glands 300
Beckia 383
Bees 3, 29; carpenter 209, 212; social 1, 2, 3
Behavior, automatic 507; instinctive 518; plastic 507, 531; reflex 507, 529
Belonopelma 135
Beltian bodies 300
Bemex 310
Beneficial ants 7, 8
Beta-female 95, 96, 113
Blattodea 400
Blattoid 14
Blood 46
Bodies, pedunculate or mushroom 54, 55, 56
Bombax 295; B. ceiba 216
Bothriomyrmex 42, 142, 148, 167, 172, 449, 451, 487; B. atlantis 447; B. ghepperti 166, 349; B. meridionalis 43, 44, 45, 446
Bothroponera 155
Brachymyrmex 113, 143, 341, 361; B. heeri 349; B. termophilus 428
Brachyponera 135; B. solitaria 236
Brachymyrmex 403
Braconidae 340, 410
Bradoponera 167; B. mellei 161, 170
Bradyops tridactylus 308
Brain 51, 52
Brownina 392
Bromatia 334
Buccal tube 32
Bull-dog ant 227
Bumblebees 90, 91, 110
Bunchonia gaudichaudiana 301
C
Calamus amplexicata 298
Callows, coloration of 79
Calomyrmex 16, 144
Calophyca 297
Calyptrites antediluvianus 173
Calyptomyrmex 141
Camponotine 13, 15, 26, 143
Camponotini 144
Camponotus 11, 23, 35, 36, 39, 42, 43, 70, 83, 98, 99, 108, 112, 120, 125, 144, 151, 166, 167, 173, 174, 175, 185, 182, 188, 212, 214, 216, 303, 358, 360, 361, 364, 374, 391, 420, 515, 534; C. abdnormalis 113, 151; C. abscicus 432; C. americanus 14, 79, 83, 100, 122, 181, 183, 201; C. cognatus 17; C. confusus 113; C. constrictus 173, 174; C. decipiens 39, 40, 209; C. fallax 150, 208, 393; C. femoratus 213, 315; C. ferrugineus 188, 208; C. festinatus 39, 40; C. floridanus 154; C. fumidus 206; C. erucularius 40, 60, 131, 146, 148; C. igneus 174; C. inequalis 212, 298, 426; C. inflatus 365, 366; C. lateralis 422; C. leviatus 208, 393; C. ligniferus 34, 40, 72; C. maculatus 131, 146, 151, 310; C. melleus 393; C. mengei 174; C. mirabilis 17; C. nearticus 213; C. nigriceps 393; C. nove-boracensis 131, 132, 188, 208, 407, 418; C. pennsylvanicus 10, 83, 85, 131, 188, 189, 191, 208, 393, 407, 417, 419, 422, 453; C. planus 151, 152, 426; C. punctatus 351; C. quadriceps 75,
INDEX

297; C. rosilis 209; C. rubroniger 426; C. sansabaeus 24, 39, 40, 349, 393; C. sens 118, 221; C. sex-guttatus 208, 210, 211; C. termilarius 429, 430; C. velut 173
Canina cocinea 350
Canavalia 299
Carabide 402
Cardioblasts 46
Cardiocondyla 94, 139, 182, 191; C. venusta 126
Cardo 19
Carabara 113, 114, 138, 140, 428, 436; C. lignata 426, 427; C. vidua 427
Carebella 140, 152; C. bicolor 428
Careya australis 223
Carya myristicifolia 212
Cassia 299, 300
Castalus ananda 358
Castes, as mutations 117; stature of 112
Cataractation, alimentary 110; nutrical 110, 122; parasitic 110
Cataplypis 144, 376
Catapaculma 359; C. elegans 358
Catatruac 142
Catatanus 142, 167, 174, 181, 303, 304; C. silvestrii 169
Cecropia 207, 295, 300, 301, 307, 308, 309; C. adenopus 214, 302, 303, 305, 310; C. lyrafiloba 310; C. peltata 310; C. sciadophylla 310
Cells, of wing 24; pericardial 47; urate 48
Cemus unicolor 353
Centaura 203, 299
Centromyrmex 135
Centroidea 351, 355
Cephaloprectus 386
Cerapachy 26, 137, 151, 158, 227
Cerapachyisi 26, 133, 136, 137
Cerapachyius 402; C. quadriculatus 403
Ceratina dupla 212; C. nana 209
Ceratobasis 141
Ceraconcha 385
Ceratoderus 402
Ceratophedile 140
Ceratopygus 383
Cercopidae 350
Ceretrinum 54
Cetonia 301; C. florica 384, 430
Chaniosthies 400
Chaniosthphor 347
Chalicididae 419
Chalicura bedeli 418
Chalicodoma 72
Champsomyrmex 97, 113, 243, 266, 527
Charactera, of taxonomic value 131; specific and generic 129
Chelomyrmex 26, 28, 138; C. nortoni 17, 255, 259
Chenium 404
Cholorion 39
Chrysopa 43, 340, 345, 353
Ciliibuna comata 410, 416; C. hirticoma 258, 409, 416
Circulatory system 46
Cladium 205, 504; C. jamaicense 212
Classification, conspectus of 134
Claviger 407; C. testaceus 400, 405
Clavigeridae 379, 399
Claws 24
Cleanliness of ants 177, 179
Cleared nest areas 222
Cleptobiosis 426
Clerodendron 295, 302; C. fistulosum 313
Clupeus 18
Clytanthus 422
Clytra 384
Cnethocampa pityocampa 265
Cobus scandens 317
Coccide 11
Coccids 347
Cock-roaches 14
Cocoon 77; shape and color of 79
Coccinella 283
Cocinellidae 346
Coccus mans 349
Coccoidea rugosa 223; wulifera 208, 210
Collecting ants 545; myrmecophiles 548
Colobopsis 76, 112, 144, 182, 208, 303, 304; C. clerodendri 313; C. culmica 212; C. etiolata 39, 40, 209, 210, 211, 212; C. impressa 17; C. pylata 212; C. truncata 212, 422
Colonies, dispersal of 146; founding of 185; formation of 120, 438; mixed 452; phylogeny of, 110
Colors of ants 16
Color patterns of ants 16
Colocasia 156
Cometopsylla rufa 350
Communes, ganglionic 51
Commopera solenopkis 383
Communication 535
Connectives, ganglionic 51
Conopidae 419
Cooperation 536
Coral ants 174
Coptosoma 357
Coridia 295, 311, 313; C. macrophilla 223; C. nodosa 313
Corpus adiposum 47
Corpuscles de nettoage 32
Corvus cornix 425; C. corone 425
Cocinoptera 384
Cosyphodes 404
Cossyphadenus 404
Cossyphodites 404; C. woodrooffei 404
Costa 24
Costa 205
Coxa 21
Crafielda 422, 340
Cranium 16, 18
Cragatagus 299
INDEX

Ceratomyrmex 16, 140
Crematostoechileus 388, 390, 399; C. cancellatus 391; C. castaneus 391; C. crinitus 391; C. harrisi 391; C. knoxi 391; C. spinifer 391; C. wheeleri 391
Cremastogaster 11, 96, 113, 140, 148, 167, 174, 188, 215, 223, 301, 303, 312, 341, 344, 349, 357, 358, 359, 360, 403, 404, 426, 448, 449; C. acacia 312; C. alegrensis 428; C. artifex 215; C. chiarini 312; C. clara 209; C. difformis 310, 371, 372, 373; C. eburnina 215; C. inconspicua 215; C. infrata 371, 372, 373, 376; C. kosa 215; C. kirbyi 215; C. lineolata 150, 182, 208, 213, 214, 215, 223, 341, 343, 382, 393, 426, 453, 513; C. marginata 215; C. minutior 426; C. minutissima 39; C. montesuma 215; C. mucronata 372, 373; C. opaciceps 215; C. parabiota 425, 426; C. peringueyi 215; C. physothorax 372; C. pilosa 317, 348; C. punctulata 349; C. quadriformis 428; C. ramulina 215; C. ranavalone 215; C. rogenhoferi 215; C. ruppoli 312; C. schencki 215; C. scutellaris 40; C. sordidula 65; C. stadelmanni 215; C. steinheli 426; C. stolli 215; C. sulcata 215; C. tricolor 215; C. tumidula 372; C. victima 223
Cremastogasteri 140
Crop 31, 32, 33
Cross-fertilization 183
Croton 278, 284
Crotophora 299
Crustacea 379
Cryptocercus 93, 99, 112, 124, 125, 141, 181, 301, 303, 304; C. angulosus 133; C. angustus 151; C. atratus 34; C. aztecan 102, 426; C. clypeatus 17; C. varians 17, 90, 151, 426; C. wheeleri 426
Cryptopone 135
Ctenopyga 137
Curietia lethys 358
Cylindromyrmex 137
Cylindromyrmex 137; C. whymperi 228
Cyphide 89
Cyphodeura 383
Cyphomyrmex 141, 151, 180, 319, 320, 326, 329, 337; C. auritus 324, 329; C. camalensis 333; C. minutus 333; C. rimosus 319, 320, 333; C. striatus 324, 329; C. wheeleri 319, 333, 334
Cyrtophorus 422
Cyrtorhina 137

D
Daceton 141, 180; D. armigerum 17
Dacetonii 141

Dacryon 139
Dactylopius 349; D. adonidum 349; D. wheeleri 349
Darlingtonia 299
Deatation 184; of female 121
Death-feigning 180
Decarthron stigma 404
Dendromyrmex 144
Dendrophilus 388
Deportation 177, 241
Desmargate 98
Deutocerebrum 51, 52
Diacamma 74, 97, 113, 135, 171, 233, 234, 242, 243, 266, 527
Dichthadia 137, 248, 249; D. globerrima 249
Dichthadiinegy 97, 248, 266
Dichotheora 139, 156, 200
Dimorphomyrmex 143, 167, 172, 174, 245, 515; D. janeti 173; D. theryi 170, 173, 174
Dimorphomyrmex 143
Dinarda 387; D. dentata 379, 380, 387, 388; D. hagensi 387; D. markeli 387; D. nigriti 387, 388; D. nigritoide 387; D. pygmaea 387
Dinaridlla isometopi 387
Dinergate 97
Dinoponera 135; D. grandis 233, 242
Diplocotes 404
Diplotherium 113, 141, 158, 428; D. longipenne 427
Dischidia rafflesi 297
Discomopa 410; D. comata 416
Discothyrea 136, 171
Discocenus 386
Discrimination, color 516
Dispersal of queen ants 145
Distribution, centers of 149; ethological 156; faunistic 146; of North American ants 148
Docility 537
Doleromyrmex 142
Dolichoderlinea 13, 15, 26, 142
Dolichoderus 11, 15, 125, 142, 167, 172, 215, 216, 303, 341, 349, 350, 360; D. attelaboides 17, 216; D. bipinus 216; D. bituberculatus 135; D. debilis 425, 426; D. gibboso-analis 384; D. maria 24; D. oliberatus 173; D. quadrit mari 422; D. quadrispinosus 215
Dolichoz 299
Dorylaner 94, 248
Dorylai 8, 137
Doryline 13, 128, 29, 137
Dorylobius 386
Dorylocerans 386
Dorylogaster 386
Dorylomimus 386
Dorylophilina 386
Dorylopora 386
Dorylophustus wasmanni 385
INDEX

Doryloxenus 386
Dorylus 26, 28, 65, 66, 94, 98, 124, 137, 138, 248, 249, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 263, 382, 386, 515; D. affinis 101; D. brevipennis 252; D. simbiatus 248, 249, 252; D. furcatus 247; D. helvolus 247, 248, 249, 266; D. klugi 249; D. nigricans 249; D. orientalis 253
Dorymyrmex 113, 142, 151; D. pyramidatus 146, 201, 205, 245, 246
Duct, deferent 42, ejaculatory 42
Dulosis 440
Durota 295

E

Echinomegisti tus wheeleri 409, 415
Echinola h44
Ectoiophora 386
Ectiodulus 387
Ectiogaster 387
Ectiominota 386; E. simulans 385
Ectiomyina wheeleri 383
Ectiopida wheeleri 387
Ectionii 8, 138
Ectionilla 386
Ectiounysa 386; E. foreli 387; E. schmitti 387
Ectiphitla 386
Ectiphiyla 386
Ectiopora 386
Ectiozona 386
Ectiodon 386
Ectiomena 386; E. brevipes 387
Ectozenus 387
Echplotella 142
Ectotoma 125, 135, 167, 227, 232; E. quadridens 26; E. tuberculatum 9, 226, 231, 233, 233, 241, 421
Ectotomii 134
Ectomomyrmex 135
Ectoparasites 381, 412
Ectrophes 404
Egg, of ants 69, 70; fertilization of 71
Elias guiniesiensis 251
Elasmobolus heroiine 419; E. vigilans 420
Electromyrmex 167; E. klebsi 164, 171
Eleodes 282
Eleusine indica 277, 278
Embryo 72
Embryonic life, length of 80
Emerya 139
Emeryella 135, 230
Eneaphalon 52
Enchenopa ferruginea 351
Endoparasites 381, 419
Endospermum 295; E. formicarum 297
Engramma 142
Enneanomera 167, 171
Ephedomyrmex 140, 152, 283; E. imberbiculus 283, 284, 290, 292; E. megeli 283; E. pima 283; E. townsendi 283
Ephialtes jurassicus 160
Epimera 22
Epinotum 22
Epipheidole 107, 113, 140, 150, 156; E. inquinula 103, 407, 498
Episterna 22
Epirritus 20, 141, 158; E. emma 131
Epatus 95, 107, 113, 159, 156; E. perangeli 498
Epithelium, follicular 39
Epixenus andrei 496; E. creticus 496
Epizeuxis americanus 383
Erebomyrma 113, 140, 152, 158, 159; E. longi 152, 428; E. persuaviana 152, 428
Eretoelines 388
Ergatandromorph 99
Ergatane 94
Ergates 97
Ergatogyne 96
Ergatotletic type of social insects 120
Eriococcus texanus 349
Erythrana 299
Ethology, history of, 127
Eucalyptus platyphylla 223; E. tesselaritis 221
Euarine 418
Eucharis myrmecia 418
Eudarcos 423
Eumecopone 135
Euphorbia 278, 284
Euphoria hirtipes 384; E. inda 384
Euponer 135
Euprenolepis 143
Eurosa solidaginis 212
Eusphinctus 137
Eustermes fulviceps 429
Eutetramorium 141
Eyes 18, 20; lateral 65; median 66

F

Female, myrmecophilous and mimetic characters of 114; stature of 114
Femur 24
Feniseca 360; F. tarquiniius 359, 360
Ficus 295; F. inaequalis 295, 313
Filaments, sensory 46
Fire-ant 11
Food-bodies 300; of ants 177
Foraging 241, 532

Digitized by Google
INDEX 655

Gnostus 400; G. formicola 404; G. meinerti 404
Gongylidia 334
Goniomma 16, 140, 268, 275, 377; G. hispatica 275
Geniothorax 139
Gordius formicarium 420
Gorgeret 20
Gossyparia mannifera 347
Gossypium 299
Grammatophyllum 296
Granivorous ants 268
Gula 18
Guests, indifferently tolerated 381; true 381, 398
Gustatory papillae 19
Gynecaner 95
Gynecoïd 97, 113, 242, 427
Gynecoïd type of social insects 119
Gynandromorph 99
Gyne 95

H
Hagensia 135
Harpaqogonus 36, 139, 150, 433, 454, 489, 492; H. americanus 494, 495; H. sublevis 40, 107, 492, 493
Harpegnaithus 135, 227, 229, 230; H. crucianus 17, 180; H. rugosus 241
Harvesting ants 11, 268, 575
Heart 46
Helianthus 299, 317; H. annuus 313
Hemerobius 340
Hemiptera 344; H. scissa 142
Heterius 388; H. blanchardi 386; H. brunneipennis 387, 389, 390; H. ferrugineus 388, 390; H. horni 389; H. tristriatus 389
Hirtella 297
Hister 388
Histeridae 379
Histoblasts 78
Holomyrmex 16, 139, 282, 377, 426; H. chobautii 273; H. lameerei 273; H. scabriceps 268, 275, 276
Holcaspis cinerosus 208, 210; H. perniciosus 368, 369, 375
Holcopomera 135
Homing 532
Homopterus 402
Honey ants 361
Honey-bee 105, 183
Honey-dew 11, 340
House-ants 10, 573
Huberia 139, 349
Humboldtia 295, 313; H. lawrifolia 295
Hydnophytum 207, 295, 305, 310; H. monianum 305
Hyloitus 402
Hyperaspis 360; H. reppensis 357
Hypoclinea 142, 172; H. gagoates 182, 516; H. maria 182, 516; H. quadrinotata 151
Hyphoecic ants 158, 515
Hypopharyngeal pocket 195
Hypopomymex 167; H. bombicci 168, 171

I
Ichneumon-flies 13
Identification, table for 557
Imhoffia 166
Impatiens 399
Infrabuccal chamber 31, 33
Ingluvies 32
Ingestion 35
Instars of ants 14
Instinct 518
Instinct-actions 519
Instinct-feelings 519
Instincts, regulation of 327; alteration in female 121; deferred 524; of queen ants 185; pathological 446; philoprogenitive 118; vestigial 425
Integument 15
Intestine 31
Intruders, inimically persecuted 380
Iridomyrmex 10, 16, 35, 46, 113, 142, 151, 167, 172, 303, 341; I. analis 45, 426; I. cordatus 306, 310; I. geinissi 78, 166; I. humilis 153, 154, 155, 223, 542; I. melleus 223; I. myrmecodia 305, 310; I. nitidus 350; I. purpureus 228, 350
Ischnomyrmex 140, 151, 182, 268, 278, 320; I. albisetosus 280, 281, 282; I. cockerelli 24, 69, 177, 201, 273, 274, 280, 281, 282
Isomeralia 418; I. coronata 413
Iius 356

J
Janetia 140; J. mayri 283
Juglans 295

K
Kapala 418; K. floridana 413
Kelep 9, 226
Kermes 349
Kibara 295
Kitchen middens 179
Kohlrabi clusters 325; heads 325
Korthalsia 298

L
Labidus 255
Labium 18, 19
Lablab 299
Labor, physiological division of 87, 118
Labrum 18, 20
Lachnodiella cecropiae 249
Lacinia 19, 29
Lactuca 317
Lalaps 383
Lamprinus 382
Lampronia miki 422
INDEX

Lampronotum 167
Larval feeding of 104: internal structure of 75
Larval life, length of 80
Lesiophanes 143
Leaf-cutting ants 576
Leaping ants 180
Lebioderus 402: L. goryi 399
Icanium hemispharicum 349
Lecanopsis 349
Lecanoteteris 207, 296: L. carnosa 298
Leea 301
Lepis 23
Lepisia 392: L. formicaria 391
Leptanilla 138, 158: L. minuscula 262: L. revelieri 262
Lestobiosis 427
Lineipithema 142
Liomyrmex 139
Lioponera 137, 171
Liphysa 384: L. brassolis 359
Lobes, frontal 54: olfactory 52
Lomechusa 400, 412
Lomechusini 399
Lonchomyrmex 166: L. heyeri 162
Lophomyrmex 141
Lordomyrmex 139
Luffa 209
Lycaena batia 357: L. pseudargiolus 352
Lycineae 357

M

Machomyrmex 139
Macrane 94
Macrergate 97
Macrogynae 95
Macromicsia 16, 93, 139, 151, 171, 215: M. albispina 127: M. isabella 127
Majeta 297
Male ants 93
Male, ergatomorphic 94
Malpighian vessels 36, 48
Mandibles 19: use of in excavating and building 195
Manna 347
Marcgravia 209
Margaredes 349
Marriage flight 183
Marria 139
Mating of ants 182
Maxillae 18, 19
Mayria 144
Mayrian furrow 21, 22
Mayriella 141
Meconion 77, 78
Mediary segment 20
Megalomyrmex 139
Megalamponera 135
Megastrilicus 382, 388: M. formicarius 381, 382, 383
Melanonyrmex 299
Melipona 105
Melissotarsus 141, 232: M. beccarii 242
Membracidae 11, 350
Memory 539
Mentum 10
Meronopilus 141, 181, 268, 377: M. dimidiatus 276: M. diversus 276
Merismoderae 402
Mermis 420, 421
Mermithergates 420, 526
INDEX

Mesenteron 36
Mesepimeron 21, 22
Mesepistemum 21
Mesonotum 21, 22
Mesoscapular 21
Mesothorax 20, 21
Mesosoma 36
Metanotum 21
Metasternum 21
Metatarsus 24
Metatarsus 20, 21
Metepisternum 21
Metepimeron 21, 22
Metepinotum 107, 118; M. pachycondyla
Mecynorhina heterodectus 422
Michaner 94
Midnergt 97
Microclaviger cervicornis 404
Microdon 385, 386; M. apiformis 385; M. devius 385; M. mutabilis 385; M. tristis 383, 385, 386; M. variegatus 386
Microgyne 95
Microphyscia 297
Microphorbe 347
Mictoponera 135
Minioecion pulex 385, 387
Minomote 386
Mullerius 141, 151, 319, 338; M. chisosens 333; M. versicolor 201, 327, 339, 309, 333, 337
Monacis 142
Mononomium 96, 98, 139, 148, 167, 268, 341, 349, 431, 527; M. decameron 428; M. destructor 10, 153, 221; M. floridica 96, 153, 428; M. keyeri 428; M. minimum 157, 201, 386, 498; M. phaneros 10, 153, 154, 221; M. solomonis 153, 467, 495, 496; M. subnudum 432; M. termotobium 428; M. venustum 496
Morphology, history of 129
Mounting ants for cabinet 547
Movement, random 532
Muellerian bodies 300
Muscles, aliform 46
Muscular system 49
Mus tectorum 262
Mutation 536; of Genothera 117
Mutation, effect of 85
Mutillidae 244
Mycetosoritis 141, 151, 199, 319, 337; hartmani 201, 321, 322, 323, 333, 334, 335, 336
Mycecriopsis 141, 180, 319; M. smithi 320
Myopias 135
Myopolopone 134
Myrissica 295
Myrmecia 93, 96, 124, 125, 170, 227, 230, 232, 233, 245; M. forficata 228, 229, 418; M. gulosa 17, 229; M. nigrocincta 229; M. pyriformis 23; M. sanguinea 228; M. spadicea 23; M. tarsata 229
Myrmecia 134
Myrmecina 63, 111, 125, 139, 180; M. graminicola 150
Myrmecocoleus 391
Myrmecoclypeus 391
Myrmecocala ochreocella 383
Myrmecocystus 16, 99, 113, 125, 144, 151, 201, 341, 362, 363, 364, 365, 374; M. bicolor 16; M. bombicus 418; M. desertorum 417; M. fertilis 201, 363, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 373, 374, 375; M. megalocara 412, 417; M. mellaris 10, 121, 201, 365, 366, 368; M. mendax 376; M. mexicanus 121, 366; M. mojave 200; M. orbiculata 376; M. semirufus 194; M. testaceus 349; M. vaticus 396, 397, 418
Myrmecocystus 207, 295, 305, 310, 311; M. pensasperma 306
Myrmecoids 422
Myrmecolax nieteri 419
Myrmecophaga 422
Myrmecophana fallax 422
Myrmecochila 393; M. acervorum 393, 396; M. americana 393; M. australis 393; M. dubia 393; M. flavocincta 156, 393; M. formicarium 393; M. nebrascensis 393, 394, 396; M. neuhawke 303; M. ochracea 393, 396; M. oregonensis 393; M. pergandei 393; M. premolepidis 393; M. salomonis 393
Myrmecophily, history of 128
Myrmecopsis 144
Myrmecoryynchus 144
Myrmecoxenes 381
Myrmecophiles 297
Myrmecophila 382, 383, 388; M. cremastoegaster 382; M. funesta 379, 382; M. humeralis 382; M. planifera 382; M. schwartzii 382
Myrmelachista 143, 173, 303
Myrmelion 432
Myrmephytum 310
Myrmex 388
Myrmica 11, 40, 43, 42, 49, 64, 70, 75, 95, 99, 125, 148, 152, 166, 167, 168, 173, 188, 201, 214, 282, 317, 341, 358, 393, 404, 513, 515; M. alpina
INDEX

436; M. brevinodis 313, 434, 436; M. canadenis 214, 425, 434, 435; M. levi nodis 27, 37, 39, 49, 43, 70, 72, 432; M. mutice 80, 150, 388, 432, 433; M. myrmexena 432; M. punctiventris 537; M. rubida 150, 434; M. rubra 18, 19, 23, 27, 28, 31, 33, 36, 38, 40, 47, 53, 60, 63, 81, 184, 405; M. rugi nodis 39, 40, 63, 72, 81, 187; M. sabulei 484; M. scabrinodis 39, 40, 102, 464, 533; M. sulcinodis 39, 97

Myrmicaria 141, 174, 215; M. brunnea 130

Myrmicinæ 13, 15, 26, 28, 29, 138

Myrmicinæ heeri 160

Myrmicocrypta 141, 319, 320, 337; M. brittoni 318

Myrmecia 382; M. fusci 382

Myrmekteras 143, 425, 515; M. binghami 138

Myrromteratii 143

Myrromcnes 139; M. gordianii 432

Myrmecium 134; M. camilla 230; M. rogeri 17

N

Nabis lativentris 422

Napochus termontophilus 400

NECTARIES, EXTRAFOLIAL 299; FLORAL 298

Nectarostegia 316

Neoelisius parasitaster 357

Neocerus 404

Neoponera 125, 135, 151, 232; N. inversa 421; N. viliosa 154, 226, 235

Nepenthæ bicolorata 296

Nerve-cord, ventral 57

Nerves, alar 58; antennary 52, 53; crural 57; motor 58; ocellar 52; optic 52; procotodeal recurrent 59; sensory 58

Nervous system 51; sympathetic 52, 58

Nest-astra 510

Nests, artificial 549; between or under leaves 298; carton 214; change of 196; classification of 198; compound 423; in cavities of stems 295; in galls 208; in houses 221; in plant cavities 207; in seed-pods 298; in soil 190; in stone walls 222; in thorns 298; in tubers, pseudobulbs, etc. 295; in wood 208; large crater 201; mounds 201; orientation of 204; silken 217; succursal 223; small crater 201; summer and winter 195; suspended 213; under stones, logs, etc. 205

Nothomyrmica 167, 171

Notoncus 143

Noxious ants 7

Nuptial flight 183

Nyländeria 143, 361; N. arenavaga 201

O

Ocetomyrmex 141

Ocyrnex 16, 139, 268, 278

Odonomachii 136

Odonomachus 93, 96, 125, 136, 180, 227, 229, 230, 231, 234; O. chelifer 421; O. clarus 39, 40, 151, 188, 226, 233, 235; O. hamatodes 17, 151, 188, 226, 233, 421

Odonomyrmex 139

Odontoponera 135; O. transversa 238

Odors of ants 182; progressive 510; specific 511

Ecophylla 78, 121, 125, 143, 167, 172, 216, 223, 237, 303, 341, 521; E. brisch-kei 171, 173; E. smaragdina 118, 173, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 358, 359; E. virescens 220, 223

Ecophylhi 143

Eringen ants 164

Ecocytes 47, 48

Esophagus 31, 32

Oligomyrmex 140, 167, 174, 428

Onychomyrmex 135

Oöcerea 137

Oïleiaïs oïphilus 417

Ophthalmonopone 135, 233; O. ilgi 240

Opisthopsis 144; O. resipicens 17

Oraema 95, 99, 106, 412, 418, 421, 426; O. coloradensis 418; O. viridis 414, 415, 416, 418; O. wheeleri 418

Orectognathus 141

Organs, chordonotal 62, 63; Johnstonian 64

Orthesia 349

Orthopterus 402

Osteoles 46

Otiomyrmex 142

Ovaries 39, 40

Ovarioles 39, 40

Oviduct 39

Oxyyne 140, 448, 454; O. obrerras 449; O. agnetis 449; O. daizyri 449; O. dalii 449; O. depressa 449; O. ebinia 448; O. emma 448; O. martha 449; O. ranaloma 449; O. soror 448; O. trivancorensis 448

Oxyopomyrmex 16, 140, 268, 275, 377; O. santschii 273

Oxysoma 393; O. oberthueri 396, 397

P

Pachycondylæ 74, 107, 125, 135, 151, 231, 233; P. muscoatra 421; P. harrasi 39, 40, 226, 234, 393, 407, 412, 413

Pachypodistes gahai 384

Paenina 299

Palaromyrmex prodromus 160

Paleococcus rose 349

Palpi 19

Palaiotheres 135

Parabiosis 424

Paracletus cimiciformis 347

Paraglossæ 19
INDEX

Parameridae 39, 30
Parameurites 148, 167, 172
Parapomera 135; P. clavata 22, 421
Parapsidal suture 21
Parapsis 21
Parasites, permanent social 495
Parasitism, brood 405; heterocercous 405: homocercous 405: permanent social 440; pupillary 440; temporary social 440; tutelary 440
Pararayscia 71, 72, 137, 233, 266; P. augusta 226; P. peringueyi 113
Parmula 385
Parthenogenesis 71, of workers 116; relation to polymorphism 87; relation to sex 89
Passiflora 299
Passisside 379, 399, 402
Paussoides 402
Pauromorphus 402
Paussus 400, 401, 402; P. arboicus 403; P. cucullatus 403; P. dama 399; P. faveri 403; P. hova 399; P. linnari 403; P. linearis 403; P. spiniceps 399; P. sphaerocerus 402; P. turcicus 403
Pedicel 26
Pelorinae 432
Pepinigus 347, 352; P. tessellatus 347, 348, 359
Pemphredon insignis 353
Pennisulcinae 353
Pentacrinus 352
Pentatladathuris 402; P. natalensis 399
Periplaneta australasiae 262
Petiole 26
Phaenota 139; P. nosalhieri 432; P. sichii 432
Phagocyctes 49
Pharynx 31, 32
Phasmdus 209
Phedione 64, 74, 93, 98, 107, 108, 112, 115, 120, 125, 130, 140, 147, 174, 175, 182, 201, 254, 268, 276, 278, 350, 358, 377, 403, 513; Ph. absurda 420; Ph. antennalis 44, 263; Ph. borumquenensis 99; Ph. calens 427; Ph. carbonaria 279; Ph. cerea 279, 418, 497; Ph. coloradensis 279, 497; Ph. commutata 420, 421, 426; Ph. dentata 201; Ph. desertorum 401; Ph. diffusa 269; Ph. ecitonodora 44, 263; Ph. flavens 153; 154; Ph. instabilis 56, 77, 89, 279, 420, 415, 416, 418, 426; Ph. jaraiva 310; Ph. lamia 17, 212, 428, 430; Ph. longiceps 276; Ph. megacephala 10, 63, 153, 154, 155, 221, 272; Ph. metallescens 16; Ph. morrisei 201; Ph. pallidula 272, 393, 403; Ph. pilifera 152, 278, 497, 498; Ph. providens 269; Ph. sticharcs 279; Ph. splendidula 16; Ph. termitobia 438; Ph. tysoni 152, 278; Ph. vasili 279; Ph. vinelandica 152, 201, 278, 418
Phelidoloteron 112, 140, 175, 268, 377, 524; Ph. antiquus 174; Ph. ocellifer 275, 276
Phedoloxenus wheeleri 419, 420
Phenacoccus 349
Phoridæ 419
Phthysaner 95, 418
Phthisergeta 99, 418
Phthisygone 97, 418
Phylacobia 299
Phylogeny of subfamilies 244
Phyrracaces 137
Physiological states 121
Pilosity of ants 15
Pinus rigida 213
Pith as food for ants 302
Plagiocheilus 391
Plagiolepidi 143
Plagiolepis 38, 75, 99, 143, 148, 167, 341, 374, 391; P. custodiens 404; P. lifieri 365; P. longipes 10, 154, 155, 393; P. pygmaea 39; P. trimeni 364, 365
Planias 278
Plant-lice 11
Plants injurious to ants 315; myrmecophilous 294
Plastophora crawfordii 419
Platyarthrus hoffmanseggii 383
Platythrya 73, 135, 151, 233; P. punctata 80, 226
Platythrychium 295
Platytheropalus 402
Plectroctena 135
Plisocrene ants 173
Plergeregate 99, 121
Plesiobiosis 424
Pleuropterus 400, 402; P. brevicornis 399
Podomyrma 139, 172
Podophylla 282
Pogonomymex 16, 74, 80, 98, 107, 125, 131, 140, 152, 189, 201, 268, 276, 279, 282, 283, 341, 377, 382, 513, 514; P. apache 283; P. badinii 151, 152, 201, 280, 283, 284, 285, 292; P. barbatus 11, 85, 203, 222, 284, 286, 291, 292, 293, 427, 529; P. californicus 188, 189, 200, 201, 284, 285, 290, 292; P. comanchei 201, 284, 285, 292; P. cunicularis 283; P. desertorum 282; P. marzensis 284; P. molefaciens 24, 39, 40, 70, 76, 179, 197, 203, 204, 264, 275, 277, 283, 284, 286, 287, 288, 290, 292, 293, 294, 296, 513; P. nigrescens 284; P. occidentalis 10, 11, 145, 196, 200, 202, 203, 204, 205, 222, 283, 284, 287, 289, 291, 425, 426; P. rugosus 279, 280, 284, 285, 290; P. sanctihyacinthin 283; P. subdentatus 283
Pogonomymex 400, 412
INDEX

Poison apparatus 42, 43; burrelated type of 42; pulvinate type of 42
Polizies 72
Polybia pygmaea 397
Polymorphism, phylogeny of 91; causes of 100; prospectus of phases 92; definition of 86
Polyplcotes 404
Polyphidium 299
Polyrhachis 15, 144, 148, 167, 174, 215, 216, 233, 303, 521; P. alexandri 221; P. bihamala 139; P. dives 217, 221, 223; P. jerdoni 216; P. lamellidens 140; P. mayri 139; P. muelleri 221, 222; P. spinigera 217
Polytrichum 434; P. commune 314, 317; P. strictum 317
Ponera 71, 74, 94, 125, 135, 158, 167, 174, 182, 231, 233, 234, 238; P. atavus 174; P. coarctata 93, 96, 150, 174; P. eduardi 93, 94, 95, 96; P. ergatandra 94, 151; P. hendersoni 173, P. opaciceps 151; P. pennsylvanica 75, 79, 226, 232, 237, 238; P. punctatisima 65, 93, 94; P. quadridentata 26; P. trigona 151
Ponerii 133, 135
Ponerinae 13, 15, 26, 28, 29, 134, 225
Poneropsis 166
Populius 299, 300; P. fremonti 282
Poromma 300, 310
Portulacca oleracea 277
Postpetiole 26
Postscutellum 22
Pouch, copulatory 40
Prenolepis 11, 35, 78, 83, 99, 113, 143, 167, 201, 241, 249, 258, 260, 262, 364, 365, 379; P. fulva 154; P. impars 11, 150, 205, 361, 376; P. longicornis 10, 154, 156, 221, 393; P. testacea 376
Prionogenys 135, 227
Prionomyrmex 167; P. longiceps 161, 170
Prionopelta 134
Prionotermes 139; P. japonicus 129
Probolomyrmex 137
Proceteri 136
Proceraterium 136, 151, 156, 158, 171, 227; P. silaceum 229
Proctocercus 141
Proctodaemum 36
Proctotrupide 419
Proformica 143
Proclusius 143
Pronotum 21
Propodyrmyra 167, 171; P. samlandica 163
Prosopis juliflora 282
Protosternum 21
Protosynesis 59
Protanewetius 148, 167, 172
Prothorax 20, 21
Protocerebrum 51, 52
Protopaupeus 402, 403
Proventriculus 33, 34, 35; bulb of 34; sepal of 34
Protulaus 299
Psalidomyrmex 135
Psecliphidium 379
Psuedochalcus 418; Ps. gibboza 418
Psuedococcus cuatalensis 349
Psuedodichthas 255; Ps. incerta 255
Psuedogyne 96, 106, 407, 526
Psuedobiachrum mandibulare 420; Ps. montianum 420; Ps. myrmecophilum 420; Ps. rufiventre 420
Psuedoladinus 143; Ps. familiaris 137
Psuedometagia 418
Psuedomyrmex 73, 111, 139, 151, 245, 303, 304, 305, 309, 314, 345, 515, 517
Ps. arbors-sanctae 314; Ps. belli 312; Ps. bicolor 312; Ps. dendroica 314; Ps. elegans 303; Ps. elongata 426, 504
Ps. flavida 426, 504; Ps. fulvescens 307, 312; Ps. mexicana 386; Ps. spinicola 312; Ps. symbiotica 314; Ps. tritlapidis 314
Psuedomyrmex 139
Psuedoponerina 135, 234; Ps. stigma 151, 226, 234
Psuedostricidae 160
Psuedosirex 160
Psidium 299
Psylla pyricola 350
Psyllidea 349
Ptelea trifoliata 209
Ptentidium 383
Pterergate 78, 99
Pteris 299
Pterocladon 295
Pteromalidae 340
Pterospermum 301
Ptilium 383
Pulilibia concava 351
Pubescence of ants 15
Punktsubstanz 53
Pupa 76
Pupal life, length of 80
Pupation 76
Pygostenus 386
Pyrophorus 402
Python natalensis 251
Q
Quaternary ants 173
INDEX

Quedius 382
Queens, parasitic 186
Quercus 299; Q. undulata 375, 368

R
Races 131
Radoboj ants 164
Randia 295
Reactions, historical basis of 531; pho
tophobic 515; phototropic 515; to
Roentgen rays 516
Reasoning 540
Receptaculum seminis 39
Recognition, of friends and foes 510, 534
Rectum 31
Reflexes, catenary 520
Regurgitation 35
Reproductive organs 39
Respiratory system 49
Rhinomyrmex 144
Rhinopsis ruficornis 422
Rhipsalis 290
Rhizomyrmex 143
Rhygmos 137, 248
Rhopalomastix 140
Rhopalomyrines 143, 167, 172, 173; R.
pygmeus 169
Rhopalopone 135
Rhopalopilus 352
Rhopalothrix 141, 158
Rhoptryomyrines 141
Rhozites gongyllophora 327
Rhyhochlaviger 404
Rhytidoponera 16, 93, 135
Rhyzopus nigricans 316
Ricinus 299, 300
Ripersia 349
Rogeria 139
Rosa 299
Run-ways 222

S
Saccharomyces 334
Sacculina 450, 451
Saliva of ants 177
Salivary duct 19
Sambucus 295, 299
Sanguinaria canadensis 315
 Sapum 295
Sarcocystis 49
Saracenia 297, 299, 317
Saw-flies 13, 68
Scape 20
Schizoneura 347
Schomburgkia 296
Schwartzia 295
Scolide 244
Scolytidae 338
Sculptrure of ants 15
Scutelligera 385
Scutellum 22
Scutigera 235
Seed-distribution, ants instrumental in 315
Segmentation 14
Semonius 142
Sensations 505; auditory 512; contact-
odor 514; olfactory 509; tactile 509;
temperature 509; of vibrations 513,
514; visual 515
Sense-organisms 59
Sensilla, ampullaceous 61; basiconic 61;
Campaniform 65; club of Forel 61;
cocoonic 61; flask-shaped organs of
Forel 61; gustatory 61, 511; olfactory
61, 511; tactile, or trichodeal 59
Sericomyrmex 141, 318, 319, 320, 337
Shuckardia 137, 248
Sideroxylen 432
Silofilia 139; S. laura 432
Silene 317
Silphidae 399
Simia 27, 139, 167, 303, 304; S. allabor-
ans 123; S. rubomitra 422
Simopone 137
Siphonophora 352
Siphons of aphids 343
Siricidae 160
Slave-makers, degenerate 489; faculta-
tive 452; obligatory 471
Social bees 68, 90
Social wasps 68
Soldier 97
Solenopsis initatrix 420
Solenopsidii 140
Solenopsis 63, 64, 98, 113, 114, 125,
140, 147, 152, 158, 159, 377, 428, 429,
493, 515; S. fugax 65, 420, 427; S.
gemina 11, 114, 146, 155, 201, 206,
250, 268, 269, 279, 357, 439; S.
latro 427; S. molest 10, 24, 221, 427;
S. orbula 427; S. rufa 153, 269; S.
texana 427; S. validiuscula 418
Solidago 212
Spalgis 360; S. episi 359
Species 130
Sperm 39, 40
Spermatogenesis 41
Sphagnum 317
Sphecidae 397
Sphecomyrmex 137; S. taylori 227
Spines of ants 180
Spondylisaspis eucalypti 350
Staphylinidae 379
Stemmata 20, 66
Stenamma 111, 140, 148, 268; S brevi-
corne 150; S. nearcticum 150; S.
westwoodi 150
Stenomyrmex 136, 139; S. horni 127
Stenurn 22
Stenuncalis 388
Stictoponera 135
Stigmochore 143
Stigmata 22, 28, 49
Stigmatomma 134, 158, 159, 227, 231,
INDEX

233; S. pallipes 72, 150, 226, 231, 233, 238, 239, 453
Stigmomyrmex 167, 171; S. venustus 164
Sticilus 386
Stillingia 299, 300
Stimuli 537; individualized 528; simple 528
Sting 28, 29, 42
Stipites 19, 29
Stomach 35
Stomachia 352
Stomodaeum 35
Strebloagnathus 135; S. aethiopicus 21
Stridulation 513
Stridulatory organ 26, 27, 28
Strigil 16, 24
Strigilators 393
Strongylognathus 141, 449, 454; S. afer 489, 490; S. cacilie 489, 490; S. christophi 489, 490; S. hubei 425, 489, 490; S. reibenderi 425, 489, 490; S. testaceus 107, 489, 490, 491, 492, 495, 500, 503
Strumigenys 141, 151, 158, 181, 428; S. lewisi 132; S. obscuriventris 132; S. pergandi 24; S. saliens 180
Stylets 29
Stygogaster 261, 419
Styloglossa 419, 451
Submentum 19
Subspecies 131
Succoring companions 536
Sugar- ERP 349
Symmyrmica 94, 139, 150, 156, 182; S. chamberlini 94, 434, 433
Symphidole 107, 113, 140, 150, 156; S. elecra 497, 498
Symphiles 381, 398; antennae of 401; color of 398; mouth-parts of 401
Sympolemon 386
Synagelas 422
Syncephalans 380, 382
Synemosyna 422
Synneketes 381; loricate 386; mimetic 386; neutral 383; symphiloid 386, 388
Syringa 299
Syridaceae 340
Syria 313
Syphonidia 136, 151, 158, 171, 227; S. pergandi 229

T

Tachia 295
Tachigala 295
Tactile hairs 15
Tapinoma 36, 46, 49, 125, 142, 167, 182, 357, 360, 451; T. erraticum 40, 45, 65, 214, 351, 382, 426, 446; T. heyeri 428; T. littorale 426; T. melancephalum 154, 156; T. minutissimum 172; T. nigerrimum 356, 447; T. sessile 45
Tapinoma-odor 45
Tarsus 24

Taxonomy, history of 124
Technomyrmex 35, 94, 143, 167; T. deletus 172; T. strenuus 34
Tegula 21
Telson 51
Tennothorax 139
Temperature, effect of, on adult ants 83; effects of, on growth 80, 81
Temples 18
Tentredinidae 89
Tents for aphids and coccida 233
Teratosoma 400
Termes naubelii 427
Termes 1, 2, 3, 195, 338
Termiteomyia 383
Termiktid 383
Tertiary ants 161
Testes 40
Tetramorii 141
Tetramorium 63, 125, 141, 148, 215, 341, 393, 403, 496; T. aculeatum 216; T. africanum 216; T. cespitum 44, 40, 72, 153, 154, 222, 268, 278, 384, 420, 425, 489, 490, 491, 492, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502; T. guineense 10, 153; T. similimum 10, 154
Tetramoropsia aurocincta 420
Tetraporia 400
Tetragmus 141
Tetrigona 356, 357, 360; T. casta 356; T. impressifrons 356; T. obliqua 357
Thuamomyrmex 135, 227, 830; Th. multilatus 17
Thea formicosa 350; Th. opaca 350
Thekidion 422
Thoricidae 379, 399
Thorictus 400, 412; Th. castanews 418; Th. foreli 412, 417, 418; Th. paucisea 417, 418
Thynnideae 244
Tibia 24
Tillandsia 207, 298, 432; T. benthamiana 425
Tillomorphia 422
Tococa 207, 213, 297; T. formicaria 301; T. lancifolia 300
Tomognathus 492
Trachea 22
Trachymyrmex 141, 151, 180, 199, 275, 319, 337; T. arizonensis 333, 335; T. obscurior 328, 333; T. septentrionalis 24, 200, 327, 342, 333, 336; T. turri-fex 201, 324, 325, 326, 332, 333, 335, 336
Trane 347, 352; T. radiis 340
Tranopella 140, 152, 428
Trachelopelta 135
Tree-ants 515
Tree-hoppers 11
Trial and error 532
Triballus 388; T. californicus 388
Trichilus 300
Trichodes 39, 399
INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Entry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>Trichomyrmex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>Triglyphothrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>Trigona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139 :</td>
<td>Trigonogaster recurvispinosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Trilobitidius 386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207, 295, 305, 313, 314 :</td>
<td>Tripilis americanus 295 ; T. boliviana 296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51, 52</td>
<td>Tritocerebrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Trochanter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>360</td>
<td>Trophobiosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299</td>
<td>Turnera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>Tschea 347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Tylois</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253</td>
<td>Typhlatta 253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>Typhlusmyrmex 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137, 248 :</td>
<td>Typhlopon 253 ; T. levigata 249 ; T. punctata 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320, 334</td>
<td>Tyridiomyces formicarum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>417</td>
<td>Tyroglyphus wasmanni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411, 417</td>
<td>Urodiscella philcotena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411, 417</td>
<td>Uropoda ovalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>351</td>
<td>Vanduzea arcuata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Variability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131 ; local or geographical 130 ; nest 130</td>
<td>Varieties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Veins of wings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Velvet-ants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Ventral cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Venticulus 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541 :</td>
<td>Vespa 248 ; V. germanica 529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Vertex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299</td>
<td>Viburnum 299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299</td>
<td>Vicia 299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139</td>
<td>Vollenhovia 139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Volsellae 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>Wasmannia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13, 29, 90, 91 :</td>
<td>Wasp 1, 2, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107, 113, 114, 139, 224, 447, 467, 500, 503, 527 ;</td>
<td>Wheeleriella 405, 406, 496, 497</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X. santischii 405, 406, 496, 497</td>
<td>Wing muscles, degenerating 49, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Wings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>Worker 97 ; as a hunger form 122 ; guarding instincts of 120 ; nursing instincts of 120 ; fertile 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>383</td>
<td>Xanionotum hystrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>382</td>
<td>Xantholinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430</td>
<td>Xenobiosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>386</td>
<td>Xenoecephalus 386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>405, 426 :</td>
<td>Xenodus 405, 426 ; X. cava 405, 407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139, 191 ; X. floridanus 432 ; X. lucayanus 432 ; X. stolli 151, 431, 432</td>
<td>Xenomyrmex 139, 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>419</td>
<td>Xenos 419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141, 151</td>
<td>Xiphomyrmex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>359</td>
<td>Zesius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>358</td>
<td>Z. chrysomallus 358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>358</td>
<td>Zizyphus rugosus 358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Due Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2, 1991</td>
<td>Nov 25, 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mar 2, 1992</td>
<td>Jul 2, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 9, 1992</td>
<td>Dec 4, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aug 13, 1992</td>
<td>Dec 13, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apr 5, 1993</td>
<td>May 2, 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apr 30, 1993</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 15, 1995</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun, 1995</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Date Due

- Feb 4, 1976
- Dec 8, 1976
- Jan 25, 1977
- Apr 1, 1977
- Mar 28, 1972
- Apr 20, 1976
- May 17, 1973